DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 022 178 AL 001 478

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE.
Defense Language Institute, Washington, D.C.
Pub Date Mar 66
Note-1114p.; 5vols.
EDRS Price MF-$4.25 HC-$44.64
Descriptors-AUDIOLINGUAL SKILLS, *CANTONESE, CHINESE CULTURE, *INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, LANGUAGE PATTERNS, MILITARY TRAINING, READING MATERIALS, *REFRESHER COURSES, ROMANIZATION, STANDARD SPOKEN USAGE, TONE LANGUAGES, VOCABULARY, WRITING

This refresher course, comprising 140 instructional units, follows the general format of the Defense Language Institute's "Chinese-Cantonese Basic Course" (AL 001 479). Each unit contains four sections. (1) Oral Material, which introduces new elements for review and study. This material, in conversational Cantonese Chinese style, is transcribed in romanization, calligraphed in Chinese characters, and translated into idiomatic English. (2) Reading Material, in Chinese characters. There is a gradual development from conversational to literary style as the course progresses. (3) Questions, transcribed in romanization. (4) Vocabulary and Notes. The cultural content is designed for the special interests of the U.S. military personnel. See also related document AL 001 477, "Chinese-Cantonese Dictionary." (AMM)

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE - CANTONESE

REFRESHER COURSE

VOLUME I

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

ED022178

AL 001 478

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

C H I N E S E - C A N T O N E S E

Refresher Course

Volume I

Instructional Units 1-30

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS [redacted] MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY Major Bobby L. Moore

TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE U.S. OFFICE OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE [redacted] OWNER."

March 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

MATERIALS

Printed Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Recorded Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	"Free China's Fighting Men" MF 30-8444
	1 reel	"Mighty Chinese Armed Forces" USALS-86
	1 reel	"Production of Combat Intelligence" TF 30-1494

*FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

PRINTED MATERIALS

This volume contains 30 fifty-minute instructional units (Instructional Units 1 through 30) designed for classroom instruction. Each unit contains the following parts:

Oral Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in oral fluency. New elements of the language are introduced for review and study in this part only. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. It is transcribed in romanization, calligraphed in Chinese characters, and translated into idiomatic English.

Reading Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in reading. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. There is a gradual development from conversational to literary style. It is calligraphed in Chinese characters.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. It is transcribed in romanization. The questions and approved answers, calligraphed in Chinese characters, are in the Instructor's Manual.

Vocabulary and Notes. This part contains a complete list of vocabulary and grammatical notes which are intended for study by the student and support current or subsequent materials.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

RECORDED MATERIALS

As the classroom supervisor or instructor available may or may not be a native linguist, each Instructional Unit is supported by one individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

Oral Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Reading Material. This part also contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Instructional Units, the following study procedures are to be observed when the classroom supervisor or instructor available is not a native linguist:

1. Listen to the Oral Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

2. Repeat after the Oral Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

3. Listen to the Reading Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material.

4. Repeat after the Reading Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material.

5. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

6. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

7. If more time is available, repeat Step 2 and 4.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

CORRELATED MATERIALS

Instructional Units 1 through 30 are to be correlated with 13 fifty-minute language laboratory practice units (Language Laboratory Practice Units 1 through 13) designed for individual practice. Each unit contains the following parts:

Aural Comprehension Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in aural comprehension. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. As this part is for aural comprehension, no printed material is necessary for the student. This part, transcribed in romanization, is in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. No printed material is necessary for the student. The questions and approved answers, transcribed in romanization, are in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Instead of printed material, the student is issued an individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

Aural Comprehension Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Language Laboratory Practice Units, the following study procedures are to be observed:

1. Listen to the Aural Comprehension Material Listening Practice.

2. Repeat after Aural Comprehension Material Repeat Practice.

3. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

4. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

5. If more time is available, repeat Step 1, 2, 3, and 4, and/or record at the end of the tape a resumé of the Aural Comprehension Material.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

TESTING MATERIALS

Instructional Units 1 through 30 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 1 through 13 are to be further correlated with 2 fifty-minute formal testing units (Formal Testing Units 1 and 2) designed to test the student's mastery of the materials in these units. Specific instructions and guidance to the student in connection with the tests are given in each of the Formal Testing Units which are "For Official Use Only".

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

SCHEDULE

1st Wk				2nd Wk				3rd Wk			
M	Hr 1	IU	1	M	Hr 16	IU	11	M	Hr 31	IU	21
	2	IU	2		17	IU	12		32	IU	22
	3	LLPU	1		18	LLPU	6		33	LLPU	10
T	Hr 4	IU	3	T	Hr 19	IU	13	T	Hr 34	IU	23
	5	IU	4		20	IU	14		35	IU	24
	6	LLPU	2		21	FTU	1		36	LLPU	11
W	Hr 7	IU	5	W	Hr 22	IU	15	W	Hr 37	IU	25
	8	IU	6		23	IU	16		38	IU	26
	9	LLPU	3		24	LLPU	7		39	LLPU	12
T	Hr 10	IU	7	T	Hr 25	IU	17	T	Hr 40	IU	27
	11	IU	8		26	IU	18		41	IU	28
	12	LLPU	4		27	LLPU	8		42	FTU	2
F	Hr 13	IU	9	F	Hr 28	IU	19	F	Hr 43	IU	29
	14	IU	10		29	IU	20		44	IU	30
	15	LLPU	5		30	LLPU	9		45	LLPU	13

IU - Instructional Unit

LLPU - Language Laboratory Practice Unit

FTU - Formal Testing Unit

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

CONTENTS

Instructional Unit	Page
1	1
2	8
3	15
4	22
5	29
6	37
7	44
8	52
9	60
10	70
11	77
12	85
13	92
14	99
15	107
16	114
17	122
18	129
19	136
20	144
21	152
22	160

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

Instructional Unit	Page
23	167
24	174
25	184
26	191
27	198
28	206
29	213
30	220

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

ORAL MATERIAL

Ch'ān Sin-Shaang: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Tsó-shān, Sin-Shaang.

C: Ngŏh haî Ch'ān Kaaù-Koon. Neĭ haî pin-waî* à?

P: Ngŏh haî Paâk-Chì-On.

C: Ngŏh haî sin-shaang. Neĭ haî mi-yĕ à?

P: Ngŏh haî hôk-shaang.

C: K'uĭ ne? K'uĭ to haî hôk-shaang mà?

P: Haî, k'uĭ to haî hôk-shaang.

C: Neĭ haî m̀-haí kwan-koon à?

P: Haî, ngŏh haî kwan-koon; ngŏh haî Paâk Sheûng-Waì.

C: K'uĭ yîk-to haî kwan-koon m̀-haî à?

P: Ā-haî, k'uĭ m̀-haî kwan-koon.

C: K'uĭ haî sz̀-ping, haî m̀-haî à?

P: Ā-haî, k'uĭ yîk-to m̀-haî sz̀-ping.

C: K'uĭ m̀-haî kwan-koon, m̀-haî sz̀-ping, haî mi-yĕ à?

P: K'uĭ haî kwan-sz̀. K'uĭ haî Cheung Sheûng-Sz̀.

C: Ā-koi, m̀-koi.

P: Ā-shaí-m̀-koi.

C: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn!

P: Tsoì-kìn, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

Mr. Ch'an: Good morning!

Capt. White: Good morning, sir!

C: I'm Instructor Ch'ān. Who are you?

W: I'm John White.

C: I'm a teacher. What are you?

W: I'm a student.

C: What is he? Is he a student?

W: Yes, he is.

C: Are you an officer?

W: Yes, I am. I'm Capt. White.

C: Is he an officer?

W: No, he isn't.

C: He is a private, isn't he?

W: No, he isn't.

C: He is not an officer, nor a private; what is he?

W: He is a noncommissioned officer; he is M/Sgt Cheung.

C: Thank you.

W: You are welcome.

C: Good-bye!

W: Good-bye, Mr. Ch'ān!

陳先生：早晨，早晨！
白上尉：早晨，先生！
陳：我係陳教官．你係邊位呀？
白：我係白志安．
陳：我係先生．你係乜野呀？
白：我係學生．
陳：佢呢？佢都係學生嗎？
白：係，佢都係學生．
陳：你係唔係軍官呀？
白：係，我係軍官，我係白上尉．
陳：佢亦都係軍官唔係呀？
白：唔係，佢唔係軍官．
陳：佢係士兵，係唔係呀？
白：唔係，佢亦都唔係士兵．
陳：佢唔係軍官，唔係士兵，係乜野呀？
白：佢係軍士．佢係張上士．
陳：唔該，唔該．
白：唔使唔該．
陳：再見，再見！
白：再見，陳先生！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

READING MATERIAL

白志安係學生，唔係先生．佢唔係士兵，亦都唔係軍士．佢係軍官；佢係上尉．

張上士都係學生，唔係先生．佢係軍士，唔係軍官，唔係士兵．

陳先生係教官，唔係軍官，唔係軍士，亦都唔係士兵；佢係先生，唔係學生．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

QUESTIONS

1. Paâk-Chì-On haî m̄-haî sẑ-ping à?
2. Paâk-Chì-On haî m̄-haî kwan-sẑ à?
3. Paâk-Chì-On m̄-haî sẑ-ping, m̄-haî kwan-sẑ; k'uĭ haî mi-yĕ à?
4. Paâk-Chì-On haî sheûng-waì, haî m̄-haî à?
5. Paâk Sheûng-Waì haî sin-shaang m̄-haî à?
6. Paâk Sheûng-Waì m̄-haî sin-shaang, haî mi-yĕ à?
7. Paâk Sheûng-Waì haî hôk-shaang, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ haî hôk-shaang mà?
8. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ haî hôk-shaang, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang ne?
9. Ch'ān Sin-Shaang m̄-haî hôk-shaang, haî m̄-haî sin-shaang à?
10. Ch'ān Sin-Shaang haî kaaù-koon m̄-haî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Ch'ān a common surname; to arrange, spread out, exhibit, make a statement, make a plea; old, long time

sin-shaang Mr, mister, teacher, instructor, sir! husband

tsó-shān good morning! early in the morning, morning!

paâk White, surname; white, empty, vain, naked, plain, clear, obvious; to explain

sheûng-waì captain (Army, Air Force, Marine Corps)

ngŏh I, me, our (literary)

haî to be; to equal; it is; to be sure; omission or use before quality words; to indicate contrast; to indicate emphatic assertion

kaaù-koon instructor, military instructor, teacher

neĭ you (singular), thou

pin waî*? an honorific auxiliary noun (AN) for "who?"

à mildly emphatic final particle, prefix for familiar way of calling persons

Paâk-Chì-On John White

mi-yĕ, mat-yĕ what? what kind of...? anything, something; any, some; why?

hôk-shaang student

k'uĭ he, she, him, her, it; them (refer to inanimate things)

ne interrogative particle; and...? how about...? particle for pause; particle softening a statement; interrogative particle having the force of 'and...?' 'how about...?' 'then...?' stress; interjection, there!

to too, also, likewise; in all cases; in either case; even (with negative); often pronounced too-with a short close oo; to haî 'is also'; note the position of to before the verb

mà fusion of m̄ + à; an interrogative particle; it is

probably an abbreviation of the open form of the A- not -A question

m̄ not; un-; cannot

kwan-koon military officer

yîk-to also, too

sẑ-ping private, enlisted man, soldier

kwan-sẑ noncommissioned officer

Cheung a common surname; AN for tables, chairs, etc.

sheûng-sẑ master-sergeant

m̄-koi thank, thank you; much obliged; (I) ought not (to trouble you), - excuse me; pardon me; please

m̄-shaí m̄-koi you are welcome, not at all, don't mention

tsoì-kìn good bye, Cf: au revoir, auf Wiedersehen: tsoì-kìn is seldom spoken alone, it is either spoken twice very rapidly or once with the particle là

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

ORAL MATERIAL

Ch'ān Kaaù-Koon: Paâk Sheûng-Waì!

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Ch'ān Kaaù-Koon!

C: Neĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ shue à?

P: Yaŭ à, ngŏh-teî yaŭ shue à.

C: Neĭ-teî yaŭ pat mŏ à?

P: Yaŭ a, ngŏh-teî yîk yaŭ pat a.

C: Kóm, neĭ-teî yaŭ shue t'ūng pat, haî m̄-haî à?

P: Mŏ ts'òh lâ. Ngŏh-teî yaŭ shue yaû yaŭ pat.

C: K'uĭ-teî ne? K'uĭ-teî yaŭ chí m̄ à?

P: Mŏ wòh, k'uĭ-teî mŏ chí wòh.

C: Pô* ne? K'uĭ-teî yaŭ pô* mà?

P: To mŏ pòh, k'uĭ-teî mŏ chí, yaû mŏ pô*.

C: Kóm ā, k'uĭ-teî yaŭ mi-yĕ ne?

P: K'uĭ-teî chí yaŭ shue yaŭ pat, taân-haî mŏ chí mŏ pô*.

C: Kóm, neĭ-teî ne? Neĭ-teî yaŭ mat ne?

P: Ngŏh-teî m̄-chí yaŭ shue yaŭ pat, î-ch'é yaû yaŭ chí, yaû yaŭ pô* t'im pòh.

C: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn!

P: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, t'ing-yât tsoì-kìn!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

Instructor Ch'ān: Capt White!

Capt. White: Mr. Ch'ān.

C: Do you have books?

W: Yes, we do.

C: Do you have pens?

W: Yes, we do.

C: In that case, you have books and pens, don't you?

W: You're right. We have books and pens.

C: How about them? Do they have paper?

W: No, they don't.

C: How about exercise books? Do they have any?

W: No, they don't have paper nor exercise books.

C: In that case, what do they have?

W: They only have books and pens, but not paper and exercise books.

C: So, how about you? What do you have?

W: Not only do we have books and pens, but also paper and exercise books.

C: Good-bye!

W: See you tomorrow, Mr. Ch'ān.

陳教官：白上尉！
白上尉：陳教官！
陳：你地有冇書呀？
白：有呀，我地有書呀。
陳：你地有筆冇呀？
白：有呀，我地亦有筆呀。
陳：敢，你地有書同筆，係唔係呀？
白：冇錯啦，我地有書又有筆。
陳：佢地呢？佢地有紙唔呀？
白：有喎，佢地有紙喎。
陳：簿呢？佢地有簿嗎？
白：都有嚟。佢地有紙又有簿。
陳：敢呀，佢地有乜野呢？
白：佢地祇有書有筆，但係冇紙冇簿。
陳：敢，你地呢？你地有乜呢？
白：我地唔祇有書有筆，而且又有紙又有簿添嚟。
陳：再見，再見！
白：陳先生，聽日再見！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

READING MATERIAL

白上尉有書，我地有書，我地亦有筆；我地有書又有筆．我地有書同筆．

佢地有紙，佢地又有簿；佢地祇有書有筆，但係有紙有簿．

我地唔祇有書有筆；而且又有紙，又有簿．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

QUESTIONS

1. Paâk Sheûng-Waì yaŭ mŏ shue à?
2. Neĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ shue à?
3. Neĭ-teî yaŭ pat mŏ à?
4. Neĭ-teî yaŭ shue t'ūng pat, haî m̄-haî à?
5. K'uĭ-teî yaŭ chí m̄ à?
6. K'uĭ-teî mŏ chí, k'uĭ-teî yaŭ pô* mŏ à?
7. K'uĭ-teî mŏ chí t'ūng pô*, chí yaŭ mi-yĕ à?
8. K'uĭ-teî chí yaŭ mi-yĕ t'ūng mi-yĕ, taân-haî mŏ mi-yĕ t'ūng mi-yĕ à?
9. K'uĭ-teî mŏ chí mŏ pô*; kóm, neĭ-teî ne?
10. Neĭ-teî yaŭ chí yaŭ pat, yaû yaŭ mi-yĕ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

neĭ-teî you (plural)

yaŭ to have; there is; with; -ful; -ed; is as much as; did; the negative of yaŭ 'to have' is mŏ 'not to have'; m̄ is never used before yaŭ; the force of yaŭ is 'is as much as' as against plain haî 'is'; yaŭ without a subject or with a subject denoting a place, is best translated 'there is'.

mŏ not to have, there is not, to have not, did not; without; -less; not as much as

shue book, AN: pô, poón

ngŏh-teî we, us

pat writing instrument, pen, pencil, Chinese brush; AN: chi; AN for a sum of money

a particle for animated enumeration, emphatic statement, etc.

yîk 'also', synonymous with to; on the whole, to is used with a different subject for the same predicate; while yîk is used with the same subject for a different predicate, and compound yik-to is used in either case: ngŏh yaŭ pat, neĭ to yaŭ pat; ngŏh yaŭ pat, yîk- (to) yaŭ shue.

kóm so, thus, like this, like that; in this manner; then; resumptive adverb which is spoken after the chatting is over to restore the conversational atmosphere.

t'ūng and, for, with, together with; t'ūng may be omitted when not required for emphasis or clarity; between a pronoun and a noun, t'ung is not omitted.

mŏ-ts'òh that's right; no mistake.

là final particle indicating a new situation, or the realization of an existing situation.

yaû again, moreover, besides, or; yaû...yaû...'both... and...' before predicates only; yaû mŏ (or m̄)...yaû mŏ (or m̄) 'neither...nor...'

k'uĭ-teî they, them

chí paper; AN: cheung

wòh final particle, final particle denoting quoted statement.

pô* exercise book, writing pad; pô 'AN for books, exercise books, etc', part, portion'

pòh particle having the force of 'of course, I suppose'

ā particle of hesitation; particle before a pause; negative particle

chí only, merely; but, however; still

taân-haî but; yet; however

mat what? anything, something; what kind of...? any, some

m̄-chí not only

î-ch'é but also; moreover; besides

t'im too; also; to add to; additionally, as well

t'ing-yât tsoì-kìn 'see you tomorrow'; in t'ing-yât tsoì-kìn, the phrase tsoì-kìn is used in the sense as part of a sentence.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ, neĭ haî pin shuè yān à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Sheûng-Waì, ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk yān, haî Meĭ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng yān.

P: Neĭ haî Meĭ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng pin shuè yān à?

C: Ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng Saam-Faān-Shĭ yān.

P: Neĭ shik pin chúng wâ* à? Neĭ ooĭ kóng Chung-Kwòk wâ* mà? Shik t'eng Kwóng-Tung wâ* mà?

C: Ngŏh m̄-shik Kwóng-Tung wâ*. Ngŏh chí shik Ying-Kwòk wâ*, Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*, Faàt-Kwòk wâ*, Tak-Kwòk wâ*, Ngōh-Kwòk wâ*, Yât-Poón wâ*, shóh-ĭ, ngŏh seúng hôk Chung-Kwòk wâ*, hôk kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ*, hôk t'aí Chung-Mān shue, hôk sé Chung-Mān tsẑ.

P: Neĭ T'aaì-T'aaì* ne? K'uĭ haî pin shuè yān à? K'uĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ Chung-Mān à?

C: K'uĭ haî Meĭ-Kwòk Chung-Kwòk yān. K'uĭ m̄-chí shik Ying-Mān, Meĭ-Mān, Faàt-Mān, Tak-Mān, Ngōh-Mān, Yât-Mān, ĭ-ch'é ooĭ t'eng, ooĭ kóng, ooĭ tûk, ooĭ sé, ooĭ faan-yîk Chung-Mān t'im pòh; shóh-ĭ, ngŏh iù hôk Chung-Mān.

P: M̄-kwaaì-tak la!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

Capt. White: M/Sgt. Cheung, where are you from?

M/Sgt Cheung: Capt, I'm an American. I'm from California.

W: What part of California are you from?

C: I'm from San Francisco, California.

W: What language do you know? Do you speak Chinese? Do you understand Cantonese?

C: No, sir. I don't know Cantonese. I only know English, American, French, German, Russian, and Japanese. Therefore, I would like to learn Chinese, to learn to speak Cantonese, to read Chinese books, and to write Chinese characters.

W: How about your wife? Where is she from? Does she know Chinese?

C: She is a Chinese American. Not only does she know English, American, French, German, Russian, and Japanese, but she also understands, speaks, reads, writes and translates Chinese. Therefore, I have to learn Chinese.

W: No wonder!

白上尉：張上士，你係邊處人呀？
張上士：上尉，我係美國人，係美國加省人．
白：你係美國加省邊處人呀？
張：我係美國加省三藩市人．
白：你識邊種話呀？你會講中國話嗎？識聽廣東話嗎？
張：我唔識廣東話．我祇識英國話，美國話，法國話，德國話，俄國話，日本話，所以我想學中國話，學講廣東話，學睇中文書，學寫中文字．
白：你太太呢？佢係邊處人呀？佢會唔會中文呀？
張：佢係美國中國人．佢唔祇識英文，美文，法文，德文，俄文，日文，而且會聽，會講，會讀，會寫，會繙譯中文添嘞，所以我要學中文．
白：唔怪得啦！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

READING MATERIAL

張上士係美國加省三藩市人．佢識英國話，法國話，德國話，俄國話，日本話，但係唔識廣東話，所以佢想學中國話，學講廣東話，學睇中文書，學寫中文字．

張上士有太太．張太太係美國中國人．佢唔祇識英文，美文，法文，德文，俄文，日文；而且會聽中文，會講中文，會讀中文書，會寫中文字，會繙譯中文，所以佢唔使學中文，但係張上士要學中文．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

QUESTIONS

1. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ haî pin shuè yān à?
2. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ shik m̄-shik kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* à?
3. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ shik m̄-shik sé Chung-Mān tsẑ à?
4. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ m̄-shik Chung-Kwòk wâ*, shik m̄-shik Yât-Poón wâ* à?
5. K'uĭ shik Yât-Poón wâ*, yaû shik pin chúng wâ* à?
6. K'uĭ m̄-shik Kwóng-Tung wâ*, k'uĭ seúng m̄-seúng hôk kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* à?
7. K'uĭ seúng m̄-seúng hôk sé Chung-Mān tsẑ à?
8. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ yaŭ mŏ t'aaì-t'aaì* à?
9. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* haî pin shuè yān à?
10. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* shik m̄-shik Ying-Mān à?
11. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* m̄-chí shik Ying-Mān, yaû shik mi-yĕ mān à?
12. K'uĭ ooĭ kóng Chung-Mān, ooĭ t'eng Chung-Mān; k'uĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ tûk Chung-Mān shue, ooĭ m̄-ooĭ sé Chung-Mān tsẑ à?
13. K'uĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ faan-yîk Chung-Mān à?
14. Kóm, k'uĭ shaí m̄-shaí hôk Chung-Mān à?
15. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* m̄-shaí hôk Chung-Mān, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ne?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pin shuè what place? where?

yān person, human being, people, man; AN: kòh; yān is a general word meaning 'man, woman, person, human-being; yān by itself is to be translated 'a man'.

Meǐ-Kwòk America (the United States), full name: Meǐ-Leî-Kin '(A) merica; Meǐ-Leî-Kin Hôp-Chùng-Kwòk 'The United States of America'

Ka-Shaáng California, State of California

Saam-Faān-Shǐ San Francisco

shik to know how, be able to, know, recognize, acquaint with

pin chúng pin 'which?'; chúng'kind, sort, species; pin chúng' what kind? what?'

ooǐ to know how to; can; be possible; will; would

kóng to speak, talk, say, tell, explain

Chung-Kwòk Wâ* Chung-Kwòk 'China, Chinese'; wâ* 'spoken language'; Chung-Kwòk wâ* 'Chinese language (spoken), 'spoken Chinese'

Chung-Mān Chung'abbreviation of China, Chinese, center, central'; mān 'spoken or written language'; Chung-Mān 'spoken or written Chinese language'

t'eng to listen, listen to, understand (language)

Kwóng-Tung Wâ* Kwóng-Tung 'Kwangtung, Kwangtung Province'; Kwóng-Tung Wâ* 'Cantonese language (spoken), spoken Cantonese'

Meǐ-Kwòk Wâ* Meǐ 'abbreviation of America, beautiful, pretty, handsome'; kwòk 'country, nation, national'; Meǐ-Kwòk 'United States, America, USA'; Meǐ-Kwòk Wâ* 'American language (spoken), American English (spoken)'

Meǐ-Mān American English (spoken or written)

Ying-Kwòk Wâ* Ying 'abbreviation of England, English, Great Britain'; Ying-Kwòk 'England, Great Britain'; Ying-Kwòk Wâ* 'English language (spoken), spoken English'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

Ying-Mān English language (spoken or written)

Faàt-Kwòk Wâ* Faàt 'abbreviation of France, French'; Faàt-Kwòk 'France, French'; Faàt-Kwòk Wâ* 'French language (spoken)'

Faàt-Mān 'French language (spoken or written)'

Tak-Kwòk Wâ* Tak 'abbreviation of Germany, German'; Tak-Kwòk 'Germany, German'; Tak-Kwòk Wâ* 'German-Language (spoken)'

Tak-Mān German language (spoken or written)

Ngōh-Kwòk Wâ* Ngōh 'abbreviation of Russia, Russian'; Ngōh-Kwòk 'Russia, Russian'; Ngōh-Kwòk Wâ* 'Russian language (spoken)'

Ngōh-Mān Russian language (spoken or written)

Yât-Poón Wâ* Yât 'abbreviation of Japan, Japanese, sun, day, date'; Yât-Poón 'Japan, Japanese'; Yât-Poón Wâ* 'Japanese language (spoken)'

Yât-Mān Japanese language (spoken or written)

shóh-ǐ therefore, so; that's why...

seúng to want, wish, desire, intend, prepare to, think, consider, call to mind, have in mind

hôk to learn, study, imitate, follow

t'aí to read, look at, see, observe

sé to write, calligraph, depict, describe, make a sketch

tsž Chinese character, word, writing

t'aaì-t'aaì* Mrs., wife, madame!

tûk to read (aloud), take (a course), study

faan-yîk to translate (written or oral)

iù to have to, want, require; must, should, ought to

m̀-kwaaì-tak! no wonder!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Mă-Leî, neĭ haí pin shuè à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: À-Chim, ngŏh haí ni shuè. Neĭ fòng hôk lā?

S: Haî à. Neĭ haí pin shuè à?

T: Ngŏh haí ch'uē-fōng* shuè.

S: Neĭ haí kóh shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?

T: Ngŏh haí ch'uē-fōng* shuè chué faân. Neĭ laî ngŏh ni shuè la.

S: Ti saì-man-tsaí haí pin shuè à? Huì pin shuè à?

T: À-tsaí haí shue-fōng* shuè tûk shue. À-nuĭ* haí fan-fōng* shuè fàn kaaù.

S: Ngŏh huì shue-fōng* t'ūng fàn-fōng* t'aí-hă k'uĭ-teî la. Ŏh, uēn-loî À-tsaí haí haàk-t'eng t'aí shue. À-nuĭ* haí saí-shan-fōng* shuè.

T: Neĭ haí hôk-haaû tsô mi-yĕ à?

S: Ngŏh-teî hôk kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ; hôk t'aí Chung-Mān shue, hôk sé Chung-Mān tsẑ, hôk faan-yîk Ying-Mān t'ūng Chung-Mān.

T: Neĭ huì shue-fōng* wan-tsaâp-hă kung-fòh, în-haû laî faân-t'eng shîk faân la.

M/Sgt Cheung: Mary, where are you?

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, I'm here. Are you home from school?

Sgt: Yes. Where are you?

Mrs: I'm here in the kitchen.

Sgt: What are you doing there?

Mrs: I'm cooking. Come here.

Sgt: Where are the children? Where did they go?

Mrs: Junior is studying in the study, and our daughter is sleeping in the bedroom.

Sgt: Let me go to the study and bedroom and take a look at them. Ah! In fact Junior is reading in the living room and the girl is in the bathroom.

Mrs: What have you been doing in school?

Sgt: We learn to speak Cantonese, to read Chinese books, to write Chinese characters, and to translate English and Chinese.

Mrs: You go and do the homework in the study. Then come to have dinner in the dining room.

張上士：瑪利，你喺邊處呀？
張太太*：亞占，我喺呢處，你放學啦？
張上士：係呀．你喺邊處呀？
張太太*：我喺廚房*處．
張上士：你喺咪處做乜野呀？
張太太*：我喺廚房*處煮飯．你黎我呢處啦．
張上士：啲細仔喺邊處呀，去邊處呀？
張太太*：亞仔喺書房*處讀書；亞女*喺瞓房*處瞓覺．
張上士：我去書房*同瞓房*睇吓佢地啦．啊，原來亞仔喺客廳睇書．亞女*喺洗身房*處．
張太太*：你喺學校做乜野呀？
張上士：我地學講廣東話*，學睇中文書，學寫中文字，學繙譯英文同中文．
張太太*：你去書房*溫習吓功課，然後黎飯廳食飯啦．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

READING MATERIAL

張上士係亞占．佢喺學校處讀書．佢學講廣東話，學睇中文書，學寫中文字，學繙譯英文同中文．

佢放學．佢去書房同瞓房處．佢去嗰處想睇吓啲細仗仔．佢喺書房處温習吓啲功課，然後去飯廳處食飯．

張太太係瑪利．佢喺厨房處煮飯．

亞仔喺客廳處，佢喺嗰處睇吓書．佢唔喺書房處讀書．

亞女喺洗身房處．佢唔喺瞓房處瞓覺．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

QUESTIONS

1. Â-Chim haî mi-yĕ à?
2. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ haí hôk-haaû shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?
3. K'uĭ hôk mi-yĕ wâ* à?
4. K'uĭ hôk kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ*, yaû hôk mi-yĕ à?
5. K'uĭ huì shue-fōng* t'ūng fàn-fōng* shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?
6. K'uĭ haí pin-shuè wan-tsaâp kung-fòh à?
7. K'uĭ haí shue-fōng* shuè wan-tsaâp kung-fòh, ĭn-chi-haû huì pin shuè à?
8. Mă-Leî haî pin-kòh à?
9. Mă-Leî haí ch'uē-fōng* shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?
10. Â-tsaí haí pin shuè à?
11. Â-tsaí haí m̄-haí shue-fōng* shuè à?
12. K'uĭ m̄-haí shue-fōng* shuè; k'uĭ haí pin shuè à?
13. K'uĭ haí kóh shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?
14. Â-nuĭ* haí m̄-haí fàn-fōng* shuè à?
15. Â-nuĭ* m̄-haí fàn-fōng* shuè, k'uĭ haí pin shuè à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Mă-Leî Mary

haî to be at, to be in; at, in, on; from, by way of

pin shuè pin? 'which? what?' shuè "suffix for 'place, locality'"; pin shuè? 'what place? which place? where?' haî pin shuè'? 'to be where?'

À-Chim Jim, Jimmy, James

ni shuè ni 'this, these'; shuè "suffix for 'place, locality'"; ni shuè 'this place, here'

fòng hôk School dismissed, school is out

lā! particle expressing a slight surprise, doubt, questioning or disagreement and demand answer

ch'uē-fōng*, a.f. ch'uî-fōng* kitchen,

shuè suffix for 'place, locality'

kóh shuè kóh 'that, those', shuè 'place, locality'; kóh shuè' 'that place, there'

tsô mi-yĕ? tsô 'to do, make, manufacture, be, act as, for, into'; mi-yĕ? 'what? which?' tsô mi-yĕ? 'to do what? what for?'

chué faân chué 'to cook, boil'; faân 'meal, cooked rice'; chué faân 'to cook, cook a meal, cook rice'

laî to come; laî is also used as a compliment denoting direction toward the speaker, 'hither, here'; to, in order to; particle expressing mild surprise

ti 'the' used in place of any and all auxiliary nouns with indefinite plurals; some, a little; sign of comparative degree, more,...er

saì-man-tsaî child, children

huì to go, be any, be off; to; huì is also used as a compliment denoting direction away from the speaker

À tsaî! À 'prefix for familiar way of calling a person; tsaî 'son'; À tsaî! 'son! my son! my boy! 'Junior! Sonny!'

shue-fōng*, a.f. shue-fōng shue 'book'; fōng* 'room'; shue-fōng* 'studying-room, study'

tûk shue tûk 'to study, learn'; tûk shue 'to study'

À nuĭ*! À 'prefix for familiar way of calling a person'; nuĭ* 'daughter'; À nuĭ* ! 'my daughter!'

fàn-fōng* fàn 'to sleep, lie down'; fàn-fōng* 'bedroom'

fàn kaaù to sleep, lie down

hă AN for verbs, 'a stroke, a beat'; hă after a verb has the force of 'just', 'a little', like German: mal. It can also be translated by such forms as 'take a look', 'make an attempt', 'put in a word', etc., since it is an abbreviation of yat-hă ' a stroke'

uēn-loî in fact, as a matter of fact; originally, fundamentally

haàk-t'eng haàk 'guest'; haàk-t'eng 'living-room'

saî-shan-fōng*, a.f. saî-shan-fōng saî 'to wash, clean'; shan 'body'; saî shan 'to take a bath'; saî-shan-fōng* 'bathroom'

hôk-haaû school, institute, academy

wan-tsaâp wan 'to review, lukewarm'; tsaâp 'to practice, exercise'; wan-tsaâp 'to review (lessons)'

kung-fòh lessons, school work

în-haû afterwards, later, then, by and by; a.f.: în-chi-haû

faân-t'eng faân 'cooked rice, meal'; faân t'eng 'dining room'

shîk faân shîk 'to eat'; shîk faân 'to eat a meal, eat food, eat, eat rice'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: À-Chim, À-Chim! Ngŏh po-kwán t'ong, chué-shûk faân, ch'aaú-uēn ts'oì, chíng-hó shùng là. Faaì ti ch'ut laî faân-t'eng shîk faân la! À-nuĭ*, à-nuĭ*! Neĭ faaì ti huì kiù pā-pa t'ūng kŏh-koh laî shîk faân là!

À-Tsaî: Mā-ma, tsô mi-yĕ à? Neĭ kiù mooî-mooî* kiù ngŏh tsô mi-yĕ à?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Ngŏh kiù neĭ yâp huì shue-fōng* shuè kiù pā-pa ch'ut laî shîk faân à.

À-Tsaî: À-ma, pā-pa fàn-cheûk kaaù pòh, ngŏh m-seúng kiù séng k'uĭ?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: M-kán-iù. Pā-pa ying-koi shîk faân, wan-tsaâp kung-fòh sin, în-chi-haû chì hóh-ĭ fàn kaaù.

À-Tsaî: À-pa, heî shan là! shîk faân là!

Cheung Sheûng-Sz: M! Ōh! tak là! Neĭ yâp laî la. Ngŏh heî shan là. Ngŏh huì saî-shan-fōng* shuè sin, în-haû chì ch'ut huì faân-t'eng shîk faân.

À-Tsaî: Mā-ma, à-mooî* ne? K'uĭ haî pin shuè à?

T'aai-T'aai*: À-tsaî, à-mooî*haî ni shuè là. Neĭ m-shaî kiù k'uĭ là!

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, I have already prepared the soup, the rice, the vegetable, and the food. Hurry up and come to the dining room to have supper!

Daughter, hurry up and call your father and brother to come for supper!

Junior: Mother, what happened? You asked sister to call me? What happened?

Mrs: I want you to go to the study and call your father to come to have supper.

Junior: Mother, Father is asleep. I don't want to wake him up.

Mrs: Why don't you? Your father should have his supper and do his homework before he goes to bed.

Junior: Father, wake up! Dinner is ready!

M/Sgt Cheung: All right! You may come in. I am getting up. Let me go to the bathroom first before I come to the dining room to eat.

Junior: Mother, where is sister? Where is she?

Mrs: She is here, son. You don't have to look for her.

張太太：亞占，亞占！我煲滾湯，煮熟飯，炒完菜，整好餸啦．快啲出黎飯廳食飯啦！

亞女，亞女！你快啲去叫爸爸同哥哥黎食飯啦！

亞仔：媽媽，做乜野呀？你叫妹妹叫我做乜野呀？

張太太：我叫你入去書房處叫爸爸出黎食飯呀．

亞仔：亞媽，爸爸瞓着覺嘯，我唔想叫醒佢？

張太太：唔緊要．爸爸應該食飯，溫習功課先，然之後至可以瞓覺．

亞仔：亞爸，起身啦！食飯啦！

張上士：唔！啊！得啦！你入黎啦．我起身啦．我去洗身房處先，然後至出去飯廳食飯．

亞仔：媽媽，亞妹呢？佢喺邊處呀？

張太太：亞仔，亞妹喺呢處啦．你唔使叫佢啦．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

READING MATERIAL

張太太喺厨房處煮飯．張上士喺書房處瞓覺．張太太煮熟飯，煲滾湯，炒完菜，整好餸．

張上士同亞仔唔喺厨房處．張太太想佢地出黎飯廳食飯．張太太叫亞女快啲去叫張上士同亞仔出黎．亞女係妹妹，亞仔係哥哥．亞女先去叫佢亞哥．佢叫佢亞哥去叫爸爸出黎食飯．

亞仔入去書房處叫爸爸．佢爸爸喺嗰處瞓着覺；佢唔想叫醒爸爸，但係佢媽媽話，亞爸應該食飯先，食完飯至温習功課；温習完功課，然之後至可以去瞓覺，所以亞仔要叫醒佢爸爸食飯至得．

張上士起身．佢叫亞仔入黎書房處．佢話，佢要先去洗身房處；去完洗身房，然後至可以出去飯廳食飯．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

QUESTIONS

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* haî ch'uē-fōng* tsô mi-yĕ à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ haî pin shuè fàn kaaû à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* chué shûk faân, po-kwán t'ong, ch'aaú-uēn ts'oì, chíng-hó shùng; haî m̄-haî à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*, chué-shûk faân. K'uĭ seúng k'uĭ-teî haî pin shuè shîk faân à?

K'uĭ kiù pin-kòh huì kiù pin-kòh chhut laî shîk faân à?

À-nuĭ* haî mooî-mooî* m̄-haî à? À-tsaî haî m̄-haî kōh-koh à?

À-nuĭ* sin huì kiù pin-kòh à?

À-nuĭ* kiù k'uĭ à-koh kiù pin-kòh ch'ut laî shîk faân à?

À-tsaî yâp huì pin shuè kiù pā-pa à?

K'uĭ pā-pa haî shue-fōng* shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?

À-tsaî seúng m̄-seúng kiù séng k'uĭ pā-pa à?

À-tsaî m̄-seúng kiù séng k'uĭ pā-pa. K'uĭ mā-ma wâ mi-yĕ à?

Wan-tsaâp-uēn kung-fòh, în-chi-haû hóh-ĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ heî shan. K'uĭ wâ, k'uĭ iû sin huì pin shuè à?

K'uĭ iû huì-uēn pin shuè, în-chi-haû chì hóh-ĭ ch'ut huì faân-t'eng shîk faân à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

po-kwán t'ong po 'to heat, boil, make, cook, steam, prepare'; kwán 'to boil, boiled, boiling'; t'ong 'soup'; po t'ong 'to make soup, to prepare soup'; po faân 'to cook rice, to steam rice'; po-kwán t'ong 'to have the soup prepared, heated, or made'

chué-shûk faân chué 'to heat, boil, make, cook, steam, prepare '; shûk 'cooked, well done, prepared, ripe, familiar'; chué -shûk 'to cook and have it well cooked, well done, well prepared', but it doesn't apply to liquid food, we can never say chué-shûk t'ong; chué-shûk faân 'to have the rice well cooked'

ch'aaú-uēn ts'oì ch'aaú 'to fry quickly and with little oil, scramble, roast, grill'; but it does not apply to a big piece of meat or fish, so we can not say ch'aaú steak, ch'aaú fish, etc. Uēn by itself means 'to finish, be through, be over;' when attached after a verb it means the completion of the action concerned, so it is a perfective verb. In this case, ch'aaú-uēn means the frying is finished. Ts'oì 'vegetable, food, dish of food, variety of food'. Ch'aaú-uēn ts'oì 'finish in preparing the vegetable'.

chíng-hó shùng chíng 'to prepare, make, set in order, put right, repair, adjust'. Hó by itself means 'good, okay, all right, very'. Same as uēn, when attached after a verb, it implies the completion of the action concerned. In this case, chíng-hó implies 'the completion of the preparation'. Shùng 'cooked or uncooked food, dish of food'. Chíng-hó shùng 'finished in preparing the food'.

faaì ti faaì 'quick, fast, rapid, swift, soon, to hurry;' ti 'more,...er'; faaì ti 'faster, be in a hurry, to speed up'

ch'ut laī ch'ut by itself means 'out', it may mean 'to go out' or 'to come out'; whether it means 'to go out' or'come out' depends on the directional verb immediately following laī 'to come, to, in order to'.

ch'ut laī 'to come out'.

kiù to call, to be called,to summon, to mean (by), is meant (by), to order (in a restaurant, etc), tell (to do something), make, cause to

pā-pa pa a familiar way of calling 'father'; sometimes we add the prefix A, as A-pa which also means'father' or 'daddy'. Sometimes we duplicate the pa forming pā-pa, in which the first pa should be pronounced as pā instead of pa .

kōh-koh koh 'elder brother'. Same as pā-pa, we can either add the prefix Â forming Â-koh or duplicate the koh forming kōh-koh in which the first koh should be pronounced as kōh instead of koh.

mā-ma ma 'mother'; mā-ma 'mother, mom'; Â-ma 'mother, mom'

mọoî-mooî* mooî*'younger sister'; mooî-mooî* 'younger sister'; Â-mooi* 'younger sister'

yâp huì yâp by itself means 'in' which may mean 'to go in' or 'to come in'; whether it means 'to go in' or 'come in' depends on the directional verb immediately following huì 'to go, to, in order to'; yâp huì 'to go in'; yâp laî 'to come in'; ch'ut huì 'to go out'; ch'ut laî 'to come out'.

fàn-cheûk kaaù fàn synonym of fàn-kaaù meaning 'to sleep, to lie down, to have a rest on the bed'. Cheûk, an auxiliary verb implying a completed action, 'right, to order, call, sign of imperative'. Fàn-cheûk 'to fall asleep'. Fàn-cheûk kaaù is the synonym of fàn-cheûk meaning 'to fall asleep'; note that the cheûk has to be placed in between the fàn and kaaù, thus, fàn-cheûk kaaù.

kiù séng kiù 'to call, name, yell, call aloud'; séng 'to wake up, become sober, to be aroused, to startle, to recover from a coma'. Kiù séng 'to wake up'; generally, it takes object which has to be placed after the seng instead of kiù, thus, kiù séng k'uĭ, never kiù k'uĭ séng.

m̀-kán-iù never mind, that's all right, doesn't matter, not important, not serious

ying-koi 'ought to, should'. In literary and newspaper Chinese, the abbreviation of ying-koi is ying or koi. The negative form of ying-koi is m̀-ying-koi, from which the expression m̀-koi was derived which means 'to thank' or 'ought not' literally.

sin prior to, first, foremost, ahead, previous, before, former, deceased (literary)

chì not until, until, till, then, only then, for the first time, begin to, German: erst. It is used to precede an adjectival verb forming the superlative degree, thus, chì faaì means 'fastest, the fastest'.

hǒh-ǐ may, can, able, an expression of assent--very well, that will do, etc.

heí shan hei 'to rise'; shan 'body'; heí shan 'to get up'. Heí shan is a verb-object construction. If we want to include tense in heí shan, the auxiliary verb has to be placed immediately after the heí.

tak okay! all right! can do, will do, can, able, descriptive compliments, to get.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aai-T'aai*: À-nuí*, neí pong mā-ma la. Tak mà?

À-Nuí*: Ōh, mā-ma, neí seúng ngŏh t'ūng neí tsô mi-yĕ ne?

T'aai-T'aai*: Neí t'ūng mā-ma paai t'oi*, i í la.

À-Nuí*: Neí seúng yûng pin ti t'oi*pò, ts'aan-kan, yûng pin ti oón, tîp* à?

T'aai-T'aai*: Kóh cheung t'oi*-pò t'ūng ts'aan-kan tak là. Neí ning ti to, ch'a, oón, tîp*, ch'i-kang, faai-tsź, pooi, tîp*, poh-lei pooi huì t'oi* shuè la.

À-Nuí*: Ngŏh iù kōh-koh pong ngŏh chì tak pòh.

T'aai-T'aai*: Kóm, neí kiù kōh-koh la. Neí t'ūng kōh-koh t'ūng mā-ma paai t'oi* la.

À-Nui*: Kōh-koh, laí ni shuè à! Mā-ma iù ngŏh-teî pong k'uí à. Ngŏh-teî iù paai t'oi* shîk faân à.

À-Tsaí: À-mooî*, táng ngŏh ning to, ch'a, oón, tîp*, ch'i-kang, faai-tsź. Neí cha pooi, tîp*, poh-lei pooi la.

T'aai-T'aai*: Siú-sam à!

À-Tsaí: Tak là. M̄-shaí taam-sam, mā-ma. Ngŏh-teî paai-uēn t'oi* là.

T'aai-T'aai*: Kóm ngŏh hoi faân là.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

Mrs. Cheung: Will you give mother a hand?

Daughter: Yes, mother. What do you want me to do?

Mrs: You may help mother set the table and move the chairs.

Daughter: Which tablecloth, napkins, bowls and plates do you wish to use?

Mrs: That tablecloth and those napkins will do. You take these knives, forks, bowls, plates, spoons, chopsticks, cups, saucers, and glasses to the table.

Daughter: I have to have help from brother.

Mrs: Well, you go to get him, and you two will set the table for mother.

Daughter: Brother, come here! Mother needs our help. We have to set the table for supper.

Junior: Sister, let me bring in the knives, forks, bowls, plates, spoons and chopsticks. You hold the cups, saucers, and glasses.

Mrs: Be careful!

Junior: Oh, we will, Mother. Don't worry.

Daughter: We have finished setting the table.

Mrs: I'll serve the food.

張太太：亞女，你幫媽媽啦．得嗎？
亞女：啊，媽媽，你想我同你做乜野呢？
張太太：你同媽媽擺枱，移椅啦．
亞女：你想用邊啲枱布，餐巾，用邊啲碗，碟呀？
張太太：嗰張枱布同餐巾得啦．你揀啲刀，叉，碗，碟，匙羹，筷子，杯，碟，玻璃杯去枱處啦．
亞女：我要哥哥幫我至得嚟．
張太太：敢，你叫哥哥啦．你同哥哥同媽媽擺枱啦．
亞女：哥哥，黎呢處呀！媽媽要我地幫佢呀．我地要擺枱食飯呀．
亞仔：亞妹，等我揀刀，叉，碗，碟，匙羹，筷子．你揸杯，碟，玻璃杯啦．
張太太：小心呀！
亞仔：得啦．唔使担心，媽媽．我地擺完枱啦．
張太太：敢我開飯啦．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

READING MATERIAL

張太太*喺厨房*處煮飯，整餸，煲湯．佢煮好飯，整完餸，煲滾湯．但係佢地要擺好枱*先，然之後至可以食飯．

張太太*叫亞女*幫佢擺枱*移椅，同揀啲刀，叉，碗，碟*，匙羹，筷子，杯碟，玻璃杯去嗰張枱*處．嗰張枱*有枱*布同餐巾．

亞女*要亞仔幫佢．亞女*要亞仔幫佢擺枱*．亞仔揀刀，叉，碗，碟，匙羹，筷子．亞女*搽杯碟*，同玻璃杯．

張太太*担心佢地唔小心，所以叫佢地小心啲．亞仔叫媽媽唔使担心．

亞仔同亞女*擺完枱*．張太太*開飯．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

QUESTIONS

Cheung T'aai-T'aai* hai ch'uē-fōng* tsô mi-yĕ à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai* chué-hó faân. Taân-hai k'uĭ-teî iù tsô mi-yĕ sin, în-chi-haû chì hóh-ĭ shîk faân à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai* kiù à-nuĭ* pong k'uĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

Kóh cheung t'oî* yaŭ mŏ t'oî*-pò t'ūng ts'aan-kan à?

À-nuĭ* iù m-iù à-tsai pong k'uĭ tsô yĕ à?

À-nuĭ* iù à-tsai pong k'uĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

À-tsai ning mi-yĕ à?

À-nuĭ* cha mi-yĕ à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai* taam m-taam-sam k'uĭ-teî à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai* kiù k'uĭ-teî siú-sam ti. À-tsai wâ mi-yĕ à?

À-tsai t'ūng À-nuĭ* paai-uēn t'oî*. Cheung T'aai-T'aai* tsô mi-yĕ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pong to help, assist, aid, defend, for, a group

paaî t'oî* paaî 'to set in order, place, spread, display, wave to and fro, shake, move'; t'oî* 'table, desk'; AN: cheung'; paaî t'oî* 'to set a table'

î í ī 'to shift, move across, pull, transform, transmit'; í 'chair, couch, seat'; ī í 'to move chair, to put chair in proper order, to pull chair out from a table'; ī t'oî* 'to move table, to move table in proper order'

yûng to use, utilize, with, by means of; yûng ch'uè 'usefulness, use, function'

t'oî* pò t'oî* 'table, desk'; pò 'cloth, cotton cloth, linen, shirting'; t'oî* pò 'tablecloth'; AN: cheung

ts'aan kan ts'aan 'meal', it can be Chung-Kwòk ts'aan, Yât-Poón ts'aan, Meî-Kwòk ts'aan, etc, or tsó-tsaan, 'breakfast', ng̀-ts'aan 'lunch', maăn-ts'aan 'supper'; kan 'napkin, towel, etc'; ts'aan kan 'napkin'; shaú kan 'hand towel; shaú-kan-tsaî 'handkerchief'; the AN of kan is t'iū

ning 'to take with hand, to hold with hand, to carry with hand'; only applicable to inanimate things, never say ning yān but ning yĕ

to 'knife'; it can be all kinds of knives depending on the qualifier that precedes the to.

ch'a 'fork'; can also be used as verb, such as ch'a kóh ti shùng meaning 'to pick up the food with fork'

oón 'bowl'; it may be 'rice bowl, soup bowl, etc' depending on the qualifier that precedes the oón, such as: faân oón 'rice bowl', t'ong oón 'soup bowl'; as a general practice, oón means 'rice bowl'. AN: chèk, kòh

tîp, tîp* 'plate, small dish, saucer'; it may be shùng tîp* 'food plate' or ch'ā-pooi tîp* 'saucer'. AN: chèk and kòh

ch'î-kang 'spoon'; t'ong kang 'soup spoon'; ch'ā kang 'teaspoon'; AN: chi and chèk

faaì-tsź 'chopsticks'; AN: sheung or tuì 'pair' and chi for 'one' generally; cha faaì-tsź 'to hold chopsticks, to use chopsticks'

pooi 'cup, tumbler, glass'; AN:chèk, kòh; ch'ā pooi 'tea cup'

poh-lei pooi poh-lei 'glass, plastic'; pooi 'cup, tumbler, glass'; poh-lei pooi 'tumbler, glass'

...chì tak 'only then will it do, only that will it do, so that, only...will it do, it will be necessary that...'. Note the position of chì tak which is at the end of a phrase or sentence.

táng 'to let, wait'; táng ngŏh 'let me, wait for me'; táng -hă 'to wait a minute'

cha 'to hold by hand, to carry by hand'

siú-sam 'careful, cautious'; siú-sam! 'watch out!' 'look out!'

taam-sam to worry, be anxious, alarmed

hoi faân hoi 'to open, operate, start'; hoi faân 'to start serving meal, dinner is served'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Mă-Leî, ngŏh-teî kam-maăn shîk mi-yĕ à? Shîk T'ōng-ts'aan à, yik-waâk shîk Sai-ts'aan ne?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: Ngŏh-teî ts'ām-yât shîk Sai-ts'aan, kam-maăn shîk T'ōng-ts'aan.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Shîk mi-yĕ T'ōng-ts'aan à? Uêt ts'oì á, Oô ts'oì a, Ch'uen ts'oì a, yik-waâk King ts'oì à?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Tong-în* haî Uêt ts'oì la. Chûng shaí kóng kè*.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Yaŭ mi-yĕ shîk à?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Ts'oì t'ong, ngaū-yûk, chue-yûk, kai, ts'oì.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh yaû t'ŏ-ngôh, yaû kéng-hòt.

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Kóm, ngŏh-teî shîk faân là.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ti faân chué-tak yaû heung yaû hó-shîk. Ti t'ong po-tak yaû t'îm yaû hó-yám. Ti shùng chîng-tak yaû hó meî yaû hó shaú-shaì. Mă-Leî, neĭ chan haî shá-tak là.

À-Tsaî: Haî à. Pā-pa kóng-tak ngaam là. Ngŏh-teî tak kòm hó kè mā-ma, yaŭ kòm hó kè shùng. Ngŏh-teî shîk-paaú ti chì tak à.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

M/Sgt Cheung: Mary, what are we going to have for supper tonight, Chinese food or American food?

Mrs. Cheung: We had American food yesterday. We'll have Chinese food tonight.

M/Sgt: What kind of Chinese food are we going to have, Cantonese, Shanghaiese, Szechuenese, or Pekingese?

Mrs: Cantonese food, of course. Why do you have to ask?

M/Sgt: What do we have?

Mrs: We have vegetable soup, beef, pork, chicken, and vegetable.

M/Sgt: I'm hungry and thirsty.

Mrs: If that's the case, we had better eat.

M/Sgt: Say! The rice is excellent. The soup is superb. The food is delicious and well-prepared. Mary, you are marvelous; you know all the knacks.

Junior: Father is absolutely right. We have a wonderful mother. The food is superb. Let's eat plenty.

張上士：瑪利，我地今晚食乜野呀？食唐餐呀，食西餐呢？

張太太：利呀，抑或食西餐．今晚食唐餐．

上士：我地尋日唐餐抑或食粵菜呀？滬菜呀，川菜呀？

太太：食乜野呀，粵菜啦．重使講嘅．

上士：當然係粵菜呀！

太太：有菜，牛肉，豬肉，雞，菜．

上士：我又肚餓又口渴．

太太：敢我地食飯啦．

上士：啲飯煮得又香又好食．啲湯煲得又甜又好飲．啲餸整得又好味又好手勢．瑪利，你真係要得啦．

亞仔：係呀．爸爸講得啱啦．我地得咁好嘅餸．我地食飽啲嘅至得呀．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

READING MATERIAL

張太太煮好飯，整完餸．亞仔，亞女擺好枱．張太太開飯．

佢地尋日食西餐．今晚食唐餐．唐菜有啲係粵菜，滬菜，川菜，同京菜……佢地今晚食嘅係也野菜呢？重使講嘅，當然係粵菜啦嗎！佢地今晚食嘅粵菜有菜湯，牛肉，豬肉，鷄，菜……

張上士又肚餓又頸渴．佢地想快啲食．張太太叫佢地黎食飯啦！

張太太唔祇係一位好太太，好嘅媽媽，而且又係一位好會煮飯同整餸嘅女人添嘞！今晚啲飯煮得又香又好食．啲湯煲得又甜又好飲．啲餸整得又好味又好手勢．佢真係要得啦！

張上士有咁好嘅太太．亞仔同亞女有咁好嘅媽媽，今晚又有咁好嘅餸．唔怪得佢地都咁想食張太太整嘅餸，食得咁飽啦．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

QUESTIONS

K'uĭ-teî ts'ām-yât shîk mi-yĕ ts'aan* à?

K'uĭ-teî ts'ām-yât shîk Sai ts'aan. Kam-yât shîk mi-yĕ à?

T'ōng-ts'oì yaŭ pin ti à?

K'uĭ-teî kam-maăn shîk kè haî Uêt ts'oì, yik-waâk haî Oô ts'oì, Ch'uen ts'oì, King ts'oì à?

Kóm, k'uĭ-teî kam-maăn shîk ti mi-yĕ shùng à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'ŏ-ngôh mà, kéng-hòt mà?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* haî m̄-haî yat-waî* hó t'aaì-t'aaì*, t'ūng hó kè mā-ma à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* chĭng sùng chĭng-tak hó m̄-hó à?

Kam-maăn ti t'ong po-tak t'îm m̄-t'îm à, hó m̄-hó-yám à?

Ti shùng ne?

Kam-maăn ti shùng chĭng-tak kòm hó meî, kòm hó shaú-shaì; kóm, k'uĭ-teî to hó seúng shîk, shîk-tak hó paaú kà la?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kam-maăn kam 'time when (TW), now, nowadays (lit.)'; maăn 'time when and how long, night, evening, late (lit)'; kam-maăn 'tonight, this night, this evening'

T'ŏng-ts'aan T'ŏng 'Chinese in general, T'ang Dynasty (618-906)'; T'ŏng-ts'aan 'Chinese food, Chinese meal, Chinese cooking'

yik-waâk yik 'disjunctive question, or question requesting a choice of alternatives, or (lit), to suppress (lit)'; waâk AF: waâk-ché, yik-waâk 'disjunctive question'; but in direct statement, 'or' will always be translated by waâk or waâk-ché ; yik-waâk 'disjunctive question'

Sai-ts'aan sai 'west, western, occidental, foreign'; Sai-ts'aan 'western food, occidental food, American food'

ts'ām-yât ts'ām 'to search, find, look for'; yât 'day, date, day time, time, sun, sunshine'; ts'ām-yât 'yesterday'; ts'ām-maăn 'last night, last evening'; kam-yât 'today, this day'; AF of ts'ām-yât: tsôk-yât, k'ām-yât; AF of ts'ām-maăn: tsôk-maăn, k'ām-maăn

Uêt ts'oì Uêt alternate and briefer form of Kwóng-Tung (Canton); ts'oì 'cooked food, dish of food, vegetable'; Uêt ts'oì 'Cantonese food, food of Kwangtung Province'

Oô ts'oì Oô abbreviation of Sheûng-Hoí (Shanghai) ; Oô ts'oì 'Shanghaiese food'

Ch'uen ts'oì Ch'uen abbreviation of Sèi-Ch'uen (Szechuen Province), 'stream, creek, to station (lit)'; Ch'uen ts'oi 'Szechuenese food'

King ts'oì King abbreviations of Pak-King (Peking), Naam-King (Nanking), king-shìng (national capital, king-to (national capital) and kwòk-to (national capital)'; generally, it means 'Peking' or 'national capital'. King ts'oì 'Pekingese food'

tong-în, tong-în* tong abbreviation of ying-tong meaning 'ought to';'AF of ying-koi ;ying and koi means 'ought to' ; în 'however (lit), to agree (lit), yes (lit)'; tong-în 'of course, certainly, definitely, out of the question, undoubtedly'; if tong-în is used alone, it is usually followed by la, thus tong-în la! 'of course!'

chûng shaí kóng kè* chûng 'still, yet, moreover, again, else, too, and' ; it indicates that something has happened and may possibly happen again; shaí 'needs to use'; chûng shaí 'still need, still require'; kè 'subordinating or modifying particle', 'of', 's , 'that which'; chûng shaí kóng kè*! 'of course, no explanation is necessary', it implies 'it is definitely so, bound to be that way, doesn't have to say, it goes without saying, needless to say'

ngaū-yûk ngaū 'ox, cow, cattle, tough'; yûk 'meat, flesh'; ngaū-yûk 'beef'

chue-yûk chue 'pig, hog, fatty, stupid'; chue yûk 'pork'

kai 'chicken, hen, prostitute (vulgar)'

t'ŏ-ngôh t'ŏ 'stomach, abdomen'; ngôh 'hungry, hunger, gluttony'; t'ŏ-ngôh 'hungry, hunger'; paaú 'satiated, stomach is filled'; t'ŏ-paaú' 'satiated, stomach is filled, filled'

kéng-hòt kéng 'neck'; hòt 'thirsty, thirst, longing for, anxious'; kéng-hòt 'thirsty, thirst'

chué-tak yaû heung yaû hó-shîk heung 'adjectival verb (AV), delicious, fragrant, incense'; hó-shîk 'AV, delicious, tasty'; yaû...yaû... 'both...and...'; yaû heung yaû hó-shîk 'well-cooked and delicious'. The construction chué-tak yaû heung yaû hó-shîk can mean either 'cooked well and delicious' or 'can cook well and delicious'. In the first case, tak yaû heung yaû hó-shîk is a potential complement. In the second case, where tak yaû heung yaû hó-shîk describes the result of chué , the complement is a 'descriptive complement'. The negative and the (A-not -A) interrogative forms of potential and descriptive constructions are as follows:

Pos. Pot.: chué-tak hó 'can cook well'
Pos. Descr: chué-tak hó 'cooked well'
Neg. Pot: chué m̄-hó 'cannot cook well'
m̄-chué-tak hó 'cannot cook well'
Neg. Descr: chué-tak m̄-hó 'cooked badly'
Interr. Pot. chué m̄-chué-tak hó? 'can or cannot cook well?'
Interr. Descr. chué-tak hó m̄-hó? 'does or does not cook well?'

t'îm sweet, tasty, tastes good; ti t'ōng hó t'îm 'the soup is very tasty'; ti péng hó t'îm 'the cake is very sweet'

hó-yám yám 'to drink'; hó-yám 'good to drink, good'; t'ong hó-yám 'the soup is tasty'

hó-meî meî 'taste, variety of food, smell'; hó-meî 'good taste, tastes good, delicious'; ti shùng hó-meî 'the food is tasty'

shaú-shaì 'workmanship, skill, gesticulation'; hó shaú-shaì 'skillful'; generally, hó shaú-shaì pertains to cooking.

chan haî chan 'true, real, genuine, authentic, unfeigned'; chan haî 'really, is really, it is true'

shá-tak AR shaî tak 'did a good job, to know the job and do it well, to know how, it works'; neĭ chan haî shá-tak or neĭ chan haî shaî-tak 'you really did a good job', 'you really know how', 'you are smart', 'you are great'

ngaam 'right, correct, suitable, fit'; neĭ kóng-tak ngaam 'what you said is right'; ni kîn shaam hó ngaam ngŏh 'this coat fits me well'; ngaam-ngaam 'just, just as, just now'

kòm 'so, to such a degree' (as distinguished from kóm 'so, in such a manner')

kè When added after a noun or pronoun, it makes it the 'sign of possessive', such as, ngŏh ke 'my, mine', hôk-shaang kè.. 'student's...'; when added after a verb, it makes it the 'participle(generally, past)', such as, sé kè 'written', kóng kè 'spoken', chî tsô kè 'made of paper'; when added after an AV, it becomes the 'subordinating or modifying particle'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aai-T'aai*: Å-Chim, ti sai-man-tsaí ĭ-king fàn-yâp kaaù. Neĭ chûng meî tûk-uēn shue, chûng meî tsô-heí neĭ kè kung-fòh ã?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Meî à, Mă-Leî. Ngŏh chûng tsô-kán à. Ti shue yaû toh yaû naān. Ti kung-fòh yaû sham yaû m̄-yūng-î. Ngŏh uêt tûk uêt san-foó, uêt hôk uêt kaan-naān, to m̄-chi tîm-suèn-hó t'im.

T'aaî-T'aaî*: M̄-shaí paì-aì, m̄-hó taam-sam. K'aū-k'eî neĭ háng hôk, yat-tîng ooĭ shîng-kung kè .

Sheûng-Sẑ: Neĭ kóng-tak chan tuì là. Chung-Kwòk wâ* haî kòm kán-iù kè uĕ-în, yaū-k'eî-shî Kwóng-Tung wâ* t'im, kòm p'ó-p'în, kòm chûng-iù. Ngŏh î-ka yaŭ kòm hó kè kei-ooî laî hôk, ngŏh yat-tîng iù nŏ-lîk ti hôk. M̄-haî ã, tsaû tuì kwòk-ka tuì m̄-chuê, tuì yān tuì m̄-chuê, tuì tsẑ-keí yîk tuì m̄-chuê là.

T'aaì-T'aaì: Mŏ-ts'òh là. Uē-kwóh neĭ hôk-tó ni chúng wâ*, m̄-chí tuì kwòk-ka yaŭ kùng-hìn, î-ch'é tuì-ue tsẑ-keí yîk-to yaŭ yik kà.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, the children are already asleep. Have you finished your homework yet?

M/Sgt Cheung: Not yet, Mary. I'm still working on it. The lessons are lengthy and difficult. The more I study, the harder they are. I am all confused and just don't know what to do.

Mrs: You shouldn't feel bad and worry about it. As long as you are willing to learn, you will succeed in learning it.

M/Sgt: You are absolutely right. Chinese is such an important language, especially Cantonese which is so common and important. I have such a good opportunity to learn the language. I should put forth all my effort to study it. Otherwise, I can very well fail my country, disappoint my friends, and do myself an injustice.

Mrs: You are right. If you can master this language, not only does it mean a contribution to the country, but also an asset to yourself.

張太太：亞占，啲細仔已經瞓入覺．你重未讀完書，重未做起你嘅功課呀？

張上士：未呀，瑪利．我重做緊呀．啲書又多又難．啲功課又深又唔容易．我越讀越辛苦，越學越艱難，都唔知點算好添．

太太：唔使嘴定會成功嘅．一講得真對啦．中國話係咁緊要嘅語言，尤其是廣東話添，咁普遍，就對我國家有益．

上士：你重要努力啲學．唔係呀，對人對唔住，對自己亦對唔住啦．

太太：有錯啦．如果你學倒呢種話，唔祇對於自己亦都有益㗎．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

READING MATERIAL

張上士同張太太*嘅細仔已經瞓入覺．
但係張上士呢？佢而家重做緊啲功課．佢
重未讀完書，重未做起佢嘅功課，所以佢
重未瞓得覺．

啲書又多又難，啲功課又深又唔容易．
佢越讀越辛苦，越學越艱難．佢真唔知道
佢越算好．張太太*叫佢唔使嗰翳，唔好擔心，
求其佢肯學，肯溫習，佢一定會成功嘅．

張太太*講得真對．中國話*係一種咁緊
要嘅語言，尤其是廣東話*添．咁多中國人
講廣東話*．廣東話*咁普遍，又咁重要．如
果我地有機會學廣東話*，我地一定要努力
啲學至得．如果唔係呀，敢就對國家唔住，
對人唔住，對自己亦對唔住．

如果我地學倒呢種話*，唔祇對國家有
貢獻，而且對自己亦都有益．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'ūng Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* kè saì-man-tsaí fàn-yâp kaaù meî à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ne? K'uĭ î-ka tsô-kán mi-yĕ à?

K'uĭ tûk-uēn shue meî à, tsô-heí k'uĭ kè kung-fòh meî à?

K'uĭ fàn-tak kaaù meî à?

Ti shue naān m̄-naān à? Ti kung-fòh yūng m̄-yūng-î à?

K'uĭ tûk-tak san m̄-san-foó à?

Pin-waî* kiù k'uĭ m̄-shaí paì-aì, m̄-hó taam-sam à?

Uē-kwóh k'uĭ háng hôk, háng wan-tsaâp, k'uĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ shîng-kung à?

Chung-Kwòk wâ* kán m̄-kán-iù à?

Chung-Kwòk wâ* haî yat-chúng hó kán-iù kè uĕ-în, yaū-k'eî-shî mi-yĕ wâ* à?

Kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kè Chung-Kwòk yān toh m̄-toh à?

Uē-kwóh haî kóm, Kwóng-Tung wâ* hó p'ó-p'în, hó chûng-iù là,haî m̄-haî à?

Uē-kwóh ngŏh-teî yaŭ kei-ooî hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ*, ngŏh-teî iù m̄-iù nŏ-lîk ti hôk à?

Uē-kwóh m̄-nŏ-lîk ti hôk tsaû tím à?

Ue-kwóh ngŏh-teî hôk-tó ni chúng wâ*, ngŏh-teî tuì kwòk-ka yaŭ mŏ kùng-hîn à, tuì tsẑ-keí yaŭ mŏ yik à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ǐ-king already, some time ago

fàn-yâp kaaù fàn kaaù 'to sleep, lie down'; yâp 'to enter, get in'; fàn-yâp kaaù 'to fall asleep, sound sleep'; Cf: fàn-cheûk kaaù IU5

meî a.f. meî-ts'āng 'not yet, not, have not (yet)'

tsô-heí heí 'to finish, complete, rise, begin, start to'; Cf: ch'aaú-uēn ts'oì IU5; tsô-heí kung-fòh has same meaning as tsô-uēn kung-fòh 'finished the homework'; meî tsô-uēn kung-fòh 'the homework hasn't been finished yet'

kán suffix for progressive action, -ing; tsô-kán 'doing, working'; chûng tsô-kán 'still working on it, still doing'; tight, tensed

toh much, many

naān hard, difficult, hard, not easy; antonym: yūng-î; yaû toh yaû naān 'too much and too difficult'; synonym: kaan-naān

sham profound, hard, difficult, not easy, deep; antonym: yūng-î 'easy'; ts'ín 'easy, shallow'; ti kung-fòh hó sham 'the homework is very difficult',(difficult in the sense of degree of learning only and not otherwise.)

yūng-î easy, not difficult, simple; antonyms: naām, kaan-naān; synonym: ts'ín

san-foó bitter, toilsome, distressing, suffering; tûk-tak hó san-foó 'having a terrible time in studying'

uêt...uêt... the more... the more..., the more...the... -er the...er.

uêt hôk uêt kaan-naān kaan-naān 'difficult, not easy, hard; synonym: naān; antonym: yūng-î; ngŏh uêt hôk uêt kaan-naān 'the more I study, the harder it is'

m̄-chi chi 'to know, know about, have knowledge of' (Fr savoir, Germ. wissen): AF: chi-tò; m̄-chi, m̄-chi-tò 'do not know'

tîm-suèn-hó? tîm? 'how? (in what manner?), in any way, in some way, do what, what's happened to..?' tîm is used here in the sense of 'do what?'; a.f.: tîm-yeûng*?; suèn 'to consider, plan, calculate, count'; tîm-suèn-hó is same as m̄-chi-tîm-suèn-hó, m̄-chi-tîm-hó, or m̄-chi-tím-suèn, they all mean 'do not know what to do', 'I am confused'

paì-aì worried, worrisome, to worry, sad, rueful; m̄-shaí paì-aì 'no need to worry'; m̄-hó taam-sam 'do not worry'

k'aū-k'eî as long as, if only, provided that

háng willing, to consent to, permit, agree; háng hôk 'willing to learn'

yat-tîng certainly, definitely, have to, must; ngŏh yat-tîng huì 'I certainly go'; ngŏh yat-tîng iù huì 'I must go'

shîng-kung succeed, success, successful

tuì correct, right, toward, opposite, pair, to face to, to; neĭ kóng-tak tuì là same as neĭ kóng-tak ngaam and neĭ kóng-tak mŏ-ts'ŏh, they all mean 'what you said is right'; ngŏh tuì k'uĭ kóng 'I talk to him'; yat-tuì faaì-tsź 'a pair of chopsticks'

kán-iù important, urgent, severe, critical; synonym: chûng-iù 'important'; k'uĭ pêng-tak hó kán-iù 'he is critically ill'; ní kîn sź hó kán-iù 'this matter is very urgent or important'; Kwóng-Tung wâ* hó chûng-iù 'Cantonese is very important'

yaū-k'eî-shî especially, particularly

p'ó-p'ìn common, popular, universal, widespread; Kwóng-Tung wâ* hó p'ó-p'ìn 'Cantonese is very common'

chûng-iù important, essential, indispensable

î-ka now, at the present time, at this moment; a.f. ka-hă, ka-chân, în-tsoî

kei-ooî opportunity, chance

nŏ-lîk to put forth effort, industrious, studious, diligent, working hard; synonym: k'ān-lîk

m̄-haî otherwise, if not, not; a.f. uē-kwóh m̄-haî

tsaû auxiliary for the future tense, then, if then, thereupon, without delay; then, on the other hand; simply, namely, about to; uē-kwóh m̄-haî tsau...'otherwise, then...'; ngŏh tsaû huì 'I'll go right away, I'm about to go'; tsaû-haî ni kŏh yān 'it's just this person'. A conditional or concessive clause precedes the main clause to which it is subordinated, as Uē-kwóh lôk uĕ, ngŏh tsaû m̄-huì 'If it rains, I (then) won't go.' While 'then' is usually omitted in English, it is the 'if'-word that is usually omitted in Chinese, thus, Lôk uĕ ngŏh tsaû m̄-huì 'It rains I then don't go,--if it rains, I won't go.' A conditional or concessive clause never follows the main clause except as an afterthought after a dash. A premeditated dependent clause placed after the main clause (found in some contemporary writing) is definitely a Europeanism and is appreciated as such.

kwòk-ka country, nation, fatherland; synonym: kwòk

tuì...m̄-chuê unable to reciprocate one's favor, unable to face a person owing to some fault, a form of apology; tuì yān m̄-chuê 'unable to face a person owing to some fault'; tuì kwòk-ka m̄-chuê 'not loyal to one's country'; tsz̄-keí 'self'; tuì tsz̄-keí m̄-chuê 'doing injustice to himself' a.f. tuì...tuì m̄-chuê, tuì m̄-chuê...

tsz̄-keí oneself; ngŏh tsz̄-keí 'I myself'; neĭ tsz̄-keí 'you yourself'; k'uĭ tsz̄-keí 'he himself, she herself'

uē-kwóh if, provided

tó tó 'resultative verb, indicating success in attaining object of the action'; hôk-tó 'have learned, have mastered'

tuì...yaŭ kùng-hìn kùng-hìn 'contribution, to contribute, dedicate, devote'; tuì...yaŭ kùng-hìn 'a contribution to...'

tuì...yaŭ yik yik 'advantage, advantageous, benefit, beneficial, asset'; yaŭ yik 'to have advantage, to have benefit', yaŭ yûng 'useful'; tuì...yaŭ yik 'an asset to..., a benefit to..'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Kóng yaû kóng là. Ts'at-uêt shâp-saam hô haî laĭ-paaì keí à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: Táng ngŏh t'aí-hă. Taaî-ts'în-yât laĭ-paaì-yat, ts'în-yât laĭ-paaì-î, ts'ām-yât laĭ-paaì-saam, kam-yât laĭ-paaì seì, t'ing-yât laĭ-paaì-ng̃, haû-yât laĭ-paaì-lûk, taaî-haû-yât laĭ-paaì...

Sheûng-Sẑ: K'ām-yât laĭ-paaì saam, shâp-hộ, kam-yât laĭ-paaì seì, shâp-yat-hô; t'ing-yât laĭ-paaì ng̃, shâp-î-hô; haû-yât laĭ-paaì lûk, shâp-saam-hô. Laĭ-paaì lûk haî ts'at-uêt shâp-saam hô là.

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Ngŏh ĭ-waí neĭ tûk shue tûk-tak kòm mōng, yat-tîng ooĭ m̄-keì-tak-chóh kóh yât haî mi-yĕ yât-tsź là.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Tím ooĭ m̄-keì-tak kè ne. Kóh yât haî neĭ kè shaang-yât, yaû haî ngŏh-teî kìt fan kè keí-nîm yât a mă.

T'aaì-T'aaì*: M̄-chi-m̄-kòk, ngŏh-teî ĭ-king kìt-chóh-fan shēng shâp keí nîn, ngŏh yîk-to shēng keí-shâp suì là.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh-teî ts'éng keí kòh p'āng-yaŭ laí shîk ts'aan faân, yám hă tsaú, ko-hìng hă è?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Hó à. Ngŏh kîk-chi tsaàn-shîng.

M/Sgt Cheung: Come to think of it, what day of the week will July the 13th be?

Mrs. Cheung: Let me see. Two days before yesterday was Monday. The day before yesterday was Tuesday. Yesterday was Wednesday. Today is Thursday. Tomorrow will be Friday. The day after tomorrow will be Saturday. And two days after tomorrow will be Sunday.

M/Sgt: Yesterday was Wednesday the 10th. Today is Thursday the 11th. Tomorrow will be Friday the 12th. The day after tomorrow will be Saturday the 13th. Therefore, July the 13th will be Saturday.

Mrs. Cheung: Since you have been so busy studying, I thought you must have forgotten what day it is.

M/Sgt: How could I forget that day? It is going to be your birthday and our wedding anniversary.

Mrs. Cheung: It is hard to realize that we have been married for a number of years, and we are in our middle-age.

M/Sgt: Let us invite several friends for dinner, have a few drinks, and celebrate, shall we?

Mrs. Cheung: Fine. I agree with you whole-heartedly.

張上士：講又講啦．七月十三號係禮拜幾呀？

張太太*：等我睇吓．大前日禮拜一，前日禮拜二，尋日禮拜三，今日禮拜四，聽日禮拜五，後日禮拜六，大後日禮拜……

上士：禽日禮拜三，十號；今日禮拜四，十一號；聽日禮拜五，十二號；後日禮拜六，十三號．禮拜六係七月十三號啦．

太太*：我以為你讀書讀得咁忙，一定會唔記得咗嗰日係乜野日子啦．

上士：點會唔記得嘅呢．嗰日係你嘅生日，又係我地結婚嘅紀念日呀嗎．

太太*：唔知唔覺，我地已經結咗婚成十幾年，我亦都成幾十歲啦．

上士：我地請幾個朋友黎食餐飯，飲吓酒，高慶吓嘅？

太太*：好呀．我極之贊成．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

READING MATERIAL

大前日係禮拜一，八號；前日係禮拜二，九號；尋日係禮拜四，十一號；聽日係禮拜五，十二號；後日係禮拜六，十三號；大後日係禮拜，十四號。

張太上士同張上士倒定禮拜六咁得佢太太都好想知得張上士點解一個既紀念日子，佢睇一日係禮拜幾，佢以為係禮拜幾，七月十三日係禮拜幾。佢士話，七月十三日係禮拜六呢！係咪同個日子結婚記得啦！

張太上士同張上士唔知道七月十三日係禮拜幾，佢以為係禮拜六，七月十三日係禮拜幾。佢士話，七月十三日係禮拜幾，佢睇一日係禮拜幾。佢士話，七月十三日係禮拜六呢！係咪同個日子結婚記得啦！

張太上士同張上士唔知道七月十三日係禮拜幾，佢以為係禮拜六，七月十三

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

QUESTIONS

Taaî-ts'în-yât haî laĭ-paaì keí, keí hô à?

Ts'în-yât haî laĭ-paaì keí, keí hó à?

Kam-yât haî laĭ-paaì keí, keí hó à?

Haû-yât haî laĭ-paaì keí à?

Ni kòh uêt haî keí uêt à?

Ts'at-uêt shâp-saam hô haî laĭ-paaì keí à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* chi m̄-chi-tò ts'at-uêt shâp-saam haî laĭ-paaì-lûk à?

K'uĭ m̄-chi-tò, k'uĭ seúng m̄-seúng chi-tò à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tûk shue tûk-tak tím à?

K'uĭ tûk shue tûk-tak kòm mōng, k'uĭ tím ooĭ keì-tak ts'at-uêt shâp-saam haî laĭ-paaì-lûk à?

Ts'at-uêt shâp-saam haî yat-kòh mi-yĕ kè yât-tsź à?

K'uĭ-teî kìt fan kìt-chóh keí-tóh nîn là?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ î-ka keí-toh suì à?

K'uĭ seúng ts'éng keí kòh p'āng-yaŭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ seúng ts'éng p'āng-yaŭ shîk faân, k'uĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* tsaàn m̄-tsaàn-shîng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kóng yaû kóng là! 'come to think of it', 'since you mention it'

Cardinal	Numbers	Cardinal	Numbers
yat	one	shâp-yat	eleven
î, leŭng	two	shâp-î	twelve
saam	three		
seì	four	î-shâp	twenty
nğ	five	î-shâp-yat	twenty-one
lûk	six	î-shâp-î	twenty-two
ts'at	seven	saam-shâp	thirty
paàt	eight		
kaú	nine	yat-paàk	one hundred
shâp	ten	î-paàk	two hundred
		yat-ts'in	one thousand
		î-ts'in	two thousand

YEAR

yat-kaú-lîng-lîng-nîn	1900
yat-kaú-lîng-yat-nîn	1901
yat-kaú-lîng-î-nîn	1902
yat-kaú-yat-lîng-nîn	1910
yat-kaú-î-î-nîn	1922
yat-kaú-nğ-paàt-nîn	1958
yat-kaú-ts'at-lîng-nîn	1970

MONTH

yat	- uêt	January
ching	- uêt	January
î	- uêt	February
saam	- uêt	March
seì	- uêt	April
nğ	- uêt	May
lûk	- uêt	June
ts'at	- uêt	July
paàt	- uêt	August
kaú	- uêt	September
shâp	- uêt	October
shâp-yat	- uêt	November
shâp-î	- uêt	December

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

yat	- kòh	uêt	one month
leŭng	- kòh	uêt	two months
saam	- kòh	uêt	three months
seì	- kòh	uêt	four months
ngŭ	- kòh	uêt	five months
lûk	- kòh	uêt	six months
ts'at	- kòh	uêt	seven months
paàt	- kòh	uêt	eight months
kaú	- kòh	uêt	nine months
shâp	- kòh	uêt	ten months
shâp-yat	- kòh	uêt	eleven months
shâp-î	- kòh	uêt	twelve months

DAY

yat	- hô	1st
î	- hô	2nd
saam	- hô	3rd
seì	- hô	4th
ngŭ	- hô	5th
lûk	- hô	6th
ts'at	- hô	7th
paàt	- hô	8th
kaú	- hô	9th
shâp	- hô	10th
shâp-yat	- hô	11th
shâp-î	- hô	12th
î-shâp	- hô	20th
î-shâp-yat	- hô	21st
î-shâp-î	- hô	22nd
saam-shâp	- hô	30th
saam-shâp-yat	-hô	31st

a.f. of hô is yât
a.f. of î-shâp is yâ or yê
a.f. of saam-shâp is sa or sa-â

WEEK

sheûng leŭng-kòh laĭ-paaì	week before last
tuì sheûng leŭng-kòh laĭ-paaì	week before last
tuì sheûng yat-kòh laĭ-paaì	last week
sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì	last week

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

ni kòh laĭ-paaì	this week
hâ kòh laĭ-paaì	next week
tuì hâ yat-kòh laĭ-paaì	next week
tuì hâ leŭng-kòh laĭ-paaì	week after next

laĭ-paaì-yat	Monday
laĭ-paaì-î	Tuesday
laĭ-paaì-saam	Wednesday
laĭ-paaì-seì	Thursday
laĭ-paaì-ngĕ	Friday
laĭ-paaì-lûk	Saturday
laĭ-paaì	Sunday
laĭ-paaì-yât	Sunday

a.f. of laĭ-paaì is shing-k'eî, thus, shing-k'eî-yat, shing-k'eî-yât, or shing-k'eî.

uêt month, moon

hô number, day of the month (a.f. yât)

laĭ-paaì week, Sunday; a.f. shing-k'eî

keî how? (to what extent), to any extent, to some extent, not... very (with negative), a few, several, some, interrogative numerals: 'how many? how much?' Like the numerals, it is normally followed by an AN: in this case, the a.f. of keî is keî-toh

laĭ-paaì keî what day of the week? In this case, since the keî is after the noun, we cannot use the a.f. keî-toh, never say laĭ-paaì keî-toh, but laĭ-paaì keî

taaî-ts'în-yât ts'în-yât 'day before yesterday'; taaî-ts'în-yât 'two days before yesterday'; ts'în-maăn 'night before last'; taaî-ts'în-maăn 'two nights before last; ts'în-nîn 'year before last'; taaî-ts'în-nîn 'two years before last'

yat one, once, as soon as; ngŏh yat laî, ngŏh tsaû huì kìn neĭ 'as soon as I come, I shall go to see you'; neĭ yat m̀-siŭ-sam, tsaû ooĭ tsô ts'òh 'once you are careless, you will make mistakes

taaî-haû-yât haû-yât 'day after tomorrow'; taaî-haû-yât 'two days after tomorrow'; haû-maăn 'night after tomorrow night';

taaî-haû-maăn 'two nights after tomorrow night'; haû-nîn 'year after next'; taaî-haû-nîn 'two years after next'

k'ām-yât yesterday; a.f.: ts'ām-yât, tsôk-yât, tsòk-yât; k'ām-maăn 'last night'; tsôk-maăn 'last night'; tsòk-maăn 'last night'

ĭ-waî to presume, take it that..., regard as, think, believe it that..., take for granted (a.f.: tòng). In many cases, but not always, the a.f. of ĭ-waî are koó, nám 'to believe, think, figure out'. In the case of a.f. tòng, it most likely means 'to take for granted', thus, ngŏh tòng neĭ m̄-laî 'I took it for granted that you wouldn't come'

mōng busy, hurried, in haste

keì-tak to remember, recall, recollect; synonym: keì-tak-heí

chóh perfective suffix, usually translatable by the perfect or past in English. Here chóh has the force of making the action complete. In cases of VO construction, such as shîk faân, tûk shue, the correct position of chóh is right after the verb, thus, shîk-chóh faân, tûk-chóh shue, etc. In the case of keì-tak, keì-tak is a bound form which cannot be separated by chóh so the correct position of chóh is after keì-tak, thus keì-tak-chóh

yât-tsź date, day, festival; synonym: yât

kìt fan VO construction; to get married, to marry. Since kìt fan is a VO, the verb suffixes (kán, chóh, uēn, etc) should be placed right after the verb kìt, thus, kìt-kán fan 'being married, marrying', kìt-chóh fan 'is married, married'

keí-nîm yât keí-nîm 'to commemorate, commemoration'; keí-nîm-yât 'anniversary day of commemoration'; yat-chau-nîn keí-nîm-yât '1st anniversary', leŭng-chau-nîn keí-nîm-yât '2nd anniversary', etc

m̄-chi-m̄-kòk chi-kòk 'to feel, perceive, sensation'; m̄-chi-m̄-kòk 'without realizing it, not knowing, not perceiving, unconsciously'; a.f.: pat-chi-pat-kòk

nîn year

shâp keî ten-odd, more than ten; paàk keî 'hundred-odd'; etc.; keî shâp 'several tens'; keî paàk 'several hundreds'

shîng shâp-keî nîn shîng 'whole, to complete, entire '; a.f. of shîng:shēng; shēng shâp keî nîn 'ten odd years'; shēng has the force 'entire, whole, that long, etc'.

shuì year (s) old, year (lit); keî shâp shuì 'several tens of years old', a.f. keî â shuì

ts'éng to invite, please, ask, request; a.f.: ts'íng

kòh AN for individual person and certain things; keî kòh p'aāng-yaŭ 'several friends'

p'aāng-yaŭ friend; a.f.: p'āng-yaŭ

tsaú wine, liquor, alcoholic drink; yám tsaú 'to drink liquor'

ko-hìng happy, glad to, to have fun; ngŏh hó ko-hìng kìn-tó neĭ 'I'm very happy that I have seen you'; ko-hīng hā 'to have some fun'

kîk-chi extremely; a.f. kîk, fei-sheūng-chi

tsaàn-shîng to be in favor of, support, agree with, go along with (an idea)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Kóm, ngŏh-teî tsô chué-yān. Ngŏh-teî ying-koi ts'éng pin keí kòh yān-haàk ne?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: Ts'uî-pîn* neĭ. Neĭ k'uèt-tîng la. Neĭ wâ la.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh tá-suèn ts'éng keí kòh î-ka kè t'ūng-hôk, keí kòh kaû-shî tá cheùng kè lŏ yaŭ, keí kòh kaaù-koon, keí kòh kaàk-leî lūn-shè*. Uē-kwóh yaŭ t'aaì-t'aaì* kè, tsaû ts'éng-maaî k'uĭ-teî kè t'aaì-t'aaì*, hó mà?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: P'à yān toh mà? P'à yān toh ti mà?

Sheûng-Sẑ: Haî pòh. Yān t'aaì toh pòh. Pat-uē tsîng ts'éng keí kòh lŏ yaŭ pâ la.

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Pin keí waî* ne?

Sheûng-Sẑ: Leĭ Sheûng-Kaaù, Leĭ T'aaì-T'aaì*, Ko Chung-Kaaù, Ko T'aaì-T'aaì*, K'eî Shiù-Kaaù, K'eî T'aaì-T'aaì*, Lōh Sheûng-Waì, Lōh T'aaì-T'aaì*, Paâk Sheûng-Waì, Ng̃ Chung-Waì , Hōh Shiù-Waì, Leĭ Chún-Waì, Ch'ān Kaaù-Koon, t'ūng-maaî neĭ kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ Wōng Â-Lîn Siú-Tsé, hó mà?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Táng ngŏh shó hă...yat-kòh, leŭng-kòh, saam-kòh..., yat, î, saam, seì, ng̃, lûk, ts'at, paàt, kaú, shâp, shâp-yat, shâp-î, shâp-saam, shâp-seì...shâp-seì-kòh yān. Hó là. Kaù là. Tsaû kóm là.

Sheûng Sẑ: T'ing-yât tsoì kóng. Ngŏh-teî î-ka huì fàn kaaù, hó mà?

M/Sgt Cheung: Well, we are going to be the host and hostess. Whom should we invite?

Mrs. Cheung: It's up to you. You decide.

M/Sgt: I plan to invite several classmates, old buddies during the war, instructors and neighbors. For those who have wives, the wives will be invited too. What do you think?

Mrs. Cheung: Don't you think it is a little too many?

M/Sgt: May be. We might as well just invite several old friends.

Mrs. Cheung: Who?

M/Sgt: Colonel and Mrs. Leĭ, Lt. Colonel and Mrs. Ko, Major and Mrs. K'eī, Captain and Mrs. Lōh, Captain White, 1st Lt. Ńg, 2nd Lt. Hōh, W.O. Leĭ, Instructor Ch'ān, and your lady friend Miss Arlene Wōng? What do you think?

Mrs. Cheung: Let me see...one, two, three...one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen...fourteen persons. I think that's enough.

M/Sgt: We'll talk about it again tomorrow. Let's go to bed. Shall we?

張上士：敢，我地做主人．我地應該請邊幾個人客呢？

張太太：隨便你．你決定啦，你話啦．

上士：我打算請幾個而家既同學，幾個舊時打仗既老友，幾個教官，幾個隔離鄰舍．如果有太太既，就請埋佢地既太太，好嗎？

太太：怕人多嗎？怕人多啲嗎？

上士：係嘯．人太多嘯．不如淨請幾個老友罷啦．

太太：邊幾位呢？

上士：李上校，李太太，高中校，高太太，祁少校，祁太太，羅上尉，羅太太，白上尉，伍中尉，何少尉，李准尉，陳教官，同埋你既女朋友黃亞蓮小姐好嗎？

太太：等我數吓……一個，兩個，三個……，一，二，三，四，五，六，七，八，九，十，十一，十二，十三，十四……十四個人．好啦．夠啦，就敢啦．

上士：聽日再講．我地而家去瞓覺，好嗎？

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

READING MATERIAL

決難啲．幾等同幾地
好好請邊佢既，佢
客道要家官埋
人知緊個教請
食飯，個唔唔幾就
黎邊幾都已請幾，既，
友請太自算友太
朋道太佢打老太
啲知張話，士既有
請唔，太張打如果
想，講太．時；
士人太張定舊舍
上多太．決個鄰
張幾張好士幾離太．
請同人上，隔太
定佢個張學個既

擔淨定
都，決
亦人地
士多佢
上咁．
張請太
多，想太
太地地
人佢佢
太所，同
張多，友
係太個
但客幾
心係請李上校，李太太，高中校，高太太，祁
少校，祁太太，羅太太，白上尉，伍中尉，
何少尉，李准尉，陳教官，同埋張太太既
女朋友黃亞蓮．張太太數吓啲人數，有十
四個人．佢話，咁多够啦！

佢地講完請食飯既野，就去瞓覺．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

QUESTIONS

Pin-kòh seúng ts'éng p'aāng-yaŭ shîk faân à?

K'uĭ seúng ts'éng keí toh yān, seúng ts'éng pin keí kòh yān à?

K'uĭ m̄-k'uèt-tîng-tak, Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* ne?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* m̄-k'uèt-tîng-tak, k'uĭ tím wâ à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tá-suèn ts'éng pin ti yān à?

Kóh ti t'ūng-hôk haî ī-ka kè, yik-waâk haî kaû-shī kè à?

Kóh ti lŏ yaŭ haî tím kà?

Kóh ti kaaù-koon haî pin shuè kè à?

Uē-kwóh kóh ti yān-haàk yaŭ t'aaì-t'aaì*, ts'éng m̄-ts'éng-maaî k'uĭ-teî à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ seúng ts'éng kòm toh yān, Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* tím à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* p'à yān toh, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ne?

K'uĭ-teî leŭng kòh to p'à yān toh, k'uĭ-teî tsaû tím à?

K'uĭ-teî k'uèt-tîng ts'éng pin keí kòh lŏ yaŭ t'ūng k'uĭ-teî kè t'aaì-t'aaì* à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* shó-hă yān-shò, yaŭ keí toh yān à?

K'uĭ-teî kóng-uēn ts'éng shîk faân kè yĕ, tsaû tsô mi-yĕ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chué-yān host, hostess, master

yān-haàk guest; synonym: haàk-yān, haàk (lit)

ts'uî-pîn* at one's convenience, any way, in any manner, no matter (what)

tâ-suén to plan to, schedule to, intends to

t'ūng-hôk school-mate, class-mate

kaû-shî kaû 'old, not new'; shī 'days, time'; kaû-shî 'the old days, formerly'

tá cheùng to fight a battle or war

lŏ yaŭ lŏ 'old (in age), aged', term of honor and respect; lŏ yaŭ 'old friend, long time friend, buddy'

kaàk-leī neighboring, adjoining; kaàk-leī uk 'neighboring house'; kaàk-leī kaai 'neighboring street, next street, street within walking distance'

lūn-shè lūn 'neighboring, near to' (lit); shè 'humble house' (lit); lūn-shè 'neighbor' (lit)

kaàk-leî lūn-shè neighbor, neighboring house

maaî together, close together, to move close together, to embed; ts'éng-maaî k'uĭ-teî 'to invite them also'; haāng-maaî laî 'to walk over here'; haāng-maaî ti 'to walk closer'

p'à to fear, be afraid of, think that..., lest, dread, perhaps; k'uĭ p'à tá cheùng 'he is afraid of war'; ngŏh p'à yān toh 'I'm afraid that there are so many people'; ngŏh p'à laāng 'I can't stand cold, I'm susceptible to cold'

t'aaì too, excessively; t'aaì toh yān 'too many people'

pat-uē had better, why not..., better let (me), might as well, not as (good as)(lit)

tsîng only, merely; a.f. tsîng-haî; ngŏh tsîng haî hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ* 'I only learn Cantonese'; tsĭng 'clean, neat and tidy'

pâ* la! particle having the force of advising and suggesting

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

Leĭ common surname 'Lee'

Ko surname, tall, high, superior

K'eî surname

Lōh surname

Ńg surname, five, companion (lit)

Hōh common surname 'Ho', how? (lit), what? (lit), why? (lit)

t'ūng-maaî together with, and, as well as

À-Lîn lîn 'lotus'; À-Lîn phonetic transcription of 'Arlene'

shó to count, calculate; shò ts'în* to count money'; shò 'amount, account, number'; yat 'one'; î 'two', î is used in simple counting, in compound numbers, and in other idiomatic compounds; leŭng 'two', leŭng is used before an AN, thus, leŭng-kòh yān 'two persons'; saam 'three'; seì 'four'; ńg 'five'; iûk 'six'; ts'at 'seven'; paàt 'eight'; kaú 'nine'; shâp 'ten'; shâp keí 'ten-several,--ten odd, --between ten and twenty'; while numbers between 11 and 19 are called 'shâp-yat, shâp-î, shâp-saam, shâp-seì,etc', an optional 'yat' may be prefixed to 'shâp-yat, etc' in numbers involving hundreds, thousands etc. Thousands are never spoken of as 'many hundreds', thus leŭng-ts'in 'two thousands', never î-shâp-paàk 'twenty hundreds'. Numbers between 20 and 90 are called 'î-shâp, saam-shâp, seì-shâp' etc.

kaù là! kaù 'enough, sufficient'; kaù là! 'that's enough, that's all!'

tsaû-kóm la! that's all! ; synonym: haî-kòm-toh!

k'uèt-tîng to decide, to determine, to resolve, decision, resolution

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aai-T'aai*: À-Chim, À-Chim! Faai ti hei shan là! Naaû-chung heúng-chóh hó noî là! Tîm-kaai neĭ chûng m̄-háng hei shan à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz: Ngŏh fàn noî ti to m̄-tak. Ī-ka kaù-king kei tîm-chung à?

T'aai-T'aai*: Lûk-tîm taâp saam là. M̄-haî, m̄-haî. Ni kòh chung maân-chóh leŭng-kòh tsz. Kóh kòh piu chì ngaam. Ī-ka ĭ-king lûk-tîm yâ-nğ fan là. Neĭ tò-taí hei m̄-hei shan kà?

Sheûng-Sz: Wā haaí! Kòm aàn lā! Ts'ām-maăn fàn-tak yê. Ngŏh î-ka tsik-hak hei shan là.

T'aai-T'aai*: Faai-ts'uì ti là! Maī neĭ ooĭ ch'î kà là.

Sheûng-Sz: Neĭ maĭ ts'ui ngŏh tak kà. Ngŏh iù t'ai so, sai mîn, ts'aàt ngā, shoh t'aū, oôn chaì-fûk sin chì tak kà.

T'aai-T'aai*: Kam-yât laĭ-paai-nğ pòh. Yaŭ kîm-uêt mà?

Sheûng-Sz: Yaŭ tîng*-là! Neĭ t'ūng ngŏh ning tîng ti sut-shaam, t'aai, haaî, mât, chaì-fûk, t'ūng mô*. Chîng-hó ti fai-cheung, hó mà?

T'aai-T'aai*: Hó à! Chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ t'im à? Táng ngŏh t'ūng neĭ ning tîng ch'ut laî la!

Sheûng-Sz: Mŏ là. Haî-kòm-toh là, Mă-Leî.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

Mrs. Cheung: Jim! Get up! The alarm clock has been ringing for sometime now. Why do you refuse to get up?

M/Sgt Cheung: Can't I sleep just for a little while longer? After all, what time is it?

Mrs: It's 6:15. Oh, no! The clock is ten minutes slow. The watch is right. It's 6:25 already. Are you getting up or not?

M/Sgt: Is it that late? We went to sleep late last night. I'm getting up right now.

Mrs: Hurry up! Otherwise, you will be late.

M/Sgt: Don't rush me. I have to shave, wash my face, brush my teeth, comb my hair and change into my uniform.

Mrs: Today is Friday. Are you going to have an inspection?

M/Sgt: Of course we are! Will you get ready the shirt, the tie, shoes, socks, uniform and cap, and fix up the insignia for me?

Mrs: All right. What else? I'll get them ready for you.

M/Sgt: That will be all, Mary.

張太太：亞占，亞占！快啲起身啦！鬧鐘響咗好耐啦！點解你重唔肯起身呀？

張上士：我瞓耐啲都唔得．而家究竟幾點鐘呀？

太太：六點踏三啦．唔係唔係．呢個鐘慢咗兩個字．嗰個鏢至啱．而家已經六點廿五分啦．你到底起唔起身㗎？

上士：嘩吟！咁晏啦！尋晚瞓得夜．我而家即刻起身啦．

太太：快趨啲啦！嗞你會遲㗎啦．

上士：你咪催我得㗎．我要剃鬚，洗面，擦牙，梳頭，換制服先至得㗎．

太太：今日禮拜五嚟．有檢閱嗎？

上士：有定啦！你同我揀定啲恤衫，呔，鞋，襪，制服同帽．整好啲徽章，好嗎？

太太：好呀！重有乜野添呀？等我同你揀定出黎啦．

上士：冇啦．係咁多啦，瑪利．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

READING MATERIAL

而家係六點踏三．張上士嘅鬧鐘已經響咗好耐．但係佢重瞓緊覺，佢重唔肯起身．張太太叫佢快啲起身．佢話，佢尋晚瞓得好夜，而家佢想瞓耐啲．佢想知道而家到底幾點鐘．張太太話，而家六點踏三；但係嗰個鬧鐘慢咗兩個字，所以而家已經六點廿五分．張上士聽倒．佢知道而家好晏，佢即刻起身．

張上士已經起咗身．張太太怕佢太遲，叫佢快趣啲去學校，唔係就會遲啦！張上士叫張太太咪催佢．佢重要剃鬚，洗面，擦牙，梳頭，換制服，然後至可以出去．

今日係禮拜五，學校有檢閱．佢叫張太太同佢揀定啲嘢衫，吖，鞋，襪，制服同帽出黎，又整好啲徽章．張上士換完衫，食咗早餐，就去學校．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

QUESTIONS

Ī-ka keí tím-chung à?

Ī-ka lûk-tím taâp saam, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè naaû-chung heúng-chóh meî à?

Kòh naaû-chung ǐ-king heúng-chóh hó noî, k'uǐ heí-chóh shan meî à?

K'uǐ m̄-háng heí shan, tím-kaaí k'uǐ seúng fàn noî ti à?

K'uǐ kè naaû-chung ngaam m̄-ngaam à?

Kaù-kîng î-ka keí tím-chung à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'eng-tó, k'uǐ tsaû tím-yeûng* à?

Tím-kaaí Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* ts'ui k'uǐ faaì-ts'uì ti huì hôk-haaû à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ chûng meî huì-tak, k'uǐ chûng-iù tsô-uēn mi-yĕ chì huì-tak à?

Kam-yât haî laǐ-paaì keí à?

Hôk-haaû kam-yât yaŭ mŏ kím-uêt à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kiù k'uǐ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* t'ūng k'uǐ tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ oôn-uēn sut-shaam..., shîk-chóh tsó-ts'aan, tsaû tím à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

naaû-chung naaû 'noisy, crowded, to make noise, to scold'; chung 'clock, bell'; naaû-chung 'alarm clock'

heúng to ring, sound, echo, make noise

noî long (in time), a period of time, to endure

tím-kaaí why? how is it that...?

kaù-kíng after all, actually, really, in the last analysis; a.f.: tò-taí

tím-chung o'clock, hour; a.f.: tím; lûk-tím (lûk tím-chung 'six hours'. The syntax will clarify the difference

lûk-tím taâp ts'at taâp 'to tread on, point to, fall'; lûk-tím taâp yat (lûk-tím yat-kòh tsẑ) '6:05'; lûk-tím taâp î (lûk-tím leung-kòh tsẑ) '6:10'; lûk-tím taâp saam '6:15'; lûk-tím taâp ts'at '6:35'

maân slow, sluggish

tsẑ five-minute multiples marked on face of clock or watch, Chinese character; lûk-tím yat-kòh tsẑ (lûk-tím taâp yat) '6:05'; lûk-tím leung-kòh tsẑ (lûk-tím taâp î) '6:10'; lûk-tím saam-kòh tsẑ (lûk-tím taâp saam) '6:15';

piu watch, meter; shaú-piu 'wrist watch'

fan to divide, to split, share, lessen, grade, minute; ńg fan (a.f.: ńg fan-chung) 'five minutes'; shâp fan (shâp fan-chung) 'ten minutes'; lûk-tím ńg fan (lûk-tím taâp yat, lûk-tím yat-kòh tsẑ) '6:05'; lûk-tím shâp-fan (lûk-tím taâp î, lûk-tím leung-kòh tsẑ) '6:10'

tò-taí after all, anyway, really, actually; a.f.: kaù-kíng; tò taî 'down to the bottom'

wā haaí! 'gee! wow!'

aàn late (in day time), noon, lunch; synonym: yê (late in night time), ch'î (late in time)

yê late (in night time), length of the night; yât yê 'day and night'; yât yê 'a night'

tsik-hak immediately, at once, right away, instantly; a.f.: lâp-hak, lâp-tsik, tsik (lit.)

faaì-ts'uì fast, quick, speedy, rapid, swift; a.f.: faaì; faaì-ts'uì ti la! 'hurry up!'

maî fusion form of m̄-haî, otherwise, if not ; a.f.: uĕ-kwóh m̄-haî

maĭ don't! a.f.: m̄-hó!

ts'ui to urge, hasten, rush, press upon; maĭ ts'ui ngŏh tak kà*! 'don't rush me!'

t'aì so so 'beard, mustache, whisker'; t'aì 'to shave, to shave with razor'; t'aì so 'to shave', VO construction

saî mîn saî 'to wash, cleanse'; mîn 'face , surface, side'; saî mîn 'to wash face', VO construction

ts'aàt ngā ts'aàt 'to brush, rub, polish, a brush'; ngā 'tooth'; ts'aàt ngā 'to brush teeth', VO construction; ngā-ts'aàt* 'tooth brush'; ts'aàt haaî 'to polish shoes, shine shoes'; haaî-ts'aàt 'shoe brush'; ts'aàt shaam 'to brush clothes; shaam-ts'aàt 'clothes brush'

shoh t'aū shoh 'to comb, dress hair, a comb (AN: chèk)'; t'aū 'head, the chief, the first one'; shoh t'aū 'to comb, to comb hair', VO construction

oôn to change, exchange, replace; oôn shaam 'to change clothes'; oôn haaî 'to change shoes'; oôn ts'în* 'to exchange money'; oôn yān 'to replace personnel, to shift personnel assignment'

chaì-fûk a uniform, to overcome: synonym: kwan-fûk (military); oôn chaì-fûk 'to change uniform'

kím-uêt to review troops, inspection

yaŭ-tîng*la! tîng* 'for sure, of course, definitely'; yaŭ-tîng*-la! 'of course, there is'; huì-tîng*-la! 'of course (I) go'; shīk-tîng*-la! 'of course (I) eat'

tîng ready, to fix, fixed, decided , to decide, either... or...? ning-tîng...'to have...ready'; ning-tîng ti sut-shaam 'to have the shirts ready'; taaì-tîng ti ts'în* 'to bring some money along ready...'

sut-shaam shirt; AN: kîn

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

t'aai necktie, car tire; AN: t'iū

haaî shoes; AN: tuì 'pair', chèk 'one'

mât socks, stockings; AN: tuì 'pair', chèk 'one'

mô* hat, cap; AN: kîn, téng; kwan-mô* 'military cap'

fai-cheung cheung 'batch, emblem'; fai-cheung 'insignia'

haî-kòm-toh that is all

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: À-Chim, neĭ kam-yât iù kà ch'e mà?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Neĭ yaû iù kà ch'e ā? Iù laì tsô mi-yĕ à?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Ngŏh sheûng-chaù iù huì p'ò-t'aū* maaĭ yĕ, huì tsaâp-fòh p'ò* maaĭ sùng. Hâ-chaù yaû iù huì kaau shuí faì, tîn faì, mooî-heì faì, tîn-wâ* faì.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Kà ch'e kei-heì haāng-tak m̄-haî keí hó. Kân-loī yûng tîn-yaū, yûng yaū* yaû toh. Ch'oh-shī ngŏh tá-sùen seúng ning kà ch'e huì chíng. Keì-în neĭ iù huì kòm toh shuè, pat-uē ngŏh laū faan kà ch'e peí neĭ yûng pâ* la.

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Neĭ chan-haî liŭ-kaaí ngŏh, t'ūng-ts'îng ngŏh. Neĭ chan-haî yat-kòh hó cheûng-foo là.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Uē-kwóh ngŏh-teî ch'ŏ-tó ti ts'în*, ngŏh-teî ying-koi maaĭ toh kà ch'e. Yat-kà ngŏh yûng. Yat-kà neĭ yûng.

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Kóm tsaû chan hó là. Chan fong-pîn là. Neĭ ī-ka tîm faan hôk à? Hâ-chaù tîm faan laí à?

Sheûng-Sẑ: Waí yaŭ taàp pa-sẑ*, tîn-ch'e lŏh. Ngŏh iù faan-hôk là. Ā, ngŏh kei-foŏ m̄-keì-tak t'ūng neĭ tsìp măn t'im.

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Tsoì-kìn là! Siú-sam à!

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, do you need the car today?

M/Sgt Cheung: You need the car again? Why do you need the car?

Mrs: I'll have to do some shopping and buy some groceries this morning. I'll have to pay water, electricity, gas, and telephone bills this afternoon.

M/Sgt: The car doesn't run too well. It has been using quite a bit of gas and oil lately. At first I planned to take the car for repair. Now that you have to go to so many places, I'd better leave the car with you for your use.

Mrs: You are most understanding and sympathetic. You are a wonderful husband.

M/Sgt: If we ever save up some money, we should buy a second car. One for my use, and one for you.

Mrs: That would be wonderful. What a convenience! How will you get to school now? How will you come back this afternoon?

M/Sgt: The only thing for me to do is to take the bus or streetcar. I've got to go now. Gosh! I almost forgot to kiss you. Good-bye.

Mrs: Bye, dear! Be careful!

張太太：買舖費，電掙，呀？

張上士：野貨電費，一係用電掙，

太太：乜雜費，未算多處。

上士：做去費，近打咁罷啦。

嗎？

太太：你車黎，我去用。

上士：架要黎，好真係。

太太：要野，水幾時要？

上士：架要？買嘢要話唔多。

太太：日呀頭話既架，

上士：今車舖又電得又翻我啦。

太太：你架去畫，行油整留解夫

上士：架占，要要下費器用去我了丈

太太：你亞又畫．氣機，車如係好丈

上士：你上餸煤車油架不真個好丈啦。

太太：如果我地儲倒啲錢，我地應該買多

上士：架車．一架我用．一架你用．

太太：敢就真好啦．真方便啦．你而家點

上士：翻學呀？下畫點番黎呀？

太太：惟有搭巴士，電車囉．我要翻學啦．

上士：呀，我幾乎唔記得同你接吻添．

太太：再見啦！小心呀！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

READING MATERIAL

張太太今日有好多野要做．佢同張上士唔
士講．佢話，佢想要架車黎用．張上士話，
知道張太太要架車黎做乜野．張太太買餸；下
佢上晝要去舖頭買野，去雜貨舖買餸；下
晝又要去交水費，電費，煤氣費，電話費．

張上士話，嗰架車嘅機器多．要去咁多處，要
好，近來用電油，用油又多，所以佢留翻架車俾張太太用．
揸架車去整．既然張太太要去咁多野，所以佢留翻架車俾張太太用．
做咁多野，所以佢留翻架車俾張太太用．

張上士真係一個好丈夫．佢唔祇了解打
佢嘅太太，而且同情佢嘅太太添．佢又打
算儲多啲錢；敢，佢地可以買多一架車，
一架佢自己用，一架俾張太太用．敢，佢
地會方便好多．

張上士俾咗架車張太太，佢而家有車
翻學．點算好呢？佢惟有搭巴士啦！如果
搭唔倒巴士，就搭電車啦！

張上士而家翻學．佢幾乎唔記得同佢
嘅太太接吻．佢地接咗吻，張上士就去學
校．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

QUESTIONS

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* kam-yât mōng m̄-mōng à?

K'uǐ tím mōng à? Sheûng-chaù iù tsô ti mi-yě à?

K'uǐ hā̌-chaù yaû iù tsô pin ti yě à?

K'uǐ kòm mōng, iù tsô kòm toh yě; k'uǐ t'ūng Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kóng, seúng iú ti mi-yě à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kà ch'e kè kei-heì hó m̄-hó à?

Kân-loî kóh kà ch'e yûng tîn-yaū, yûng yaū* toh m̄-toh à?

Kóh kà ch'e kân-loî m̄-haî keí hó, ch'oh-shî k'uǐ tá-suèn tím à?

Keì-în k'uǐ seúng ning kà ch'e huì chíng, tím-kaaí k'uǐ yaû m̄-ning huì chíng à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tuì k'uǐ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* hó m̄-hó à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tuì Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* tím hó à?

K'uǐ tá-suèn ch'ŏ toh ti ts'în* tsô mi-yě à?

K'uǐ maaǐ toh yat-kà ch'e, yaŭ mi-yě yûng à?

K'uǐ peí-chóh kà ch'e Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* yûng, k'uǐ tsẑ-keí ts'ŏh mi-yě ch'e faan-hôk à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ǐ-ka faan-hôk, k'uǐ keì m̄-keì-tak t'ūng Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* tsìp măn à?

K'uǐ-teî tsìp-chóh măn, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tsaû tím à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kà AN for vehicle, airplane, machine, etc; kà fusion of kè + à

ch'e vehicle; heì ch'e 'automobile, motor car' often abbreviated as ch'e; AN: kà, pō (lit)

sheûng-chaù forenoon; a.f.: sheûng-nğ (more formal)

p'ò-t'aū* store, firm, shop; synonym: p'ò*

maaĭ yĕ to shop, shopping

tsaâp-fòh p'ò* tsaâp-fòh 'miscellaneous goods'; p'ò* 'store, firm, shop; tsaâp-fòh p'ò* 'grocery store'

hâ-chaù afternoon; a.f.: hâ-nğ (more formal)

kaau to hand to, to deliver to, to pay, to commit to, to communicate, friendship

shuí faì shuí 'water'; faì 'fee, due, expense, waste, lavish'; shuí faì 'water bill'; kaau shuí faì 'to pay water bill'

tîn faì tîn 'electricity, power'; tîn faì 'electricity bill'

mooĭ-heì faì mooĭ-heì 'gas'; mooĭ-heì faì 'gas bill'

tîn-wâ*faì tîn-wâ*'telephone'; tin-wa* faì 'telephone bill'

kei-heì machine, motor, engine

haāng to walk, to go, to travel, to move; the same character can be pronounced as hōng 'a row, a column'; hōng* 'company, firm, store'; hâng 'conduct, behavior'

kân-loĭ recently, lately

tîn-yaū* gasoline

yaū lubricant, oil, grease; a.f. yaū*

ch'oh-shĭ ch'oh 'prefix for the first to the tenth day of the month in lunar calendar'; shĭ 'time, date'; ch'oh-shĭ 'at first, in the beginning'; a.f. ch'oh-ch'oh

keì-în inasmuch as, if, since

laū-faan laū 'to remain, to keep, to put by, to bequeath, to detain'; faan 'back, re-, return'; laū-faan 'to reserve for, to keep, to save, to salvage'

peí to give, to let, to allow, direct and indirect object agent; when the direct object is placed in a tseung construction, peí 'to' is not omitted before the indirect object; although Chinese verbs have no formal passive voice, the agent of a received action can be specified by peí 'by'

liŭ-kaaí to understand, to comprehend, to assimilate

t'ūng-ts'îng to sympathize, sympathy

cheûng-foo husband (formal); a.f.: sin-shaang (polite), lŏ-kung (colloquial); lŏ-p'ŏh 'wife' (colloquial)

ts'ŏ to save (money, articles); synonym: haan, tsîng

ts'în* money, cash

fong-pîn convenient, to facilitate; a.f.: pîn-leî, leî-pîn

faan hôk to go to school (for schooling, daily routine)

waî-yaŭ waî (lit) 'only, and, but, with, is, an initial particle'; usually, it is untranslatable, used to connect subject and predicate; waî-yaŭ '...but to...', 'no choice', 'the only way'

taàp pa-sẑ* taàp 'to board, embark' (train, bus, airplane, boat, etc), 'to share' (as a rider in someone's car, table in a restaurant); kung-kûng heì-ch'e 'bus'; taàp pa-sẑ* 'to take a bus'

tîn-ch'e streetcar

kei-foŏ almost, nearly, narrowly, at the point of

tsìp măn tsìp 'to receive, to connect, successive'; măn 'to kiss, kiss mouth'; tsìp măn 'to kiss', VO construction

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Paâk Sheûng-Waì, neĭ mōng mà? Tuì-m-chuê, tuì-m̄-chuê. Ngŏh kaaú-iŭ neĭ.

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: M̄-kán-iù, m̄-kán-iù.

C: Ngŏh seúng t'ūng neĭ kóng keí kuì shuèt-wâ, tak mà?

P: Tak, yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à?

C: Mŏ-mat-tâk-pît-sẑ. Ni kòh laĭ-paaì-lûk haî ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kè shaang-yât. Yaû haî ngŏh-teî kè kìt-fan keí-nîm yât. Ngŏh-teî seúng ts'éng neĭ tò ngŏh-teî kè uk-k'eí shîk ts'aan pîn-faân che.

P: Ŏh. Mat kóm haàk-heì à. Toh-tsê sin là pòh.

C: M̄-shaí toh-tsê. Ni ts'ż ch'uî-chóh neĭ t'ūng Ch'ān Kaaù-Koon chi-ngoî, pat-kwòh chûng yaŭ keí waî* p'aāng-yaŭ. K'uĭ-teî toh-shò haî ĭ-ts'în tá-cheùng kè lŏ yaŭ.

P: Hó à. Neĭ seúng ngŏh laĭ-paaì-lûk keí tîm-chung tò neĭ shuè ne?

C: Taaî-yeùk* hâ-ng̃ lûk tîm-chung tsóh yaû*, hó mà? Ngŏh-teî sin yám keí pooi kai-meĭ tsaú, în-haû ngŏh-teî shîk maăn-ts'aan.

M/Sgt Cheung: Capt. White. Are you busy? Sorry to disturb you.

Capt White: Not at all.

C: I would like to talk to you. May I?

W: Certainly. What can I do for you?

C: Nothing in particular. This coming Saturday is my wife's birthday. It is also our wedding anniversary. We would like to ask you to have dinner with us at our home.

W: It is very thoughtful of you. Thank you.

C: You are welcome. This party would include you and Instructor Ch'ān, and a few friends of ours. Most of them were my friends during the war.

W: Wonderful. When should I come on Saturday?

C: Around 6 p.m. Is that all right with you? We will have a couple of cocktails before we have supper.

張上士：白上尉，你忙嗎？對唔住，對唔住．我攪擾你．

白上尉：唔緊要，唔緊要．

張：我想同你講幾句說話，得嗎？

白：得，有乜貴幹呀？

張：有乜特別事．呢個禮拜六係我嘅太太嘅生日．又係我地嘅結婚紀念日．我地想請你到我地嘅屋跧食餐便飯啫．

白：啊．乜咁客氣呀．多謝先啦嘞．

張：唔使多謝．呢次除咗你同陳教官之外，不過重有幾位朋友．佢地多數係以前打仗嘅老友．

白：好呀．你想我禮拜六幾點鐘到你處呢？

張：大約下午六點鐘左右，好嗎？我地先飲幾杯鷄尾酒，然後我地食晚餐．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

READING MATERIAL

今日係禮拜五．呢個禮拜六係張太太嘅生日，又係佢同張上士嘅結婚紀念日．佢地打算請啲老朋友去佢地嘅屋企食飯．

而家張上士喺學校處睇倒白上尉．張上士話，佢想同佢講幾句說話，攪擾佢幾分鐘．張上士又話，佢有也特別事，不過呢個禮拜六係佢同張太太嘅結婚紀念日，而且係張太太嘅生日．佢想請白上尉去佢屋企食餐便飯，高慶吓．張上士話，呢次除咗白上尉同陳教官之外，重有幾位舊朋友；佢地都係以前打仗嘅老友．

白上尉想知道禮拜六幾點鐘食飯．張上士叫白上尉大約喺六點鐘左右到佢嘅屋企，先飲幾杯鷄尾酒，然之後食晚飯．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

QUESTIONS

Kam-yât haî laĭ-paaì keí à?

Ni kòh laĭ-paaì lûk haî Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ yik-waâk haî Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* kè shaang-yât à?

Ni kòh laĭ-paaì lûk ch'uî-chóh haî Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* kè shaang-yât chi-ngoî, yaû haî mi-yĕ yât-tsź à?

K'uĭ-teî tá-suèn haí kóh yât tím-yeûng* ko-hìng-hă à?

Ī-ka Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ haí pin shuè à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ haí hôk-haaû shuè t'aí-tó pin-kòh à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'aí-tó Paâk Sheûng-Waì. K'uĭ t'ūng k'uĭ kóng ti mi-yĕ à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tím-kaaí ts'éng Paâk Sheûng-Sẑ shîk faân à?

Ni ts'ż̀ ch'uî-chóh ts'éng Paâk Sheûng-Waì t'ūng Ch'ān Kaaù-Koon chi-ngoî, chûng ts'éng pin-kòh t'im à?

Ni ti p'aāng-yaŭ haî ī-ka kè p'aāng-yaŭ, yik-waâk haî ĭ-ts'în tá-cheùng kè lŏ-yaŭ à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kiù Paâk Sheûng-Waì laĭ-paaì lûk keí tím-chung tò k'uĭ kè uk-k'eí à?

K'uĭ-teî sin yám kai-meĭ tsaú, în-haû shîk faân, haî m̄-haî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kaaú-iŭ to disturb, to bother; kaaú-iŭ neĭ! 'sorry to disturb you', idiomatic expression (IE)

kuì AN for shuèt-wâ 'words, sentence'

shuèt-wâ words, speech; kóng keí kuì shuèt-wâ 'to say a few words'

kwaì-kòn kwaì 'noble, expensive, your (honorific form)'; kòn 'business, to work, to do, tree trunk'; kwaì-kòn 'your honorable business'

yaŭ-mat-kwaì-kòn à? IE, what is your honorable business? what can I do for you?

tâk-pît special, peculiar, particular

sẑ is the most general word for affair, event, business, thing, work; AN: kîn; a.f.: sẑ-kòn

mŏ-mat-tâk-pît-sẑ IE, nothing particular

tò to come, arrive, reach, to; tò ngŏh shuè 'come to my place', 'to my place'; tò-chóh Meĭ-Kwòk 'arrived in America'

uk-k'eí home, quarters

pîn-faân ordinary meal, plain meal (humble form)

haàk-heì to stand on ceremony, humble, modest, be nice, formal, polite, courteous

mat-kòm-haàk-heì-à! IE, why stand on ceremony, it is very nice of you

toh-tsê thank you, many thanks; toh-tsê is different from m̄-koi in the manner that toh-tsê is for thanking someone who gives you something materially including treating you to a dinner, whereas m̄-koi is for thanking someone who does you a favor

toh-tsê-sin-là-pòh! IE, thank you in advance

m̄-shaí-toh-tsê! IE, you are welcome, not at all

ts'ẑ ts'ẑ 'a time, a series, an interval, next in order, secondary, inferior, lower'; ni ts'ẑ 'this time'

ch'uî-chóh (or ch'uî-hoi)...chi ngoî(or ĭ-ngoî) except, except for, besides...outside of, in addition to; ch'uî-chóh... chi ngoî is a tautological expression like meî...ĭ-ts'în 'before ...have not yet'

pat-kwòh 'not surpass,...only, but'

toh-shò the majority, most of the time, often, mostly

ĭ-ts'în ago, previously, formerly, before; ĭ-ts'în,haí... ĭ-ts'în or tsoî...ĭ-ts'în 'before...'; as haí shâp-tĭm ĭ-ts'în 'before ten o'clock'; lôk uĕ ĭ-ts'în 'before it rains'; tsoî is a more literary form for haí. Note the use of both meî and ĭ-ts'în in such a construction, 'before we have not talked about today's lesson.' Similarly, tsoî ĭ-king kóng-kwòh kam-yât kè kung fòh ĭ-haû 'after we have already talked about today's lesson.' The redundant use of meî and ĭ-king in such sentences is the usual idiom.

taaî-yeùk approximately, about, probably, generally speaking; synonym: yeùk (lit)

tsóh yaû* near to..., about..., this and that, left and right, in the presence of

taaî-yeùk*...chóh-yaû* about..., approximately...

yám keî pooi to have a few drinks, or yám-pooi 'to have a drink'

kai-meĭ tsaú meĭ 'tail'; kai-meĭ tsaú 'cocktail', a translation-loan from the English

maăn-ts'aan supper; a.f. maăn-faân

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Neĭ haí pin shuè chuê à? Neĭ wâ neĭ kè teî-chí peí ngŏh t'eng, hó mà?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh chuê haí Mûng-Tâk-Leĭ Faû, Taî-Seì Kaai, Saam Hô. Pat-kwòh m̄-yūng-î wán kà pòh.

P: Tím huì chì hó ne?

C: Neĭ chi-tò taaî-hôk haí pin shuè la. Kóh t'iū haî Taî-Yat Kung-Lô. Neĭ huì-tò taî-î kòh hūng-lûk tang, chuèn yaû. Haāng leŭng-kòh kaai-haú, tsoì chuèn tsóh. Kwòh yat-kòh kaai-haú. Kóh t'iū tsaû haî Taî-Seì Kaai. Ngŏh kè uk tsaû haí yaû-shaú-pîn taî-î kaan.

P: Ngŏh m̄-haî keí mîng-paâk, m̄-haî keí ts'ing-ch'óh. Ts'íng neĭ waâk yat-kòh teî-t'ō peí ngŏh t'aí, hó mà?

C: Hó à. Nā! Ngŏh ĭ-waî neĭ uē-kwóh chûng yaŭ mân-t'aî, ts'íng neĭ mân hă ni kaan tîn-yaū t'îng*. Pit-iù shî neĭ pat-fōng haí kóh shuè tá kòh tîn-wâ* peí ngŏh. Ngŏh tsaû shaî ch'e chut-laî tsìp neĭ. Taaì neĭ yâp-huì, hó mà?

P: Ni koh teî-t'ō kòm ts'ing-ch'óh, kòm ts'eūng-saì. Ngŏh seung-sùn m̄-ooĭ yaŭ mat mân-t'aî kà là.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

Capt White: Where do you live? Please tell me your address.

M/Sgt Cheung: I live at 3 Fourth Street Monterey. However, the place isn't easy to find.

W: What would be the best route of approach?

C: You know where the College is located. That would be Highway 1. When you come to the second traffic light, turn right. Travel for two blocks, turn left. Go on one block and that would be Fourth Street. My house is the second one on your right.

W: I am not quite clear. Will you kindly draw me a map?

C: Surely. Here you are! If you still have any problem in finding the place, I suggest you inquire from this service station. If it is necessary, it would be quite all right for you to give me a ring from there. I'll drive out there to meet you and to show you the way to my place.

W: This map is perfectly clear and very much in detail. I don't think I will encounter any trouble.

白上尉：你喺邊處住呀？你話你嘅地址俾我聽，好嗎？

張上士：我住喺夢特里埠第四街三號．不過唔容易搵㗎嘞．

白：點去至好呢？

張：你知道大學喺邊處啦．嗰條係第一公路．你去到第二個紅綠燈，轉右．行兩個街口，再轉左．過一個街口．嗰條就係第四街．我嘅屋就喺右手便第二間．

白：我唔係幾明白，唔係幾清楚．請你畫一個地圖俾我睇，好嗎？

張：好呀．喺！我以為你如果重有問題，請你問吓呢間電油亭．必要時你不妨喺嗰處打個電話俾我．我就駛車出黎接你．帶你入去，好嗎？

白：呢個地圖咁清楚，咁詳細．我相信唔會有乜問題㗎啦．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

READING MATERIAL

張上士請白上尉喺呢個禮拜六去佢嘅屋跧食飯．白上尉唔知道張上士嘅地址．佢而家問定先．張上士講俾白上尉知．

張上士住喺夢特里埠第四街三號．但係嗰處好難搵嘅．所以白上尉問張上士點樣去嗰處至好．

究竟張上士嘅屋點去嘅呢．係敢去嘅．第一公路處有一間大學．喺大學處行到第二個紅綠燈，就轉右，行兩個街口，再轉左，過一個街口，嗰條就係第四街．張上士嘅屋跧就喺第四街嘅右手便第二間屋．

白上尉聽咗呢啲說話．佢重唔係幾明白，唔係幾清楚．張上士畫一個地圖俾白上尉睇吓．但係佢擔心白上尉重會有問題．佢對白上尉話，如果白上尉重搵唔倒，可以問間電油亭．必要時不妨喺電油亭處打個電話俾張上士．張上士會駛車出黎接白上尉，帶白上尉去張上士嘅屋跧．

張上士嘅地圖畫得好清楚，好詳細．白上尉好明白．佢而家冇乜問題啦！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

QUESTIONS

Ni kòh laĭ-paaì-lûk, pin-kòh ts'éng Paâk Sheûng-Waì shîk faân à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì chi m̄-chi-tò Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè teî-chí à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì m̄-chi-tò Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè teî-chí; kóm, k'uĭ tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ chuê haí pin shuè à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè uk-k'eí yūng m̄-yūng-î wan à?

Kaù-kîng Taî-Seì Kaai tím huì kè ne?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè uk-k'eí haí Taî-Seì Kaai pin shuè à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kóng-chóh peí Paâk Sheûng-Waì chi, Paâk Sheûng-Waì mîng m̄-mîng-paâk à?

Keì-în Paâk Sheûng-Waì chûng m̄-haî keí mîng-paâk, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ chûng taam m̄-taam-sam Paâk Sheûng-Waì wán m̄-tó à?

Kóm, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kiù Paâk Sheûng-Waì tím tsô à?

Pit-iù shî, Paâk Sheûng-Waì ying-koi tím-yeûng* tsô chì hó à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tsìp-tó tîn-wa*, tsaû tím tsô à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè teî-t'ō waâk-tak kòm ts'ing-ch'óh, kòm ts'eūng-saì. Paâk Sheûng-Waì chûng yaŭ mŏ mân-t'aî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chuê to reside, to live, to dwell; verb suffix implying 'firmly, closely, fast', such as t'aí-chuê k'uǐ 'to stare at him, to watch him'; k'eǐ-chuê haí shuè 'to stand still, don't move!'

teî-chí address; dwelling place; a.f.: chuê-chí

wâ...peí ngŏh t'eng tell..., tell me...to listen; a.f.: wâ ...peí ngŏh chi 'tell me to know', kóng...pei ngŏh t'eng 'tell me ... to listen, tell me'; kóng...peí ngŏh chi 'tell me... to know, tell me...'

wâ peí ngŏh t'eng 'tell me'

Mûng-Tâk-Leǐ Monterey

faû city, town, port; synonym: shēng, shîng; Mûng-Tâk-Leǐ Faû 'City of Monterey'

taî prefix for ordinal numbers; taî-yat 'first, No. 1'; taî-î 'second, No. 2'

kaai-haú kaai 'street, road, avenue'; haú 'mouth, opening, hole, a port, speech, oral'; kaai-haú 'street intersection'

wán to look for; wán-tó 'to look for and found it'

taaî-hôk taaî 'big, large, great'; taaî-hôk 'university, college'

t'iū AN for street, road, rope, tongue, neck, tail, river

kung-lô highway; Taî-Yat Kung Lô 'Highway 1'

hūng-lûk tang hūng 'red'; lûk 'green'; hūng-lûk 'red and green'; tang 'light, lamp'; hūng-lûk-tang 'traffic light, signal light'

chuèn to turn, to change, to transfer; chuèn yaû 'turn to the right, to the right'; yaû-chuèn 'right turn'; chuèn tsóh ' turn to the left, to the left'; chóh-chuèn 'left turn'; chuèn-waan 'to make a turn; faan-chuèn-t'aū 'turn back'

kwòh to pass, to cross, to pass by; tsoì haāng-kwòh ti 'again walk past a little', kwòh here is used in the spatial sense of 'past, beyond, further'; yaû kwòh-chóh yat nîn 'again there has passed a year'; kwòh 'suffix for making explicit that an action or event did happen or has happened'

pîn side, pîn 'side, part'; ni pîn 'this side, over here'; kóh pîn 'that side, over there'; pin pîn 'which side?'; tsóh pîn 'left side, left'; tsóh-shaú pîn 'left-hand side'; yaû pîn 'right side, right'; yaû-shaú pîn 'right-hand side'; ts'în pîn 'front'; haû pîn 'rear, back, behind'; sheûng pîn 'above'; hâ pîn 'below, under'

kaan AN for houses and organizations

mîng-paâk to understand, clear, plain

ts'ing-ch'óh clear, lucid, legible, clean-cut

waâk to draw, to scrape, to strike(matches); waâk teî-t'ō 'to draw a map'

teî-t'ō map; AN: kòh, cheung, fuk

waâk peí ngŏh t'aí to show me by drawing; same pattern as wâ peí ngŏh t'eng, tsô peí ngŏh t'aí

nā interjection for calling attention to something, there! here!

mân-t'aî problem, question, doubt, issue, dispute, trouble

mân to ask, inquire

t'îng* pavilion, a stand, portico, arbor, summer-house; tîn-yaū t'îng* 'gasoline station'; ch'ā t'îng* 'tea house'; leūng t'îng* 'pavilion, summer-house'

pit-iù shî pit-iù 'necessary, essential, indispensable, bound to, a necessity, certainly'; pit-iù shî 'if necessary, during emergency, if needed'

pat-fōng it doesn't do any harm, harmless

tá tîn-wâ* tá 'to strike, to beat, to hit, to fetch, to make, to do, to go or to come, by way of', A common verb with many meanings; tá tîn-wâ* 'to telephone, make a phone call'; tá kòh tîn-wâ* 'to make a phone call'; VO construction

shaí ch'e shaí 'to drive (vehicle, vessel, craft); shaí ch'e 'to drive car', VO construction, a.f. cha ch'e

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

tsìp to meet, to welcome, to take with the hand, to accept, to connect, to join; tsìp ch'e 'to meet some one in a railway station or bus depot'; tsìp fei-kei 'to meet some one at the airport'; tsìp p'aāng-yaŭ 'to meet and welcome a friend'; tsìp tîn-wâ* 'to answer the phone'

taaì to accompany, take guide, lead, bring with one, belt, zone

ts'eūng-saì in detail, detailed, thorough, elaborate, in minute, minutely

seung-sùn to believe, to trust, to rely on; synonym: sùn, ĭ-waî, koó, nám

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ pò-kò. Kîm-uêt kè shî-haû, lîn-foô t'ūng sẑ-koon-cheúng wâ peí ngŏh chi, neĭ seúng kìn ngŏh.

Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng: Mŏ-ts'òh là. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ, ts'îng-ts'ŏh la.

C: M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

L: Ngŏh ĭ-king t'aí-kwòh neĭ kè î-lîng-yat kuén-tsung kaàp*. Yaŭ ti keí-lûk m̄-kìn-chóh. Yaŭ ti m̄-ts'aî-ts'uēn. Shóh-ĭ ngŏh kiù neĭ laî kìn ngŏh. Mân neĭ keí kuì shuèt-wâ che.

C: Oh! Haî me? Hó à. Ts'îng neĭ ts'uî-pîn mân la.

L: Kan-k uì ni kòh yān-sẑ kuén-tsung kaàp*, neĭ haí yat-kaú-î-yat nîn nğ-uêt shâp-saam yât haí Naú-Yeùk Shaáng, Naú-Yeùk Shĭ ch'ut shaì. Yat-kaú-saam-paàt nîn haí chung-hôk pat îp. Yat-kaú-seì-î nîn haí taaî-hôk pat îp. Pat-chóh îp chi haû, neĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

C: Yan-waî tong-shî haî T'aî-Î-Ts'ẑ Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn kè shī-haû, shóh-ĭ ngŏh pat îp chi-haû, tá-suèn ts'ūng kwan. Ying-koi yâp nğ Lûk-Kwan, Hung-Kwan, Hoí-Kwan, Hoí-Kwan Lûk-Chìn-Tuî*, yik-waâk Hoí-Ngôn Fōng-Uê Tuî* hó ne. King-kwòh ts'eūng-saì haaú-luî chi haû, ngŏh k'uèt-tîng yâp nğ Lûk-Kwan.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

M/Sgt Cheung: Capt. Leĭ, M/Sgt Cheung reporting, sir. I was told by the Executive Officer and the First Sergeant during the inspection that you wished to see me.

Capt Leĭ (Company Commander): That's right. Please be seated, Sgt Cheung.

C: Thank you, sir.

L: I have looked over your 201 file. Some of the records are missing and some are incomplete. That's the reason why I sent for you, and to ask you a few questions.

C: Oh, I see. Please feel free to ask me, sir.

L: According to this personnel file, you were born in New York City, N.Y. on 13 May 1921. You graduated from High School in 1938 and from College in 1942. After your graduation, what did you do?

C: That was during the World War II. When I graduated, I planned to join the military service. After careful consideration as to whether I should join Army, Air Force, Navy or Marine Corps, I decided to enlist in the Army.

張上士：李連長，張上士報告．檢閱嘅時候，連附同士官長話俾我知，你想見我．

李連長：有錯啦．張上士，請坐啦．

上士：唔該，唔該．

連長：我已經睇過你嘅二０一卷宗夾*．有啲紀錄唔見咗．有啲唔齊全．所以我叫你黎見我．問你幾句說話嗰．

上士：啊！係咩？好呀．請你隨便問啦．

連長：根據呢個人事卷宗夾*．你喺一九二一年出世，三月十一日喺紐約業．一紐約市一之為所該．

上士：因為我係一九三九年畢業嘅，畢業嘅時候，應軍經陸軍，紐約畢業咗，海．伍．學畢業．中學畢業．嘅時候，嘅軍，呢入戰從軍好定大算海隊*決？界打，鄴我軍防，後空岸後之海，軍或慮考陸抑細隊*伍時，我四世五月．二你係畢陸後，當以入戰詳過軍．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

READING MATERIAL

李連長睇過張上士嘅卷宗夾，有啲紀錄唔見咗，有啲紀錄唔齊全，佢叫連附同士官長話俾張上士知，話李連長想見吓佢，問佢幾句說話。

而家張上士去報告李連長，連長就根據二０一人事卷宗夾，問吓張上士以前嘅事。

根據二０一人事卷宗夾，張上士喺一九二一年五月十三日喺紐約者，紐約市出世，大學已好，詳細經過

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

QUESTIONS

Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng t'aí-kwòh Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè î-lîng-yat kuén-tsung kaàp*meî à?

Kóh kòh kuén-tsung kaàp* ti keí-lûk tîm à?

Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng kiù Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tsô mi-yĕ à?

Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng kìn-tó Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè shî-haû, tsaû kan-kuì mi-yĕ t'ūng k'uĭ kóng à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ keí shî ch'ut shaì kà?

K'uĭ haí pin shuè ch'ut shaì à?

K'uĭ mi-yĕ nîn haí chung-hôk pat îp à?

K'uĭ mi-yĕ nîn taaî-hôk pat îp à?

K'uĭ pat-îp kè shî-haû keí suì à?

Tong-shî haî mi-yĕ shî-haû à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ pat-chóh îp chi haû, k'uĭ tá-suèn tsô mi-yĕ à?

Tong-shî k'uĭ hóh-ĭ tîm tsô à?

King-kwòh ts'eūng-saì haaú-luî chi haû, k'uĭ k'uèt-tîng tîm tsô à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lîn-cheúng company commander

pò-kò to report, report

t'aū-sin previously, a while ago, at first; a.f.: sin-t'aū

kè shî-haû shî-haû 'time, length of time'; kè shî-haû 'when...', 'during...'

lîn-foô Company executive officer

sẑ-koon-cheúng first sergeant

kìn to see, to meet, to interview; m̄-kìn-chóh 'lost, missing, misplaced'

ts'íng-ts'ŏh ts'ŏh 'to sit, to sit down'; ts'íng-ts'ŏh 'please sit down, please be seated'

kuén-tsung kaàp* kuén-tsung 'archive, records of cases, file'; kaàp 'folder, to press, to squeeze, to pick up pincers or with chopsticks'; kuén-tsung kaàp* 'file folder, file'

keî-lûk records, recorder, to record, to place on record, honorably recorded;a.f: keî-lûk

ts'aî-ts'uēn ts'aî 'even, all, complete'; ts'aî-ts'uēn 'complete, fully prepared'; m̄-ts'aî-ts'uēn (a.f.: m̄-ts'aî)'incomplete'

me interrogative particle; the interrogative particle me added to a statement changes it into a question implying surprise or incredulity;'is it really true that...?' 'Do you mean to say that...?'

kan-kuì according to, in accordance with, to base on, basis, foundation

yān-sẑ personnel, personnel administration

Naú-Yeùk Shĭ Naú-Yeùk 'New-York'; shĭ 'city, market, fair'; Naú-Yeùk Shĭ 'New-York city'

ch'ut shaì to be born, VO contruction

chung-hôk high school, middle school

pat îp to graduate, VO construction

...chi haû after..., after this, afterwards; synonym: ǐ-haû

yan-waî because, since, owing to, due to

tong-shî when..., at the time of..., at that time..., that period of time, right at...that time, during the time when..., while; a.f.: kóh-chân-shî

Taî-Î Ts'ż Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn shaì-kaaì 'world'; chìn 'war, combat, operation, battle, campaign'; Taî-Î Ts'ż Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn 'World War II, Second World War'

ts'ŭng kwan to join the military service, to enlist, VO construction

king-kwòh to undergo, to pass by, to go through, to pass through; king-kwòh...chi haû 'after going through...'

haaú-luî to consider, to deliberate, to think over, to analyze; king-kwòh haaú-luî chi haû 'after thinking it over'

yâp nğ to enlist, to induct, induction, VO construction

Lûk-Kwan Army, land forces, ground troops

Hung-Kwan Air Force

Hoî-Kwan Navy

Hoî-Kwan Lûk-Chìn-Tuî* tuî 'a group, a crowd, a band'; Hoî-Kwan Lûk-Chìn-Tuî* 'Marine Corps'; a f.: Lûk-Chìn-Tuî*

Hoî-Ngôn Fōng-Uê Tuî* hoi-ngôn 'coast, sea coast'; fōng-uê 'to resist, to defend'; Hoî-Ngôn Fōng-Uê Tuî* 'Coast Guard'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

ORAL MATERIAL

Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng: Neĭ yâp nğ chi haû, tsô mi-yĕ à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh yâp nğ chi haû, peî p'aaì huì san-ping fàn-lîn ch'uè shaû kei-poón fàn-lîn. Shaû-uēn kei-poón fàn-lîn chi haû, ngŏh yâp haû-pó kwan-koon hôk-haaû. Pat îp chi haû, ngŏh peî waí-yâm tsô shiù-waì.

L: Haû-loî tím à? Ts'íng neĭ kóng lôk-huì la.

C: Ngŏh peî p'aaì huì Au-Chau. Chìn-Shìng Au-Chau-Yât chi haû, mŏ-keî-noî*, ngŏh shing tsô chung-waì, peî p'aaì huì À-Chau. Chìn-Shìng Yât-Poón Yât chi haû, ngŏh shing tsô sheûng-waì. Haû-loî peî p'aaì faan-laî Meĭ-Kwòk.

L: Neĭ keí shî mĭn chik kà?

C: Ngŏh haí yat-kaú-seì-lûk nîn ts'at-uêt wîng-uê mĭn chik kè.

L: Neĭ leî-hoi Lûk-Kwan chi haû, neĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

C: Ngŏh haí chìng-foó shuè tá kung. Ngŏh haí Wā-Shîng-Tûn Lûk-Kwan Pô shuè tsô kung.

L: Neĭ haí Nğ-Kòk Taaî-Hâ taam-yâm ti mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

C: Tong-shî ngŏh haî kwan mān yăn-uēn. Taân-haî ngŏh shóh taam-yâm kè yâm-mô toh-shò haî pó-mât sẑ-hông, yaŭ-uē tsuêt-tuì kei-mât, kîk kei-mât, kei-mât, kóm-yeûng* kè yĕ.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

Capt Lei: After you enlisted, what did you do?

M/Sgt Cheung: I was sent to a training center where I received my basic training. After that I went to the officer candidate school. Upon my completion, I was commissioned a 2nd Lt.

L: What happened then? Please continue.

C: I was assigned to Europe. Shortly after V-E Day, I was promoted to the rank of 1st Lt. I was then assigned to the Far East. After V-J Day I was promoted to Captain. After that I was transferred back to the United States.

L: When were you discharged?

C: I was honorably discharged in July 1946.

L: What did you do after you left the service?

C: I was working for the U.S. Government. I was employed by the Department of the Army in Washington.

L: What kind of work did you do in the Pentagon?

C: I was a Department of the Army civilian. The work that I was doing mostly dealt with classified matters, such as top secret, secret, confidential, and things of that nature.

李連長：你入伍之後，做乜野呀？

張上士：我入伍之後，被派去新兵訓練處受基本訓練。受完基本訓練之後，我入候補軍官學校。畢業之後，我被委任做少尉。

連長：後來點呀？請你講落去啦。

上士：我被派去歐洲。戰勝歐洲日之後，有幾耐，我升做中尉，被派去亞洲。戰勝日本日之後，我升做上尉。後來被派翻黎美國。

連長：你幾時免職㗎？

上士：我喺一九四六年七月禁譽免職嘅。

連長：你離開陸軍做乜野呀？

上士：我喺部隊工作呀？

連長：你當時嘅任如嘅有樣。

上士：我任職陸軍處五大廈文多，機密，敢擔人數極少，任員係機密，保密嘅。我任職陸軍處工務係事機密，敢擔任如嘅有樣。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

READING MATERIAL

張上士入伍之後，被派去新兵訓練處受基本訓練．受完基本訓練之後，佢入候補軍官學校再受訓練．畢業之後，佢被委任做陸軍少尉．

後來佢被派去歐洲．戰勝歐洲日之後冇幾耐，佢升做中尉，被派去亞洲．戰勝日本日之後，第二次世界大戰打完啦；佢升做上尉．後來被派翻黎美國．

一九四六年七月，佢榮譽免職；佢離開陸軍．佢離開咗陸軍之後，喺政府處打工，喺華盛頓陸軍部處做工．當時佢係一個美國政府嘅軍文人員．到底佢喺五角大廈擔任啲乜野工作呢？

佢所擔任嘅任務係保密事項有如絕對機密，極機密，機密，敢樣嘅野．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ yâp ńg chi haû, peî p'aaì huì pin shuè shaû kei-poón fàn-lîn à?

K'uĭ shaû-uēn kei-poón fàn-lîn chi-haû, tsoì huì pin-shuè shaû fàn-lîn à?

K'uĭ haí haû-pó kwan-koon hôk-haaû pat-chóh îp chi haû, peî waĭ-yâm tsô mi-yĕ à?

Haû-loî k'uĭ peî p'aaì huì pin shuè kung-tsòk à?

K'uĭ keí shî shing tsô chung-waì à?

K'uĭ shing-chóh tsô chung-waì chi haû, peî p'aaì huì pin shuè à?

K'uĭ keí-shî shing tsô sheûng-waì à?

Haû-loî k'uĭ yaû peî p'aaì huì pin shuè à?

K'uĭ keí shî leî-hoi Lûk-Kwan à?

K'uĭ leî-hoi-chóh Lûk-Kwan chi haû, haí pin shuè tá kung à?

Tong-shî k'uĭ haí Wā-Shîng-Tûn Ńg-Kòk Taaî-Hâ taam-yâm ti mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

peî by, passive voice indicator, suffer, experience

p'aaì to send, to depute, to assign, to deliver; a.f.: p'aaì 'political social party, association'

san-ping fàn-lîn ch'uè san 'new'; ping 'soldier'; san-ping 'recruit'; fàn-lîn 'to train, training'; fàn-lîn ch'uè 'training center, training section'; san-ping fàn-lîn ch'uè 'recruit training center'

shaû to receive, to endure, to suffer

kei-poón fàn-lîn kei-poón 'basic, fundamental, foundation'; kei-poón fàn-lîn 'basic training'

Haû-Pó Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû haû-pó 'reserve, candidate'; Haû-Pó Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû 'Officers Candidate School'

waí-yâm to empower, to appoint, to authorize, commission, authorization, appointment

haû-loî afterwards, later, eventually

kóng-lôk-huì to go on, to continue talking; tsô-lôk-huì 'to continue the service, to keep working on it'

Au-Chau chau 'continent'; Au-Chau 'Europe'; À-Chau 'Asia'; Meĭ-Chau 'America'; Naām-Meĭ-Chau 'South America'; Paak-Meĭ-Chau 'North America'; Fei-Chau 'Africa'; Ò-Chau 'Australia'

Chìn-Shìng Au-Chan-Yât shìng 'victory, triumph, to win, to gain'; chìn-shìng 'to win the war, to win the battle, to defeat the enemy, to defeat the opponent'; Chìn-Shìng Au-Chau-Yât 'V-E Day'

mŏ-keí-noî not very long (time), very soon, shortly after ..;a.f.: mŏ-keí-noî*

shing to promote, to ascend, to advance in office, to arise

wĭng-uê mĭn chik mĭn 'to excuse, to exempt, to spare, to evade, to avoid, to forego'; chik 'official duty, office, official title'; mĭn chik 'to discharge from military service, to dismiss from official duty', VO construction; wĭng-uê 'honorable, honorary, honor'; wĭng-uê mĭn chik 'honorable discharge'

leî-hoi to leave, to separate, to depart, to quit, to be away

chìng-foó government, governmental. There are three branches in the U.S. Federal Government: Hāng-Chìng 'Executive', Lâp-Faàt 'Legislative', Sz-Faàt 'Judicial'. There are five branches in the Chinese Nationalist Government: Hāng-Chìng 'Executive', Lâp-Faàt 'Legislative', Sz-Faàt 'Judicial', Kaam-ch'aàt 'Control', Haaú-Shî 'Examination'

tá kung to work, to have a job, to be employed, VO construction; a.f.: tsô kung, tsô sẑ, paân sẑ

Wā-Shîng-Tûn Washington

Nǧ-Kòk Taaî-Hâ kòk 'corner'; taaî-hâ 'large building'; Nǧ-Kòk Taaî-Hâ 'Pentagon'

kwan-mān yān-uēn mān 'civilian, civil, literature, language'; yān-uēn 'personnel, team workers'; kwan-mān yān-uēn 'Department of Defense civilian, Department of the Army civilian'

shóh whom, which, that which, what; shóh is an emphatic adverb, with the force of 'actually, indeed, do...' occurring always between the subject and the verb, as shóh kóng 'actually talk about, do talk about.' Because shóh is used mostly in kè constructions, which are usually translatable by relative clauses using 'whom, which, what,' it will be useful to associate shóh with such relatives, although grammatically it is still an adverb. Thus, ngǒh shóh kóng kè yān 'I actually talk about man, --the man (whom) I am talking about' k'uǐ shóh shîk kè yě 'the things (which) he eats'

yâm-mô mission, assignment, task, role, duty

pó-mât sẑ-hông pó-mât 'classified, provision of security, security'; hông 'item'; sẑ-hông 'item, point, matter'; pó-mât sẑ-hông 'classified matter'

yaǔ-uē for instance, for example, namely, just as...as; a.f.: hó-ts'ǯ, laî-uē

tsuêt-tuì kei-mât tsuêt-tuì 'absolute, absolutely definitely, 100%'; kei-mât 'secret, confidential'; tsuêt-tuì kei-mât 'top secret'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

kîk kei-mât kîk 'extremely, very'; kîk kei-mât 'secret'

kei-mât confidential; a.f.: mât

kóm-yeûng* kè yĕ things like..., things such as...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

ORAL MATERIAL

Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng: Neĭ keí shî faan-laî Lûk-Kwan? Keî shî heí-shaú ni ts'ż kè în-yîk kà?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh tsẑ-ts'ūng yat-kaú-seî-lûk nîn mĭn chik chi haû, ngŏh pat-lau to haí uê-peî pô-tuî* fûk-mŏ, haî yat-kòh uê-peî kwan-koon---yat-kòh sheûng-waì. Hŏn-Chîn faàt-shaang kè shî-haû, Lûk-Kwan kiù ngŏh faan-laî în-yîk.

L: Neĭ haí Hŏn-Kwòk keí noî à?

C: Ch'a-m̄-toh leŭng nîn kòm noî.

L: Tong-shî neĭ tsô mi-yĕ kaai-k'ap, tsô mi-yĕ koon-chik à?

C: Tong-shî ngŏh haî sheûng-waì. Ngŏh haî Taî-Paàt Kwan, Taî-Î Kwan-Tŭēn, Taî-Ts'at Sz, Taî-Yat-T'uēn, Taî-Î Yîng, Kaàp Lîn Chí-Fai Koon.

L: Neĭ haí mi-yĕ waān-kíng chi hâ, peî kòng chik kà?

C: Hŏn-Kwòk yau chìn chi haû, Lûk-Kwan-Pô ts'oî uēn. Hó m̄-hó ts'oí, ngŏh haî k'eî-chung chi yat-kòh.

L: Neĭ chan-haî m̄-hâng-wân là. Neĭ haû-loî tîm-yeûng* à?

C: Yan-waî ngŏh haí kwan-tuî* kòm toh nîn, tong ping ĭ-king haî ngŏh kè chik-îp. Shóh-ĭ ngŏh haí Lûk-Kwan shuè kaì-tsûk fûk-mô.

Capt Lei: When did you come back to the Army? When did you start to serve this tour of active duty?

M/Sgt Cheung: Since my discharge in 1946 I have continuously served in the reserve unit. I was a reserve officer --- a captain. When the Korean War broke out, I was called to active duty by the Army.

L: How long were you in Korea?

C: Almost two years.

L: What was your rank during that time? What was your duty?

C: I was a captain. I was the Commanding Officer of Company A, 2nd Battalion, 1st Regiment, 7th Division, 1st Corps, Eighth US Army.

L: Under what circumstances were you demoted?

C: After the Korean Armistice, there was a reduction in force in the Army. Unfortunately, I was included in the reduction.

L: Too bad. You were unfortunate. What happened then?

C: Since I had been in the Army for so many years, and military service had been my career, I decided to stay on in the Army.

李連長：你幾時翻黎陸軍？幾時起首呢次嘅現役㗎？

張上士：我自從一九四六年免職之後，我不㗎都喺預備部隊服務，係一個預備軍官——一個上尉．韓戰發生嘅時候，陸軍叫我翻黎現役．

連長：你喺韓國幾耐呀？

上士：差唔多兩年咁耐．

連長：當時你做乜野階級，做乜野官職呀？

上士：當時我係第八軍，第二營，甲連指揮官．

連長：你喺乜野環境之下被降職㗎？

上士：韓國休戰之後，我係其中之一個．好唔好彩，我係唔幸運嘅軍隊部裁員．好唔好真為我嘅職業．

連長：你因為我嘅服務．

上士：後來點樣呀？

陸軍處繼續當兵已經係咁多年，所以我喺

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

READING MATERIAL

張上士自從一九四六年免職之後，佢不嘢都嘢預備部隊服務，係一個預備軍官，一個陸軍上尉．韓戰發生嘅時候，陸軍叫佢翻黎，做一個現役軍官．

佢嘅韓國差唔多兩年咁耐．當時佢嘅階級係上尉，佢嘅部隊係第八軍，第一軍團，第七師，第一團，第二營，甲連．

既然佢當時係上尉，點解而家係上士呢？原來佢係被降職嘅．究竟佢嘅乜野環境之下，被降職嘅呢？佢嘅經過係敢嘅．

韓國休戰之後，陸軍部裁員．好唔好彩，佢係其中嘅一個，佢被裁咗．因為佢嘅軍隊咁多年，當兵就係佢嘅職業，所以佢繼續嘅陸軍處服務做一個陸軍上士．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tsẑ-ts'ūng yat-kaú-seì-lûk nîn mĭn chik chí haû, k'uĭ pat-lau to haí pin-shuè kung-tsòk à?

K'uĭ haí uê-peî pô-tuî* tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

K'uĭ keí shî faan-laí Lûk-Kwan tsô în-yîk kwan-koon kà?

K'uĭ haí Hōn-Kwok keí noî* à?

Tong-shî k'uĭ kè kaai-k'ap haî mi-yĕ à?

Tong-shî k'uĭ kè koon-chik haî mi-yĕ à?

Tong-shî k'uĭ kè pô-tuî* haî mi-yĕ à?

Hōn-Chìn kè shî-haû, k'uĭ haî sheûng-waì, lîn-cheúng; Hōn-Chìn chi haû, k'uĭ tím à?

Hōn-Chìn chi haû, k'uĭ tím-kaaí ooĭ peî kòng chik kà?

Tím-kaaí k'uĭ kòm seúng haí Lûk-Kwan shuè tsô sẑ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

heí-shaú to begin, to commence, to start

în-yîk în 'now, the present time'; yîk 'military service, campaign, battle'; în-yîk 'active duty, active service'

tsẑ-ts'ūng... since..., from...on, ever since...; tsẑ-ts'ūng...chi haû 'since...'

pat-lau up to the present time, heretofore, all the time, always; synonym: yat-heùng

uê-peî pô-tuî* uê-peî 'to prepare, to get ready, to reserve'; pô-tuî* 'unit, outfit'; uê-peî pô-tuî* 'reserve troops, reserve unit, reserve force'

fûk-mô to serve, to work, to devote or to render service to...

uê-peî kwan-koon reserve officer; chìng-kw'ai kwan-koon 'regular (Army) officer'

Hōn-Chìn Hōn 'abbreviation of Hōn-Kwòk' 'Korea'; a.f.: Ko-Laî, Ch'iū-Sin. Hōn-Chìn 'Korean War'

faàt-shaang to break out, to occur, to happen, to take place, outbreak, occurrence

ch'a-m̄-toh almost, approximately, not very different, almost the same, not far out

kaai-k'ap rank, class (social)

koon-chik koon 'officer, official'; chik 'duty, title, job'; koon-chik 'official title, official capacity, official position'

kwan-tuî* troop, military force, army, U.S. Army Units; kwan 'army'; kwan-t'uēn 'corps'; sz 'division'; t'uēn 'regiment'; yîng 'batallion'; p'aaû-pıng lîn 'battery'; lîn 'company'; p'aaî- 'platoon'; paan 'squad'

Kaàp first, A, chief, armor; Kaàp Lîn 'Company A'

chî-fai koon chî-fai 'to command'; chî-fai koon 'commanding officer, commanding general, commander'

waān-kîng circumstance, condition, situation, environment

hai...chi hâ under the..., under the condition or situation of...

hai...waān-kíng chi hâ under the circumstance of...

kòng chik kòng 'to demote, to descend, to fall, to go down, to drop'; kòng chik 'to demote from the position or rank, to degrade, downgrade, VO construction'

yau chìn yau (lit) 'to rest, to cease, to desist, do not'; yau chìn 'truce, armistice, cease-fire, termination of hostilities

ts'oí uēn ts'oí 'to cut out, to cut off, to diminish, to reduce'; uēn 'personnel, employee'; ts'oí uēn 'reduction in force, to lay off'

hó-ts'oí ts'oí 'luck, fortune'; hó-ts'oí 'lucky, fortunate'; m̄-hó-ts'oí 'unlucky, unfortunate, unfortunately'; a.f. hâng-wân

k'eí-chung chi yat k'eí-chung (lit) 'among..., in the midst of'; k'eí-chung chi yat 'one of them'

tong ping to join the military service, to be a soldier, VO construction

chik-îp profession, occupation, job

kaì-tsûk to continue, to keep on

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

ORAL MATERIAL

Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng: Kan-kuì neĭ kè keí-lûk, neĭ haî Taî-Î-Ts'ż Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn t'ūng Hōn-Chìn kè ying-hūng. Neĭ tuì kwòk-ka t'ūng Lûk-Kwan yaŭ m̄-shiú kùng-hìn, m̄-shiú kung-lō.

Cheung Sheûng-Sż: Lîn-Cheúng, neĭ kwòh-tseúng che. Ni ti waâk-ché haî ngŏh hâng-wân tak kè chi mà. M̄-chîk-tak kóng kè.

L: M̄-hó kóm wâ. Mat neĭ kòm haàk-heì, kòm him-hui à. Chiù ngŏh poón-yān laî t'aí, neĭ tik-k'òk haî yat-kòh chik-îp kwan-yān, mō-faân kwan-yān là.

C: Ngŏh ĭ-wŏng kè shîng-kung waâk-ché toh-sò haî yan-waî ngŏh yaŭ hó kè sheûng-sz, hó kè t'ūng-liū, hó kè hâ-shûk. Shóh-ĭ ooĭ yaŭ kóm che.

L: Neĭ tá-sheung-kwòh keí ts'ż. Mooĭ ts'ż keî-foō tá-seî. Neĭ kè kîn-hong tím à?

C: Ŏh, ngŏh hó t'òk-laaî. Kîn-hong hó hó. Tsuì-kân haí i-uên* kím-îm t'aî-kaàk. I-shaang t'ūng hon-oô wâ, ngŏh kè kîn-hong fei-sheūng chi hó.

L: Haî kòm toh là. Cheung Sheûng-Sż. M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

C: M̄-shaí m̄-koi, Lîn-Cheúng.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

Capt Lei: According to your records, you were a World War II and Korean War hero. You have rendered meritorious and faithful service to the country and to the Army.

M/Sgt Cheung: Thank you, Captain. Perhaps I was just simply lucky. That was not worthwhile mentioning.

L: Please do not say that. You are always so modest and humble. From my point of view, you certainly are a professional soldier and a serviceman of good example.

C: Sir, perhaps much of my success in the past was due to the fact that I had some able superiors, colleagues and subordinates; without them, I would not have accomplished this.

L: You were wounded a number of times, and each time you were almost killed. How is your health?

C: Very well, sir. I am as fit as a fiddle. I had a physical examination recently, and the doctor and nurses said my physical condition was perfect.

L: That will be all, Sgt Cheung. Much obliged.

C: You are very welcome, sir.

李連長：根據你嘅紀錄，你係第二次世界大戰同韓戰嘅英雄．你對國家同陸軍有唔少貢獻，唔少功勞．

張上士：連長，你過獎啫．呢啲或者係我幸運得嘅之嗎．唔值得講嘅．

連長：唔好敢話．乜你咁客氣，咁謙虛呀．照我本人黎睇，你的確係一個職業軍人，模範軍人啦．

上士：我以往嘅成功或者多數係因為我有好嘅上司，好嘅同僚，好嘅下屬．所以會有敢啫．

連長：你打傷過幾次．每次幾乎打死．你嘅健康點呀？

上士：啊，我好託賴．健康好好．最近喺醫院檢驗體格．醫生同看護話，我嘅健康非常之好．

連長：係咁多啦．張上士，唔該，唔該．

上士：唔使唔該，連長．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

READING MATERIAL

根據二０一人事卷宗夾嘅紀錄，張上士係第二次世界大戰同韓戰嘅英雄．佢對國家同陸軍有唔少嘅貢獻，唔少嘅功勞．

佢打傷過幾次，每次幾乎打死，但係佢而家嘅健康重好好．最近佢喺醫院處檢驗體格．醫生同看護都話佢嘅健康非常之好．

佢唔祇對國家同陸軍有好大嘅貢獻同功勞；而且對佢嘅上司，同僚，下屬都好好．佢又係一個好客氣，好謙虛嘅人．佢以往做得咁好，做得咁成功，多數係因為佢有好嘅上司，好嘅同僚，好嘅下屬．

照敢黎睇，佢的確係一個模範軍人，職業軍人啦．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ haî keí-shî kè ying-hūng à?

K'uĭ tuì kwòk-ka t'ūng lûk-kwan yaŭ mŏ kùng-hìn, yaŭ mŏ kung-lō à?

K'uĭ tá-sheung-kwòh keí ts'ż, mooĭ ts'ż sheung-tak tím à?

K'uĭ î-ka kè kîn-hong tím à?

Tsuì-kân k'uĭ huì i-uên* shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?

K'uĭ haî i-uên* kím-îm t'aí-kaàk kè shî-haû, i-shaang t'ūng hon-oô tím wâ à?

K'uĭ tuì kwòk-ka t'ūng lûk-kwan kòm yaŭ kùng-hìn; k'uĭ tuì k'uĭ kè sheûng-sz, t'ūng-liū t'ūng hâ-shûk tím à?

K'uĭ ĭ-wŏng kè sheûng-sz, t'ūng-liū, hâ-shûk tím à?

K'uĭ ĭ-wŏng kè shîng-kung, waâk-ché yan-waî mi-yĕ à?

Chiù kóm laî t'aí, k'uĭ haî yat-kòh tím-yeûng* kè kwan-yān à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ying-hūng hero, nuĭ ying-hūng 'heroine'; ying-hūng hō-kît (lit) hero

shiú few, a little, scarce, seldom, short of, briefly; m-shiú 'many, much, a great deal, tremendous'

kung-lō merit, meritorious service.

kwòh-tseúng tseúng 'to praise, to award prize, award, prize'; kwòh-tseúng 'undue praise'; neĭ kwòh-tseúng che 'ie. you overpraise me'

waâk-ché perhaps, very likely, it may be that, or else, or if

chîk-tak worthy, it pays, to deserve; m̄-chîk-tak 'not worthy, it does not deserve'; m̄-chîk-tak-kóng 'ie. no use to mention, it is not worthy of mention'

m̄-hó kóm wâ don't say that, please don't say this

him-hui humble, modest

poón-yān personal, oneself; synonym: tsz̄-keĭ; ngŏh poón-yān 'I personally...', 'I myself'; ngŏh tsz̄-keĭ 'I myself'

chiù...laĭ t'aĭ in view of...; chiù ngŏh poón-yān laĭ t'aĭ 'from my point of view'

tik-k'òk definitely, certainly, undoubtedly, out of question

mō-faân exemplary, example, model, pattern

ĭ-wŏng bygone days, in the past, formerly; synonym: ĭ-ts'ĭn, ts'ūng-ts'ĭn

sheûng-sz superior, supervisor

t'ūng-liū colleague, co-worker; a.f.: t'ūng-sz̄

hâ-shûk subordinate

sheung wounded, hurt, wound, injury; tá-sheung 'to be wounded through battle, fighting, or beating'

mooĭ each, every

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

sei̍ to die, dead, death; tá-sei̍ 'to die through battle, fighting, or beating'

kîn-hong health, healthy

t'ò̍k-laai̍ IE, blessed, well, fine

tsuì-kân tsuì 'superlative degree, the most...'; tsui̍-kân 'most recently, lately, recently'

i-uên* hospital, dispensary.

kím-îm t'ai̍-kaàk kím-îm (kím-ch'ā) 'to examine, to inspect'; t'ai̍-kaàk 'physical condition, body, physique'; kím-îm t'ai̍-kaàk 'physical examination'; a.f.: kím-ch'ā t'ai̍-kaàk, t'ai̍-kaàk kím-ch'ā, t'ai̍-kaàk kím-îm

i-shaang physician, medical doctor, medical practioner, surgeon

hon-oô nurse

fei-sheung chi extremely, exceedingly; a.f.: kî̍k, kî̍k chi, chi kî̍k

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Ni kòh laĭ-paaì-lûk, laĭ-paaì, ngŏh-teî yaŭ hó toh yĕ tsô. Ngŏh seung-sùn tsuì hó kè paân-faàt waâk-chĕ haî chaàp-chuê haí yat-cheung chí shuè. Kóm tsaû, yat-yeûng to m̄-ooĭ mōng-keì, yat-yeûng to m̄-ooĭ kaaú luên là.

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: Tuì là. Neĭ yat-lô kóng, ngŏh yat-lô chaàp tai, hó mà?

Sheûng-Sẑ: T'ing-yât laĭ-paaì-lûk, chiu-t'aū-tsó, ngŏh tá-suèn t'ūng ti saì-man-tsaí waán hă, taaì k'uĭ-teî wân-tûng hă. Hâ-chaù ngŏh seúng huì maaĭ ti yĕ. T'ing-maăn ngŏh-teî ts'íng haàk. Neĭ ne?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Yan-waî t'ing-maăn ts'éng haàk, ngŏh iù huì tsaâp-fòh p'ò* maaĭ sùng. Ngŏh ooĭ hó m̄-tak-haān kà là.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Haû-yât laĭ-paaì ne? Ngŏh-teî tsô mi-yĕ hó ne?

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Ngŏh-teî ying-koi huì laĭ-paaì-t'ōng tsuî-tsaâp. Hâ-ng̃ ngŏh-teî huì yaū hă ch'e-hōh*, kìn hă p'aāng-yaŭ, wán k'uĭ-teî ts'ŏh hă, k'ing hă, hó mà?

Sheûng-Sẑ: Hó à, mooĭ-fūng laĭ-paaì, ngŏh-teî pat-lau to haî kóm tsô, ĭ-king yeŭng-shîng yat-chung leūng-hó kè tsaâp-kwaàn.

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Taân-faān tsô sẑ, uē-kwóh uê-sin yaŭ sin-kìn chi mîng, ts'uēn-p'oōn kaì-waâk, tò shî yaŭ haî-t'úng kóm tsô, tsaû m̄-ooĭ shoh-uē, m̄-ooĭ lûn-chûn, m̄-ooĭ pa-paì kà là.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

M/Sgt Cheung: We have quite a number of things to do this week-end. Perhaps the best thing is to jot them down on a piece of paper, so that we won't forget any item or get confused.

Mrs. Cheung: You are absolutely right. I'll jot down the items as you mention them.

M/Sgt: Tomorrow, Saturday morning, I plan to spend some time with the children and do some exercises with them. In the afternoon I have some shopping to do. Tomorrow night we'll have to give a party. How about you? What do you plan to do?

Mrs: Since we have to give a party tomorrow night, I'll have to go to buy some groceries. I'll be very busy.

M/Sgt: How about the day after tomorrow, Sunday. What shall we do?

Mrs: We should go to church. In the afternoon we'll go for a ride and visit some friends. How about it?

M/Sgt: It is all right with me. We have been doing this every Sunday. This has become a routine and has developed into a matter of habit---a good habit, I may say.

Mrs: Whenever a person is doing something, and if he will exercise his foresight, plan ahead, and systematically do it, then he won't overlook anything, be confused, or get into trouble.

張上士：呢個禮拜六，禮拜，我地有好多野做．我相信最好嘅辦法或者係剳住喺一張紙度．敢就一樣都唔會忘記，一樣都唔會攪亂啦．

張太太*：對啦．你一路講，我一路剳低，好嗎？

上士：聽日禮拜六，朝頭早，我打算同啲細仔仔玩吓，帶佢地運動吓．下晝我想去買啲野．聽晚我地請客．你呢？

太太*：因為聽晚請客．我要去雜貨舖*買餸．我會好唔得閒㗎啦．

上士：後日禮拜呢？我地做乜野好呢？

太太*：我地應該去禮拜堂聚集．下午我地去遊吓，去車河*，見吓朋友，搵佢地坐吓，傾吓，好嗎？

上士：好呀．每逢禮拜，我地都係敢做，凡事計劃好，已經養成一種良好嘅習慣．

太太*：但係預時會有先有系統，就唔會吧啲全唔係咁樣．敢做，唔會嘈嘅啦．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

READING MATERIAL

呢個禮拜六張上士請客．禮拜又會有好多野要做．到時佢同張太太會好忙．佢唔想到時咁論諗，吧嘢，所以佢而家決定好全盤計劃．

佢以為最好嘅辦法係剳住所有嘅野．敢樣就一樣都唔會忘記，一樣都唔會攪亂．

佢叫張太太揸一張紙黎；佢一路講，張太太一路剳低．佢所剳低嘅係敢．

聽日禮拜六朝頭早，張上士打算同啲細佬仔去玩吓，帶佢地去運動吓．下晝佢想去買啲野．張太太聽日要去雜貨舖買餸．佢聽日會好唔得閒．聽晚佢地請客．

後日係禮拜．根據佢地以往嘅習慣，佢地每逢禮拜嘅時候，上午佢地去教堂聚集，下午去遊車河，見吓朋友，搵佢地坐吓，傾吓．佢地不嘢都係敢樣做，已經養成咗一種習慣啦．

佢地敢樣做係好嘅．但凡做事，如果有先見之明，預先定好全盤計劃；到時有

系統敢做，就唔會疏虞，唔會論嘭，唔會吧嘢嘅·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ keî shî ts'íng haàk à?

K'uĭ tím-kaaí î-ka iù k'uèt-tîng ts'uēn-p'oōn kaì-waâk à?

K'uĭ tím-kaaí kiù Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* chaàp tai shóh yaŭ kè yĕ à?

T'ing-yât laĭ-paaì lûk chiu-t'aū-tsó, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tá suèn tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

T'ing-yât hâ-nğ, k'uĭ seúng huì pin shuè à?

T'ing-maăn k'uĭ-teî iù ts'íng-haàk, Cheung T'aaì-t'aaì* ting-yât iù tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

Kan-kuì k'uĭ-teî ĭ-wŏng kè tsaâp-kwaàn, mooĭ-fūng laĭ-paaì kè shî-haû, sheûng-nğ k'uĭ-teî huì pin shuè à?

Laĭ-paaì-yât hâ-nğ, k'uĭ-teî ooĭ huì pin-shuè à?

Taân-faān tsô sẑ, uē-kwóh yaŭ sin-kìn chi mîng, uê-sin tîng-hó ts'uēn-p'oōn kaì-waâk, tò shî yaŭ haî-t'úng huí tsô, kóm yeûng* hó m̄-hó à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

paân-faàt method, ways, means; synonym: fong-faàt, faàt-tsź, faàt

chaàp-chuê chaàp 'to record, to put down, to jot down'; chaàp-chuî 'to jot down, to put down, to keep record'

yat-yeûng the same kind, alike, each kind, anyone; ni kaan uk t'ūng kóh kaan uk yat-yeûng 'this house is the same as that'; ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ yat-yeûng kòm ko 'I am as tall as he', ngŏh yat-yeûng to m̄-maaĭ 'I won't buy anyone of them'

yat-yeûng to indefinite pronoun, any, anyone; the indefinite pronoun (pin kòh, pin shuè, mi-yĕ, tím-yeûng*, keí shî) is identical in form with the corresponding interrogative; thus: pin? 'which?', pin 'any'; pin-kòh? 'who?', pin-kòh to 'anyone'; mi-yĕ 'what?', mi-yĕ to 'anything'; tím-yeûng* 'how?', tím-yeûng* to 'no matter how'; keí shî 'when?', keí shî to 'anytime, whenever'

mōng-keì to forget, to neglect; a.f.: m̄-keì-tak; yat-yeûng to m̄-ooĭ mōng-keì 'won't forget anything'

kaaú luên to mix up, to confuse, to make a mistake, to err

yat-lô...yat-lô while...at the same time; yat-lô 'all the way'

chaàp tai tai 'low, down'; chaàp tai 'to jot down, to put down, to keep record, to keep track'; a.f.: chaàp-chuê

chiu-t'aū-tsó morning, early morning; synonym: chiu-tsó, chiu, tsó

waán hă waán 'to play, to have fun'; waán hă 'to play'

wân-tûng sport, athletics, propaganda movement, movement, to exercise

ts'îng haàk to invite guests for dinner or party; a.f.: ts'éng haàk

tak-haān to be free, to have leisure, not busy; synonym: m̄-mōng; m̄-tak-haān 'busy, not free'

laĭ-paaì-t'ōng church; a.f.: kaaù-t'ōng

tsuî-tsaâp religious service, assembly, meeting

yaū ch'e-hōh* yaū 'to tour, to travel'; yaū ch'e-hōh* 'to take a pleasure ride, to go driving

k'ing hă to chat; ts'ŏh hă k'ing hă 'to sit and chat'

mooĭ-fūng fūng 'to meet with, to happen, to hit on, whenever'; mooĭ-fūng 'whatever, wherever, whenever, however'; a.f. fūng-ts'an, synonym: taân-faān

yeŭng-shîng yeŭng 'to nourish, to feed, to rear, to support, to bring up'; yeŭng-shîng 'to rear, to form, to pattern'

leūng-hó leūng 'excellent, good, fine, well-bred, refined'; leūng-hó 'excellent, good, fine, well-bred, refined'

tsaâp-kwaàn habit, custom, to accustom to; yeŭng-shîng yat-chúng leūng-hó kè tsaâp-kwaàn 'to form a good habit'

taân-faān whatever, whenever, however, all

uê-sin beforehand, prior to, before, previous

sin-kìn chi mîng far-seeing, foresight, foreseeing

ts'uēn-p'oōn kaì-waâk ts'uēn-p'oōn 'entire, entirely'; kaì-waâk 'plan, planning, scheme, plot, design'; ts'uēn-p'oōn kaì-waâk 'the whole plan, the entire planning'

tò shî when the time comes, until then

haî-t'úng system; yaŭ haî-t'úng 'systematic, organized'

shoh-uē carelessness, negligence, heedlessness, loophole, omission

lûn-chûn clumsy, awkward, disorderly, confused, trouble

pa-paì clamor, to get excited, to get panicky

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 20

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Ī-ka ngŏh-teî t'aí-uēn ts'o, wân-uēn tûng. Neĭ kòk-tak tîm à?

À-Tsaí: Tsing-shān kòk-tak hó hó. Shan-t'aí kòk-tak kwooî ti.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Taân-faān yat-kòh yān, uē-kwóh iù yaŭ kîn-ts'uēn kè sẑ-îp, yat-tîng iù yaŭ k'eūng-kîn kè t'aí-p'aàk. Uē-kwóh iù yaŭ k'eūng-kîn kè t'aí-p'aàk, yat-tîng iù shî-shî tuên-lîn shan-t'aí.

À-Tsaí: Ni kòh tô-leĭ yān-yān to ying-koi chi-tò kè. Shóh-waî kaaù-yûk paau-k'oòt tak-yûk, chì-yûk, t'aí-yûk, kw'ān-yûk---tak, chì, t'aí, kw'ān, seì yûk---fàn-lîn yān kè sam shan, tuên-lîn yān kè t'aí chì.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Neĭ tuì-ue oô-ngoî wân tûng t'ūng oô-noî wân tûng to yaŭ hìng-ts'uì, yaū-k'eî-shî tuì-ue t'în kìng wân tûng hó yaŭ shîng-tsik...

À-Tsaí: Ŏh, pat-kwòh yeûng-yeûng to shì hă, hôk hă che. Ngŏh hei-mông hóh-ĭ hôk toh ti kwaan-ue oô-ngoî wân tûng, oô-noî wân tûng, t'în kìng wân tûng, ts'oì k'aū wân tûng, ni ti koḿ-yeûng* kè keî-shût. Neĭ tak-haān kaaù hă ngŏh, hó mà?

M/Sgt Cheung: Now that we have finished doing our exercises how do you feel, son?

Junior: I feel fine. A little bit tired, though.

M/Sgt: If a person would like to do well in his business, he should be mentally alert and physically fit. In order that he may be physically fit, he should often do exercises.

Jr: This is one principle that every one should know. Education includes moral, academic, physical, and social training. These four things are to train a person's body and mind.

M/Sgt: You have shown a great deal of interest in outdoor and indoor sports, especially in track and field, in which you have proved yourself to be quite capable...

Jr: That was because I like to try and learn everything. I hope I'll be able to learn more about the techniques pertaining to outdoor and indoor sports, track and field, ball games, and things of that sort. When you are not so busy, you can teach me. How about it?

張上士：而家我地體完操，運完動．你覺得點呀？

亞仔：精神覺得好好．身體覺得癮啲．

上士：但凡一個人，如果要有健全嘅事業，一定要有強健嘅體魄．如果要有強健嘅體魄，一定要時時鍛鍊身體．

亞仔：呢個道理人人都應該知道嘅．所謂教育——德，智，體，群，四育——訓練人嘅心身，鍛鍊人嘅體智．

上士：你對於户外運動都有興趣，尤其是對於田徑運動好有成績……

亞仔：啊，不過樣樣都試吓，學吓啫．我希望可以學多啲關於户外運動，户内運動，田徑運動，賽球運動，呢啲啲敢樣嘅技術．你得閒教吓我，好嗎？

但凡一個人，如果想事業成功，一定先要有強健嘅體魄．如果要有強健嘅體魄，一定要時時鍛鍊身體．呢個係一定嘅道理，係人人都應該知道嘅．

教育包括好多野，最緊要嘅係四育，德育，智育，體育，群育．教育可以訓練一個人嘅身心，所以教育對於個人同國家都好重要．

講到體育，體育亦都包括好多種，有户外運動，户内運動．亞仔對於户外運動，尤其是田徑運動，户内運動同户外運動都好有興趣，尤其是想試吓，學吓開嘅時候教吓佢．

佢地而家體完操啦．佢地雖然好瘡，但係覺得精神好好．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 20

QUESTIONS

Yat-kòh yān uē-kwóh seúng sẑ-îp shîng-kung, sin iù yaŭ mi-yĕ à?

Uē-kwóh iù yaŭ k'eūng-kîn kè t'aí-p'aàk, yat-tîng iù tím à?

Kaaù-yûk paau-k'oòt hó toh yĕ, tsuì kán-iù kè haî mi-yĕ à?

Kaaù-yûk hóh-ĭ fàn-lîn yat-kòh yān kè mi-yĕ à?

T'aí-yûk paau-k'oòt ti mi yĕ à?

À-tsaí tuì-ue oô-ngoî wân tûng t'ūng oô-noî wân tûng yaŭ mŏ hìng-ts'uì à?

K'uĭ kè t'în kìng wân tûng kè shîng-tsik hó m̄-hó à?

K'uĭ hei-mông hóh-ĭ toh hôk ti mi-yĕ wân tûng à?

K'uĭ seúng pin-kòh kaaù k'uĭ wân tûng à?

K'uĭ t'ūng Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ î-ka t'aí-uēn ts'o, k'uĭ-teî kòk-tak tím à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 20

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

t'aî ts'o physical drill, physical exercise

kòk-tak to feel, to find, to find that...

tsing-shān spirit, energy, vitality, morale

shan-t'aî body, health, physical condition

kwooî tired, weary, weak

kîn-ts'uēn healthy, strong, sound, robust, well-organized; synonym: kîn-hong, k'eūng-kîn, k'eūng-chòng

sẑ-îp career, business

k'eūng-kîn strong, healthy, robust; synonym: kîn-hong, k'eūng-chòng, k'eūng, chòng

t'aî-p'aàk health, physical well-being, body; synonym: san-t'aî, p'aàk-lîk

shî-shî to constantly, from time to time, always, often; shî 'time'; shî-shî to, shî is duplicated meaning 'everytime, always, constantly, often'

tuên-lîn to discipline, to make perfect, to forge metal from which comes the idea of discipline, to make strong; tuên-lîn shan-t'aî' 'physical culture, physical training'

tô-leĭ principle, reason, doctrine, rights of things, cause, theory

yān-yān to yān 'people, person, human beings'; yān-yān to, yān is duplicated meaning 'everyone, every person, any person'

shóh-waî waî (lit) 'to say, to tell'; shóh-waî 'so called, what is called, so to speak'

kaaù-yûk yûk 'culture, to give birth to, to nourish, to bring up'; kaaù-yûk 'education, to educate'; kaaù-yûk ka, 'educator'

paau-k'oòt to include, inclusion, including, to consist of

tak-yûk tak 'moral, morals, virtue'; tak-yûk 'moral education'; abbreviation: tak

chì-yûk chì 'wisdom, wit, intellectual, intelligent'; chì-yûk 'intellectual education, academic education'; abbreviation: chì

t'aî-yûk t'aî 'body', abbreviation of shan-t'aî; t'aî-yûk 'physical education'; abbreviation: t'aî

kw'ān-yûk kw'ān 'flock, herd, multitude, mob, all'; kw'ān-yûk 'social education'; abbreviation: kw'ān

sam shan sam 'mind, heart, affection, center, mental'; shan 'body, trunk;' sam shan 'mind and body, mental and physical'; a.f.: shan sam 'body and mind, physical and mental'

t'aî chì t'aî abbreviation of shan-t'aî 'body, physical'; chì 'wisdom mind, intellectual, mental'; t'aî chì 'body and mind, physical and mental'

oô-ngoî wân tûng, oô-noî wân tûng oô 'house, home, gate, door'; ngoî 'outside, out, external'; oô-ngoî 'outdoor'; oô-ngoî wân tûng 'outdoor sports'; noî 'inside, in, internal'; oô-noî 'indoor'; oô-noî wân tûng 'indoor sports'; oô-ngoî wân tûng t'ūng oô-noî wân tûng 'outdoor sports and indoor sports'

hìng-ts'uì personal interest, hobby, inclination, merriment, pleasure; ya hìng-ts'uì 'interested in; tuì-ue...yaŭ hìng-ts'uì interested in...'

t'în kìng wân tûng t'în 'field, rice paddy'; kìng 'track, path'; t'în kìng wân-tûng 'field and track sports'

shîng-tsik grade, results, accomplishment

yeûng-yeûng to yeûng 'a kind, a style, a sort, a pattern, a sample, a manner'; yeûng-yeûng to, yeûng is duplicated meaning 'every kind'

shì to try, to test, to experiment, to examine, to detect, to taste, a test

hei-mông to hope, to look forward, hope; yaŭ hei-mông 'hopeful'; mŏ hei-mông 'hopeless'

kwaan-ue in regard to, relating to, concerning, in connection with; synonym: tuì-ue, tuì

ts'oì k'aū wân tûng ts'oì 'to contest, to compete, to rival,

to match, to race, to contend for mastery'; k'aū (lit) 'ball'; ts'oì k'aū wân tûng 'ball games'

keî-shût technics, skill, art, expertness, sleight of hand

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Kam-yât haî neĭ mā-ma kè shaang-yât. Yaû haî neĭ pā-pa t'ūng mā-ma kìt fan kè keí-nîm yât. Ngŏh-teî maaĭ kîn mi-yĕ laĭ-mât sùng peí k'uĭ hó ne?

À-Tsaí: Ni kaan paàk-fòh kung-sz kw'ai-mō kòm taaî. Sùn-yûng yaû hó. Fòh-mât kòm toh. Kà-ts'în yaû kung-tô. Poón-teî fòh keì-în-chi toh, loî-lô* fòh yîk-to m̄-shiú. Ying yaŭ tsûn yaŭ. Ngŏh-teî tím-kaaí m̄-tsaû haí shuè maaĭ ti laĭ-mât ne?

Sheûng-Sẑ: Tsaû haî yan-waî ni kaan kung-sz paau lōh maân yaŭ, ch'a-m̄-toh mi-yĕ to yaŭ-tak maaî, shóh-ĭ fa toh ngaăn luên. Kaaú-tò ngŏh to m̄-chi tím-suèn hó, maaĭ mi-yĕ chì hó.

À-Tsaí: Sùng yĕ peí nuĭ-yān* peí-kaaù sùng yĕ peí naām-yān* naān-tak toh là. Ngŏh tsik-koón t'aî-ĭ keí tím, hó mà? Fà-chong-pán à, i-fûk à, yât-sheūng yûng-pán à, ka-t'îng yûng-kuî à, chue-uē-ts'ź-luî* kè yĕ.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ā, ngŏh nám-tó là. Ngŏh-teî haāng-kwòh huì shaú-shik pô t'aí hă. Uē-kwóh yaŭ mîng-kwaì î ngŏh-teî chung-ì kè yĕ maaî, p'ēng t'ūng kwaì to pat-shîng mân-t'aî là.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

M/Sgt Cheung: Today is your mother's birthday, and,at the same time, it is your father's and mother's wedding anniversary. Let's buy your mother a present; how about it?

Junior: This is a good store. It is well-established and reliable. It has all kinds of merchandise for sale, and the prices are considered reasonable. Not only does it carry many local products, but also plenty of imported goods. You name it, and they have it. Why don't we buy it here?

M/Sgt: Just because it carries a complete line of everything, I am all confused as to what I should get and what I should buy.

Jr: Buying a gift for a womanis definitely more difficult than buying one for a man. Anyway, let me make a couple of suggestions. How about cosmetics, wearing apparel, daily necessities, household goods, and things of that kind?

M/Sgt: Say, I have an idea. Let us walk over to the jewelry department and take a look. If there is anything exquisite that we like, money is no object.

張上士：今日係你爸爸生日，又係你地買好多化，
爸同媽媽結婚紀念日，又係我地買好多野至
件係你媽媽送俾我哋好呢？

亞仔：呢間百物公司規模大，信用又好，貨品應有
貨既有禮物咁多，價錢路點解唔知，我地
盡有呢？

上士：就係多攪好。

亞仔：送野啦，裝家。

上士：呀。

係你爸買嘅野，又係我地買嘅野。

既生日，又公道，本少處買，差唔多眼亂。

既紀念日，都唔就係俾錢我地，好貴。

既俾模路點解，司賣點算，萬以羅所好，有花買多也野。

既俾野幾點，日常類既野。

男人難得，好嗎？用品呀，

女人比較提議呀，諸我貴不送即管衣呀，名都

我呀品庭我諗如平睇賣。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

READING MATERIAL

今日係禮拜六，係張太太嘅生日，又係張上士結婚嘅紀念日．張上士同亞張上士覺得係佢打算買件禮物送俾張太太．張上士覺得送野俾女人比較送野俾男人難得多．佢而家諗唔倒送啲乜野至好．

佢同亞仔去一間百貨公司睇吓．嗰間百貨公司好多貨物，應有盡有．貨物好多，睇有盡之外，價錢都好大，貨品嗰處嘅野太多，差唔多乜野公司嘅貨，眼花撩亂，佢好難決定．

佢問亞仔點樣．亞仔提議買啲化裝品，衣服，日常用品，或者家庭用具；但係張上士重未決得定．

後來佢決定行過去首飾部睇吓．佢想搵啲名貴嘅野，嗰啲野又係佢中意嘅．講到價錢，平同貴都唔緊要．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

QUESTIONS

Kam-yât haî laĭ-paaì lûk, haî pin-kòh kè shaang-yât à?

Kam-yât haî pin-kòh kè kìt fan keí-nîm yât à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'ūng à-tsaí tá m̄-tá-suèn sùng ti yĕ peí Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* à?

Kaù-kîng sùng yĕ peí nuĭ-yāń* naān ti, yik-waâk sùng yĕ peí naām-yān* naān ti à?

K'uĭ-teî î-ka huì pin-shuè maaĭ yĕ?

Kóh kaan paàk-fòh kung-sz tím à?

Yan-waî kóh shuè ti yĕ t'aaì toh, kaaú-tò Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ m̄-k'uèt-tak tîng, à-tsaí t'aî-ĭ maaĭ ti mi-yĕ à?

Haû-loî k'uĭ k'uèt-tîng haāng-kwòh huì shaú-shik pô, k'uĭ seúng wán ti mi-yĕ à?

Uē-kwóh kóh ti shaú-shik t'aaì kwaì, k'uĭ maaĭ m̄-maaĭ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

laĭ-mât laĭ 'gift, present'; mât 'thing, article, object'; laĭ-mât 'gift, present'; AN: kîn

sùng to give to, to present to, to escort, to send, to deliver; sùng laĭ 'to give a present'; a.f. sùng yĕ, sùng laĭ-mât; sùng laĭ mât (peí) k'uĭ 'to give a present to him, to give him a present', the direct object laĭ-mât must be placed before the indirect object k'uĭ, never sùng k'uĭ laĭ-mât

paàk-fòh kung-sz fòh 'merchandise, goods, cargo'; paàk-fòh 'miscellaneous merchandise, all items of merchandise'; kung-sz 'company, store, firm'; paàk-fòh kung-sz 'department store'

kw'ai-mō scale, model, pattern; kw'ai-mō taaî 'scale is large'; taaî kw'ai-mō 'large scale'; siú kw'ai-mō 'small scale'

sùn-yûng credit, reliability, dependability; sùn-yûng hó 'credit is good, reliable, dependable'

fòh-mât merchandise, goods, cargo; synonym: fòh

kà-ts'în kà 'price, cost'; kà-ts'în 'price, cost'

kung-tô fair, reasonable, equitable; kà-ts'în kung-tô 'price is fair, price is reasonable'

poón-teî fòh poón (lit) 'this, local, indigenous, original'; poón yān 'oneself'; poón haaû 'this school, my school'; teî 'place, land, area, soil, ground, floor'; poón-teî 'local place, indigenous place, domestic'; poón-teî fòh 'local product, domestic product, local goods, local merchandise'

keì-în-chi since; a.f: keì-în; Cf: keì-în IU 12

loî-lô* fòh loî-lô* 'foreign, imported, from foreign country, from abroad'; loî-lô* fòh 'imported goods'

ying yaŭ tsûn yaŭ ying abbreviation of ying-koi 'should, ought to'; tsûn 'all, entire, end, exhaust'; ying yaŭ tsûn yaŭ (lit)'there is everything you need, there is every item of merchandise a store should carry'

haí shuè on the spot, over there, here; synonym: haí ni shuè, haí kóh shuè, haí tô, haí ni tô, haí kóh tô

paau lōh maân yaŭ paau lōh 'to include'; paau lōh maân yaŭ (lit)'practically everything is available'

fa toh ngaăn luên fa 'flower'; ngaăn 'eyes'; luên 'to confuse, to mix up, disorder, untidy, chaotic'; fa toh ngaăn luên (lit) 'confusion caused by too many items'.

kaaú-tò to cause, to end up in, to result in; kaaú-tò hó lûn-tsûn 'all mixed up'; kaaú-tò ngŏh to m̄-chi tím-suèn-hó 'made me not know what to do'; synonym: lîng-tò

peí-kaaù peí 'to compare with, than'; k'uĭ peí ngŏh ko 'he is taller than I'; peí-kaaù 'to compare with, than'; k'uĭ peí-kaaù ngŏh ko 'he is taller than I'; peí, kaaù, and peí-kaaù are interchangeable

tsík-koón as one wishes; neĭ tsík-kón kóng la! 'you go ahead and say it', 'you say as you wish'

t'aî ĭ t'aî 'to bring up, to call attention to;'; t'aî ĭ 'to suggest, to propose, to present an idea, suggestion, proposition, VO construction; neĭ tsík-koón t'aî ĭ 'you suggest as you wish', 'you go ahead and suggest'; synonym: kîn ĭ; t'aî ĭ keí tím 'to suggest a few points'

fà-chong-pán fà chong 'to disguise, to make up with cosmetics', VO construction; pán 'things, articles, things classified, degree, rank, conduct', synonym: mât-pán; fà-chong-pán 'cosmetics'

i-fûk i 'clothes, coat, clothing'; fûk 'uniform, clothing, clothes'; i-fūk (lit) 'clothes, costumes, wear, clothing'

yât-sheūng yûng-pán yât-sheūng 'daily, ordinary, usual, routine'; yûng-pán 'articles in ordinary use'; yât-sheūng yûng-pán 'articles in daily use'; a.f.: yât-yûng-pán

ka-t'îng yûng-kuî ka-t'îng 'family, household', synonym: ka; yûng-kuî 'tools, implement', synonym: kuŋ̀-kuî, heì-kuî; ka-t'îng yûng-kuî 'household goods, things to be used around the house'

chue-uē-ts'ź-luî* luî 'category, a kind, a class, a species, to resemble'; chue-uē-ts'ź-luî* kè yĕ 'things like that, things such as...'

nám 'to think, to consider, to figure out, to call to mind'; synonym: seúng; nám-tó 'to have figured out, to be able to figure out, to get a solution'

shaú-shik pô shaú-shik 'jewelry'; pô 'department, section, ministry'; shaú-shik pô 'jewelry department'

mîng-kwaì valuable, exquisite, exclusive, expensive

î (lit) and, still, yet, also, but, nevertheless, like as; synonym: î-ch'é, taân-haî, pat-kwòh

chung-ì to like, to prefer, to be fond of

maaî to sell

p'ēng cheap, inexpensive, reasonable in price

kwaì expensive, unreasonable in price

pat-shîng mân-t'aî no problem, out of the question, it doesn't matter

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

ORAL MATERIAL

Maaî-Fòh-Uēn: Sin-shaang, yaŭ mat pong-ch'àn à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Táng ngŏh t'aí hă sin la.

Maaî: Ngŏh-teî yaŭ ti tsuì-kân wân-tò kè mîng-kwaì shaú-piu. Ni chúng haî kam kè. Ni chúng haî paâk kam kè. Ni chúng haî tsuèn-shêk kè.

Sheûng-Sẑ: M̄-koi neĭ peí ngŏh t'aí hă.

Maaî: Ni kòh haî tsuèn-shêk paâk kam piu. T'iū piu-lîn* kè pò-shêk* yîk-to haî tsuèn-shêk laî kè.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ni kòh keí toh ts'în* à?

Maaî: Saam-paàk kaú-shâp kaú-kòh kaú hō poòn. Ni kòh piu yîng-chan mîng-kwaì taaî-fong là. T'ūng-shî yaû haî mîng ch'óng chaì kè. Kei-kîn* taam-pó shâp nîn.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Lèng m̄-haî m̄-lèng, pat-kwòh kà-ts'în kwaì ti che. Ngŏh seung-sùn to chîk-tak kè*. Ngŏh tsaû kòm maaĭ-chóh k'uĭ là.

Maaî: Neĭ chan-haî yaŭ ngaăn-kwong là, sin-shaang. Ni kòh piu saam-paàk kaú-shâp kaú kòh kaú hō poòn. Lîn seì-shîng shuì, tsúng-kûng seì paàk yat-shâp ng̃-kòh kaú hō̄ poòn.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh mŏ kòm toh în-foón haí shan shuè pòh. Sé cheung chik-chí peí neĭ, hó mà?

Maaî: Neĭ yaŭ chìng-mîng shue mŏ ne, sin-shaang?

Sheûng-Sẑ: Shan-fân chìng-mîng shue t'ūng ch'e p'aaî shî-taân yat-yeûng, tak mà?

Salesman: Sir, may I help you?

M/Sgt: I'm just looking around.

Sales: We have a new shipment of beautiful watches. This one is gold. This is white gold. This is a diamond watch.

M/Sgt: Please let me take a look.

Sales: This is a diamond platinum watch. The stones on the band are also diamonds.

M/Sgt: How much is it?

Sales: $399.95. This is indeed a gorgeous and a beautiful watch. Besides, it is a well known brand. The mechanism is guaranteed for ten years.

M/Sgt: Not that it is not pretty, it is a bit expensive. Well, I believe it is worth that much. I'll take it.

Sales: Sir, you made a smart selection. This is a good buy. That will be $399.95 and 4% tax, a total of $415.95.

M/Sgt: I don't carry a large sum of cash on my person. May I give you a check?

Sales: Do you have any identification, Sir?

M/Sgt: ID card and driver's license. Would one of them do?

賣貨員：先生，有乜幫襯呀？

張上士：等我睇吓先啦。

賣：我地有啲最近運到嘅名貴手錶。呢種係全嘅。呢種係白金嘅。呢種係鑽石嘅。

上士：唔該你俾我睇吓。

賣：呢個係鑽石白金錶。條錶鍊嘅寶石亦都係鑽石黎嘅。

上士：呢個幾多錢呀？

賣：三百九十九個九毛半。呢個錶認真名貴，大方啦。同時又係名廠製嘅。機件擔保十年。

上士：靚唔係唔靚，不過價錢貴啲啫。我唔相信都值得嘅。我就咁買咗佢啦。

賣：你真係有眼光啦，先生。呢個錶三百九十九個九毛半。連四成稅，總共四百一十五個九毛半。

上士：我冇咁多現款喺身處嚟。寫張炭紙俾你好嗎？

賣：你有証明書冇呢，先生？

上士：身份証明書同車牌是但一樣，得嗎？

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

READING MATERIAL

張上士去到嗰間百貨公司嘅首飾部，
佢想買件名貴嘅禮物送俾佢嘅太太。

嗰處有啲最近運到嘅名貴手鏢，有啲
係黃金嘅，有啲係鑽石嘅。
張上士睇倒一個白金鑽石鏢，連嗰條鏢鍊
都有鑽石嘅，認真名貴。大方，同時又係名
廠製造嘅，佢好中意嗰個鏢，佢問賣貨員
幾多錢，賣貨員話，三百九十九個九毛半；
連四成稅，總共四百一十五個九毛半。

雖然呢個價錢幾高，但係嗰個係一個
好名貴嘅鏢，太得俾紙景紙，要有証明。
者都都張景俾紙景紙，要有証明。
為一買野身份証黎做証明。
嘅

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ huì kóh kaan paàk-fòh kung-sz kè shaú-shik pô tsô mi-yĕ à?

Kóh shuè yaŭ ti mi-yĕ shaú-piu à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'aí-tó yat-kòh paâk kam tsuèn-shêk piu, kóh kòh piu hó mâ?

K'uĭ chung m̄-chung-ì kóh kòh piu à?

Kóh kòh piu keí toh ts'în* à?

Kaù-kíng ni kòh kà-ts'în* ko m̄-ko à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ĭ-waí kóh kòh piu chîk m̄-chîk-tak maaĭ à?

K'uĭ shan sheûng yaŭ mŏ kòm toh în-foón à?

K'uĭ taaì m̄-kaù ts'în*, kóm tím à?

Kan-kuì kóh kan kung-sz kè tsaâp-kwaàn, maaĭ yĕ peí chik-chí iù tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ yaŭ mŏ chìng-míng shue à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

maaî-fòh-uēn salesman, salesclerk; nui maai-fòh-uēn 'saleslady'

yaŭ mat pong-ch'àn à? pong-ch'àn 'to patronize, patronage'; yaŭ mat pong-ch'àn à? 'Is there anything you wish to buy? May I help you?'

wân to transport, to ship, shipment; wân-tò 'to import into a locality, shipment reaches a locality'

paâk kam kam 'gold'; wōng kam 'yellow gold'; paâk kam 'platinum, white gold'; ng̀ kam 'metal'; t'ìt 'metal'; kam-shûk 'made of metal'; ngān 'silver', a.f.: ngān t'ūng 'copper, brass,; t'ìt 'iron'; sèk 'tin'; kòng 'steel', a.f.: kòng-t'ìt; uēn 'lead'

tsuèn-shêk diamond; a.f.: tsuèn-shêk*; tsuèn-shêk paâk-kam piu 'diamond platinum watch, diamond white gold watch'

lîn* chain, lace, necklace, watch band; lîn 'to train'; kéng-lîn* 'necklace'; piu-lîn* 'watch chain, watch band', a.f.: piu-taaî*

pó-shêk pó 'precious, valuable, treasure, rare, bullion, jewel'; shêk 'rock, stone, precious stone', AN: kaû; pó-shêk 'precious stone'; hūng pó-shêk 'rubby'; laām pó-shêk 'sapphire', AN: nap, kaû

laî kè particle expressing mild surprise; synonym: laî kè à, laî kà, laî à, laî; Cf: laî IU 4

saam-paàk kaú-shâp kaú-kòh kaú hō poòn paàk 'hundred'; kòh 'AN for dollar', synonym: man, ngān-ts'în*; hō 'dime, ten cents', synonym: hō-tsź; poòn 'half'; saam-paàk kaú-shâp kaú-kòh kaú hō poòn '$399.95'

yîng-chan very, really, truly, conscientious, earnest, painstaking, to take it seriously; a.f.: yîng*-chan

taaî-fong dignified, graceful, liberal, generous-minded

t'ūng-shî in the mean time, meanwhile, same time, simultaneously

mîng ch'óng mîng abbreviation of chuè-mîng, ch'ut-mēng* 'famous, well known'; ch'óng abbreviation of kung-ch'óng 'factory, works, shed'; mîng ch'óng 'famous factory, famous manufactory'

chaì to manufacture, to produce, to make, to compound; a.f.: chaì-tsô, tsô

kei-kîn* mechanism, machine, machinery; a.f.: kei-heì

taam-pó to guarantee, guaranty, warranty, to go bail for, to insure; synonym: pó-chìng; taam-pó yān 'guarantor'

lèng m̄-haî m̄-lèng lèng 'good in quality, well made, beautiful, handsome, good appearance'; lèng m̄-haî m̄-lèng 'not that it is not good'; parallel to structure: hó m̄-haî m̄-hó

ngaăn-kwong foresight, foreseeing; yaŭ ngaăn-kwong 'ability to foresee', synonym: yaŭ uĕn-kîn

lîn together with, in addition to, besides, including, plus, even, to connect, to join

shîng percentage, %; seì-shîng '4%', a.f.: paàk fân chi seì; to accomplish, to become, successful

shuì taxes, revenue, duties; shóh-tak shuì 'income tax'; seì-shîng shuì '4% tax'

tsúng-kûng total, grand total, altogether

în-foón foón 'a sum of money'; în-foón 'cash, cash in hand'; synonym: în-ts'în*, în-ngān*

chik-chî an order for money, a bank draft, money order, a check; a.f.: chi-p'iù, chak-chî, ngān-chik; AN: cheung

chìng-mîng shue chìng-mîng 'to certify, to prove, to verify, to identify, proof'; chìng-mîng shue 'identification, certificate'

shan-fân chìng shan-fân 'status , position, rank'; shan-fân chìng 'identification card'

ch'e p'aaî p'aaî 'license, plate, sign, tag, brand'; a.f.: chiù, p'aaî-chiù, ch'e p'aaî 'driver's license, operator's license'; a.f.: cha ch'e p'aaî; ch'e p'aaî sometimes refers to car license; mo͝on p'aaî 'house number'; kaú p'aaî 'dog tag'; tsaú p'aaî 'liquor license'; chiu-p'aaî 'business sign'; chìng p'aaî 'genuine brand'

shî-taân as one wishes, anything will do, up to you, no opinion; synonym: ts'uî-pîn*, mŏ-shóh-waî

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Fóh-keì, ni kòh piu haî yûng laî sùng laĭ kè. Neĭ hóh faú tseung k'uĭ paau-shēng sùng laĭ kè yeûng-tsź à?

Maaî-Fòh-Uēn: Tong-în hóh-ĭ la. Ngŏh sam-mûk chung to ĭ-waî neĭ maaĭ laî sùng laĭ kè. Kóh waî* nuĭ-sẑ yat-tîng ooĭ hó foon-heî là.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh hei-mông haî kóm. Ts'îng mân neĭ shuè yaŭ mŏ k'aat, ngŏh hóh-ĭ sé keî kòh tsẑ kè ne?

Maaî-Fòh-Uēn: Sin-shaang, neĭ iù huì mān-fōng pô sin-chìng yaŭ pòh. Mān-fōng pô haî î-laū*. Neĭ hóh-ĭ yaū kóh t'aū kè laū t'ai sheŭng laū-sheûng. Yaû hóh-ĭ ts'ŏh shing-kòng-kei sheŭng lôk.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Koo-neūng, ni shuè haî mān-fōng pô. Neĭ shuè yaŭ sùng laĭ kè k'aat mŏ à? Ngŏh-teî tâk-tang laî maaĭ k'aat kè.

Nuĭ Maaî-Fòh-Uēn: Taaî-pá, sin-shaang. Ts'îng neĭ ts'uî-pîn* kaán la.

Sheûng-Sẑ: À-tsaî. Ngŏh ĭ-waî ni cheung chan yaŭ ì-î là.

À-Tsaî: Peî ngŏh t'aî hă. Ch'uî-chóh ti kung-hôh shaang-yât t'ūng hìng-hôh kìt-fan keî-nîm kè hó shuèt-wâ chi ngoî, yaû wâ: "Shâp nîn seung tsuî uē yat yât. Yat yât pat kìn uē saam ts'au."

Sheûng-Sẑ: Hó mà? Ngŏh ts'ūng-loî meî kìn-kwòh yat-cheung kòm ngaam shaî kè k'aat, kòm shik-î ngŏh-teî yûng kè k'aat.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

M/Sgt Cheung: This watch is intended as a gift. I wonder whether you can gift wrap this.

Salesman: Certainly, Sir. I'll be very happy to. I knew all along you bought this as a gift. I am sure this will make the lady very happy.

M/Sgt: I do hope so. Can you tell me whether you have some kind of a card on which I can write a few words?

Sales: Sir, I'm afraid you will have to go to the stationery department for that. That would be on the second floor. You may either take the stairs over there, or the elevator.

M/Sgt: Miss, this is the stationery department, I presume. Do you have some appropriate cards to go along with gifts? We came purposely for that.

Saleslady: We have plenty on hand, sir. Please help yourself with the selection.

M/Sgt: Son, I think this one is really meaningful.

Junior: Let me take a look, father. It has all the congratulatory words for birthday and anniversary, and besides, it says, "Ten years with you is like one day; and one day without you is like several years."

M/Sgt: Don't you think this is cute? I've never seen a card which can serve a purpose such as ours so very well.

張上士：伙記，呢嗰鏢係用黎送禮嘅．你可否將佢包成送禮嘅樣子呀？

賣貨員：當然可以啦．我心目中都以為你買黎送禮嘅．嗰位女士一定會好歡喜啦．

上士：我希望係敢．請問你處有冇咭，我可以寫幾個字嘅呢？

賣貨員：先生，你要去文房部先正有嚟．文房部喺二樓．你可以由嗰頭嘅樓梯上樓上．又可以坐升降機上落．

上士：姑娘，呢處係文房部．你處有送禮咭嘅嗎？

女賣貨員：大把，先生．請你隨便揀啦．

上士：亞仔，我以為呢張真有意義啦．

亞仔：俾我睇吓．除咗好說話之外，又係三結婚紀念嘅好日，一日不見如「十年秋．」

上士：好嗎？我從來未見過一張咁使嘅咭，咁適宜我地用嘅咭．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

READING MATERIAL

鏢公最歡黎
石間好用
鑽嗰嘅·員係
金俾禮貨鏢
白講送賣個
嘅佢黎個嗰
貴，用為
名候，係以
個時鏢樣中都
嗰嘅個子
買錢，嗰嘅目
定俾禮心
決佢知送佢
士員成·做
上太貨包
太賣佢樣嘅·
張佢嘅將敢禮
俾司好喜送

等後房樓
，然文由
話，係以
賣；可
咭說要佢
有嘅話
有義員·
處意貨樓·去
嗰有賣二上
員句·係機
貨幾處部降
賣寫物房升
問處禮文坐
又咭件·者
士張係賣或
上係擠得，
張以咭有去
可張至上
佢將部梯

去到二樓嘅文房部，佢見倒嗰處有大
把送禮嘅咭·佢揀倒一張·咭處除咗有好
多關於生日同結婚紀念嘅好說話之外，重
有兩句說話，「十年相聚如一日，一日不見如
三秋·」佢覺得嗰兩句說話好有意義，佢從
來未見過一張咁啱使嘅咭·佢就買咗佢·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ k'uèt-tîng maaĭ kóh kòh paâk kam tsuèn-shêk piu. K'uĭ maaĭ laî tsô mi-yĕ kà?

K'uĭ peî ts'în* kè shî-haû, k'uĭ kiù maaî-fòh-uēn tseung kòh piu paau-shēng tîm-yeûng* à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ch'uî-chóh maaĭ shaú piu chi ngoî, chûng seúng maaĭ ti mi-yĕ à?

K'uĭ seúng maaĭ ti k'aat laî tsô mi-yĕ à?

Iù haî pin pô chì yaŭ k'aat maaî à?

Mān-fōng pô haî kóh kaan kung-sz keî laū* à?

Sheŭng-tò î-laū* mān-fōng pô chi haû, k'uĭ wán-tó sùng laĭ kè k'aat mà?

Kóh cheung k'aat ch'uî-chóh yaŭ hó toh kwaan-ue shaang-yât t'ūng kìt-fan keî-nîm kè hó shuèt-wâ chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ leung kuì shuèt-wâ. Kóh leŭng kuì shuèt-wâ tîm kóng à?

Kóh leŭng kuì shuèt-wâ yaŭ ì-î mà, ngaam k'uĭ-teî mà?

K'uĭ ĭ-ts'în kìn-kwòh yat-cheung kóm yeûng* kè k'aat meî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

fóh-keì waiter, sales clerk, salesman, partner, fellow-worker

hóh faú? hóh abbreviation of hóh-ǐ 'can, could, okay'; faú (lit) 'not, to deny, if not, whether or not, on the contrary'; hóh faú? (lit) 'can or cannot? may it be done ?'; a.f.: hóh m̀-hóh-ǐ 'can or cannot? would it be all right if...?

tseung to take, to take hold of, to have...; when a verb has both a direct object and a complement, the tendency in Chinese is to break up the construction into two verbal phrases. The first part consists of tseung 'take hold of' and the direct object, while the second phrase contains the more specific verb plus the complement. We shall call the whole construction the "tseung" construction. For example, tseung ni oón faân shîk-saaì 'take this bowl of rice, eat it up,---eat up this bowl of rice'

yeûng-tsź in the manner of..., looks as if...; sample, pattern, example, style, sort, model

sam-mûk chung in one's mind, according to one's ideas; ngŏh sam-mûk-chung 'in my mind...'

nuǐ-sẑ a lady, female, Miss, more applicable to a middle-aged refined spinster; synonym: siú-ché, koo-neūng

foon-heí happy, glad, to like, to be fond of

k'aat card, in this sense is a borrowing from English

mān-fōng pô mān-fōng 'stationery'; mān-fōng pô 'stationery department'; mān-fōng yūng-pán 'stationery items'

sin-chìng not until, until, till, then, only then; Cf: chì IU 5

î-laū* laū* 'an upper story, building'; î-laŋ* 'second floor'; saam-laū* 'third floor'; seì-laū* '4th floor'; nğ-laū* '5th floor'; laū-sheûng 'upstairs, upper floor, upper story'; laū-hâ 'downstairs, ground floor'; t'in-p'aāng* 'roof'; teì-lō 'basement'

yaū from, by way of, by means of

kóh t'aū there, that side; a.f.: kóh shuè, kóh pîn; ni t'aū 'here, this side', a.f.: ni pîn; sheûng t'aū 'upper side, above', a.f.: sheûng pîn, sheûng ko; hâ t'aū 'lower side, below', a.f.: hâ pîn, taì-hâ.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

laū t'ai t'ai 'ladder'; laū t'ai 'staircase'

sheŭng to ascend, to go up, to go to, to go on, to send to

lôk to descend, to fall; sheŭng lôk 'to ascend and descend, to go up and down'

shing-kòng-kei shing 'to ascend', synonym: sheŭng; kòng 'to descend', synonym: lôk; shing-kòng-kei 'elevator, lift'; a.f.: tîn-t'ai, lip; AN: kà

koo-neūng a lady, Miss, nun (Catholic). More colloquial than siú-ché and more applicable to a youthful spinster.

tâk-tang purposely, deliberately, knowingly, wilfully; a.f.: chuen-tang, koò-ì, yaŭ-sam, ts'uēn-sam, lâp-sam

taaî-pá a great deal of , many much, plenty, abundant; synonym: hó toh

kaán to select, to choose, to screen

ì-î meaning, significance; yaŭ ì-î 'meaningful, purposeful, significant, noteworthy'; mŏ ì-î 'meaningless, insignificant, senseless'

kung-hôh to congratulate; a.f.: kung-heí; kung-hôh san-hei (lit) 'Happy New Year'

hìng-hôh to celebrate, to congratulate

shâp-nîn seung tsuî uē yat yât tsuî 'to gather, to assemble'; uē (lit) 'as if, like, such as'; seung tsuî 'to stay together, to gather, gathering'; shâp nîn seung tsuî uē yat yât 'ten years with you is like one day'

yat yât pat kìn uē saam ts'au ts'au 'Autumn'; yat yât pat kìn uē saam ts'au 'one day without you is like several (three) years'

ts'ūng-loî heretofore, at any time, from the beginning; ts'ūng-loî meî 'never before, there has never been'; ts'ūng-loî meî kin-kwòh 'never seen before'

shik-î suitable, appropriate, adequate, proper

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: Â-Chim, moōn chung heung à. Neĭ hoi moōn, hó mà?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Ōh. Ă! Paâk Sheûng-Waì! Ts'íng yâp-laî la. Ngŏh ni shuè naān wán mà?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Uēn-ts'uēn m̄-naān, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ. Tuì m̄-chuê pòh, ngŏh laî ch'î-chóh.

Sheûng-Sẑ: M̄-kán-iù, m̄-kán-iù. Paâk Sheûng-Sẑ, ni waî* haî ngŏh kè noî-tsź, Mă-Leî. Ni kòh haî ngŏh-teî kè siú-î. Ni kòh haî ngŏh-teî kè siú-nuĭ*. Ni waî* haî Paâk Sheûng-Waì.

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: Paâk Sheûng-Waì, neĭ laî chan-haî sheúng mîn* là.

Sheûng-Waì: Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*, ngŏh hó foon-heí yaŭ kei-ooî shik-tó neĭ.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Táng ngŏh kaaì-shiû ti yān-haàk peí neĭ seung-shik la. Leĭ Sheûng-Kaaù, Leĭ T'aaì-T'aaì*. Ko Chung-Kaaù, Ko T'aaì-T'aaì*. Wōng Siú-Tsé.....Paâk Sheûng-Waì.

Sheûng-Waì: Leĭ Sheûng-Kaaù, Leĭ T'aaì-T'aaì*. Ko Chung-Kaaù, Ko T'aaì-T'aaì*. Wōng Siú-Tsé.

Sheûng-Sẑ: Ts'uî-pîn* ts'ŏh. M̄-hó haàk-heì. Tòng haí tsẑ-keí uk-k'eí tsaû hó là. Shîk in mà? Neĭ foon-heí yám mi-yĕ ne? Ngŏh-teî ch'a-m̄-toh mi-yĕ to yaŭ...mă-ting-naî, maân-hak-tûn, So-Kaàk-Laān wai-sẑ-keî*, Meĭ-Kwòk wai-sẑ-keî*, chin tsaú, wôk-ka tsaú, pe tsaú.....

Sheûng-Waì: M̄-haàk-heì, m̄-haàk-heì. So-kaàk-Laān wai-sẑ-keî*

k'au shoh-tá shuí, hó mà? Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì: neĭ kwaì foó chan-haî hó teî-fong là. Ngoî-pîn waān-kíng yaû hó, fung-kíng yaû meĭ-laî. Luĭ-pîn pò-chì-tak kòm wā -laî, kòm kóng-kaù. Chan naān-tak là.

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*: Neĭ kwòh tséung che, Paâk Sheûng-Waì. Pat-kwòh haî yat-kaan maaū-shè laî chi mà.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, the door bell. Will you see who is there?

M/Sgt Cheung: I'll get it, dear. Hello! Capt White! Please come in. Did you have any trouble in finding the place?

Capt White: No trouble at all, Jim. I am sorry I am late.

M/Sgt: Not at all. Capt White, I would like you to meet my wife, Mary; our son, and our daughter. This is Capt White.

Mrs. Cheung: How do you do, Capt White? We're so happy that you honor us with your presence.

W: How do you do, Mrs. Cheung? I am happy to meet you.

M/Sgt: Allow me to introduce the other guests to you. Col. and Mrs. Leĭ, Lt Col and Mrs. Ko, Miss Wōng... Capt White.

W: How do you do, Colonel? How do you do, Mrs. Leĭ? Pleased to meet you, Col Ko, Mrs. Ko. Miss Wōng.

M/Sgt: Please make yourself at home. Do you smoke? Cigarettes? What would you like to drink? We have practically everything ...Martini, Manhattan, Scotch, Bourbon, Gin, Vodka, beer...

W: Thank you, Jim. Scotch and soda would be fine. Mrs Cheung, you have a beautiful home. On the outside you have such a wonderful envisonment and breath-taking scenery. Whereas, inside, you have such splendid decor of elegance and good taste. This is really something.

Mrs. Cheung: Thank you, Capt White. It's very kind of you. This is merely a shed, as a Chinese should humbly say.

張太太：亞占，門鐘響呀．你開門好嗎？

張上士：啊。呀！白上尉！請入黎啦．我呢處難搵嗎？

白上尉：完全唔難，張上士。對唔住嘴，我黎遲咗．

上士：唔緊要，唔緊要．白上尉，呢位係我嘅內子，瑪利．呢個係我地嘅小女．呢位小係白上尉．

張太太：白上尉，你黎真係賞面啦．

上尉：張太太，我好歡喜有機會識倒你．

上士：張等我介紹嘅人客俾你相識啦．李上校，李太太，高中校，高太太．黃小姐．上尉．

上尉：李上校，李太太，高中校，高太太．黃小姐．

上士：隨便就呢丁美酒……太好．高客煙唔頓，自己飲乜……士忌，啤士忌搦

上尉：唔客氣，唔客氣．蘇格蘭威士忌，蘇格蘭威士忌，好嗎？

張太太*，你貴府真係好地方啦．外便環境又好，風景又美麗．裏便佈置得咁華麗，咁講究．真難得啦．

張太太*：你過獎啫，白上尉．不過係一間茅舍黎之嗎．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

READING MATERIAL

今日係星期六．張上士，張太太喺佢地嘅屋企請客．黎嘅人客多數係現役軍人同佢地嘅太太．佢地多數係張上士舊時嘅朋友．佢地係李上校，李太太；高中校，高太太；白上尉，黃小姐……

白上尉黎遲咗．佢黎咗之後，張上士介紹佢同張太太同嗰啲人相識．張上士叫佢地唔好客氣，當嗰處係佢地自己嘅屋企一樣，隨便坐，隨便傾．

佢地重未食得飯．佢地而家食煙，飲丁尼，飲酒．張上士克獲士忌，蘇格蘭威士忌梳打．

重未處

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

QUESTIONS

Kam-yât haî sing-k'eî lûk. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ, Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* haî pin-shuè ts'éng haàk à?

K'uĭ-teî ts'éng kè toh-shò haî mi-yĕ yān à?

K'uĭ-teî toh-shò haî lŏ p'aāng-yaŭ, yik-waâk haî san p'aāng-yaŭ à?

Kóh ti yān-haàk haî pin keî kòh à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì haî m-haî laî ch'ì-chóh à?

K'uĭ laî-chóh chi haû, pin-kòh kaaì-shiû k'uĭ t'ūng kóh ti yān-haàk seung-shik à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ shuè yaŭ ti mi-yĕ tsaú à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì yám ti mi-yĕ tsaú à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè uk kè luĭ-pin pò-chì-tak tîm à?

Uk ngoî-pîn kè waān-king tîm à? Fung-king tîm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

moōn chung moōn 'door, gateway, opening, profession, section, school', AN: tô, chèk; chung 'bell, clock', AN: kǒh; moōn chung 'door bell'

hoi moōn hoi 'to open'; hoi moōn 'to open door, to open business, open', VO construction

uēn ts'uēn completely, entirely, all, perfect, complete, entire

noî-tsź my wife (humble); ngŏh nuĭ-yān* (humble) 'my wife'; noî-yān* (humble) 'my wife'; lŏ-p'ōh (colloq.) 'wife'; t'aaì-t'aaì* (honorific) 'wife'; tsái (lit) 'wife'; faàt ts'aı (lit) 'lawful wedded wife'; foo-yān* (honorific) 'wife'; tsuen foo-yān* (honorific) 'your wife'

siú î my son (humble); tsaî (colloq) 'son'; saì-lǒ-koh (colloq) 'son, child'; saì-man-tsaî (colloq) 'son, child'; î (lit, humble) 'my son'; î-tsź (lit, formal) 'son'; kung-tsź (honorific) 'son'; lîng kung-tsź (honorific) 'your son'; lĭng lōng* (honorific)

siú nuĭ my daughter (humble); nuĭ* (colloq) 'daughter'; nuĭ (lit, formal) 'daughter'; ts'in-kam (honorific) 'daughter'; lĭng ts'in-kam (honorific) 'your daughter'; î nuĭ (lit, formal) 'children'; tsź nuĭ (lit, formal) 'children'; tsaî nuĭ* (colloq) 'children'

sheúng mîn* to favor with one's presence, to give face to; synonym: peî mîn*; antonym: m̄-peî mîn*, m̄-sheúng mîn*

seung-shik to be acquainted with, ; a.f.: shik, yîng-shik

kaaì-shiû to introduce, to recommend; kaaì-shiû...peî neĭ 'to indroduce...to you'; kaaì-shiû...t'ūng neĭ yîng-shik 'to introduce...to you'; ngŏh kaaî-shiû neĭ maaı ni kà ch'e 'I recommend that you buy this car'

tòng to regard as, to treat as, to take for granted, to pawn; ngŏh tòng k'uĭ haî neĭ 'I thought he was you'; tòng yĕ 'to pawn an article'; tòng-p'ò* 'pawn shop'; tong 'then, at that time'; tong shî 'at that time, then'

shîk in in 'smoke'; in-tsaî 'cigarettes'; in-îp* 'tobacco'; Luĭ-Sùng in 'cigar'; shîk in 'to smoke', VO construction

mă-ting-naī 'Martini'

maân-hak-tûn 'Manhattan'

So-Kaàk-Laān wai-sẑ-keî* So-Kaàk-Laān 'Scotland'; So-Kaàk-Laān yān 'Scotsman'; So-Kaàk-Laān Ts'eūng 'Scotland Yard'; wai-sẑ-keî* 'whisky'; So-Kaàk-Laān wai-sẑ-keî* 'Scotch whiskey'

chin tsaú gin; a.f.: chin

wôk-ka tsaú 'vodka'; a.f.: fûk-tâk-ka tsaú

pe-tsaú beer; a.f.: pe

k'au to mix, to mix up; k'au shuí 'to mix with water, to dilute with water'

shoh-tá soda, sodium bicarbonate, caustic soda; shoh-tá shuí 'soda water'

kwaì foó your residence (honorific); a.f.: foó-sheûng (honorific), neĭ uk-k'eí (colloq) 'your home', neĭ kĕ uk (colloq) 'your house'

teî-fong a place, locality, location, local

ngoî-pîn outside, without; a.f.: ch'ut-pîn, ngoî-ch'ut, ngoî-t'aū, ngoî (lit)

fung-kíng scenery, landscape; synonym: kíng-shik

meĭ-laî beautiful, pretty, attractive, elegant; synonym: meĭ (lit), meĭ-hó (lit), meĭ-koon (lit), lèng (colloq) 'beautiful, pretty, attractive, elegant, good in quality'

luĭ-pîn luĭ 'inside'; luĭ-pîn 'inside, within'; a.f.: luĭ-t'aū, noî-pîn, noî (lit), luĭ (lit)

pò-chì to decorate, to arrange, to display, to put in order, to tidy up, to plan, to plot; synonym: paaí (colloq) 'to arrange, to put in order, to display'

wā-laî splendid, ornamental, elegant, luxurious

kóng-kaù particular about, professionally made, critical

maaū-shè shè 'place of abode, lodge'; maaū 'straw, weeds';

maaū shè (humble, lit) 'my shed'; a.f.: shè-hâ (humble, lit) 'my humble abode', ngŏh kè uk-k'eí (colloq) 'my house', laân uk (humble, colloq) 'my broken house', uk-tsaí (humble, colloq) 'my little hut', hōn shè (lit, humble) 'my unheated shed'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 25

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Paâk Sheûng-Waì, neĭ háng laî chan-haî peí mîn* là. Neĭ lîng ngŏh-teî fei-sheūng chi foon-heí.

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Mat-shuèt-wâ, mat-shuèt-wâ. Neĭ-teî ts'éng ngŏh chì haî peí mîn* ngŏh. À-Chim, ts'íng mân kóh waî* Wōng Siú-Tsé haî pin-waî* à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Wōng Siú-Tsé ā? Wōng Siú-Tsé haî ngŏh noî-tsź kè lŏ nîn p'aāng-yaŭ. Neĭ chi-tò la, ngŏh sò-loî hó shiú tá-leĭ ngŏh nuĭ-yān* kè sẑ. Yîk-to hó shiú t'ūng k'uĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ haāng-maaî. Shóh-ĭ kwaan-ue k'uĭ kè shan-shaì, taí-wăn*, ngŏh to m̄-haî keí ts'íng-ch'óh, m̄-haî keí chi-tò pòh. Táng ngŏh yaŭ ì mō ì kóm taaì neĭ haāng-maaî k'uĭ shuè. Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ k'ing hă kaî*, hó mà? Wōng Siú-Tsé, ngŏh kaaì-shiû-kwòh Paâk Sheûng-Waì peí neĭ seung-shik meî à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé: Chìng-wâ t'aū-sin ĭ-king kaaì-shiû-kwòh là, Paâk Sheûng-Waì.

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Wōng Siú-Tsé, neĭ chan-haî mîn-shîn là, hó-ts'ž ngŏh ĭ-ts'în kìn-kwòh neĭ kóm yeûng*. Ngŏh seúng-chóh yat-p'aaî, seúng-loî seúng-huì, mŏ paân-faàt seúng-tak-ch'ut.

Wōng Siú-Tsé: Chan haaú-miû là. Ngŏh yîk haî kóm seúng. Neĭ haāng-yâp-laî kè shî-haû, ngŏh kè sam tsaû wâ: Ngŏn haí pin shuè kìn-kwòh neĭ ne? Kòm shûk mîn-haú.

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Tuì-m̄-chuê yat-chân. Táng ngŏh t'ūng neĭ-teî leŭng-waî* tsoì cham yat-pooi tsaú.

M/Sgt Cheung: Capt White, we're so happy that you can come. This is indeed an honor.

Capt White: Not at all. It is an honor that I have been invited. Say, Jim, who is this Miss Wōng?

M/Sgt: Miss Wōng? Miss Wōng is one of my wife's old acquaintances. As you know, I seldom pay any attention to my wife's affairs, and hardly associate with her friends. Therefore, as far as Miss Wōng's background is concerned, I don't have very much information. Why don't we inconspicuously make our way over there, and you get acquainted with her?

Miss Wōng, have you met Capt White?

Miss Wōng: We have just met. Hello, Capt White.

Capt White: Hello. Miss Wōng, you do look familiar to me. Where have I seen you before? I have been thinking it over and over. I just can't figure that out.

Miss Wōng: What a coincidence. I was thinking the very same thing. The moment you walked in, I have kept on asking myself: Where have I seen you before?

M/Sgt: Please excuse me for a moment. Let me fix you two another drink.

張上士：白上尉，你肯黎真係俾面啦．你今我地非常之歡喜．

白上尉：乜說話，乜說話．你地請我至係俾面我．亞古，請問嗰位黃小姐係邊位呀？

張：黃小姐呀？黃小姐係我內子嘅老年朋友．你知到事．亦關於佢嘅身世底蘊，我等你同佢傾吓偈，好嗎？

黃小姐，我介紹過白上尉俾你相識未呀？

黃小姐：正話頭先已經介紹過啦，白上尉．

白上尉：黃小姐，你真係面善啦，好似我以前見過你敢樣．我想咗一排，想來想去，有辦法想得出．

黃小姐：真巧妙啦．我亦係敢想．你行入黎嘅時候，我嘅心就話，我喺邊處見過你呢？咁熟面口．

張：對唔住一陣．等我同你地兩位再整一杯酒．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 25

READING MATERIAL

而家張上士同啲人客飲酒，食煙，傾偈·主人同人客都好歡喜，尤其是張上士；有咁多人客去佢處食飯·佢覺得佢地好賞面·

佢地飲酒飲咗一陣，張上士行埋去白上尉傾偈·有幾耐，佢地講趣·到佢知張上係張關於黃小姐·張上係啲多年老友，或者·但好少打理呢啲事，好少嘅太太嘅身世底蘊·小姐嘅太太嘅身世，佢都唔係幾清楚·

黃小姐前排佢面，見口好似咗想，張處嘅邊有倒好多空位，黃小姐去好想敢白上尉處辦白熟悉·白上尉對於太太嘅態度，佢都睇得出·張上士行埋去，好似

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 25

QUESTIONS

Ī-ka Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'ūng ti yān-haàk yám tsaú, k'ing kaî*. K'uǐ kòk-tak hó foon-heí. Tím-kaaí à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'ūng Paâk Sheûng-Waì k'ing-chóh yat chân, haû-loî k'uǐ-teî kóng-tò pin-kòh à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì tuì-ue Wōng Siú-Tsé yaŭ mŏ hìng-ts'uì à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé t'ūng Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* seung-shik-chóh keî noî à?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* t'ūng Wōng Siú-Tsé haî toh nîn lŏ yaŭ. Kóm, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ chi m̄-chi-tò ti kwaan-ue Wōng Siú-Tsé kè shan-shaì à?

Keì-în Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* t'ūng Wōng Siú-Tsé haî toh nîn lŏ yaŭ, tím-kaaí Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tuì Wōng Siú-Tsé kè shan-shaì chûng m̄-ts'ing-ch'óh à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ tím-yeûng* taaì Paâk Sheûng-Waì haāng-maaî huì Wōng Siú-Tsé shuè à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì kìn-tó Wōng Siú-Tsé kè shî-haû, k'uǐ kòk-tak tím-yeûng* à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé kìn-tó Paâk Sheûng-Waì kè shî-haû, k'uǐ kòk-tak tím à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 25

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

peí mîn* mîn 'face', AN: kòh, faaì; peí mîn* 'to honor or to respect, to give face to', VO construction; a.f.: sheúng mîn* IU 24

lîng to cause, to tell, to command, an order, honorable a term of respect , a season; synonym: shaí, sź (lit), chì (lit), chì lîng (lit)

mat-shuèt-wâ IE don't mention it, not at all; synonym: m̄-hó kóm wâ

lǒ nîn long-time, aged; lǒ-nîn p'aāng-yaŭ 'long time friend'; lǒ-nîn yān 'elderly person'

sò-loî at all times, at any time, since the beginning; synonym: ts'ūng-loî IU 23, yat-chîk, keí shî to

tá-leĭ to interfere, to inquire into, to take care of, to manage; tá-leĭ neĭ tsẑ-keí kè sẑ 'mind your own business'

nuĭ-yān* my wife (humble), woman

haāng-maaî maaî 'together, close together', Cf: maaî IU 10; haāng-maaî 'to associate with, to walk close to'; synonym: loî-wōng (lit), haāng (colloq)

shan-shaì background, personal history, one's life

taí-wăn* the inside story, the true cause, the background; synonym: pooì-kíng 'background', ch'í-moôt 'from beginning to end', king-kwòh 'course, chronological record'

yaŭ ì mō ì yaŭ ì 'purposely, deliberately', Cf: tâk-tang IU 23; mō (lit) 'without, apart from, none, a negative'; mō ì 'unintentionally, inadvertently'; yaŭ ì mō ì 'half-heartedly, unintentional and yet serious'

k'ing kaî* to chat, to talk, VO construction; a.f.: k'ing; k'ing hă kaî* 'to have a chat, to chat'

chìng-wâ a short time ago, just now; synonym: ngaam-ngaam, t'aū-sin, kong-kong, kong-ngaam

mîn-shîn face familiar; synonym: shûk mîn-haú

hó-ts'ž resemble, like, similar, it seems as if, such as

yat-p'aaî quite a while; synonym: hó noî,

seúng-laî seúng-huì to think it over and over; synonym: seúng-loî seúng-huì

mŏ paân-faàt paân-faàt 'methods, ways, means', Cf: paân-faàt IU 19, synonym: faàt-tsz, fong-faàt, faàt (lit); mŏ paân-faàt 'can't help it, no alternative, no solution'; a.f.: mŏ-faàt-tsz

seúng-tak-ch'ut to figure out, to find an answer, to find a solution

haaú-miû haaú 'coincidental, lucky, ingenious'; miû 'wonderful, mysterious, supernatural, fine'; haaú-miû 'coincidence, ingenious, skilful, artful'

shûk mîn-haú shûk 'familiar, familiar with, well-cooked'; haú 'mouth'; mîn-haú 'face, appearance'; shûk mîn-haú 'familiar face, familiar'; a.f.: mîn-shîn

yat-chân a while, a short while; a.f.: yat-chân*, yat-chân-kaan; táng yat-chân 'wait a minute'; tuì-m̂-chuê yat-chân 'excuse (me) a minute', a.f.: tuì-m̂-chuê yat-chân-kaan

cham tsaú cham 'to pour'; cham tsaú 'to fix a drink, to pour liquor'; cham ch'ā 'to pour tea'; cham shuî 'to pour water'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 26

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Ooĭ m̄-ooĭ haí Naú-Yeùk, Lūn-Tun, kìn-kwŏh neĭ? Yik-waâk haí Tung-King, T'oĭ-Pak, Heung-Kóng...to wâ-m̄-tîng.

Wōng Siú-Tsé: Ngŏh chi-tò yat-tîng m̄-ooĭ haí Môk-Sz-Foh. Ngŏh seung-sùn haí Heung-Kóng to m̄-tîng.

Paâk: Neĭ haí Heung-Kóng tsô mi-yĕ ne?

Wōng: Ngŏh ĭ-ts'în haí Heung-Kóng Meĭ-Kwòk Tsūng Lĭng-Sẑ-Koón Lûk-Kwan Lîn-Lòk-Koon shuè tsô nuĭ peì-shue.

Paâk: Ā! Haî là! Ngŏh keì-tak yaŭ yat-ts'ż yaū T'oĭ-Pak huì Heung-Kóng taam-yâm lām-shî chik-mô kè shî-haû, ngŏh ts'āng-king tò-kwòh Lîn-Lòk-Koon paân-kung-t'eng paaì-fóng Hōh Sheûng-Kaaù. Neĭ tsaû haî Hōh Sheûng-Kaaù kè nuĭ peì-shue. M̄-kwaaì-tak la.

Wōng: Haî là. Ngŏh ĭ-ka keì-tak là. Kóh yât tá taaî fung, lôk taaî uĕ, haāng luî, shîm tîn. T'in-heì fei-sheūng chi m̄-hó. Neĭ yaû mŏ uĕ-lau, taaî-lau. Neĭ tò ngŏh-teî kè sé-tsẑ-laū kè shî-haû, hó-ts'ż yat-chèk lôk-t'ong-kai kóm-yeûng*. Yaû hóh-lĭn, yaû hóh siù.

Paâk: Haî là. Tong-shî ngŏh yîng*-chan lōng-pooì, yîng*-chan shat-laĭ. Haû-loî hó-ts'oí tak-tó Hōh Sheûng-Kaaù tsè shaam ngŏh oôn, ngŏh cheùk. M̄-haî,tsuì-tai haân-tô to ooĭ laăng sheung fung kà là.

Capt White: Do you think we could have met in New York or London? Or perhaps in Tokyo, Taipei, Hong Kong...may be?

Miss Wōng: I know for sure it couldn't be in Moscow. Perhaps in Hong Kong?

White: What were you doing in Hong Kong?

Wōng: I was the Secretary to the Army Liaison Officer, American Consulate General, Hong Kong.

White: That was it! I remember at one time when I was on TDY from Taipei to Hong Kong, I went to the Army Liaison Office to see Col. Hōh. You were Col. Hōh's secretary. No wonder.

Wōng: That's right. I remember now. I remember we had terrible weather on that day. There was a storm, the rain was pouring, lightning and thundering. You didn't have a raincoat or over coat. When you came in to the office, you were soaking wet. I felt sorry for you. You looked really funny.

White: That's it. I was awfully embarrassed at that time. I just didn't know what to do. It was a good thing that Col Hōh loaned me some dry clothes. Otherwise,I would have at least caught a cold.

白上尉：會唔會喺紐約，倫敦，見過你？
抑或喺東京，台北，香港……都
話唔定．

黃小姐：我知道一定唔會喺莫斯科．我相
信喺香港都唔定．

白：你喺香港做乜野呢？

黃：我以前喺香港美國總領事館陸軍連絡
官處做女秘書．

白：呀！係啦！我記得有一次由台北去香
港攞任臨時職務嘅時候，我曾經
到過連絡官辦公廳拜訪何上校．
你就係何上校嘅女秘書．唔怪得
啦．

黃：係啦．我而家記得啦．落大風，落唔
大雨，行雷閃電，大風之常你到隻落
好地湯．又字樓雨樓，好似可笑．
白：係啦．後我着嘅啦．

黃：係啦．我而家記得啦．落大風，落唔
大雨，行雷閃電，大風之常你到隻落
好地湯．又字樓雨樓，好似可笑．
白：係啦．後我着嘅啦．

白：係啦．我而家記得啦．落大風，落唔
大雨，行雷閃電，大風之常你到隻落
好地湯．又字樓雨樓，好似可笑．
白：係啦．後我着嘅啦．

白：係啦．我而家記得啦．落大風，落唔
大雨，行雷閃電，大風之常你到隻落
好地湯．又字樓雨樓，好似可笑．
白：係啦．後我着嘅啦．

READING MATERIAL

而家黃小姐同白上尉傾偈*，傾佢地以前相識嘅經過．到底佢地以前喺邊個地方見過嘅呢？初時白上尉以為佢地以前會喺紐約，倫敦，東京，台北，香港見過嘅．後來黃小姐話，佢相信佢地以前喺香港見過．佢地以前相識嘅經過大約係敷嘅．

黃小姐以前喺香港美國總領事館工作．佢係陸軍連絡官何上校嘅女秘書．有一次，白上尉由台北被派去香港擔任臨時職務．佢去拜訪何上校．佢就喺何上校辦公廳處見倒黃小姐．

當時大風大雨，行雷閃電，天氣非常之唔好．白上尉又冇雨褸，攬到佢好似一隻落湯鷄敢樣*，講唔出咁狼狽．而家想起黎，又好笑，又有意義．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 26

QUESTIONS

Ĭ-ka Wōng Siú-Tsé t'ūng Paâk Sheûng-Waì k'ing ti mi-yĕ à?

Ch'oh-shî Paâk Sheûng-Waì ĭ-waî k'uĭ-teî ĭ-ts'în haí pin shuè seung-shik kà?

Wōng Siú-Tsé seung-sùn k'uĭ-teî ĭ-ts'în haí pin shuè kìn kwòh kà?

Wōng Siú-Tsé ĭ-ts'în haí Heung-Kóng pin shuè kung-tsòk à?

Tong-shî k'uĭ taam-yâm mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

Tong-shî Paâk Sheûng-Waì yaū pin shuè peî p'aaì huì Heung-Kóng à?

K'uĭ peî p'aaì huì Heung-Kóng tsô mi-yĕ à?

K'uĭ haí Heung-Kóng kè shî-haû paaì-fóng pin-kòh Meĭ-Kwòk kwan-koon à?

K'uĭ haí pin shuè kìn-tó Wōng Siú-Tsé à?

Tong yât t'in-heì tîm à?

Tong-shî Paâk Sheûng-Waì mŏ uĕ-lau, k'uĭ lōng-pooì mà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 26

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Lūn-Tun London

Tung-King Tokyo

T'oî-Pak Taipei

Heung-Kóng Hong Kong

wâ-m-tîng IE, can't say for sure, there is no telling, may be...

Môk-Sz-Foh Moscow

tsúng lĭng-sẑ-koón tsung 'total, general'; lĭng-sẑ 'consul'; tsúng-lĭng-sẑ 'consul general'; koón 'a public office, a private dwelling, a hall, a tavern, a restaurant, a tea-house'; lĭng-sẑ-koón 'consulate'; tsúng lĭng-sẑ-koón 'consulate general'

lîn-lòk-koon (luēn-lòk-koon) lîn-lòk 'liaison, to keep in contact, to get in touch, to affiliate'; koon 'official, officer'; lîn-lòk-koon 'liaison officer; Lûk-Kwan lîn-lòk-koon 'Army liaison officer'; foò lîn-lòk-koon 'assistant liaison officer'

peì-shue secretary; shue-keì 'clerk; tá-tsẑ-uēn 'typist'; ts'uk-sé-shang 'stenographer'

lām-shî temporary, provisional, for the time being

chik-mô official business, official duty, function, mission, assignment; lām-shî chik-mô 'temporary duty, TDY'

ts'āng-king already, before; synonym: ts'āng (lit)

paân-kung-t'eng paân kung 'to transact official business, to work in an office', VO construction, a.f.: paân sẑ; t'eng 'hall, guest room'; paân-kung-t'eng 'office'; a.f.: paân-sẑ-ch'uè, paân-kung-shat, paân-kung-ch'uè, sé-tsẑ-laū; AN: kaan, kòh

paaì-fóng to pay respects to, to pay a visit, to visit, courtesy call, to call on; paaì-haû, wán (colloq), kìn (colloq), fóng (lit)

tá fung to have a storm, typhoon, hurricane, VO construction; tá taaî fung 'heavy storm'

lôk uĕ to rain, raining, VO construction; lôk taaî uĕ 'heavy rain, drenching rain, rain is pouring'

haāng luî to thunder, thundering, thunderbolt, VO construction

shîm tîn lightning, flash of lightning, VO construction

t'in-heì weather

uě-lau raincoat; a.f.: uě-i, AN:kîn; uě-haaî 'rainshoes'; uě-mô* 'rain hat'

taaî-lau overcoat, topcoat; a.f.: lau, taaî-i; AN:kîn

sé-tsẑ-laū office; Cf: paân-kung-t'eng; AN: kǒh, kaan; sé-tsẑ-t'oî* 'desk'

lôk-t'ong-kai (slang) soaking wet

hóh-lîn lîn 'to pity, to have compassion on'; hóh-lîn 'pitiable, pitiful'

hóh siù siù 'to laugh, to smile'; hóh siù 'laughable, funny'

lōng-pooì in great distress, very much troubled, in great embarrassment

shat-laĭ no manner; I beg your pardon

tsè to lend to, to borrow from; ngŏh tsè ts'în* peî k'uĭ 'I lend money to him'; ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ tsè ts'în* 'I borrow money from him'

cheùk to clothe, to wear (clothes, trousers, shoes, socks); cheùk shaam 'to put on clothes'; cheùk-foò 'to put on trousers'; cheùk haaî 'to wear shoes'; cheùk mât 'to wear socks'; cheùk has a limited use, differs from taaì and laâm, such as taaì mô* 'to put on a hat'; taaì piu 'to put on a watch'; laâm peî-taaì* 'to put on a belt'

sheung fung to have a cold; laăng sheung-fung 'to catch a cold'; laăng 'cold'

tsuì tai haân-tô tai 'low, down'; tsuì tai 'lowest'; haân-tô 'limit, limitation, restriction'; tsuì tai haân-tô 'at least'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 27

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Tsẑ-ts'ūng kǒh ts'ẑ kìn-kwòh neǐ yat mîn chi haû, ǐ-haû tsaû mŏ kei-ooî kìn-kwòh neǐ. Chîk chì-tò î-ka ǐ-king ch'a-m̄-toh saam seì nîn kòm noî. Neǐ tím à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé: T'òk-laaî, t'òk-laaî. Shî-haû kwòh-tak kòm faaì. Koó-m̄-tò ǐ-king saam seì nîn kòm noî.

Paâk: Neǐ keí nîn loî tsô mi-yĕ à?

Wōng: Kóng heí laî tsaû ch'eūng là. Ngŏh to m̄-chi haí pin shuè heí-shaú hó. Tsúng î în chi, ngŏh to haî haí sẑ-îp sheûng chui-k'aū shîng-tsaû.

Paâk: Kóm, neǐ haî yat-kòh chik-îp nuǐ-sìng. Pat hóh toh tak kà pòh. Neǐ poón-loî haî pin-shuè yān-shî* à?

Wōng: Ngŏh kè foô-ts'an haî Chung-Kwòk Kwóng-Tung yān. Ngŏh kè mŏ-ts'an haî Ì-Taaî-Leî t'ūng Sai-Paan-Ngā yān. Neǐ hóh-ǐ wâ ngŏh haî yat-kòh tsaâp-chúng nuǐ*. K'eî-shât ngŏh haí Heung-Kóng ch'ut shaì, shóh-ǐ ch'ut shaì tsaû haî Ying tsîk. Taân-haî ngŏh ǐ-king yâp tsîk Meǐ-Kwòk. În-tsoî haí Meǐ-Kwòk yān.

Paâk: Neǐ kè foô mŏ, hing taî, tsź mooî* haí shuè mà?

Wōng: Ngŏh kè foô-ts'an ǐ-king huì shaì. Mŏ-ts'an i-în tsoî shaang. Yat-kòh taaî-lǒ, saì-lǒ haí Meǐ-Kwòk. Mŏ-ts'an t'ūng taaî-tsź, saì-mooî* haí Heung-Kóng.

Capt White: Since I met you that time, I didn't have a chance to see you. It must have been three or four years now. How have you been?

Miss Wōng: Very well, thank you. Time surely flies. It is hard to realize it has been three or four years.

White: What have you been doing during these few years?

Wōng: Well, it is a long story. I don't know where to begin. In short, I may say I have been plugging along in my career.

White: You have been a professional woman. This is indeed an accomplishment. Where were you from, Miss Wōng?

Wōng: My father is from Canton, China. My mother is Italian-Spanish. You may say I am an Eurasian. In fact, I was born in Hong Kong and therefore I was a British subject by birth. But I have since become an American citizen, and I am an American.

White: Are your folks here? Your parents, brothers, and sisters, I mean.

Wōng: My father has passed away. My mother is still living. My two brothers are here in the States. But my mother is staying with my two sisters in Hong Kong.

白上尉：自從嗰次見過你一面之後，以後就冇機會見過你．直至到而家已經差唔多三四年咁耐．你點呀？

黃小姐：託賴，託賴．時候過得咁快．估唔到已經三四年咁耐．

白：你幾年來做乜野呀？

黃：講起首上黎就長啦．我都唔知邊處起事業好．總而言之，我都係喺邊喺事業追求成就．

白：敢，你係一個職業女性．不可多得嘅嘴．你本來係廣東人．我哋母親係中國西種出美籍以香但國人氏呀？

黃：我哋父親係世界大一，經母親個姊妹喺香港．我哋母親同我出生．

白：你哋父親係世界大一，經母親個姊妹喺香港．

黃：我哋父親係世界大一，經母親個姊妹喺香港．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 27

READING MATERIAL

白上尉自從上次離開香港之後，佢同經
黃小姐從來未見過面．不知不覺，又已經
三四年．時候過得真快．有一日，佢地再
次見面．兩人都極之歡喜．

而家黃小姐講翻以來話係努力多少成就．
好多．真佢所謂，說既，係力．佢想
野起．根據得上得倒做一個職
佢有一日唔在事業上要講既
業女性，在事業上從何說
中，

再講到佢既身世．佢西班牙既父親係中國廣
東人．母親係咗香港出世，現依細佬現在喺美國．後來黎既姊
黃小姐本人去美籍，親同喺香港．人．佢有兩姊
到美國，經弟．大重留．佢有兩妹
父親已三兄同細妹
妹，大姊

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 27

QUESTIONS

Paâk Sheûng-Waì tsẑ-ts'ūng sheûng ts'ż̀ leî-hoi Heung-Kóng chi haû, k'uǐ t'ūng Wōng Siú-Tsé yaŭ mŏ kìn-kwòh mîn à?

Keí nîn chi haû, k'uǐ-teî tsoì ts'ż̀ kìn mîn à?

K'uǐ-teî kìn mîn kè shî-haû, foon m̄-foon-heí à?

Uē-kwóh neǐ mŏ kìn neǐ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* hó noî, neǐ tsoì ts'ż̀ kìn-tò k'uǐ kè shî-haû, neǐ kòk-tak tîm à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé haí ǐ-wŏng saam seì nîn chi chung, tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

K'uǐ seúng tsô yat-kòh tîm-yeûng* kè nuǐ sìng à?

Neǐ seúng m̄-seúng tsô yat kòh chik-îp kwan-yān à?

K'uǐ kè foô-ts'an haî pin shuè yān à?

K'uǐ kè mŏ-ts'an haî pin shuè yān à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé poón-yān haí pin shuè ch'ut shaì à?

K'uǐ î-ka haî pin kwòk yān à?

K'uǐ yaŭ keí hing taî, keí tsź mooî* à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 27

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kìn mîn to meet, VO construction; kìn-kwòh yat mîn 'met once'; kìn-kwòh neĭ yat mîn 'met you once'; kìn-kwòh neĭ yat mîn chi haû 'since I met you'

ĭ-haû henceforth, afterwards, later

chîk chì-tò... until...; up to ...; chîk chì-tò î-ka 'until now, up to now', a.f.: chì-tò î-ka, chì kam (lit)

koó m̄-tò koó 'to guess, to estimate', synonym: ch'ak-tôk; koó m̄-tò 'do not realize'; koó m̄-tò 'guessed wrong'

keí nîn loî during last few years; keí kòh uêt loî 'for the last few months'; keí yât loî 'for the last few days'; kân-loî 'recently'

kóng heí laî come to talk about it; ch'eūng 'long, lengthy'; kóng heí laî tsaû ch'eūng là 'it is a long story to tell, it is a long story, it takes a long time to finish the story'; a.f.: shuèt loî wâ ch'eūng (lit)

tsúng î în chi tsúng 'total'; īn (lit) 'to speak, to say'; chi (lit) 'personal pronoun, he, she, it, this, that, these', often used as a 'possessive' as the colloq kè; tsúng î în chi 'in short, to sum up, to put it briefly, after all'; a.f.: tsúng-chi (colloq), tsúng în chi (lit, colloq)

haí...sheûng in regard to, in; a.f.: tsoî...sheûng (lit), ...sheûng, haí... fong-mîn, tsoî... fong-mîn, ...fong-mîn, haí... sheûng-mîn, tsoî...sheûng-mîn; haí sz̄-îp sheûng 'in career, in the matter of career', a.f.: tsoî sz̄-îp sheûng (lit)

chui-k'aū chui 'to chase after, to pursue, to court'; k'aū 'to beg, to request, to ask for'; chui-k'aū 'to pursue (after an objective), to strive, to court (a woman or a man)'

shîng-tsaû success, accomplishment, attainment of goal; synonym: shîng-kung IU8

nuĭ sìng sìng 'sex, nature, disposition'; nuĭ sìng 'female, woman'; naām sìng 'male, man'; t'ūng sìng 'same sex'; chik-îp nuĭ sìng 'professional woman, career woman'

pat hóh toh tak hóh (lit) 'abbreviation of hóh-ĭ IU 5; pat 'not, a negative'; toh IU 8; pat hóh toh tak (lit) 'hard to get, rare to find, valuable'; a.f.: naān tak (colloq), naān wán (colloq), shuí yaŭ (colloq), naān nāng hóh kwaì (lit)

poón-loî originally, the truth is, as a matter of fact, in fact, properly; synonym: uēn-poón, uēn-loî, poón (lit), uēn (lit)

yān-shî* a clan; pin shuè yān-shî*? 'of what clan? Where are you from?' when asking this question, be aware that the answer may not be the birth place. If the birth place is in question ask neĭ haí pin shuè ch'ut shaì?

foô-ts'an pā-pa, à-pa, pa, lŏ-taû (colloq); lŏ-tsź (less common); foô (lit); ka foô (humble); ka îm (lit, humble) 'my father'; lîng tsuen (honorific, lit) 'your father'; lîng tsuen yung (honorific, lit) 'your father'

mŏ-ts'an mother; a.f.: mā-ma, à-ma, ma, lŏ-mŏ* (colloq), mŏ (lit), ka mŏ (humble) 'my mother', ka ch'î (lit, humble) 'my mother'; lîng t'ōng (honorific, lit) 'your mother'; lîng shaû t'ōng (honorific, lit) 'your mother'

Ì-Taaî-Leî Italy; a.f.: Ì Kwòk, Ì (abbreviation); Ì-Taaî-Leî yān 'Italian people'

Sai-Paan-Ngā Spain; a.f.: Sai (abbreviation); Sai-Paan-Ngā yān 'Spanish people'

tsaâp-chúng nuĭ* tsaâp 'mixed, blended'; chúng 'sort, kind, species', Cf: pin chúng IU 3; tsaâp-chúng 'mixed blood, mixed seed, half-caste '; tsaâp-chúng nuĭ* 'mixed blood woman'; tsaâp-chúng tsaí 'mixed blood young man'; tsaâp-chúng yān 'mixed blood person'; a.f.: wân-huèt, wân-chúng (lit)

k'eî-shât actually, in fact, as a matter of fact; a.f.: sź-shât sheûng, shât-tsaî sheûng

ying tsîk tsîk 'a register, a list, a record of population, to be registered as a citizen of'; kwòk tsîk 'nationality'; ying tsîk 'British subject'; Meĭ tsîk 'American citizenship'; Wā tsîk 'Chinese nationality'; Ying abbreviation of Ying-Kwòk 'England'

yâp tsîk to be naturalized, VO construction; yâp tsîk Meĭ-Kwòk 'to be naturalized as an American citizen', a.f.: yâp Meĭ-Kwòk tsîk, yâp Meĭ tsîk

în-tsoî now, present time; a.f.: î-ka (colloq), ka-hă (colloq), ka-chân, în (lit), kam (lit)

hing elder brother, a senior, used as a term of respect;

a.f.: taaî-ló (colloq), koh, kōh-koh, à-koh, hing (lit); ka hing (humble) 'my older brother'; lîng hing (lit, honorific) 'your brother'

taî younger brother, a junior, used conventionally by a speaker of himself; a.f.: saì-ló (colloq), taî (lit); shè taî (humble) 'my younger brother'; lîng taî (lit, honorific) 'your younger brother'; hing taî 'elder and younger brothers, brothers'

tsź elder sister; a.f.: taaî tsź, tsē-tse (colloq); ka-tse (humble) 'my elder sister'; ka-tsé' (lit, humble) 'my elder sister'; lîng tsé (lit, honorific) 'your elder sister'

tsź mooî mooî 'younger sister', a.f.: mooî* (colloq), mooî-mooî*, saì mooî*, à-mooî*, mooî (lit); shè mooî (humble) 'my younger sister'; lîng mooî (lit, honorific) 'your younger sister'; tsź mooî 'elder and younger sisters, sisters'

huì shaì died, deceased, passed away, VO construction; a.f.: seî (lit, colloq), kwòh shan (colloq), sin shaî (lit), sin yaū (lit), shan koò (lit), mōng (lit)

i-în still, yet, moreover, too, and; a.f.: chûng (colloq) IU 7, i (lit), yaū (lit), yîng (lit), yîng-în (lit, colloq)

tsoî shaang tsoî (lit) 'at, in, on, to rest with, to consist in, to be present, to be alive, with reference to, in case of, in point of', a.f.: haî (colloq); shaang 'alive, living, to be born, raw, not familiar with, new, student'; tsoî shaang 'living, alive'; a.f.: tsoî shaì, haî tô (colloq)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 28
ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Tuì-m̄-chuê, tuì-m̄-chuê. Ngŏh-teî shîk faân lè. Ts'íng taaî-ka ts'uî-pîn* ts'ŏh. Paâk Sheûng-Waì, Wōng Siú-Tsé, neĭ-teî leŭng waî* ts'ŏh-maaî yat-ts'aî*, hó mà?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Hó à, À-Chim.

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Ngŏh-teî heí faaì lè. Uê-sin shing-mîng. Ka-sheūng pîn faân chà pòh. Mŏ shùng shîk-paaú faân à.

Paâk: M̄-hó kóm wâ, m̄-hó kóm wâ. Mi-yĕ kòm haàk-heì à. Ngŏh kwá-ló yat-t'iū. Meî shîk ka-t'îng chué kè faân to m̄-chi keí toh shâp shaì-keí là. Hōh-fòng Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* haî yat-kòh mîng ch'uē. Tuì-ue p'aang-yâm fong-mîn sò yaŭ în-kaù. Kam-yât to m̄-chi keí shang sau tò, chì yaŭ kòm hó kè kei-ooî shîk yat-ts'aan kòm hó kè T'ōng ts'aan.

Cheung T'aaì-Taaì*: Wā, Paâk Sheûng-Waì m̄-chí kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng-tak laū-leî. Ī-ka lîn fung-tsûk tsaâp-kwaàn to hôk-maaî t'im. Neĭ peí yat-téng ko-mô* ngŏh taaì. Kei-foō lîn ngaăn, ĭ, haú, peî to k'ám-maaî t'im.

Paâk: Wōng Siú-Tsé. Neĭ wâ ngŏh kóng-tak tuì mà? Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* haî yat-waî* kòm hó kè ch'uē-sz. K'uĭ kè mēng* ngŏh téng to téng m̄-shiú là. À-Chim chan-haî saam shaang yaŭ hâng là.

M/Sgt Cheung: Pardon me for interrupting you. Dinner is served. Please be seated. Anywhere would be fine. Capt White, Miss Wong, how about you two sitting together?

Capt White: That would be a pleasure, Jim.

M/Sgt: Please help yourselves to the food. I have a statement to make: This is nothing fancy but a home-cooked meal. Should we run out of food, please help yourselves with rice. Of that, we have plenty.

White: Thank you, Jim. You are always modest. Being a bachelor, I have not eaten a home cooked meal for years. Mrs. Cheung is a good cook. She does wonders in cooking. I don't know what I have done to deserve an opportunity to taste an exotic Chinese dinner such as this.

Mrs. Cheung: My goodness! Not only does Capt White have a good command of Cantonese, but he also has a good knowledge of Chinese customs. Capt White, your compliments are most overwhelming and sincerely appreciated.

White: Miss Wŏng, don't you agree with me? Mrs. Cheung is a wonderful cook. I've heard so much about her cooking. Jim, you are simply a lucky fellow.

張上士：對唔住，對唔住．我地食飯啦．
請大家隨便坐．白上尉，黃小姐，
你地兩位坐埋一齊，好嗎？

白上尉：好呀，亞占．

張上士：我地起筷喇．預先聲明．家常便
飯咋嘞．有餸食飽飯呀．

白：唔好敢話，唔好敢話．也野咁客氣呀．
我寡佬一條．未食家庭煮嘅飯都
唔知幾多十世紀啦．何況張太太
係研究咁多名厨．今日都唔知
嘩，白而一餐廣慣．
利．傑鼻都埋漆．
你口，講得對嗎？張太太係
一位唔少啦．亞占真係三生有幸啦．

張太太：好耐，亞占．
我地食飯啦．
唔住，對唔住．
請大家隨便坐．白上尉，黃小姐，
你地兩位坐埋一齊，好嗎？
對唔住，對唔住．我地食飯啦．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 28

READING MATERIAL

張上士屋內好高慶，客廳處有唔少人客．大家喺處飲酒，飲茶，食煙，傾偈*．

而家請以所但可尉好耐，中國對於

時候黃尉傾，係廣嘅佢嘅風俗

食飯上繼續嘅佢係嘅嘅

到啦．小姐佢話*．東話*依，佢慣

上士請人令舊事．香港．

張埋坐地佢話*．依然講得好多．

士齊，嘅離開流利．

上一講雖然記得好

埋地．

客佢事．

埋未重

枱*．人上冚白

張又極好

太*在烹飪方面素有研究，對饋嘅係

太之講究；所以整出黎嘅饋真係．

之味，又好食，離少對嘅事．

開餸呢值得歡喜．

父母，經餸．

已種

結婚呢有難

次好

再件

未，佢一

後在係

庭．人，係

種類睇，好離好翻好

好自種機得，

從敢會，又

試

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 28

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ kè haàk-t'eng shuè yaŭ m̄-shiú yān-haàk. K'uĭ-teî haí shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?

Shîk faân kè shî-haû, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ts'íng pin-kòh t'ūng pin-kòh ts'ŏh-maaí yat-ts'aî à?

K'uĭ tím-kaaí ts'íng k'uĭ-teî leŭng yān ts'ŏh-maaî yat-ts'aî à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì t'ūng Wōng Siú-Tsé k'ing kè shî-haû, k'uĭ yûng pin chúng uĕ-în à?

K'uĭ kè Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng-tak tím à?

Tuì-ue Chung-Kwòk kè fung-tsûk tsaâp-kwaàn, k'uĭ chûng keì-tak mà?

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* tsoî mi-yĕ fong-mîn sò yaŭ în-kaù à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì kìt-chóh fan meî à?

K'uĭ chung m̄-chung-ì Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* chíng kè sùng à?

K'uĭ tsẑ-ts'ūng keí shî chi haû, meî shîk-kwòh kòm hó kè sùng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 28

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lè emphatic final particle, affirmative or of finality

taaî-ka we all, all of us; ngŏh-teî taaî-ka 'we all, all of us'; neĭ-teî taaî-ka 'you all, all of you'

yat-ts'aî* (yat-ts'aî) together; ts'ŏh-maaî yat-ts'aî* 'to sit together'; chuê-maaî yat-ts'aî 'to live together'; haăng-maaî yat-ts'aî 'to walk together'

heí faaì IE, help yourself to the food, let's start eating, an expression used by the host of a dinner or banquet requesting the guests 'to raise their chopsticks'

shing-mîng to make known, to inform, to make one's stand clear, to make a statement

ka sheŭng pîn faân pîn faân 'IE, ordinary meal'; Cf: pîn faân IU 13; ka-sheŭng-pîn-faân 'IE, a home cooked meal'

chà pòh final particle (for limiting),... only!

mŏ shùng shîk-paaú faân IE, should we run out of food, please help yourself with rice.

kwá-lóu yat-t'iū kwá 'single, widowed, solitary, few (lit)'; kwá-lóu 'bachelor, widower'; kwá-foŏ 'widow'; kwá-lóu yat-t'iū 'a bachelor, a single man'

keí toh how much? how many? quite a great deal; synonym: keí IU 9; keí toh shâp shaì-keí 'quite a long time'

shaì-keí century; AN: kòh

hŏh-fòng moreover, in addition, how much more? further more, besides; a.f.: fòng-ch'é, î-ch'é, fòng (lit), ch'é (lit)

mîng ch'uē (mîng ch'uî*) mîng 'famous , well known,' IU 22; ch'uē 'cook', a.f.: cḥ'uē-sz, ch'uî* (colloq), fóh-t'aū* (colloq); mîng ch'uē 'famous cook, good cook'

p'aang-yâm (lit) cooking; a.f.: chíng shùng (colloq)

fong-mîn aspect, in...respect, side, phase, quasi AN; tuì-ue...fong-mîn 'in regard to...', a.f.: tsoî...fong-mîn, haí ...fong-mîn

sò (lit) usually, commonly, as a rule, heretofore; a.f.:

ts'ūng-loî IU 23, sò-loî IU 25; sò 'plain, unornamented, white, simple'

în-kaù research, to search into, to investigate thoroughly, to study; yaŭ în-kaù 'to accumulate experience through experiment, experienced in'; sò yaŭ în-kaù 'usually experienced in, highly experienced in'

keî shang shau tò (lit) blessings derived from good deeds in past several lives, implying rare opportunity

laū-leî fluent, fluently

fung-tsûk custom, trend, mode of living

téng AN for hat; roof, summit, top; tò téng 'reached the top'; yat-téng mô* 'a hat'

ko mô* mô* 'hat' IU 11; ko mô* (slang) 'flattery, compliment, praise'; taaì ko mô* 'to receive and give a compliment'; peí ko mô* k'uĭ taaì 'to flatter him'

taaì to wear, such as hat, ring, ornament, eye-glasses

ĭ ear; a.f.: ĭ-tsaí; AN: chèk

peî nose; a.f.: peî-koh; AN: kòh

haú a mouth, entrance, an opening, a port, a hole, speech; a.f.: tsuí; AN: kòh

k'ám to cover, to close up; k'ám-maaî 'to cover'

neĭ peî yat téng ko mô* ngŏh taaì, kei-foō lîn ngŏh kè ngaăn ĭ, haú, peî to k'ám-maaî t'im 'the hat (of flattery) you gave me is so high that it covers up my eyes, ears, mouth and nose' implying compliments that one does not deserve

mēng* name; a.f.: mîng (lit)

saam shaang yaŭ hâng (lit) fortunate, a fortune for three lives, a stroke of luck; ngŏh chan haî saam shaang yaŭ hâng 'I am indeed fortunate'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 29

ORAL MATERIAL

Leĭ Sheûng-Kaaù: Kam-yât haî À-Chim t'ūng Mă-Leî kè kìt fan keí-nîm yât, yaû haî Mă-Leî kè shaang-yât. Heí sẑ ch'ūng-ch'ūng. Ngŏh-teî kìng k'uĭ-teî yat-pooi, hó mà? À-Chim, Mă-Leî, kung-heí neĭ-teî! Ngŏh-teî hei-mông neĭ-teî nîn-nîn yaŭ kam-yât, suì-suì yaŭ kam-chiu. Shaû peí Naām-Shaan, fuk uē Tung-Hoí.

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: M̄-kóm-tong, m̄-kóm-tong, Leĭ Sheûng-Kaaù. Ngŏh t'ūng ngŏh kè noî-tsź to fei-sheūng chi kóm-tsê.

Leĭ: Neĭ heùng ngŏh-teî kóng keí kuì, hó mà?

Sheûng-Sẑ: M̄-shaí kwà, Sheûng-Kaaù. Neĭ chan-haî kaù yau-mâk là. Ngŏh ĭ-waí m̄-shaí wán ti kóm kè yĕ laî kaaú là.

Leĭ: Iù à, yat-tîng iù à. Kóh kòh haî mîng-lîng.

Cheung: Hó hó, Sheûng-Kaaù. Kòk waî* naām nuĭ p'āng-yaŭ, kòk waî* loî-pan. Ngŏh poón-loî tsaû m̄-shik ín-shuèt, kàng m̄-shik yûng Kwóng-Tung wâ* ín-shuèt. Keì-în neĭ-teî kòk waî* kòm peí mîn*, ngŏh waí-yaŭ kóng keí kuì. Uē-kwóh kóng-tak m̄-hó, ts'íng neĭ-teî m̄-hó siù. Kam-yât haî ngŏh t'ūng ngŏh kè noî-tsź kè kìt fan keí-nîm yât. T'ūng-shî yaû haî ngŏh kè noî-tsź kè shaang-yât. Tak-tó neĭ-teî kòk waî* kòm sheúng mîn* tò-laî ni shuè. Fei-sheūng chi wîng-hâng. Fei-sheūng chi kóm-tsê.....Ngŏh t'ūng-shî yaû seúng ch'àn ni kòh kei-ooî toh-tsê kòk waî* kè laĭ-mât, kòk waî* kè shîng ì ..... Táng ngŏh kìng-faan neĭ-teî yat-pooi. Chuk neĭ-teî kîn-hong! Maân-sẑ-shìng-ì! Yám-shìng!

Kòh-Kòh: Toh-tsê, toh-tsê! Yám-shìng, yám-shìng!

Col Leĭ: Today is Jim and Mary's wedding anniversary and Mary's birthday. This home has been well bestowed with happiness. I would like to propose a toast to the host and hostess. Jim and Mary, our heartfelt congratulations. We wish you two many happy returns and all the happiness in the world.

M/Sgt Cheung: Thank you very much, Colonel. My wife and I are very grateful.

Leĭ: Won't you say a few words? A speech, perhaps?

M/Sgt: Is it absolutely necessary, Colonel? Sir, you have a wonderful sense of humor. I thought we could do away with all formalities.

Leĭ: It is necessary, and that's an order.

M/Sgt: Very well, sir. Here goes. Distinguished guests, friends, ladies and gentlemen, I don't know how to make a speech in the first place, and much less to make a speech in Chinese-Cantonese. Since you have honored me with your request, I shall endeavor to do my best. In case I don't do it well, please try not to laugh at me. Today is our wedding anniversary and my wife's birthday. We consider it a great honor that you came. We are very grateful...I wish to take this opportunity to thank each and every one of you for your beautiful gifts and the good wishes they convey...Permit me to return a toast to you. We wish all of you the best of health and success! Bottoms up!

All: Thank you. Bottoms up!

李上校：今日係亞占同瑪利嘅結婚紀念日，又係瑪利嘅生日．喜事重重．我地敬佢地一杯，好嗎？

亞占，瑪利，恭喜你地！我地希望你地年年有今日，歲歲有今朝．壽比南山，福如東海．

張上士：唔敢當，唔敢當，李上校．我同我嘅內子都非常之感謝．

李：你向我地講幾句，好嗎！

張：唔使啩，上校．你真係夠幽默啦．我以為唔使搵啲女人嘅野黎攪啦．

李：呀好，要好，張：個個：多謝各位來識咁得我時地禁想各杯！各位唔位講係同你之又一勝！各更各眾日．倒常時物地飲，地如今日得非同禮你！

今日係亞占同瑪利嘅結婚紀念日，又係瑪利嘅生日．喜事重重．我地敬佢地一杯，好嗎？

亞占，瑪利，恭喜你地！我地希望你地年年有今日，歲歲有今朝．壽比南山，福如東海．

張上士：唔敢當，唔敢當，李上校．我同我嘅內子都非常之感謝．

李：你向我地講幾句，好嗎！

張：唔使啩，上校．你真係夠幽默啦．我以為唔使搵啲女人嘅野黎攪啦．

李：呀好，要好，張：個個：多謝各位來識咁得我時地禁想各杯！各位唔位講係同你之又一勝！各更各眾日．倒常時物地飲，地如今日得非同禮你！

今日係亞占同瑪利嘅結婚紀念日，又係瑪利嘅生日．喜事重重．我地敬佢地一杯，好嗎？

亞占，瑪利，恭喜你地！我地希望你地年年有今日，歲歲有今朝．壽比南山，福如東海．

張上士：唔敢當，唔敢當，李上校．我同我嘅內子都非常之感謝．

李：你向我地講幾句，好嗎！

張：唔使啩，上校．你真係夠幽默啦．我以為唔使搵啲女人嘅野黎攪啦．

李：呀好，要好，張：個個：多謝各位來識咁得我時地禁想各杯！各位唔位講係同你之又一勝！各更各眾日．倒常時物地飲，地如今日得非同禮你！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 29

READING MATERIAL

今日係張上士，張太太*嘅好日子．唔
祇係佢兩人嘅結婚紀念日，又係張太太*嘅
生日．真係所謂喜事重重．

張上士嘅客廳，飯廳時，有唔少同
太*黎賓來賓，各位*來賓，我想更
講嘅說話，各位*已經講過啦．我想出好
意義相黎極之好同勝意．

張太太*話：李上校，今日呢位*嘅
張帶酒，繼太太*講幾句落幕說話，
地敬上請張賓，多謝各位*對講都我敬酒，
佢太*張賓

同太後，
來
嘅
高，講會體
齊意喜，機身
好個地
嘅咁幾呢你
出係趁祝
各
位*
敬

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 29

QUESTIONS

Kam-yât haî pin-kòh kè hó yât-tsź à?

Kam-yât haî k'uĭ leŭng yān tĭm-yeûng* kè hó yât-tsź à?

Uē-kwóh kam-yât haî neĭ t'ūng neĭ t'aaì-t'aaì* kìt-fan keí-nîm yât, neĭ tá-suèn tĭm-yeûng* hìng-hôh à?

Neĭ tá-suèn sùng ti mi-yĕ peí neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* à?

Shîk faân kè shī-haû, pin-kòh heùng Cheung Sheûng-Sź, Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* kìng tsaú à?

Leĭ Sheûng-Kaaù heùng k'uĭ leŭng yān kìng tsaú kè shī-haû, kóng keí kuì tĭm-yeûng* kè shuèt-wâ à?

K'uĭ kóng-uēn chi haû, pin-kòh kaì-tsûk kóng à?

Uē-kwóh neĭ haí kóh shuè, yaŭ yān ts'íng neĭ heí shan kóng keí kuì shuèt-wâ, neĭ tĭm-yeûng* kóng à?

Shaû peí Naam-Shaan, fuk uē Tung-Hoí, ni leŭng kuì shuèt-wâ haî haí mi-yĕ shī-haû yûng kà?

Neĭ koó Cheung Sheûng-Sź, Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* kam-yât kòk-tak tĭm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 29

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

heí sẑ ch'ūng-ch'ūng heí (lit) 'pleasure, joy, pleased with, happy', a.f.: foon-heí (colloq) IU 23; sẑ 'affair, matter, business, thing'; heí sẑ 'happy event'; ch'ūng-ch'ūng 'reiterated, duplicated, often, piled one on another, one after another, a great deal, many'; heí sẑ ch'ūng-ch'ūng 'many happy events'; at the same time; sam sẑ ch'ūng-ch'ūng 'restless mind, restlessness, many things on the mind'

kìng to respect, reverent attention to, to present respectfully, to honor; kìng tsaú 'to toast'

kung-heí to congratulate; synonym: kung-hôh, hôh (lit)

shaû peí Naām-Shaan (lit) shaû 'longevity'; peí 'to compare'; Naām-Shaan 'Mount South'; shaû peí Naām-Shaan 'a Chinese congratulatory saying: wishing you longevity; or literally, your longevity is as long as Mount South'

fuk uē Tung-Hoí (lit) fuk 'felicity'; uē 'as if, same as'; Tung-Hoí 'East Sea'; fuk uē Tung-Hoí 'a Chinese congratulatory saying: wishing you felicity; or literally, your felicity is as great as East Sea'; shaû peí Naām-Shaan, fuk uē Tung-Hoí are often used together in coordinate construction.

m̄-kóm-tong m̄-kóm 'dare not'; tong 'to undertake, to act as, to fill an office, to occupy a position, to be equal to, ought to, should, must, suitable, during; m̄-kóm-tong 'IE, do not deserve the honor (humble); thank you'

kóm-tsê kóm 'to influence, to move, to touch, grateful, moved to thanks', tsê (lit) 'toh-tsê' IU 13; kóm-tsé 'grateful for, many thanks'

heùng facing toward, to or from; yat-heùng 'formerly, of late'; heùng...kóng keí kuí 'to say a few words to...'

yau-mâk humorous; 'sense of humor'

mîng-lîng order, to order; synonym: mîng, lîng; ni kòh haî mîng-lîng 'this is an order'; mîng-lîng...'to order...'

kòk each, every, all; kòk waî*...(formal) 'you all...'

naām man, male, son (lit)

loî-pan guest; a.f.: yān-haàk, haàk (lit), pan (lit), pan-haàk (lit)

ín shuèt to make a speech; a.f.: ín kóng

kàng more, much more, still, again, besides, furthermore; kang 'to change, to replace, to alter'; a.f: kàng-ka

wîng-hâng wîng (lit) 'glory, honor, pride, splendor, flourishing, prosperous'; hâng 'fortunate, lucky'; wîng-hâng 'honor, pride, to be proud of'

ch'àn to take advantage of, to avail oneself of, to follow, to go; ch'àn ni kòh kei-ooî 'to take advantage of this opportunity'

shîng ì shîng 'abundant, prosperous, flourishing, plenteous'; ì 'intention, idea, meaning'; shîng ì 'your generous intentions'

chuk (lit) to bless, to invoke, to pray to, to wish, wishing; chuk neĭ shan-t'aí kîn-hong 'wishing you the best of health'

maân ten thousands, large numbers, all; maân kwòk 'all nations'; maân sẑ 'all things, every thing, anything'

yám-shìng! bottoms up, literally, drink to the victory; a.f.: kon pooi

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Waì: Shóh-waî faaì-oôt pat-chi shî-haû kwòh. Pat-chi pat-kòk, ǐ-king saam kang poòn yĕ*. À-Chim, ngŏh poón-loî m̄-seúng kaaú saàn neĭ-teî kòm hó kè ìn-ooî, taân-haî shî-haû m̄-tsó là. Ngŏh iù tsaú là.

Wōng Siú-Tsé: Ngŏh to iù ch'é là, Mă-Leî.

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ: Kòm tsó tsaú lā? Ts'ŏh hă sin la. Tsoì yám yat-pooi, hó mà?

Paâk: Ngŏh chan-haî iù tsaú lâ. T'ing-yât ngŏh yaŭ keí kîn yĕ iù tsô. Iù t'in kwong yat tsó tsaû heí shan.

Wōng: Mă-Leî, neĭ kè tîn-wâ* haí pin shuè à? Táng ngŏh tá kòh tîn-wâ* kiù kà tik-sẑ* laî ch'e ngŏh faan-huì.

Sheûng-Sẑ: M̄-shaí, m̄-shaí. Yat-chân-kaan táng ngŏh t'ūng Mă-Leî ch'e neĭ faan-huì.

Paâk: Wōng Siú-Tsé, neĭ haí pin shuè chuê à? M̄-shaí mā-faān kiù tik-sẑ*. Táng ngŏh ch'e neĭ faan-huì la.

Wōng: Ngŏh haí...chuê. P'à m̄-t'ūng lô pòh? Mā-faān neĭ pòh.

Paâk: M̄-mā-faān. Shûn-pîn* shûn lô che. Ngŏh chuê kóh shuè haí neĭ shuè kè foô-kân.

À-Chim, Mă-Leî, neĭ kè ìn—ooî hó shîng-kung. Toh-tsê saaì là pòh. Ngŏh hei-mông tsuì kân kè tseung-loî, ngŏh ts'íng-faan neĭ-teî, piú-shî ngŏh kè tsê ì. Tsó t'aú là.

Wōng: Mă-Leî, toh-tsê saaì là pòh. Ngŏh tak-haān tá tîn-wâ* peí neĭ la. Tsó t'aú là!

Sheûng-Sẑ: Neĭ-teî kòm sheúng-mîn* háng laî. Ngŏh-teî toh-tsê neĭ-teî chì chan. Tsó t'aú là!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

T'aaì-T'aaì*: Paâk Sheûng-Waì, tak-haān ts'uî-pîn* laî ts'ŏh à.

Paâk: Tak-haān yat-tîng laî paaì-haû. Tsoì-kìn là!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

Capt White: I agree with the Chinese saying: "Time flies when one is enjoying himself." It is hard to realize it is midnight. Jim, I don't wish to break up your wonderful party, but it is kind of late and I am afraid I have to leave.

Miss Wōng: I have to go too, Mary.

M/Sgt Cheung: So soon? Please stay for a while longer. How about another drink?

White: I really have to go. I have a few things to do tomorrow, and I must get up early in the morning.

Wōng: Mary, where is your telephone? May I use it to call a cab?

M/Sgt: That won't be necessary. Mary and I will drive you home in just a moment.

White: Miss Wōng, where do you live? You don't have to send for a cab. I'd be happy to take you home.

Wōng: I live at... I am afraid that may be out of your way. After all, I hate to impose on you.

White: Nonsense. That's no bother. I live quite close to your place. Jim, Mary. Your party has been a great success. Thank you for a most enjoyable evening. I'll look forward to reciprocating your hospitality in the near future.

Wōng: Mary, thank you for everything. I'll call you when I have time. Good night!

M/Sgt: We are so glad that you came. We should thank you instead. Good night!

Mrs: Capt White, you are welcome to our humble home at any time.

White: I shall drop by as soon as I have the opportunity to do so. Good-bye!

白上尉：所謂，快活不知時候過．不知不覺，已經三更半夜*．亞占，我本來唔想攪散你地咁好嘅宴會，但係時候唔早啦．我要走啦．

黃小姐：我都要扯啦，瑪利．

張上士：咁早走啦？坐吓先啦．再飲一杯，好嗎？

白：我真係要走啦．聽日我有幾件野要做．要天光一早就起身．

黃：瑪利，你嘅電話*喺邊處呀？等我打個電話*咁叫架的士*黎．車我翻去．

張上士：唔使，唔使．一陣間等我同瑪利車你翻去．

白：黃小姐，你喺邊處住呀？唔使麻煩叫的士*．等我車你翻去啦．

黃：我喺……住．怕唔同路嘯？麻煩你嘯．

白：唔麻煩．順便*，順路啫．我住個處喺你處嘅附近．

亞占，瑪利，你嘅宴會好成功．多謝嗟啦嘯．我希望最近嘅將來，我請翻你地，表示我嘅謝意．早抖啦．

黃：瑪利，多謝嗟啦嘯．我得閒打電話*俾你啦．早抖啦！

上士：你地咁賞面肯黎，我地多謝你地至真．早抖啦！

太太：白上尉，得閒隨便黎坐呀．

白：得閒一定黎拜候．再見啦！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

READING MATERIAL

宴留，黃不
家多瞓．白
張想早辭．
少．本要告士
越上忙，亦的
越黎白事留，請
人散．日多電話翻家．
行而因不便打之
上歡但，不想送
路盡．少．黃願
主傾人去，自
深，賓續內而去，
已．士屋之自
夜完女且繼女
已黃，士此
會同起女願

兩太功，用意．
太成來可謝
張極將心
士都近內
上面最佢
張方望示
向各希表
再在佢，
一會．地
白宴會佢
時，此盛翻
門佢得會
出．多宴
將謝可之
致禾樣
人係同

白耐，
幾內，覺之
內佢念
有屋．紀
車．入重可
在意黃重最
．史送事，又
車曼白心
上羅．白義
人有車，意
二極落上有
白，女路最
黃事黃在中
送心．生
士言處跡一
上細黃屋佢
張女到翻係．

黃經後日
同已然
此一日．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

QUESTIONS

Ī-ka keí yê là?

I-ka ǐ-king saam kang poòn yê? Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ shuè kè ìn-ooî tím à?

Uē-kwóh neǐ huì yat-kòh kóm yeûng* kè ìn-ooî, neǐ ooǐ m̄-ooǐ táng tò k'uǐ saàn chì tsaú à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì tím-kaaí m̄-ts'ŏh noî ti à?

Tsó fàn tsó heí, tuì-ue yat-kòh yān kè shan-t'aí yaŭ mŏ yik à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé ch'é kè shî-haû, pin-kòh ch'e k'uǐ faan uk-k'eí à?

Uē-kwóh yê-maăn neǐ t'ūng neǐ kè nuǐ p'aāng-yaŭ ch'ut kaai, neǐ m̄-ch'e k'uǐ faan uk-k'eí, k'uǐ ooǐ kòk-tak tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ni ts'ẑ kè ìn-ooî shîng m̄-shîng-kung à?

Uē-kwóh neǐ haî yat-kòh ìn-ooî kè chué-yān, neǐ seúng kóh kòh ìn-ooî shîng-kung, neǐ ying-koi tím-yeûng* tsô à?

Paâk Sheûng-Waì sùng-chóh Wōng Siú-Tsé faan uk-k'eí chi haû, k'uǐ kè sam kòk-tak tím à?

Uē-kwóh neǐ kè nuǐ p'aāng-yaŭ waâk-ché t'aaì-t'aaì* hó ts'ẑ Wōng Siú-Tsé kòm hó. Neǐ kòk-tak tím à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

waî to speak, to say, to be called; shóh-waî 'so-called, so to speak' IU 20; mŏ shóh-waî 'doesn't matter, of no significance'

faaì-oôt faaì (lit)' 'cheerful, happy, joyful'; pat faaì (lit)' 'unhappy'; faaì-oôt 'happy'; synonym: faaì-lôk, faaì (lit), lôk (lit), foon-heĭ (colloq)

saam kang poòn yê* yê* (lot) 'night, late at night' IU 11; poòn yê* 'midnight'; saam-kang 'the third watch (an old way of reporting time by a watchman in Old China)', a.f.: kaang, saam kang poòn yê* 'midnight'

saàn to disperse, to wind up, to scatter, to dismiss; kaaú saàn 'to cause to terminate, to cause to wind up'; saàn hoi 'to scatter, to disperse'; saàn pô 'to go for a stroll'

ìn-ooî ìn (lit) 'banquet, a feast, to feast, to entertain'; ooî 'to meet, to assemble, meeting, convention, a society, an association'; ìn-ooî 'banquet, to entertain guests with a banquet'; AN: kòh

tsaú to leave, to run, to travel, to walk,; synonym: ch'é (colloq), haāng (lit), kò ts'ž (lit), ch'é 'to go away, to leave, to send off, to tear, to raise'; a.f.: tsaú

t'in kwong t'in 'sky, heaven, weather, a day'; kwong 'light, bright, to illuminate, honor', synonym: mîng (lit), leûng (lit)'; t'in kwong 'daybreak, dawn', a.f.: t'in mîng (lit), t'in leûng (lit)'

tsó early, in the morning, soon, beforehand, previous, ago, sometime since; yat tsó 'as soon as it is dawn, early in the morning'

tik-sz* taxi, taxicab, cab; AN: kà

yat-chân-kaan yat-chân 'a while, a short while, a moment, a shower of (rain)' IU 25; yat-chân-kaan 'a while, a short while, a moment'

mā-faān faān (lit) 'to trouble, to annoy, troublesome, unhappy'; sam faān 'restless, anxious, worried, troubled in mind'; mā-faān (colloq) 'to bother, troublesome'; mā-faān neĭ 'to bother you'; mā-faān neĭ yat-chân-kaan 'to bother you for a moment'

lô road, way, path, journey; AN: t'iū; lô-yān 'pedestrian'; lô sheûng 'on a journey, on the road'; t'ūng lô 'of same direction, same road'

shûn convenient, favorable, to obey, to agree, in accordance with, to go with; shûn-pîn* 'convenient , when convenient'

k'ăn near to, not far from, recent, to approach; kóh shuè hó k'ăn 'that place is quite near'; a.f.: kân (lit)

foô-kân vicinity, nearby, in the neighborhood of; neĭ shuè kè foô-kân 'the vicinity of your place'

tseung-loî tseung (lit) 'sign of future tense, will, shall, to take'; tseung-loî 'in the future, future'; tseung huì 'about to go'; tseung uè 'about to rain'; tseung tò 'about to arrive'; tsuî kân tseung-loî 'in the near future'; tseùng (lit) 'General Officer'

piú-shî piú (lit) 'to show, to make known'; piú-shî 'to express, to indicate, to show, to manifest'

tsê ì tsê (lit) 'to thank'; ì (lit) 'idea, opinion, intention, a wish, will, a thought, purpose, meaning'; tsê ì 'to thank, appreciation, gratitude'; chì tsê (lit) 'to thank, to tender one's thanks'

t'aú to rest, to breathe, to gasp; synonym: yau-sik; sik (lit)

tsó t'aú IE, good night!; a.f.: maăn on (lit)

paaì-haû paaì 'to do obeisance, to pay respect to, to visit, to salute'; haû (lit) 'to wait, to wait for, to expect'; paaì-haû 'to call on, to visit'; a.f.: t'aàm (colloq), wán (colloq), paaî-fóng (lit), fóng (lit), haû (lit)

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE - CANTONESE

REFRESHER COURSE

VOLUME II

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

ED022178

AL 001 478

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

C H I N E S E - C A N T O N E S E

Refresher Course

Volume II

Instructional Units 31-60

March 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

MATERIALS

Printed Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Recorded Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	"Free China's Fighting Men" MF 30-8444
	1 reel	"Mighty Chinese Armed Forces" USALS-86
	1 reel	"Production of Combat Intelligence" TF 30-1494

*FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

PRINTED MATERIALS

This volume contains 30 fifty-minute instructional units (Instructional Units 31 through 60) designed for classroom instruction. Each unit contains the following parts:

Oral Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in oral fluency. New elements of the language are introduced for review and study in this part only. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. It is transcribed in romanization, calligraphed in Chinese characters, and translated into idiomatic English.

Reading Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in reading. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. There is a gradual development from conversational to literary style. It is calligraphed in Chinese characters.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. It is transcribed in romanization. The questions and approved answers, calligraphed in Chinese characters, are in the Instructor's Manual.

Vocabulary and Notes. This part contains a complete list of vocabulary and grammatical notes which are intended for study by the student and support current or subsequent materials.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

RECORDED MATERIALS

As the classroom supervisor or instructor available may or may not be a native linguist, each Instructional Unit is supported by one individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

Oral Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Reading Material. This part also contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Instructional Units, the following study procedures are to be observed when the classroom supervisor or instructor available is not a native linguist:

1. Listen to the Oral Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

2. Repeat after the Oral Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

3. Listen to the Reading Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material.

4. Repeat after the Reading Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material.

5. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

6. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

7. If more time is available, repeat Step 2 and 4.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

CORRELATED MATERIALS

Instructional Units 31 through 60 are to be correlated with 13 fifty-minute language laboratory practice units (Language Laboratory Practice Units 14 through 26) designed for individual practice. Each unit contains the following parts:

Aural Comprehension Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in aural comprehension. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. As this part is for aural comprehension, no printed material is necessary for the student. This part, transcribed in romanization, is in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. No printed material is necessary for the student. The questions and approved answers, transcribed in romanization, are in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Instead of printed material, the student is issued an individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

Aural Comprehension Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Language Laboratory Practice Units, the following study procedures are to be observed:

1. Listen to the Aural Comprehension Material Listening Practice.

2. Repeat after Aural Comprehension Material Repeat Practice.

3. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

4. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

5. If more time is available, repeat Step 1, 2, 3, and 4, and/or record at the end of the tape a resumé of the Aural Comprehension Material.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

TESTING MATERIALS

Instructional Units 31 through 60 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 14 through 26 are to be further correlated with 2 fifty-minute formal testing units (Formal Testing Units 3 and 4) designed to test the student's mastery of the materials in these units. Specific instructions and guidance to the student in connection with the tests are given in each of the Formal Testing Units which are "For Official Use Only".

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

SCHEDULE

4th Wk				5th Wk				6th Wk			
M	Hr	46 IU	31	M	Hr	61 IU	41	M	Hr	76 IU	51
		47 IU	32			62 IU	42			77 IU	52
		48 LIPU	14			63 FTU	3			78 LIPU	23
T	Hr	49 IU	33	T	Hr	64 IU	43	T	Hr	79 IU	53
		50 IU	34			65 IU	44			80 IU	54
		51 LIPU	15			66 LIPU	19			81 LIPU	24
W	Hr	52 IU	35	W	Hr	67 IU	45	W	Hr	82 IU	55
		53 IU	36			68 IU	46			83 IU	56
		54 LIPU	16			69 LIPU	20			84 FTU	4
T	Hr	55 IU	37	T	Hr	70 IU	47	T	Hr	85 IU	57
		56 IU	38			71 IU	48			86 IU	58
		57 LIPU	17			72 LIPU	21			87 LIPU	25
F	Hr	58 IU	39	F	Hr	73 IU	49	F	Hr	88 IU	59
		59 IU	40			74 IU	50			89 IU	60
		60 LIPU	18			75 LIPU	22			90 LIPU	26

IU - Instructional Unit

LIPU - Language Laboratory Practice Unit

FTU - Formal Testing Unit

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

CONTENTS

Instructional Unit	Page
31	1
32	12
33	21
34	29
35	40
36	49
37	60
38	71
39	82
40	89
41	98
42	109
43	119
44	127
45	135
46	143
47	151
48	158
49	168
50	178
51	188
52	198

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

Instructional Unit	Page
53	205
54	214
55	224
56	234
57	242
58	252
59	262
60	269

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Cheung Sheûng-Waì, tsẑ-ts'ūng ngŏh-teî leí-hoi Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû, pat-king pat-kòk ĭ-king shēng nîn. Yān-sẑ pìn-waân, yaŭ uē paâk wān t'in-kaú. Ooî-yik kwòh-huì yat nîn, sui-în mŏ mat shîng-tsaû, taân-haî ngŏh kòk-tak tsuì hóh kò-waì ché haî ts'uí-chóh kòh hó lŏ-p'ōh, yaŭ yat-kòh hó chi-keí, tak yat-fân yau ch'aai...

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Seúng-heí-laī chan-haî hó-ts'ž yat-ch'eūng mûng kóm-yeûng*. Ngŏh chûng keì-yik-tak neĭ kè T'aaì-T'aaì* haî yaū ngŏh kaaì-shiû neĭ shik kè. Taân-haî mŏ keí noî, neĭ leŭng-waî* tsaû faàt-shang luên*-oì. Lōh-maân-sź shîng-kung, kui-în* kìt fan, î-ka neĭ ĭ-king shîng ka laâp shat, uēn-shîng yān-shaang yat-kîn taaî sẑ. Taân-haî ngŏh yîk-to suèn hó-ts'oí. Ngŏh tak-faan ngŏh kè koon-chik, î-ch'é yaû yaŭ kòm hó kei-ooî t'ūng-maaî neĭ yat-ts'aî tsô sẑ.

P: Ngŏh-teî kam-ts'ż peî p'aaì-laî Uĕn-Tung. Ngŏh-teî kè yâm-mô kòm chûng-iù. Ngŏh-teî iù în-kaù toh ti kwaan-ue Chung-Kwòk kè yĕ, în-haû chì hóh-ĭ uēn-shîng ngŏh-teî kè yâm-mô.

C: Neĭ kóng chan tuì là. Ngŏh-teî iù în-kaù toh ti kwaan-ue Chung-Kwòk kè chìng-foó, ngoî-kaau, kwan-sẑ, king-tsaì, kaau-t'ung, kaaù-yûk ni ti kóm-yeûng* kè yĕ. Uē-kwóh ngŏh-teî yaŭ ni ti kè sheūng-shik, ngŏh-teî kung-tsòk fong-pîn-tak toh.

P: T'ing-yât ngŏh-teî iù huì shaû fàn. Ni chúng kè fàn-lîn haî yûng în-kóng shik t'ūng t'ó-lûn shik laî tsô kè. Ts'íng neĭ m̄-hó ch'î-tò à.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

C: Ngŏh keì-tak là. Ngŏh ooĭ chún-peî hó là. Haî kòm tóh lā?
Chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ k'eî-t'a fan-foò mŏ à, Paâk Shiù-Kaaù?

P: Haî kòm-toh là. À-Chim.

Major White: Capt Cheung. It is hard to realize that it has been a year since we left the US Army Language School. The year passed so quickly and so many things have changed. As I recall what I did last year, there was hardly anything spectacular. However, it is most gratifying that I have gotten married, that I have you as my close friend, and that I have an excellent assignment...

Capt Cheung: Come to think of it, it was just like a dream. I still remember that you met your wife through my introduction. Somehow, you two fell in love with each other, and after a whirlwind romance, you two were married. Now that you have a family, you have completed one of the Chinese so-called major events in a human life. As for me, I have been very fortunate also. I have gotten back my commission and have an opportunity to serve with you.

W: Our orders have brought us to the Far East and our mission is so important. We have to do more research on various aspects of China before we can accomplish our mission.

C: You are absolutely right. We have to study the government, foreign relations, military affairs, economy, transportation, education and other things as well. It will facilitate our work if we have this knowledge.

W: We have to attend an orientation tomorrow. I understand this will be given in the manner of lectures and discussions.

Please, don't be late.

C: No, sir. I'll be well prepared. Will that be all, sir? Are there any other instructions, Major?

W: That will be all, Jim.

白少校：張上尉，自從不白有者已好嘅離開成年．回憶過我老婆，言事去覺
學校，不有如然慰知係羅經．但係老婆……
變幻，年，雖告好真得你係羅經．但係老婆……
得最可個黎憶．愛你大事．既官一遠要至後
有一起記嘅戀家件我埋派黎地要後
想重識生而一我機今次被派我然
張上尉：我你發婚．
介紹結婚生
位就結人生．
然成人彩．
好咁好
都且又有咁好
算
完
居
兩
我
由
你
都
敢樣．
夢
份
個
好
優
差……
地
一
塲係
太耐成功室，
幾史家係
成立我
但
係
羅經．
但事
既官一
職，而事．
齊東，我地既任務咁國
研究多啲關於中既任
可以完成我地既野．如果
要研究多啲關於中
地要研究多啲關於經濟，
外交，軍事，經濟，
呢啲敢樣既野．如果
常識，我地工作方
既
啲
呢
有
多．
白：我地今重要去受訓．呢種既訓練係用
聽日我地要去受訓．呢種既訓練係用
張：你講真對啦．我地要研究多啲關於中
國既政府，外交，軍事，經濟，
交通，教育呢啲敢樣既野．如果
我地有呢啲常識，我地工作方
便得多．

演講式同討論式黎做嘅．請你唔
好遲到呀．

張：我記得啦．我會準備好啦．係咁多啦？
重有乜野其他吩咐冇呀，白少校？

白：係咁多啦．亞占．

憶想「人俗人回·謂以二人再感·所張之後之定·正白，去無夢實真」過幻場事有一當變一成境之每，飛，烟會變夢証倒事物，如陣時夢係事快一時如事之其似夢生之有好但「人年之上界總時·有夢」話：一過在之時黎如有語生

言任績上語擔成由外，軍廈務張之陸大服·校·此開角，離五力少開閉家立張其美憶白，尤有四年頓努至尉·除去盛作升上白—結婚言不外·事自華工士至因職而總可就之事東遠人府問題工作，交外·派佢之政……被張便中交通張後工都來由大成功喜事·不名賀可·

白上尉，張之人原士生之上可日後，項兩佢女人年業最昨學校密良，升與一去在係，如保優士白成過除此夢

現工究教育，方於作關

白，重大·務練事，訓軍，別·

如多研，使

多濟

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

QUESTIONS

1. Tsẑ-ts'ūng Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ t'ūng Paâk Sheûng-Waì leî-hoi Lûk-Kwan Uě-Īn Hôk-Haaû chi haû, pat-king pat-kòk ǐ-king keí noî là?

2. Neǐ keí shî leî-hoi Lûk-Kwan Uě-Īn Hôk-Haaû kà?

3. Ooî-yik kwòh-huì keí nîn, neǐ yaŭ ti mi-yě shîng-tsaû à?

4. Haí kwòh-huì yat nîn chung, Paâk Sheûng-Waì yaŭ mi-yě shîng-tsaû à?

5. Neǐ î-ka tsô-kán mi-yě kung-tsòk à?

6. Neǐ t'ūng neǐ kè T'aaì-T'aaì* haî tím-yeûng* kìt fan kà?

7. Paâk Sheûng-Waì î-ka kè koon-chik haî mi-yě à?

8. Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ ne?

9. K'uǐ-teî î-ka peî p'aaì huì pin shuè kung-tsòk à?

10. Neǐ tuì-ue Chung-Kwòk kè chìng-foó, ngoî-kaau, kwan-sẑ, king-tsaì, kaau-t'ung, kaaù-yûk, fung-tsûk, tsaâp-kwaàn, pin chúng tsuì yaŭ hìng-ts'uì à?

11. Neǐ kòk-tak ni keí chúng yě, pin chúng chì kán-iù à? Tím-kaaí kòm kán-iù à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pat-king pat-kòk without realizing it, not knowing, not perceiving, unconsciously; a.f.: m̄-chi m̄-kòk IU 9, pat-chi pat-kòk (lit)

yān-sẑ pìn-waân yān-sẑ 'personal affairs, human affairs'; pìn-waân 'change, variation, transformation, mutation, illusion', synonym: pìn-ts'in, pìn-fà, koí-pìn, ts'in (lit), pìn; yān-sẑ pìn-waân 'people come and go, the change of human affairs'

paâk wān t'in-kaú paâk 'white'; wān 'cloud'; paâk-wān 'white cloud'; t'in 'sky, Heaven, Providence'; kaú 'dog'; paâk-wān t'in-kaú 'the white clouds change into a grey dog' used to illustrate the unexpected in the changing conditions of the times; a.f.: paâk-wān ch'ong-kaú

ooî-yik ooî (lit) 'to return, to be back, times'; ooî-yik 'to retrospect, to recall, to recollect, recollection, recall, retrospect'; synonym: ooî seúng, yik (lit), seúng tong nîn

kwòh-huì past, formerly, in olden days, before; synonym: ĭ-ts'în IU 13, ts'ūng-ts'în, sik-yât (lit), sik (lit)

kò-waì kò (lit) 'to say to, to report to, to inform, to announce, to sue'; waì (lit) 'to console, to pacify, to comfort', synonym: on-waì, waî-mân; kò waì 'to feel being comforted, it is a comfort, it is quite a relief'

ché impersonal pronoun, that, those, one; tsoì-ché 'postscript, furthermore'

ts'uì (ts'uí, ts'ó) to take a wife, to marry (man); pat ts'uì 'to stay single'

lŏ-p'ŏh wife; a.f.: t'aaì-t'aaì*, noî-tsź, noî-yān*, nuĭ-yān*, ts'ai; ts'uí lŏ-p'ŏh (ts'ó lŏ-p'ŏh) 'to take a wife'

chi-keí keí (lit) 'oneself', a.f.: tsẑ-keí (colloq); chi-keí 'bosom friend, good friend, real friend'

fân a part, a share, a portion, a position; yat-fân 'a, a copy'; shâp-fân chi yat 'one-tenth'; pô-fân 'part, portion, share'

yau excellent, outstanding, superior, abundant, plenty, superb; synonym: yau-leūng; yau-tím 'good points, merits'

ch'aai job, employment, to send; synonym: ch'aai-sẑ, chik-waî; ch'ut kung-ch'aai 'TDY'; yau ch'aai 'good job'

ch'eūng A.N. of an affair, an area of level ground, an open space, arena for drill

mûng a dream, to dream; AN: ch'eūng; yat ch'eūng mûng 'a dream'; faàt mûng 'to dream'

luên*-oì luên* 'to indulge in'; laū luên* 'to indulge in'; oì 'to love, to like'; luên*-oì 'to be in love with, love between two sexes'; faàt-shaang luên*-hoì 'to fall in love'

lōh-maân sź lōh-maân 'romantic'; lōh-maân sź 'romance'

kui-în* contrary to expectations, after all, to presume on, reserved

shīng ka laâp shat ka (lit) 'family'; shat 'a home, household, house, apartment, room'; ka-shat 'family, home'; laâp (lit) 'to establish, to erect, to stand up'; shīng 'to complete, to perfect, to become, finished'; shīng-laâp 'to found, founding'; shīng ka laâp shat 'to have a family and career'

uēn-shīng to accomplish, to complete; yâm-mô uēn-shīng 'mission accomplished'

yān-shaang life; yān-shaang taaî sź 'big event in one's life, marriage'

suèn to regard as, to consider, to reckon, to calculate, to count

Uĕn-Tung uĕn 'far, distant, remote'; tung 'east'; Uĕn-Tung 'Far East'; Kân-Tung 'Near East'; Chung-Tung 'Middle East'

ngoî-kaau diplomacy, foreign relation, foreign affairs

king-tsaì economics, economy, economical; synonym: p'ēng, m̄-kwaì, king-tsaì hôk 'economics'

kaau-t'ung communication, transportation, traffic

sheūng-shik common sense, knowledge

shaû fàn shaû 'to receive' IU 16; fàn (abbr. of fàn-lîn) 'to train, training'; shaû fàn 'to receive training, to attend orientation'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

shik form, pattern, type, style, fashion, model, example, sample

t'ó-lûn to discuss, to deliberate, to change opinion; synonym: sheung-t'ó (lit), t'ó (lit), sheung (lit), sheung-leūng, sheung-ì

chún-peî to prepare, to get ready; a.f.: peî (lit), uê-peî

fan-foò to command, to give order, to give instruction; synonym: tsuk (lit), kaau-taaì (colloq)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

ORAL MATERIAL

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Ngŏh kam-yât shóh kóng kè haî kwaan-ue Chung-Kwòk kè mîn-tsik yān-haú teî-yîng kè yĕ. Chung-Kwòk kè mîn-tsik taaî-yeùk* yaŭ kaú-ts'at-saam-yat-saam-ng̀-ng̀ fong-kung-leĭ. Taaî-yeùk* chìm À-Chau seì-fân chi yat, chìm ts'uēn shaì-kaaì lûk-teî mîn-tsik shâp-ng̀-fân chi yat. Haî À-Chau taî-yat taaî kwòk, shaì-kaaì taî-saam taaî kwòk... Chung-Kwòk ts'ūng-loî mŏ yān-haú t'iū-ch'ā. Taân-haî kan-kuì Chung-Kwòk kè ch'ak-suèn, yān-haú taaî-yeùk* yaŭ lûk-maân-maân tsóh-yaû*. Chìm ts'uēn shaì-kaaì yān-haú ng̀-fân chi yat, haî shaì-kaaì kòk kwòk yān-haú tsuì toh kè kwòk-ka...

Chung-Kwòk kè teî-yîng fei-sheūng chi fuk-tsaâp. Shaan-teî chìm tsuēn kwòk paàk-fân chi saam-shâp. Ko-uēn chìm paàk-fân chi saam-shâp-seì, yau-lîng chìm paàk-fân chi kaú, p'oōn-teî chìm paàk-fân chi shâp-lûk, p'îng-uēn chìm paàk-fân chi shâp... Chung-Kwòk kè hoí-ngôn sìn paàt-lûk-saam-lîng kung-leĭ ch'eūng. Uēn-ngôn yaŭ m̄-shiú hoí tó, hoí waan, kóng haú...

Chung-Kwòk kè heì-haû haî taaî-lûk heì-haû. Hâ-t'in fei-sheūng chi ît, tung-t'in fei-sheūng chi laăng...

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk pak pîn t'ūng naām pîn kè heì-haû seung ch'a keí uĕn ne?

H: Hâ-t'in kè shî-haû, pak pîn t'ūng naām pîn mŏ mat m̄-t'ūng. Taân-haî tung-t'in tsaû m̄-t'ūng là. Hâ-t'in seung ch'a shiú-kwòh Shìp Shî shâp tô. Tung-t'in seung ch'a taaî-yeùk* seì-shâp tô. Wā-Naām uĕ kwaì haî ng̀-uêt. Wā-Chung lûk-uêt. Wā-Pak ts'at-uêt.

Lt Colonel Hōh: The topics which I wish to talk about today include China's area, population, and topography. The area of China is approximately 9,731,355 square kilometers. It is about 1/4 of the land of Asia and 1/15 of the world. It is the largest country in Asia and the third largest in the World...

No census of the entire Chinese population has ever been taken. However, according to estimates, the population is about 600,000,000. It is about 1/5 of the population of the World and is the World's largest in population... Within the boundaries of China are arrayed numerous physiographic features which include almost every known type of topographic expression. Mountains occupy 30 per cent of the national area, plateaus 34 per cent, hilly regions 9 per cent, basins 16 percent, and alluvial plains 10 per cent...

The coast-line of China is about 8,630 kilometers. Along the coast, there are innumerable islands, inlets and harbors...

China has a continental climate--extreme heat in Summer and extreme cold in Winter...

Major White: What is the difference in temperature between north and south in China?

H: The difference is much reduced in summer but is greatly

accentuated in winter. In summer, the difference is less than 10°C. In winter, about 40°C. Maximum rainfall comes mostly in May in South China, in June in Central China and in July in North China.

何中校：我人有佔面世中中左係中全三佔……

積面積界國國右係國國百四百……

約大大國從既百十分之

約地陸大既佔分之十六，

地國，據萬一，……佔之

中國面里世第一大有人口常十·高原佔百分之九，盆地十分之

日地七洲十五三來測佔各地份

所形三四五三既·界既百

講既野·一三之份大國

既係關中五一，係……

係關於中國方佔亞一·

但有分國家山地

根係六萬一，……

查·大口人口最之複雜·

調口界人口非三

常十·

非常遠

白少校：中國沿岸國中國呢？

中國既海岸線八六三〇公里長·

沿岸有唔少海島，海灣，港口……

中國既氣候係大陸氣候·夏天非

常之熱，冬天非常之冷……

海岸線海島係大陸氣候既氣候相差幾遠

何：夏天既係攝氏十度，

時候，北就唔同·但

冬天就唔同啦·夏天相差少過

同便同南便有乜唔同·但

南便同冬天相差大約四十度·

華南雨季係五月·華中六月·華北七月·

但問教研演括包辦之語言……經濟，有關之工作，東遠中國去對外交，派究事習慣，被研軍俗所用，尉練．風但地上張訓府候種．別政氣多式．少特國有論校，受中口法討白現如人辦同人，二題育，之式講究

講．主校中何由第一日，面積來者對華人口，工作之極感興趣．地形軍官．

西；之分高原少．陵更部份係大積十五界面積佔全世其地大國．原較少．洲大陸；在日本，韓國亞洲面積第一同平地．盆中國在近海．南係亞洲山地．東一，同

中國之氣候同北美洲者相差無幾，係美國加省之「四季冬冷，同夏熱．大陸氣候不同．如春」

人省大一南，係華各國．界各，同世之中國在內各省，全世界第一，沿海口東國人廣散分口至其

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

QUESTIONS

1. Paâk Shiù-Kaaù t'ūng Cheung Sheûng-Waì ì-ka huì shaû fàn. K'uĭ-teî iù īn-kaù ti mi-yĕ mân-t'aî à?
2. Chung-Kwòk kè mîn-tsik taaî-yeùk* chìm À-Chau mîn-tsik keí-fân chi keí à?
3. À-Chau chì taaî kè kwòk-ka haî pin kwòk à?
4. Pak Meĭ-Chau chì taaî kè kwòk-ka kiù tsô mi-yĕ mēng* à?
5. Ts'uēn shaì-kaaì chì taaî kè kwòk-ka kiù tsô mi-yĕ mēng* à?
6. Chung-Kwòk kè yān-haú taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keí toh à?
7. Chung-Kwòk kè yān-haú chìm ts'uēn shaì-kaaì yān-haú keí-fân chi keí à?
8. Meĭ-Kwòk pin-kòh shîng-shĭ kè yān-haú tsuì toh à?
9. Naú-Yeùk shĭ kè yān-haú taaî-yeùk* keí toh à?
10. Chung-Kwòk kè teî-yîng, mi-yĕ chìm tsuì toh à?
11. Taaî-lûk heì-haû haî tím-yeûng* kà?
12. Ka-Shaáng kè uĕ kwaì taaî-yeùk* haí keí shî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

mîn-tsik area, surface

yān-haú population

teî-yîng teî 'land, ground, floor, place, area'; yîng 'figure, appearance, form, body, to take shape, visible'; teî-yîng 'terrain, topography', synonym: 'physiographic feature'

fong kung-leĭ fong 'square, direction, surname'; tung fong 'east'; seì-fong 'square, four directions, everywhere'; ch'eūng-fong 'rectangular'; fong-în 'local dialect'; kung 'public'; leì 'li (Chinese mile)'; kung-leĭ 'kilometer'; fong kung-leĭ 'square kilometer'

chìm to occupy, to seize, to capture (place), to share, to usurp, to take by force, to encroach upon; synonym: chìm-lĭng

lûk teî lûk 'ground, dry land, six, surname'; lûk teî 'dry land'

yān-haú t'iū-ch'ā ch'ā 'to investigate, to seek out, to search into, it would appear, it seems that..., I find that..., to inquire'; t'iū-ch'ā 'to investigate, investigation'; yān-haú 'population'; yān-haú t'iū-ch'ā 'census'

ch'ak-suèn ch'ak 'to estimate, to measure, to fathom, to guess'; ch'ak suèn 'to calculate, to estimate, to survey, survey, estimation'

kòk various, all, every, miscellaneous

fuk-tsaâp tsaâp 'assorted, mixed, confused, miscellaneous'; fuk-tsaâp 'complicated, complex'

ko-uēn ko 'tall, high, highly, surname'; uēn (lit) 'original, originally, at first'; ko-uēn 'plateau'

yau-lîng yau 'a mound, a hill, a place'; yau-lîng ' a mound, mound, hilly region'

p'oōn-teî p'oōn 'basin, bowl'; mîn p'oōn 'wash basin'; p'oōn-teî 'basin (terrain)'

p'îng-uēn p'îng 'flat, level, even, just, ordinary, common, reasonable'; p'îng-uēn 'plain (terrain), alluvial plain'

hoí-ngôn sìn hoí 'sea'; ngôn 'bank (sea, river), shore';

sheŭng ngôn 'to go ashore, to land'; maaî ngôn 'to come to shore'; hoí-ngôn 'coast'; sìn 'line, thread'; hoí-ngôn sìn 'coast-line'

uēn ngôn uēn 'to follow a course, to go along, to coast, to hand down, to continue, along or by (a road, a coast)'; uēn hoí 'along the sea'; uēn sìn 'land on each side of a railway or highway'; uēn lô 'along the road, the whole way'; uēn ngôn 'along the coast'

hoí tó to 'island'; hoí tó 'sea island, island'; poòn-tó 'peninsula'

hoí waan waan 'bay'; hoí waan 'bay, inlet'

kóng haú kóng 'port, harbor'; kóng-haú 'port, harbor'

taaî-lûk heì-haû taaî-lûk 'mainland'; heì-haû 'climate'; taaî-lûk heì-haû 'continental climate'

hâ-t'in Summer; abbr.: hâ

ît hot, heat, passionate; ît-t'in (colloq) 'Summer'

tung-t'in Winter; abbr: tung; ch'un-t'in 'Spring', abbr: ch'un; ts'au-t'in 'Autumn', abbr: ts'au

pak pîn pak 'north, northern'; pîn 'side, direction, convenient'; pak pîn 'north side, north'; naām pîn 'south side, south'; sai pîn 'west side, west'; tung pîn 'east side, east'; tung naām 'southeast'; sai-naām 'southwest'; tung-pak 'northeast'; sai-pak 'northwest'

seung ch'a seung 'mutual, together, reciprocal'; ch'a 'different, difference, balance, inferior, bad'; seung ch'a 'discrepancy, difference, variation, error'

uěn far, distant, remote, greatly; seung ch'a keí uěn 'quite different'; ch'a tak uěn 'quite different'

Shìp Shî shìp 'to assist, to hold, to attract'; shî 'a clan, a family'; Shìp-Shî 'Centigrade'; Wā-Shî 'Fahrenheit'; a.f.: Shìp-Shî piú, Wā-Shî piú; Shìp-Shî shâp tô '10°C'

tô degree, limit, measure, a rule, a law, place

Wā-Naām Wā 'China'; Wā-Naām 'South China'; Wā-Pak 'North

China'; Wā-Chung 'Central China'

uě kwaì uě 'rain, raining, to rain'; kwaì 'season'; uě kwaì 'rainy season, monsoon'; seì kwaì 'four season'; uě leūng 'rainfall'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

ORAL MATERIAL

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk yaŭ seì-ts'in keí nîn kòm ch'eūng kè lîk-sź. Yan-waî tsẑ-ts'ūng shêk heì shī-toî chì-tò uēn-tsź shī-toî, lîk-sź to mŏ t'uěn-kwòh. Chí-haî în-kaù Chung-Kwòk kè lîk-sź tsaû iù hó noî kè shī-kaàn.

Chung-Kwòk yaŭ hó toh shîng shui kè shī-toî. Ngŏh-teî p'ó-t'ung kiù k'uĭ tsô ch'iū. Tsẑ-ts'ūng yat-kaú-î-lûk chì yat-kaú-î-paàt nīn kè Pak-Fât, kaàk-mîng shīng-kung, t'ui-tó Ts'ing Ch'iū, shīng-laâp Mān-Kwòk. Haî Chung-Kwòk keí ts'in nîn loî yaū kwan-chué chìng-t'aí koí waî tsô mān-chué kûng-wōh chìng-t'aí kè taî-yat ts'ż.

Tsẑ-ts'ūng Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk shīng-laâp chi haû, Chung-Kwòk kè Kwòk-Mān Tóng ĭ tóng tsẑ kwòk. Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó haî Ŝoô-chaàk Kwòk-Mān Tóng tsẑ kwòk. În-tsoî Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó haî T'oî-Waan.

Tsẑ-ts'ūng Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng chìm-lĭng Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk chi haû, Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng shīng-laâp Yān-Mān Chìng-Foó.

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó yaŭ keí toh kòh Uên* à?

H: Yaŭ nğ kòh. Kiù tsô Haāng-Chìng Uên*, Laâp-Faàt Uên*, Sz-Faàt Uên*, Haaú-Shì Uên*, Kaam-Ch'aàt Uên*. M̄-t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk. Ngŏh-teî yaŭ saam-kòh Uên*.

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Meĭ-Kwòk Tsúng-T'úng kè yâm k'eî haî seì nîn. Chung-Kwòk Tsúng-T'úng ne?

H: Chung-Kwòk kè Tsúng-T'úng lûk nîn yat yâm. Lîn suén lîn yâm yat ts'ż.

C: M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

Lt Colonel Hŏh: China has over 4000 years of history. It's history can be traced in an unbroken line from the Stone Age to the Atomic Age. The study of Chinese history alone will take a considerable length of time.

There were many falls and rises in Chinese history. We usually call them dynasties. Since the Northern Expedition in 1926-28 and the revolution which succeeded in overthrowing the Ching Dynasty, a republic was established. For the first time in several thousand years, China had a democratic government instead of a monarchical form of government. Since the founding of the Republic of China, the Chinese government structure has been the Party Rule established by the Kuomingtang, and the Chinese National Government has been and still is responsible to the Party. The National Government is presently in Taiwan. After the Communists took over the Chinese mainland, they established the Chinese People's Government.

Major White: Sir, how many branches of the Government are there in the Chinese National Government?

H: Five, namely: the Executive Yuan, the Legislative Yuan, the Judicial Yuan, the Examination Yuan and the Control Yuan. It is different from the United States. We have three.

Capt Cheung: A term for the Presidency in the United States is four years. How long is it for a President in China?

H: Six years. He can be re-elected for one more term.

C: Thank you, sir.

何中校：中國自從有文字記錄開始，就有好多朝代，一直到清朝，都係帝王專制政體。中國人一向都有一個觀念，就係天下為公，所以中國人一向都反對帝王專制，主張民主政治。中國人嘅民主思想，可以追溯到幾千年前嘅堯舜時代，而且一直傳承下來。中國人嘅民主思想，雖然有時候會受到一啲阻礙，但係從來都冇間斷過。中國人嘅民主思想，喺歷史上曾經出現過好幾次高峰，例如漢朝嘅文景之治，唐朝嘅貞觀之治，宋朝嘅仁政，明朝嘅永樂盛世，清朝嘅康雍乾盛世，都係中國人民主思想嘅具體表現。

中國人嘅民主思想，喺清朝末年開始受到西方民主思潮嘅影響，產生咗一股革命力量，推翻咗滿清帝制，成立咗中華民國。中華民國係亞洲第一個民主國家，亦都係中國歷史上第一個民主共和國家。中華民國成立之後，中國人民就開始實行民主政治。中國現在實行嘅政治制度，係根據國父孫中山先生嘅三民主義而設計嘅。

中華民國喺一九四九年遷台之後，中國國民黨繼續領導中國人民實行三民主義，建設中華民國。中華民國政府遷台之後，已經舉行過多次嘅中央民意代表選舉，同埋總統選舉。中華民國嘅憲法，規定中華民國嘅政府，分為五個院，即係行政院、立法院、司法院、考試院同埋監察院。中華民國嘅總統，任期係六年，連選得連任一次。

白少校：有五個院？

何中校：我哋美國呢，總統任期係四年，中國總統六年一任，連選連任一次。

張上尉：中國嘅總統唔該，唔該。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

READING MATERIAL

中國為世界上歷史最長之一大國．從石器時代至原子時代，前後約有四千年．

中國朝代極多．最長者約有八百年．最後一朝為清朝．最盛者為漢朝，唐朝．是以外國人叫中國人為漢人或唐人．

全部中國歷史中，大部份之政治為君主政體．每朝有盛有衰．盛極而衰．戰亂多由此而起．是以中國歷史，亦為一部戰亂史．此為中國不如歐美之強之主因．

一九一一年十月十日，中國發生革命．推倒數千年國民政府治中國為民主政體．是年由國民黨主政．現國府在台灣．

清朝為之首次．一定為中華民國．號召國人成立後，初次．現國府有五院．總統由民選．任期為六年．成立國之體制．是年十月十日，中國改為國民政府以來一九一一年．民國元年．是為中華民國．

國府有五院．總統由民選．任期為六年．六年後可連選連任．連任期亦為六年．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè lîk-sź taaî-yeùk* yaŭ kei ch'ēung à?

2. Chung-Kwòk keí shî faàt-shaang kaàk-mîng à?

3. Man-Kwòk shîng-laâp chi haû, Chung-Kwòk ǐ tóng tsź kwòk. Kóh kòh tóng kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

4. Meĭ-Kwòk yaŭ leŭng-kòh taaî tóng, kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

5. Meĭ-Kwòk î-ka yûng mān-chué chìng-t'aí yik-waâk yûng kwan-chué chìng-t'aí à?

6. Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó î-ka haí pin shuè à?

7. Chung-Kwòk Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng haí Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk shîng-laâp chìng-foó, kóh kòh chìng-foó kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

8. Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó t'ūng Yān-Mān Chìng-Foó yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng à?

9. Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó yaŭ pin keí kòh Uên* à?

10. Chung-Kwòk Tsúng-T'úng kè yâm k'eî haî keí nîn à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lîk-sź lîk 'to pass through, to have been through, in order, successive'; lîk nîn 'for many years past'; lîk toî 'for many generations past'; lîk ch'iū 'for many dynasties past'; lîk-loî 'hitherto, from the first'; sź 'history, chronicles, annals'; lîk-sź 'history'

shêk heì shī-toî shêk 'rock, stone, barren; AN: kaû; heì 'a vessel, a utensil, a dish, implements, organ in the body, capacity,ability'; shêk-heì 'stone ware, stone vessel'; shī-toî 'age, period, epoch, date of'; shêk-heì shī-toî 'Stone Age'

uēn-tsź shī-toî uēn 'original, originally'; tsź (lit) 'son, posterity, boy, Sir, seeds'; uēn-tsź 'atom, atomic'; uēn-tsź shī-toî 'Atomic Age'

t'uěn (tuên) to cut off, to interrupt, to break, to sever, to stop; tuèn 'to decide, to give judgment, certainly, decidedly'; pat tuên 'uninterruptedly, unbroken'

shîng shui shîng 'rise, flourishing, plenteous, abundant, prosperous, thriving, boom, to hold, to contain, to fill'; shui 'fall, to decline, to decrease, to degenerate, to fail, to decay, weak, fortune declining, withered'; shîng shui 'rise and fall'

ch'iū a dynasty, the court, to visit (father, elder or superior),to face, fronting, towards; T'ŏng-Ch'iū 'Tang Dynasty'; Hŏn-Ch'iū 'Han Dynasty'; Ts'ing-Ch'iū 'Manchu Dynasty, Ching Dynasty'

Pak-Fât fât 'to reduce a dependency to order, to chastise rebels (used of a regularly organized attack), to cut down'; fât kwòk 'to subject a country'; fât mûk 'to chop wood'; Pak-Fât 'Northern Expedition'

kaàk-mîng kaàk 'to remove (position, system), to change'; mîng 'life, to order, order'; kaàk-mîng 'revolution'

t'ui-tó t'ui 'to push, to extend, to enlarge, to investigate, to elect, to promote, to praise, to hand over to, to give up, to expel'; tó 'to fall over, to lie down, to knock down, to turn upside down'; t'ui-tó 'to overthrow', a.f.: t'ui-faan

shîng-laâp to establish, to found, to form, to erect

kwan-chué chìng-t'aí kwan 'a sovereign, a ruler, a state chief, a gentleman, Sir'; chué 'boss, host, master, main, to take over, to rule'; kwan-chué 'a monarch'; chìng 'government affairs, administration, laws, politics'; chìng-tsź 'politics'; chìng-t'aí

'system of government'; kwan-chué chìng-t'aî 'autocratic monarchy, monarchial form of government'

Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk Chung abbr. of Chung-Kwòk 'China', center, central, among, amidst, in between, in'; Wā abbr. of Chung-Wā 'China'; Mān-Kwòk 'republic'; Chung-Wa Mān-Kwòk 'Republic of China' (abbr.: Mān-Kwòk)

koî to change, to correct, to alter, to reform, to repent; koî k'eî 'to change the date'; koî-leūng 'to improve'; koî-pìn 'to change'; koî waî 'to change to, to alter to'

waî to be, to do, to make, to practice, to act out, to cause; waî yān 'to be a man, as a person, a man's character'; shóh waî 'what is done'; waî 'for, because of, on account of, by, to, wherefore'

mān-chué kûng-wōh chìng-t'aî mān 'people'; mān-chué 'democracy, democratic'; kûng 'all, the whole, mutual, collectively, to share, to work together'; wōh 'peace, peaceful, together with, to mix'; kûng-wōh 'united in purpose, republican'; kûng-wōh chìng-t'aî 'republican form of government'; mān-chué chìng-t'aî 'democratic form of government'; mān-chué kûng-wōh chìng-t'aî 'democratic form of government'

Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk Republic of China

Kwòk-Mān Tóng kwòk-mān 'countryman, citizen'; Tóng 'political party'; tóng uēn 'party member'; chìng tóng 'political party'; Kûng-Wōh Tóng 'Republican Party'; Mān-Chué Tóng 'Democratic Party'; Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng 'Communist, Communist Party'; Kwòk-Mān Tóng 'Kuomingtang'

ǐ to use, by, with, through, to use, because, on account of, so as to, in order to, according to, to regard as, to think, to consider, to have, to do, until, when, where, although, and, or

tsẑ to rule, to govern, to direct, to regulate, to put in order, to cure, to heal, peaceful, the peace under good government; ǐ tóng tsẑ kwòk 'party rule, to rule a country by a political party'

Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó chìng-foó 'government'; Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó 'Chinese National Government'

foô-chaàk foô 'to be responsible, to burden'; chaàk responsibility, duty, to scold'; foô-chaàk 'to be responsible'

Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng ch'aán 'property, deeds'; Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng 'Communist Party, Communist'; abbr.: Kûng; Chung-Kwŏk Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng 'Chinese Communist, Chinese Communist Party', abbr: Chung Kûng

chìm-lĭng to seize, to capture, to occupy; abbr.: chìm

Yān-Mān Chìng-Foó Yān-Mān 'people of a country'; Yān-Mān Chìng-Foó 'People's Government'

Uên* branches of a government (Yuan), a courtyard, a hall, a college, a public building, abbr: of a hospital

Haāng-Chìng Uên* haāng-chìng 'administration'; Haāng-Chìng Uên* 'Executive Yuan'

Laâp-Faàt Uên* faàt 'law, method, ways and means'; laâp faàt 'to make law'; Laâp-Faàt Uên* 'Legislative Yuan'

Sz-Faàt Uên* sz 'to control, to execute, to preside over'; sz faàt 'to enforce the law, to apply the law to'; Sz-Faàt Uên* 'Judicial Yuan'

Kaam-Ch'aàt Uên* kaam 'to watch, to put under surveillance'; kaam-ch'aàt 'to control, inspection'; Kaam-Ch'aàt Uên* 'Control Yuan'

Tsúng-T'úng tsúng 'united into one, altogether, whole, all total, general'; Tsúng-T'úng 'President of a nation, Chief Executive of a Nation'

yâm k'eì yâm 'an official position, an office, to employ, to put in office, to allow, to tolerate, to bear, to be responsible for, burdens, responsibility, surname'; k'eì 'term (period), period, to hope'; yâm k'eì 'term of office'

lìn suén lìn 'to continue, to join, to connect, consecutive, even, and, together with, including, Company of soldiers'; suén 'to elect, to select, to choose'; lìn suén 're-elected'; lìn yâm 're-appointment to office, to continue in office for another term'

Haaú-Shì Uên* haaú 'to examine, to test'; haaú-shì 'to examine, to test, examination'; Haaú-Shì Uên* 'Examination Yuan'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waî: Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Mān Chîng-Foó tsuì ko kè haāng-chîng kei-kwaan haî mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî Haāng-Chîng Uên*. Taân-haî Haāng-Chîng Uên* iù tsìp-shaû Kwòk-Mān Tóng t'ūng Tsuì Ko Kwòk-Fōng Waî-Uēn Ooî* kè mîng-lîng. Haāng-Chîng Uên* Uên*-Cheúng yaŭ hó taaî k'uēn.

C: Haāng-Chîng Uên* chi hâ yaŭ keî toh kòh pô t'ūng waî-uēn ooî* à?

H: Yaŭ paàt-kòh pô t'ūng leŭng-kòh waî-uēn-ooî*. Paàt-kòh pô haî Noî-Chîng Pô, Ngoî-Kaau pô, Kwòk-Fōng Pô, Ts'oî-Chîng Pô, King-Tsaì Pô, Kaaù-Yûk Pô, Kaau-T'ung Pô, Sz-Faàt Haāng-Chîng Pô. Leŭng-kòh waî-uēn ooî* haî Mūng Tsông Waî-Uēn Ooî*, K'iū Mô Waî-Uēn Ooî*.

C: Laâp-Faàt Uên* t'ūng Sz-Faàt Uên* chi hâ yaŭ mi-yĕ keî-kwaan à?

H: Laâp-Faàt Uên* yaŭ nĝ-kòh koò-tîng waî-uēn-ooî* t'ūng ts'at-kòh tâk-pît waî-uēn ooî*. Sz-Faàt Uên* yaŭ Tsuì Ko Faàt-Uên*, Haāng-Chìng Faàt-Uên*, t'ūng yat-kòh waî-uēn ooî*.

C: Haaú-Shì Uên* t'ūng Kaam-Ch'aàt Uên* yaû tîm à?

H: Haaú-Shì Uên* foô-chaàk paân-leĭ ts'uēn kwòk kung-mô yān-uēn kè haaú-shì, k'uèt-tîng kung-mô yān-uēn kè tsz-kaàk. Kaam-Ch'aàt Uên* tsuì chué-iù kè k'uēn haî t'aān-hât t'ūng shám-kaì. Yan-waî iù pîn-leî kung-tsòk, Kaam-Ch'aàt Uên* tseung ts'uēn kwòk fan-hoi hó toh kaam-ch'aàt k'ui.

C: Meǐ-Kwǒk mǒ Haaú-Shì Uên* tʻūng Kaam-Chʻaăt Uên*. Kǒm tîm à?

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Ngǒh-teî yîk yaŭ seung tǎng kè kei-kwaan tá-leǐ kʻuǐ-teî kè sî.

Capt Cheung: What is the highest executive organ of the Chinese National Government?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The Executive Yuan. However, it takes orders from the Kuomingtang and its Political Committee, now the Supreme National Defense Council. The President of the Executive Yuan has considerable power.

C: Under the Executive Yuan, how many ministries and commissions are there?

H: Eight ministries and two commissions. The eight ministries are: Ministry of Interior, Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Ministry of Defense, Ministry of Finance, Ministry of Economic Affairs, Ministry of Education, Ministry of Communication, and Ministry of Justice. The two commissions are: Overseas Chinese Affairs Commission and Mongolian and Tibetan Affairs Commission.

C: What are the organizations under the Legislative Yuan and Judicial Yuan?

H: The Legislative Yuan has five standing committees and seven special committees. The Judicial Yuan is composed of the Supreme Court, the Administrative Court, and one commission.

C: How about the Examination Yuan and Control Yuan?

H: The Examination Yuan is entrusted with the power of conducting civil service examinations and of determining the qualifications for public service. The principal powers

of the Control Yuan are impeachment and auditing. In order to facilitate its work, the Control Yuan divides the whole country into a number of supervisory districts.

C: The United States does not have the Examination Branch and Control Branch. Why is that?

Major White: We have their counterparts to take care of their affairs.

張上尉：中國國民政府最高既行政機關係中乜野呀？

何中校：係行政院·但係行政院要接受國民黨既命令·行政同最高防委會呀？
行政院下有兩外交教育委員會·
張：行政院之部會有八個部係內政部，
何：有八個部，財政部，司法部，
政經濟政部，僑務委員會·
行會，同院之下有乜野機關呀？
張：立法院固司同院理人係，同相
何：立法個·察辦務權作區院有
考試院為開考試，最要好
試試考考
張：美校：國
何：
張白少

既察因分既命令·
既察因分呀？
既察因分佢既
既察因分既
既察因分既
既察因分

各國政府之組織，有其相同之處，亦有其不相同之處．有時其組織相同而名不同．

中國國民政府最高長官是總統．總統之下有五院．每院之權力雖各有不同，而其之行政，行政系統為「五權分立」．此為中美行政系統不同之處．

中國國民政府最高長官是總統．總統之下有五院．每院之權力雖各有不同，而其之行政，行政系統為「五權分立」．此為中美行政系統不同之處．

在中國五院中，以行政院之組織為最大．行政院長為行政首長，由總統委派，對總統負責，同時接受國民黨及最高行政機關之命令，對全國人民負責．行政院之下有八部，兩委員會．

立法院為全國之最高立法機關．負責立法．立法院下有各不同之委員會．

司法院為全國最高之司法機關．其下有最高法院，行政法院，及一委員會．

考試院負責全國公務人員之考試與決

定公務人員之資格·

監察院為全國最高之監察機關·其最主要權力為審計與彈劾各政府官員·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

QUESTIONS

1. Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó tsuì ko kè haāng-chìng kei-kwaan haî mi-yĕ à?

2. Haāng-Chìng Uên* ch'uī-chóh tsìp-shaû Tsúng-T'úng kè mîng-lîng chi ngoî, chûng iù tsìp-shaû pin leŭng-kòh kei-kwaan kè mîng-lîng à?

3. Haāng-Chìng Uên* chi hâ yaŭ keí toh pô t'ūng waí-uēn ooî* à?

4. Laâp-Faàt Uên* foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

5. Tsuì Ko Faàt-Uên* haî haí pin-kòh kei-kwaan chi hâ kà?

6. Haaú-Shì Uên* foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

7. Uē-Kwóh yaŭ ti chìng-foó kè koon-uēn tsô-tak m̄-hó, pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chaàk t'aān-hât k'uĭ-teî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kei-kwaan organization, agency, a trap; kei-kwaan ts'eung 'machine gun'; haāng-chìng kei-kwaan 'executive organ, executive organization, administrative organization'

tsìp-shaû to receive, to take

uĕ (lit) and, with, by, to, or; a.f.: t'ūng (colloq)

Tsuì Ko Kwòk-Fōng Waí-Uēn Ooî* tsuì 'the most, superlative degree'; tsuì ko 'supreme, the highest'; fōng 'to defend, to prevent, to prepare'; kwòk-fōng 'national defense'; waí-uēn 'committee member, a deputy, a special commissioner'; ooî* 'meeting, convention, a society, association, council'; waí-uēn ooî* 'a committee, a commission of investigation'; Tsuì Ko Kwòk-Fōng Waí-Uēn Ooî* 'Supreme National Defense Council'

cheúng officer in charge, commanding officer, senior, old, to grow, to increase, to show respect for age, to excel; Haāng-Chìng-Uên* Uên*-Cheúng 'the President of the Executive Yuan'; pô-cheúng 'Secretary of a Department, minister'; waí-uēn-cheúng 'committee chairman'

k'uēn power, authority, right, jurisdiction; synonym: k'uēn lîk

pô a Ministry (Department in the U.S.), a board, a section, a division

k'âp and, such as, to reach to, to attain, to extend, to come up to, when, as long as; synonym: uĕ, t'ūng, tò

Noî-Chìng Pô noî 'inner, internal, inside, within, among'; noî-chìng 'home administration, domestic administration, internal affairs'; Noî-Chìng Pô 'Ministry of Interior'

Ngoî-Kaau Pô ngoî 'outside, external, without, besides'; ngoî-kaau 'foreign relation, foreign affairs, diplomacy'; Ngoî-Kaau Pô 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs'

Kwòk-Fōng Pô Ministry of National Defense

Ts'oî-Chìng Pô ts'oî 'treasure, money, wealth, valuables'; ts'oî-chìng 'finances, administration of finance'; Ts'oî-Chìng Pô 'Ministry of Finance'; abbr. 'Ts'oî Pô'

King-Tsaì Pô Ministry of Economic Affairs; abbr.: King Pô

Kaaù-Yûk Pô Ministry of Education; abbr.: Kaaù Pô

Kaau-T'ung Pô Ministry of Communication; abbr.: Kaau Pô

Sz-Faàt Haāng-Chìng Pô Ministry of Justice Administration

Mūng Tsông Waí-Uēn Ooî* Mūng 'Mongolia, Mongols, to cover, to conceal, to meet with, untaught child'; Tsông 'Tibet', a.f.: Sai-Tsông; ts'ɒng 'to conceal, to store up, to hide'; Mūng Tsông 'Mongolia and Tibet'; Mūng Tsông Waí-Uēn Ooî* 'Mongolian and Tibetan Affairs Commission'

K'iū Mô Waí-Uēn Ooî* k'iū 'emigrants, to sojourn'; k'iū-mān 'emigrants'; Wā-K'iū 'Chinese emigrants, Chinese overseas'; ngoî k'iū 'foreigners residing in China'; mô 'affairs, duty, business, must, necessary'; k'iū mô 'Overseas Chinese affairs'; K'iū Mô Waí-Uēn Ooî* 'Overseas Chinese Affairs Commission'

koò-tîng koò 'firm, strong, established, assuredly, decidedly, originally, chronic'; tîng 'sure, firm, calm, standstill'; koò-tîng 'firm, fixed, unchanged, permanent, stationary, steady'

faàt-uên* law-court; teî-fong faàt-uên* 'district court'; Tsuì Ko Faàt-Uên* 'Supreme Court'; Haāng-Chìng Faàt-Uên* 'Administrative Court'

paân-leĩ paân 'to manage, to do business, to do, to transact, to provide'; leĩ 'to manage, to mind, to care of, to clean up'; paân-leĩ 'to undertake, to do, to take care, to be entrusted with'

kung-mô yān-uēn kung 'public, official, office'; kung-mô 'official business'; yān-uēn 'personnel';kung-mô yān-uēn 'government employees, civil service employees'

tsz-kaàk qualification, eligibility

chué-iù chué 'main, principal, primary, foremost, host,master'; chué-iù 'principal, main, primary'

t'aān-hât t'aan 'to snap the fingers, to play on stringed instruments'; t'aān-hât 'to impeach, to accuse, impeachment'

shám-kaì shám 'to try (court), to question, to judge'; kaì 'to count, to sum up'; shám-kaì 'auditing'

pîn-leî pîn 'convenient, handy, side, to facilitate';

serviceable, sharp (weapons, knife)'; pîn-leî 'convenient, handy, serviceable, to facilitate'

fan-hoi to divide, to split, to screen, to isolate

k'ui a district, a place, a region, small, unimportant; k'ui-k'ui 'small, unimportant'

seung táng equal, equivalent, the same, similar, alike

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Tsẑ-ts'ūng yat-kaú-yat-yat nîn chi haû, Chung-Kwòk tîm à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk kè mîng-wân haî yaū Kwòk-Man Tóng tsô shîng kè, Kwòk-Mān Tóng kè chué-î t'ūng fong-leûk haî Suen-Chung-Shaan tsô shîng kè. Tsẑ-ts'ūng k'uĭ t'ui-faan-chóh Moŏn-Ts'ing chi haû, ue Kwóng-Chau kìn-laâp Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaû, hoi-ch'î fàn-lîn san kwan, kaaù k'uĭ-teî Saam-Mān-Chué-Î. Yat-kaú-î-nğ nîn Suen-Chung-Shaan seî-chóh chi haû, yaū Tseúng-Kaaî-Shêk chî-fai kaăk-mîng kwan Pak-Fât, siu-mît Pak-Yeūng Kwan-Fât, t'úng-yat ts'uēn kwòk, tseung shaú-to yaū Kwóng-Chau poon tò Naăm-King.

C: Kwòk-Mān Tóng chî-leĭ Chung-Kwòk kè kei-poón sz-seúng haî tîm kă?

H: Suen-Chung-Shaan kè chuè-tsòk yaŭ Saam-Mān-Chué-Î, Kìn Kwòk Fong-leûk...Ni ti shue tsaû shîng-waî Kwòk-Mān Tóng chî-leĭ Chung-Kwòk kè kei-poón sz-seúng. Suen-Chung-Shaan wâ, uē-kwóh seúng Chung-Kwòk k'eūng, yat-tîng iŭ shât-haăng Saam-Mān-Chué-Î t'ūng Nğ K'uēn Hìn-Faăt. Saam-Mān-Chué-Î haî mān-tsûk, mān-k'uēn, mān-shaang. Nğ K'uēn Hìn-Faăt haî haăng-chìng, laâp-faăt, sz-faăt, haaú-shì, kaam-ch'aăt.

C: Suen Sin-Shaang tseung kìn kwòk fan-hoi saam-kòh kaai-tuên. Pin saam-kòh à?

H: Haî kwan-chìng shî-k'eî, fàn-chìng shî-k'eî, hìn-chìng shî-k'eî.

C: Suen Sin-Shaang haî pin shuē yān à?

H: K'uǐ haî Kwóng-Tung yān. K'uǐ yaǔ hó toh yau-tîm. Chung-Kwǒk lîk-sź wâ, Kwóng-Tung haî Chung-Kwǒk kè kaàk-mîng ch'aàk-uēn teî.

Capt Cheung: What took place in China after 1911?

Lt Colonel Hōh: China's destiny was shaped by the Kuomingtang, whose principles and policies were formulated by Dr. Sun Yat-sen. After the Manchu regime was overthrown by him, the Whampoa Military Academy was established at Canton to train a cadre as the nucleus of a new army indoctrinated with San Min Chu I or the Three People's Principles. After the death of Dr. Sun in 1925, this new army, under the command of Chiang Kai-shek set out on the Northern Expedition and succeeded in crushing warlordism and unified the country. The National Government originally in Canton was moved to Nanking.

C: What are the ideological bases of the Kuomingtang in governing China?

H: Dr. Sun's Three People's Principles, the Scheme for the Establishment of the Nation... These form the ideological bases of the Kuomingtang. Dr. Sun remarked that in order to make China a strong nation, China must adopt the Three People's Principles and that the Government should be entrusted with the Five Powers. The Three People's Principles are Nationalism, People's Rights and People's Livilihood. The Five Powers are Executive, Legislative, Judicial, Examination, and Control.

C: Dr. Sun divided the course of national reconstruction into

three periods. What are they?

H: The periods are military operation, political tutelage, and constitutional government.

C: Where was Dr. Sun from? Where was he born?

H: He was a Cantonese. He had many advantages. According to Chinese history, Canton has been the starting point of Chinese revolutions.

張上尉：點呀？

何中校：點既，中國成中山做後，訓練二
後，中做孫清開：由北州搬到南
之國民略咗校，義，滅廣
年由同推埔三咗伐首都
一一係義佢黃地死北將
一運主從立佢山軍，
九命既自建教中命國
一既黨．州，孫革全
從國既廣軍年揮一．
自中國成於新五指統京
黨治理著啲本強憲民司建
張：國民中
何：孫

張：先係軍先係
何：孫係孫佢

張：略國想同民立
何：中果義，三個
理如主族政邊三期．
建治，民民行．政．命
係察段．憲點革
想，黨話三係係
義民山行義法監階
本主國中實主憲，個
思義民為孫要民權試三
基民為孫要民權試三
既三成．定三五考開
既呢基國權，將
既中五權法生呀
呀？時係東話
時？好中
政呀有係
訓人佢東
，處．廣
期邊人，
期．國源
多國
歷地．
優既
中策

國後，要山，力主成辦
中立重中校，努民就之
成最孫軍時「三校行
後，國國父埔同講軍實
之民建國黃父演埔與
立．而國立國地黃想
成．中建．各與思
國分國．東用國略本
民可建閥廣之全方基
倒，不為軍於伐在國之
推黨工北，備建軍
被民之滅此以略」，義國
清國要消及，方主治
滿與首為見軍國民黨
自運黨題有新「建三民
命民問生練作．國
之國之先訓著義」為法．

三．第世組由民根第為，憲建民北年
據一實政國革上國
國為政國革命．民
父軍時大命．民
之政期業軍三政
建時．由，年府
國期，民蔣於而將
方略第十石十伐都
略，二四負五成由
建為年責年功廣
國訓之政山蔣始統搬
中．開，州
先北一至
起州地
命廣源
革在策
國亦之
中伐國
人．北建
與與
東軍命
廣建革
為國國
生治中
先黨為
山民東
中國廣
州．以
所

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

QUESTIONS

1. Kwòk-Mān-Tóng kè chué-î t'ūng fong-leûk haî pin-kòh tsô shîng kà?

2. Tsẑ-ts'ung t'ui-tó-chóh Moŏn-Ts'ing chi haû, Suen Sin-Shaang haî Kwóng-Tung kìn-laâp yat-kaan mi-yĕ kwan-haaû à?

3. K'uĭ tîm-kaaî iù kìn-laâp Wōng-Pò kwan-haaû à?

4. K'uĭ fàn-lîn san kwan laî tsô mi-yĕ à?

5. Pin-kòh foô-chaàk chî-fai kaàk-mîng kwan Pak-Fât à?

6. Pak-Fât shîng-kung chi haû, Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó tseung shaú-to yaū pin shuè poon tò pin shuè à?

7. Kwòk-Mān Tóng chî-leĭ Chung-Kwòk kè kei-poón sz-seúng haî haî pin shuè tak lai ka?

8. Saam-Mān-Chué-Î tsik-haî mi-yĕ à?

9. Suen Sin-Shaang tseung kìn kwòk fan-hoi saam-kòh kaai-tuên. Kóh saam-kòh kaai-tuên haî tîm kà?

10. Suen Sin-Shaang haî pin shuè yān à?

11. Lîk-sź sheûng wâ, Chung-Kwòk pin shaáng haî Chung-Kwòk kaàk-mîng ch'aàk-uēn teî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

mîng-wân mîng 'fate, destiny, the will of God, a command, life, to name, government notification'; wân 'luck, to transport, to convey, movement'; mîng-wân 'destiny, fate, horoscope'

Suen-Chung-Shaan Suen 'surname, Sun, grandson, descendant'; Chung-Shaan 'Chungshan of Kwangtung Province'; Suen-Chung-Shaan 'Dr. Sun Yat-sen (the founder of the Republic of China)'

Moŏn-Ts'ing Moŏn 'Manchuria, full, satisfied, self-sufficient, the whole of, complete'; Ts'ing 'Ching Dynasty, clear'; Moŏn-Ts'ing 'Ching Dynasty'

ue in, on, at, by, for, from, than, with reference to, compared with

Kwóng-Chau Canton

Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaû Wōng-Pò 'Whampao (an area located in the vicinity of Canton city)'; Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaû 'Whampoa Military Academy'

kìn-laâp kìn 'to establish, to erect, to found, to recontruct'; kìn-laâp 'to establish, to erect, to found'

hoi-ch'î ch'î 'to begin, first, at the beginning'; hoi-ch'î 'to begin, to start, to be the first, the beginning'

Saam-Mān-Chué-Î chué-î 'doctrine, theory, principle'; Kûng-Ch'aán chué-î 'Communism'; Saam-Mān-Chué-Î 'San Min Chu I, or Three People's Principles, Dr. Sun Yat-sen's threefold theory of national essentials--nationalism, people's rights and people's livelihood'

Kìn Kwòk Fong-Leûk kìn kwòk 'establishment of the nation'; fong-leûk 'policy, scheme'; Kìn Kwòk Fong-Leûk 'Scheme for the Establishment of the Nation---by Dr. Sun Yat-sen'

Tseúng-Kaaì-Shêk Chiang Kai-shek

siu-mît siu 'to diminish'; mît 'to destroy, to annihilate, to remove'; siu-mît 'to destroy, to annihilate, to exterminate, to remove'

kwan-fât warlord; synonym: Pak-Yeūng Kwan-Fât

t'úng-yat to unify, to unite, unification

shaú-to national capitol

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

Naām-King Nanking

poon to move, to shift, to remove, to transport, to transfer; a.f.: ts'in (lit)

sz-seúng sz (lit) 'to think, to contemplate, to meditate, to consider'; sz-seúng 'guiding principle, idea, thought'; kei-poón sz-seúng 'basic guiding principle'

chuè-tsòk chuè (lit) 'to do literary work, to write (as a book), famous, prominent'; tsòk 'to write, to work, to do, to make'; chuè-tsòk 'to do literary work, to write (as a book)'

Mān-tsûk tsûk 'a family, a clan, a tribe, a class'; mān-tsûk 'race, nationalism'; Mān-Tsûk Chué-Î 'Principle of Nationalism'

mān-k'uēn rights of the people, authority of the people; Mān-K'uēn Chué-Î 'Principle of Democracy'

mān-shaang livelihood; Mān-Shaang Chué-Î 'Principle of Livelihood'

shât-haāng to put into practice, to carry out, to execute, to take effect

Nğ K'uēn Hìn-Faàt hìn-faàt 'constitution'; Nğ K'uēn Hìn-Faàt 'quintuple constitution based on the five principles of administrative authority as outlined by Dr. Sun Yat-sen'

kaai-tuên kaai 'stairs, a flight of steps, a class, a rank or step'; tuên 'a section, a paragraph, a part'; kaai-tuên 'period, phase'

kwan-chìng military operations, military administration; Kwan-Chìng Shî-K'eî 'period of Military Operations'

fàn-chìng fàn (lit) 'to instruct, to advise'; Fàn-Chìng Shî-K'eî 'Period of Political Tutelage'

hìn-chìng hìn (lit) 'constitution'; Hìn-Chìng Shî-K'eî 'Period of Constitutional Government'

ch'aàk-uēn teî ch'aàk 'policy, plan, scheme, to initiate, to start, to whip'; uēn 'a source, a spring'; ch'aàk-uēn teî 'starting point, base for initiating a movement'

yau-tîm good points, merits

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Haí haāng-chìng sheûng, Chung-Kwòk kè kʻui-fan haî tím kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk kʻui-fan waì saam-shâp-ńg-kòh shaáng, Mūng-Koó tʻūng Sai-Tsông leŭng-kòh tsẑ-chî kʻui.

C: Shaáng Chìng-Foó shi chìng kè shì-haû, yûng mi-yĕ laì tsŏ kan-kuì à?

H: Haî i-chiù Suen-Chung-Shaan shóh sé kè Kìn Kwòk Taaî-Kong tʻūng Chung-Yeung Chìng-Foó kè faàt-lût tʻūng mîng-lîng laì shi chìng.

C: Shaáng-Foó Chué-Tsîk haî yaū Chung-Yeung Chìng-Foó waí-yâm kè, yik-waâk haî yaū yān-mān suén kà?

H: Shaáng-Foó Chué-Tsîk haî yaū Chung-Yeung Chìng-Foó waí-yâm kè.

C: Chung-Kwòk yaŭ leŭng-chúng shĭ, tâk-pît shĭ tʻūng pʻó-tʻung shĭ. Tâk-pît shĭ haî yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan koón-hât kà?

H: Haî yaū Haāng-Chìng Uên* chîk-tsìp koón-hât kè. Tâk-pît shĭ paau-kʻoòt hâ-pîn keí chúng: 1. Kwòk to. 2. Yān-haú toh-kwòh yat-paàk-maân kè shìng-shĭ. 3. Tsoî chìng-chî sheûng, king-tsaì sheûng, mān-fà sheûng yaŭ tâk-pît chûng-iù sìng kè. Chung-Kwòk yaŭ shâp-î-kòh uên*-hât shĭ, ńg-shâp-ńg-kòh shaáng-hât shĭ.

C: Chung-Kwòk kè pó-kaàp chaì-tô haî tím kà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

H: Chì-ue pó-kaàp chaì-tô, mooĭ kòh shĭ fan waī yeûk-kon kˢui. Kˢui chi hâ yaŭ pó. Pó chi hâ yaŭ kaàp. Kaàp chi hâ yaŭ oô.

C: Teî-fong tsẑ-chî kè taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Uên haî teî-fong tsẑ-chî kè taan-waî*. Uên yaŭ toh chúng, ĭ mîn-tsik, yān-haú, king-tsaì tsˢing-ying, mān-fà, tˢūng kaau-tˢung kung-kuî ì tîng. Uên chi hâ yaŭ heung waâk chàn. Heung waâk chàn chi hâ yaŭ pó tˢūng kaàp.

Capt Cheung: From the standpoint of administration, how many divisions is China divided into?

Lt Colonel Höh: China is divided into 35 provinces, Mongolia and Tibet.

C: When each provincial Government administers political affairs, what does it follow?

H: It follows the Fundamentals of National Reconstruction authored by Dr Sun Yat-sen and orders of the Central Government.

C: Is the chairman of the provincial government appointed by the National Government or elected by the people?

H: He is appointed by the Central Government.

C: In China there are two kinds of municipalities, special and ordinary. What organization has control over the special municipalities?

H: They are under the direct control of the Executive Yuan. Special municipalities comprise (1) the national capital, (2) cities that have a population of over 1,000,000, and (3) cities that possess special political, economic and cultural importance. There are twelve special municipalities which are controlled by the Executive Yuan and fifty-five ordinary municipalities which are controlled by the provincial governments.

C: What is the pao-chia system in China?

H: The pao-chia system is this: Each municipality is divided into a number of chu (district); each chu is divided into pao (borough); each pao is divided into chia (ward); and each chia is divided into households.

C: What are the units of local self-government?

H: Hsien (county) is a unit of local self-government. There are several kinds of hsien, depending on their area, population, economic conditions, cultural status and communication facilities. Under the hsien there are hsiang (in rural areas) or chen (in urban areas), and the hsiang or chen are sub-divided into pao and chia.

張上尉：喺行政上，中國嘅區分係點㗎？

何中校：中國區分為三十五個省，蒙古同西藏兩個自治區。

張：省政府施政嘅時候，用乜野藂做根據呀？

何：係依照孫中山所寫嘅大綱同中央政府主席由人民選舉嘅命令藂施政。

張：省府係由中央委任嘅，抑或係由省府委任嘅？

何：省府主席有兩種：(一)由中央政府委任嘅。

張：中國有別行政區嗎？

何：係。特別行政區包括一百萬人口多過濟上，經中國都市，(二)在政治上，經中國有十二個院轄市，五十五個省轄市。

張：中國嘅保甲制度係點㗎？

何：至於保甲制度，每個市分為若干區。區之下有保。保之下有甲。甲之下有户。

張：地方自治嘅單位係乜野呀？

何：係地方自治嘅單位。縣有多種，以

面積，人口，經濟情形，文化，
同交通工具而定．縣之下有鄉或
鎮．鄉或鎮之下有保同甲．

READING MATERIAL

中國地大人多，地形與政情形分為較為時分
複雜不同，各省治理之區亦國分為去分十
有若干行政區全市政府將區市有
為若干戰亂多便在各市之中保
若干戰若干區甲·每地區特保·
因為至十甲·每甲又省每
至

根據最近一·由行政區分可
約如下：第五區市普國州與別叫轄省
分西市院市轄·十治通·全廣縣省市縣言，自市轄，叫五
市轄·市之形之有
種情縣下

六濟·之
至經定保·
種，而·
三口形保
有人情有
縣，通下
位·積交之
單其面與鎮
之以要，或
治類重·鄉
自種之鎮
方之上或
地縣化鄉
為·文有……

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

QUESTIONS

1. Haî haāng-chìng fong-mîn, Chung-Kwòk hóh-ĭ fan waî keî toh shaáng t'ūng tsẑ-chî k'ui à?

2. Chung-Yeung Chìng-Foó t'ūng shaáng chìng-foó yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng à?

3. Suen-Chung-Shaan Sin-Shaang sé-chóh yat-poón shue,haî kwaan-ue Chung-Yeung Chìng-Foó t'ūng teî-fong chìng-foó kè. Kóh poón shue kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

4. Shaáng-Foó Chué-Tsîk haî yaū Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó waî-yâm kè, yik-waâk haî yaū yān-mān suén kà?

5. Chung-Kwòk yaŭ pin leŭng-chúng shĭ à?

6. Tâk-pît shĭ t'ūng p'ó-t'ung shĭ yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng à?

7. Kwóng-Tung yaŭ yat-kòh tâk-pît shĭ, k'uĭ kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

8. Teî-fong tsẑ-chî kè taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

k'ui-fan (lit) to divide, division; synonym: fan, fan wai

tsz-chi k'ui tsz 'self, personal, from, since, private'; chi 'to govern, to control, to rule, to manage'; tsz-chi 'self-government'; k'ui 'area, district, region'; tsz-chi k'ui 'self-governing district'; Mung-Koo Tsz-Chi K'ui 'Mongolia'; Sai-Tsong Tsz-Chi K'ui 'Tibet'

shi ching shi 'to bestow, to grant, to act, to do, to exhibit'; ching 'policy, politics, governing'; shi ching' to administer political affairs'

i-chiu i (lit) 'to follow, to comply with, to trust to, to depend on, to obey, to be near to, according to'; chiu 'according to, to obey'; i-chiu 'according to, to comply with, in obedience to'; synonym: kan-kui

Kin Kwok Taai-Kong kong 'general outline, summary, principles, laws, the large rope of a net'; taai-kong 'an outline, a summary'; Kin Kwok Taai-Kong 'Fundamentals of National Reconstructions--by Dr. Sun Yat-sen, Outline of Principles for the Establishment of the Nation, title of a book by Dr. Sun Yat-sen'

Chung-Yeung Ching-Foo chung-yeung 'central, center'; Chung-Yeung Ching-Foo 'Central Government'

faat-lut lut 'a law, a rule, uniform, according to rule'; yat-lut 'uniform, all'; faat-lut 'law, laws, statutes'; a.f.: faat

Shaang-Foo Chue-tsik Shaang-Foo 'Provincial Government'; a.f.: Shaang Ching-Foo; chue-tsik 'chairman'; Shaang-Foo Chue-Tsik 'Governor, Provincial Governor'; Kwok-Foo Chue-Tsik 'President of the National Government'

tak-pit shi tak-pit 'special, particularly'; a.f.: tak; shi 'city, town, market'; a.f.: shing, shing-shi; tak-pit shi 'special municipality'

p'o-t'ung shi p'o-t'ung 'common, ordinary, general'; p'o-t'ung shi 'ordinary city'

koon-hat koon 'to govern, to care for, to control, to manage'; hat 'to have rule over, to have jurisdiction over'; koon-hat 'to have rule over, to have jurisdiction over, to govern'; chik-tsip koon-hat 'to have direct control , to have

direct jurisdiction over', abbr: chîk hât

chîk-tsîp chîk 'direct, directly, straight, upright'; chîk-tsîp 'direct, directly, first-hand'

kwŏk to to 'national capitol, metropolis, also'; a.f.: shaú-to, king-to, king-shîng, king, to

mān-fà mān 'literature, language'; mān yān 'literary man'; mān-hôk 'literature'; mān-tsẑ 'characters, writing'; fà 'to transform, a change, to influence'; mān-fà 'civilization, culture'

chûng-iù sìng chûng-iù 'important'; sing 'nature, disposition, spirit, temper, a property or quality, sex'; chûng-iù sing 'importance'

uên*-hât shĭ cities under the direct jurisdiction by Executive Yuan; shaáng-hât shĭ 'cities under the jurisdiction by the provincial government'

chaì-tô chaì 'system, regulation, laws, to regulate to govern, to restrain, to suppress, to subdue'; chaì-tô 'system, regulation, rules'

pó-kaàp chaì-tô pó 'borough, a pao, to protect, to guard, to insure, to guarantee'; kaàp 'ward, a tithing, armour, fingernails, scaly, first, chief'; pó-kaàp 'a tithing'; pó-kaàp chaî-tô 'system of tithing'

chì-ue regarding, in regard to

yeûk-kon yeûk 'if, as to, supposing'; yeûk-kon 'a certain amount, so much'

oô a door, a family, household, house; oô ngoî 'outdoor'; oô noî 'indoor'

teî-fong tsẑ-chî 'local self-government'

taan-waî* taan 'single, simple, list'; taan-waî* 'unit'

uên county, hsien

ts'îng-yîng ts'îng 'condition, circumstances, affections, feelings, desires'; ts'îng-yîng 'condition, circumstances'

kung-kuî kuî 'implement, utensil, tool, instrument, to prepare, to write out, all, the whole'; kung-kuî 'implement, facility'; kaau-t'ung kung-kuî 'communication, facility, means of transportation'

heung hsiang (in rural areas), village, hometown

chân chen (in urban areas), city, town

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waî: Yaŭ yān wâ, Chung-Kwŏk ĭ nūng laâp kwŏk. Ni kuî shuēt-wâ tîm-kaaî à?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaŭ: Chung-Kwŏk nūng-mān chîm ts'uēn kwŏk yān-haú paàk-fân chi ts'at-shâp-î. Shóh-ĭ yaŭ yān wâ, nūng-îp haî Chung-Kwŏk king-tsaî kĕ kei-ch'óh.

C: Chung-Kwŏk nūng-îp hóh fan waî ch'uk-mûk uĕ kaang-chùng leŭng taaî luî. Ch'uk-mûk toh-shŏ haî pin shuè à? Kaang-chùng toh-shŏ haî pin shuè à?

H: Ch'uk-mûk toh-shŏ haî Tung-Pak, Sai-Pak, Sai-Naām kòk teî. Kaang-chùng toh tsoî Wā-Pak, Wā-Chung, Wā-Naām kòk teî.

C: Chung-Kwŏk nūng-mān toh-shŏ yûng mi-yĕ paân-faàt kaang-chùng kà?

H: Toh-shŏ yûng yān-lîk t'ūng ch'uk-shaang laî kaang-chùng.

C: Chung-Kwŏk Chîng-Foó koî-shîn nūng-îp kè chué-iù mûk-tik haî tîm kà?

H: Haî kaang-chùng foh-hŏk fà, heung-ts'uen kung-îp fà, nūng ch'aán-pán sheung-îp fà.

C: Kân nîn loî nūng-îp foh-hŏk hó yaŭ tsŭn-pô. Tîm-kaaî à?

H: Yan-waî tak-tó Meĭ-Kwŏk kĕ king-tsaî oōn-chŏh, yaŭ Meĭ-Kwŏk fàn-lîn kĕ keî-shût yān-ts'oî kĕ chî-tô, t'ūng tsẑ-keî kĕ nŏ-lîk.

C: Pin ti nūng ch'aán-pán kĕ shî-îm ĭ-king yaŭ hó hó kĕ shîng-tsik ā?

H: Hó-ts'ž maĭ, mâk...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

C: Tîm-kaaî heung-ts'uen kung-îp fà kǒm kán-iù à?

H: Uē-kwóh heung-ts'uen kung-îp fà, kung-îp tsaû m̄-ooǐ tsaâp-chung haî shîng-shǐ shuě. Tsaû hó yūng-î k'ap-shau ti shîng-uē lō-kung. Kaān-tsîp lîng-tǒ kǒk teî kè kung k'aū tak-tó p'îng-hāng.

C: Tuì-ue t'ó-teî koî-kaāk, T'oî-Waan Kwǒk-Mān Chîng-Foó tîm tsô à?

H: Ǐ-king shât-haāng kaang-ché yaǔ k'eî t'în kè chîng-ch'aāk. Ni ti chîng-ch'aāk t'ūng Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng kè kung-shě chîng-ch'aāk uēn-ts'uēn m̄-t'ūng.

Capt Cheung: It is said that China is an agricultural country. What does it mean?

Lt Colonel Hoh: 72 per cent of China's population are farmers. Therefore it is said that agriculture is the foundation of China's economy.

C: China's agriculture may be divided into two main types, namely: grazing on natural grasses and arable farming. Where are they located?

H: Grazing on natural grasses is found in north eastern, north western and south western areas, whereas arable farming is in North China, Central China and South China.

C: What methods of farming do the Chinese farmers use?

H: Mostly by use of manual labor and domestic animals.

C: What are the main objectives of the Chinese Government in improving the agricultural situation?

H: Scientific farming, industrialization of rural districts, and commercialization of farming products.

C: During the last few years, the science of agriculture has made considerable progress. Why is that?

H: This is due to the American economic aid, the direction of American-trained technicians and the effort put forth by the Chinese themselves.

C: With what agricultural products have good experimental results been achieved?

H: Rice, wheat...

C: Why is industrialization of rural areas so important?

H: If rural areas are industrialized, it will decentralize industrial enterprises in cities. This will absorb surplus labor, and indirectly balance the demand and supply.

C: What does the National Government in Taiwan do as far as Land Reform is concerned?

H: They have implemented the so-called Land-to-the-Tillers policy which is entirely different from that of the Communist's People Commune Policy.

張上尉：有人話，中國以農立國．呢句說話點解呀？

何中校：中國農民佔全國人口百份之七十二．所以有人話，農業係中國經濟既基礎．

張：中國農業可分為畜牧與耕種兩大類．畜邊處多數喺耕種多數喺邊處呀？

何：畜牧多數喺東北，西北，西南各地．耕種多在華北，華中，華南各地．

張：中國農民人力改善化，牲畜農業既主要目的係點樂？

何張：中國數國耕種．

張何：多中係近因．

張上尉：農用政府科學化，畜牧鄉村工業化，農產品有人話，中國以農立國．呢句說話點解呀？

何中校：中國農民佔全國人口百份之七十二．所以有人話，農業係中國經濟既基礎．

張：中國農業可分為畜牧與耕種兩大類．畜邊處多數喺耕種多數喺邊處呀？

何：畜牧多數喺東北，西北，西南各地．耕種多在華北，華中，華南各地．

張：中國農民人力改善化，牲畜農業既主要目的係點樂？

何張：中國數國耕種．

張何：多中係近因．

張：農用政府科學化，畜牧鄉村工業化，農產品有進步．點解呀？

何：種商來得練努農呀？

張：年為邊

何：好點

張何：

何：

張：科學既好經有進步．點解呀？

何：技術既人才既指導，有美國訓練既成績

張：農倒既力產品既試驗已經有好好既成績

何：麥....

張：哟似解果

何：如

張何：

何：

張：

何：

張：

何：

張

城市處．就好容易吸收啲剩餘勞工．間接令到各地嘅供求得倒平衡．

張：對於土地改革，台灣國民政府點做呀？

何：已經實行耕者有其田嘅政策．呢啲政策同共產黨嘅公社政策完全唔同．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

READING MATERIAL

國工在人基
各以大業
美所地農
歐，國於
同．良中立
不優後，建
國落所，國
與學國國以
國科各各所
基礎，在方美．
之礎要東歐業
立基主．與農
國建面宜
立易業，適上
之礎
業工多

問村(四)．
之鄉．於勞
關．化中餘
有(二)．業集剩
業．商業之
農化够工村策
與學不．農政
但科品衡以善
够產平所改業下
國不農不，業工之農
立種．口市農村力在
農耕(三)．人城之鄉努國
以．化之大府．府中
雖(一)．化市各政(二)．政在政使
中多工業城與現化助之進步．
國：業城與海．學科化援大
題亦够村沿多．科化援大
不够村沿多．科化援大
鄉南太種業濟極

政革政
農地改，政
項土經濟，
各因對
之功．故貢獻．
行有
實成善極
所為改都
府最形善
國政革」情改
中地生形
台灣「土民情
在，以農政
策中功，軍
成功與
治

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

QUESTIONS

Chung-Kwòk kè nūng-mān chìm ts'uēn kwòk yān-haú keí fân chi keí à?

Chung-Kwòk kè nūng-îp hóh-ǐ fan waî pin leŭng taaî luî à?

Ch'uk-mûk toh-shò haí pin shuè à?

Chung-Kwòk kè kaang-chùng haî yûng mi-yĕ paân-faàt kà?

Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó tuì-ue koí-shîn nūng-îp kè chué-iù mûk-tik haî tím à?

Haí nūng-îp foh-hôk fong-mîn, pin-kòh kwòk-ka oōn-chôh Chung-Kwòk chì taaî à?

T'ó-teî koí-kaàk kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ à?

Tím-kaaí Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó seúng tseung ti heung-ts'uen kung-îp fà à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

îp business, a trade, a profession, property, possession, already; nūng-îp 'agriculture'; kung-îp 'industry'; sheung-îp 'commerce, business'; hôk-îp 'schooling'; taaî îp 'the great task--to rule'

kei-ch'óh kei 'basic, fundamental, base, foundation'; kei-ch'óh 'foundation, fundamental'

ch'uk-mûk ch'uk 'to rear, to feed, to cultivate, domestic animal'; ka-ch'uk 'domestic animals'; mûk 'to tend as a shepherd, to shepherd'; ch'uk-mûk 'to rear domestic animal, animal husbandry'

kaang-chùng kaang 'to plough, to till'; kaang t'în 'to plough the fields'; chùng 'to plant'; kaang-chùng 'to plough, to till'

ch'uk-shaang domestic animals; a.f.: ch'uk

koî-shîn koî 'to change, to alter, to transform'; shîn 'good, virtuous, apt, expert, familiar with, to perfect, to make good'; shîn yān 'good man'; shîn ue 'good at'; koî-shîn 'to improve, to perfect, to better'

mûk-tik purpose, objective

foh-hôk fà foh-hôk 'science'; fà 'to change, to transform, to modify, -ize, -fic'; foh-hôk fà 'scientific'; kung-îp fà 'industrialized'; sheung-îp fà 'commercialized'; Meî-Kwòk fà 'Americanized'

heung-ts'uen heung 'country place, village, hometown'; ts'uen 'village, hamlet', AN: t'iū; heung-ts'uen 'country, village'

nūng ch'aán-pán ch'aán 'to produce, to yield, to manufacture, property'; ch'aán-pán 'product, production'; nūng ch'aán-pán 'agricultural product, farm product'

tsùn-pô tsùn 'to advance, to proceed, to enter'; pô 'steps, pace'; tsùn-pô 'progress, to make progress'

oōn-chôh oōn (uēn) 'to assist, to rescue, to aid, to help, to take hold of'; chôh 'to assist, to help'; oōn-chôh (uēn-chôh) 'to aid, to help, to assist'; king-chaî oōn-chôh 'economic aid'; kwan-sẑ oōn-chôh 'military aid'

yān-ts'oi ts'oi 'ability, talent, power, genius'; yān-ts'oi 'talents, man of ability'; keî-shût yān-ts'oi 'technicians'

chî-tô chî 'finger, to point to, to guide, to direct'; tô 'to guide, to lead to, to direct'; chî-tô 'to guide, to lead, to direct'

shì-îm îm 'to examine, to inspect, to test'; shì-îm 'experiment, trial, to try out, to test, ordeal'

maĭ rice (uncooked)

mâk wheat, surname

tsaâp-chung tsaâp 'to collect, to gather, to assemble'; tsaâp-chung 'to concentrate'; tsaâp-chung yíng 'concentration camp'

k'ap-shau k'ap 'to attract, to inhale, to absorb'; shau 'to receive, to gather, to bring to a close, to harvest, to store away'; k'ap-shau 'to absorb, to inhale, to suck like a leach'

shîng-uē shîng 'to remain over, left overs, surplus'; uē 'surplus, excess, remainder, a balance, complement of a number'; shâp uē 'ten odd'; shîng-uē 'surplus, what is left over, balance'

lō-kung lō 'to toil, to suffer, to give trouble to, weary'; kung 'labor, laborer, work'; lō-kung 'labor, laborers, workers'

kaàn-tsìp indirect, indirectly

kung k'aū kung 'to supply, supply, to furnish, for'; k'aū 'to demand, demand, to beg, to request'; kung k'aū 'demand and supply'

p'îng-hāng evenly balanced, to balance, to offset, equilibrium

t'ó-teî koî-kaàk t'ó 'earth, soil, land'; teî 'land, floor, ground, lot'; t'ó-teî 'land, soil, territory'; koî-kaàk 'to reform (system, political)'; t'ó-teî koî-kaàk 'land reform, agrarian reform'

kaang-ché yaŭ k'eî t'în kaang-ché 'those who till'; t'în 'rice field, field'; kaang-ché yaŭ k'eî t'în 'land-to-the-tillers'

chìng-ch'aàk ch'aàk 'policy, scheme, plan, to initiate'; chìng-ch'aàk 'policy, plan, scheme'

kung-shĕ shĕ 'tutelary, association'; kung-shĕ 'Commune (a Communist system)'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwŏk kung-îp hóh fan waì kung-yîng uĕ mān-yîng leŭng-luî. Kung-yîng sẑ-îp, yaŭ shūn shûk kwŏk-yîng, yaŭ kwŏk shaáng hŏp yîng. Kwŏh-huì taî-shûk ue King-Tsaì Pŏ Tsz-Uēn Waì-Uēn Ooî. Yaū koi ooî* kaam-tuk koón-leĭ. Kung-yîng sẑ-îp tsuì chué-iù kĕ haî mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî tîn-lîk kung-îp, kŏng-t'ìt kung-îp, kei-haaî kung-îp, lîn t'ōng kung-îp, tîn heì kung-îp, fà-hŏk kung-îp.

P: Mān-yîng kung-îp tsuì chué-iù kĕ haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Haî kŏng-t'ìt kung-îp, kei-haaî kung-îp, fà-hŏk kung-îp, shîk-pán kung-îp, fóng-chik kung-îp, yât-yûng-pán kung-îp.

P: Chung-Kwŏk Chìng-Foó seúng faàt-chîn kung-îp, taân-haî ts'oî-lîk m̄-kaù. Chung-Kwŏk Chìng-Foó tîm paân à?

H: Chìng-foó koó-laî Wa-K'iū uĕ ngoî-yān t'aū tsz. Hei-mŏng hŏh-ĭ tsẑ-k'ap tsẑ-tsuk, wán-koò king-tsaì kei-ch'óh.

P: Kung-îp hŏp-tsŏk kĕ yâm-mŏ haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Haî tsz-chŏh siú kung-îp ch'ut-ch'aán kwan-yûng uĕ mān-yûng kè yât-sheūng yûng-pán. Lîng siú kung-îp faàt-chîn chì ts'uēn kwŏk, uĕ on-tîng king-tsaì.

P: Tîm-kaaì Chung-Kwŏk kĕ ch'ŭng kung-îp t'ūng hing kung-îp to meî-ts'āng faàt-taât à?

H: Yan-waî k'uĕt-fât foh-hŏk yān-ts'oì uĕ keî-shût yān-uēn.

P: Chung-Kwŏk kè kung-ooî* tsó-chik m̄-haî keì kîn-ts'uēn. Chìng-foó tuì ti lō-kung tîm-yeûng* à?

H: Ching-foó tuì k'uĭ-teî kĕ fuk-leî ĭ-king hó chuĕ-ì. Koó-laî k'uĭ-teî tsó-chik kung-ooî*.

Major White: China's industries may be divided into two types, namely the state-owned and the private-owned industries. Among the state-owned industries, there are some exclusively owned by the state, and some by the state and the province. In the past, these were placed in hands of the National Resources Commission, Ministry of Economic Affairs. What are the main state-owned industries, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: They are electric power, metallurgy, machinery, sugar refining, electrical manufacturing, and chemical industry.

W: What are the main private-owned industries?

H: They are iron and steel, machine making, chemical, food, textile, and daily necessities.

W: The Chinese Government plans to develop industries, however, it lacks money. What does the Government do in this respect?

H: The Government encourages overseas Chinese and foreigners to invest money in these industries in the hope that these will become self-supporting and in order that the economy may become stabilized.

W: What is the mission of Chinese Industrial Cooperatives, sir?

H: To assist the small industries to produce daily necessities for both military and non-military uses, to scatter small

industries throughout the country, and to stabilize economy.

W: Why is it that both heavy and light industries have not been well developed in China?

H: Because of the lack of scientific and technical personnel.

W: Labor in China is not well organized. What does the Government do for the laborers?

H: The Government is concerned with their welfare, and organization of labor unions are encouraged.

白少校：類者委事工學，
兩國源營械化，
營有資公機，業品，工
民，部，業，用
與營濟理？業工學日
營國經管呀工器化，
公屬於督野鐵電野，業
為純屬監也鋼，也業工
分有隸會係，係工織
可，去該嘅業，嘅械紡
業業過由要工糖要機，
工事．主力煉．主，業
國營營會最電，業業工品．最業工
中公合員業係業工鐵食業政中
何中校：營鋼府國勵
白：民係政府國勵
何：中國政府國勵
白：政府國勵
何：府國勵
白：國勵
何：勵
白：

白：但係財力唔夠．
呀？
外人投資．希望可以
穩係經濟基礎．
務出野呀？
產工用嘅日常
業發展至全國，與
工業都未曾發
輕工業都未曾發
同輕工業都未曾發
才唔係幾．
人織樣呀？

白少校：發展點與僑足，任業令濟．
展點與僑足，任業令濟．
工辦呀？
自給作小品定國呀？
助用安中達缺嘅啲
合助用安中達缺嘅啲
政中鼓自合助用安中達缺嘅啲
府國勵給作小品定國呀之工勞
想政華自嘅工．經嘅？
發府僑足，任業令濟．
展點與僑足，任業令濟．
工辦呀？
自給作小品定國呀之工勞
府國勵給作小品定國呀之工勞
政中鼓自合助用安中達缺嘅啲
中國政府國勵給作小品定國呀之工勞
國政中鼓自合助用安中達缺嘅啲
政中鼓自合助用安中達缺嘅啲
中鼓自合助用安中達缺嘅啲
鼓自合助用安中達缺嘅啲
自合助用安中達缺嘅啲
合助用安中達缺嘅啲
助用安中達缺嘅啲
用安中達缺嘅啲
安中達缺嘅啲
中達缺嘅啲
達缺嘅啲
缺嘅啲
嘅啲
啲

何：
白：

何：政府對佢地嘅福利已經好注意，鼓勵佢地組織工會。

READING MATERIAL

歐美各國之所以強盛，除在政治組織亦
及教育制度一達農業外，同時要發展工業．
為亦易於發展小工業，
除要發展中重工業而至輕工業，

中國科學落後，缺乏工業基礎．所以
發展小工業，由於大，不
與國防最有關之工業為重工業．與中一發
民之工業有為業民業
國部展之工業為手工業及，
東城多多以工易

小工業，使其出產一部份軍用品與民生日用品，今小工業可以自給自足，發展於全國．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè kung-îp hóh-ĭ fan-hoi pin leŭng taaî luî à?

2. Kung-Yîng sẑ-îp tsuì chué-iù kè haî mi-yĕ kung-îp à?

3. Mān-yîng kung-îp tsuì chué-iù kè haî mi-yĕ kung-îp à?

4. Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó seúng faàt-chín kung-îp. Tím-kaaí iù koó-laî wā-k'iū t'ūng ngoî-yān t'aū tsz à?

5. Kung-îp hôp-tsòk kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ à?

6. Uē-kwóh siú kung-îp faàt-chín-tò ts'uēn kwòk kòk teî, Chung-Kwòk kè king-tsaì ts'îng-yîng tím à?

7. Tím-kaaí Chung-Kwòk kè ch'ŭng kung-îp t'ūng hing kung-îp to m̄-faàt-taât à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Kung-yîng kung 'government, public, official'; yîng 'trade, business, management, to manage, to found, to build, to plan'; kung-yîng 'state-owned'; kung-yîng sẑ-îp 'state-owned industries, state-owned enterprises'

mān-yîng private-owned; mān-yîng sẑ-îp 'private-owned industries, private-owned enterprises'

shūn pure, purely, unmixed

taî-shûk taî 'to belong to, to be under the jurisdiction'; shûk 'to belong to, connected with, related'; shûk-ue 'to belong to'; taî-shûk 'to belong to, under the jurisdiction'

hôp to join, to pair, to shut, to enclose, to close, to agree, to total, side by side, joined

tsz-uēn waî-uēn ooî* tsz 'wealth, treasure, money, fees, property'; tsz-uēn 'resource, raw material, commodity'; tsz chôh 'to finance, to subsidize'; tsz-uēn waî-uēn ooî* 'National Resources Commission', abbr.: tsz-uēn ooî*, tsz waî ooî*

koi the said, the respective, that, the, to belong to, ought, should, fated to be, what is proper, to owe

kaam-tuk tuk 'to supervise, to guide, to direct'; kaam-tuk 'to supervise, supervision'

koón-leĭ to manage, to take care, to handle, management, handling

kòng-t'ìt kung-îp kòng 'steel'; t'ìt 'iron'; kòng-t'ìt 'steel'; kòng-t'ìt kung-îp 'metallurgy, steel industry'

kei-haaî kung-îp kei 'machine'; kei-haaî 'machine, mechanical, stubborn, monotonous, dull'; kei-haaî kung-îp 'machinery, mechanical industry'

lîn t'ōng kung-îp lîn 'to refine, to smelt, to purify, to discipline'; lîn t'ōng 'sugar refinery'; lîn t'ōng kung-îp 'sugar refinery industry'

tîn heì kung-îp tîn 'electricity'; tîn heì 'electric applicances'; tîn-lîk 'electric power'; tîn heì kung-îp 'electrical manufacturing, electric industry'

fà-hôk kung-îp fà-hôk 'chemistry, chemical'; fà-hôk kung-îp 'chemical industry'

shîk-pán kung-îp shîk-pán 'food, provisions'; shîk-pán kung-îp 'food industry'

fóng-chik kung-îp chik 'to knit, to weave, to plait'; fóng-chik 'to spin and weave, textile'; fóng-chik kung-îp 'textile industry'

faàt-chîn to develop, to expand, to extend, to explore, development, expansion

koó-laî to encourage

t'aū tsz t'aū 'to throw at or into, to jump into, to cast (as a vote), to join, to hand over to'; t'aū tsz 'to invest, investment'

tsẑ k'ap tsẑ tsuk tsẑ 'self-, self'; k'ap 'to give to, to provide, to grant, to issue, by'; tsẑ k'ap 'self-supply, self-supported'; tsuk 'sufficient, enough, to satisfy, foot'; tsẑ tsuk 'self-sufficient'; tsẑ k'ap tsẑ tsuk 'self-supported'

wán-koò wán 'stable, secured, steady, firm'; koò 'stable, firm, strong'; wán-koò 'stable, firm, strong, to stabilize'

hôp-tsòk to cooperate, cooperation, cooperative; kung-îp hôp-tsòk 'industrial cooperative'

ch'ut-ch'aán ch'aán 'to produce, to yield'; ch'ut-ch'aán 'to produce, production'

on-tîng on 'peaceful, quiet, tranquillity, peace'; tîng 'stable, to stabilize'; on-tîng 'stable, stability, security, peace'

ch'ŭng kung-îp ch'ŭng 'heavy'; ch'ŭng kung-îp 'heavy industry'

hing kung-îp hing (heng) 'light, frivolous, unimportant, worthless, to treat lightly, disrespect, reckless'; hing kung-îp 'light industry'

meî-ts'āng not yet

faàt-taât developed, prosperous, thriving, flourishing

k'uĕt-fât k'uĕt 'to lack, defective, short of, broken, maimed, absent'; fât 'deficiency, deficit, lacking of, insufficient, to be in want, exhausted'; k'uĕt-fât 'to be in want, exhausted, insufficient, deficit, run short of'

kung ooî* labor union; a.f.: lô-kung ooî*

fuk-leî fuk 'blessing, happiness, good fortune, prosperity'; leî 'convenient, advantage, profit, benefit, to facilitate'; fuk-leî 'welfare, happiness and profit'

chuĕ-ì to give attention to, to pay attention to, to watch

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiū-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk kwòk kíng chi noî, shóh yaŭ kè k'òng-mât tsz-uēn to haî kwòk-yaŭ kè. Uē-kwóh yān-mān seúng ts'oî k'òng, k'uĭ-teî iù tîm tsô à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Ch'uî-fei yaŭ chìng-foó kè huí-hóh ts'oí k'òng k'uen, chìng-foó m̄-chún yâm-hōh yān hoi k'òng. Uē-kwóh yān-mān seúng ts'oí k'òng, iù heùng chìng-foó shan-ts'íng.

P: Uē-kwóh ngoî-kwòk-yān seúng t'aū tsz hoi k'òng, iù yaŭ mi-yĕ t'iū-kîn* à?

H: Iù King-Tsaì Pô king Haāng-Chìng Uên* huí-hóh, t'ūng-shî iù yaŭ hâ-lît kòk t'iū-kîn*: 1. Chung-Kwòk tsz-poón chìm yat-poòn ĭ sheûng. 2. Kung-sz kè Chung-Kwòk kwòk-tsîk kè túng-sẑ yān shò chìm yat-poòn ĭ sheûng. 3. Kung-sz kè túng-sẑ-cheúng t'ūng king-leĭ iù haî Chung-Kwòk kwòk-tsîk kè yān.

P: Chung-Kwòk kè k'òng ch'aán ĭ mi-yĕ waì taaî-tsung à?

H: Ĭ mooî, shêk-yaū, kam, ngān, t'ìt, sèk, t'ūng, oo waì taaî-tsung.

P: Mooî t'ūng t'ìt kè ts'ōng leûng taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keî toh à?

H: Kuì hóh-k'aaù chi koó-kaì, mooî yeùk yaŭ î-ts'in-seì-paàk-maân-maân tun. Taân-haî chûng meî yaŭ k'òk-shât shò-tsẑ. T'ìt chi ts'ōng leûng yîk kîk waì fung-foò. Ts'oí k'òng kè shî-haû, toh-shò yûng kaû shik paân-faàt, yaŭ-shî yûng san-shik paân-faàt.

Major White: All mineral resources within the boundary of China belong to the state. If the citizens wish to prospect or exploit any mineral, what do they have to do, sir?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: Unless mining rights are granted by the government, no prospecting or exploitation of any mineral is allowed. In that case, the citizen will have to apply for the mining rights.

W: Under what conditions can foreigners invest in mining enterprises?

H: They must be approved by the Executive Yuan through the Ministry of Economic Affairs, subject to the following conditions. (1) The Chinese capital of the company shall be more than half of the total. (2) More than half of the directors of the company shall be Chinese citizens. (3) The chairman of the board of directors and the manager of the company shall be Chinese citizens.

W: What are the chief mineral productions in China?

H: Coal, petroleum, gold, silver, iron, tin, copper, and tungsten.

W: What are the amounts of coal and iron deposits?

H: According to the reliable estimates, the figure of coal deposits is 240,000,000,000 tons, but the actual figure is still unknown. Iron reserve is quite substantial. Most mines are exploited by primitive methods. Very few mines are worked with modern machinery and scientific methods.

白少校：中國國境之內，所有嘅礦物資源，都係國有嘅。如果人民想採礦，佢地要點做呀？

何中校：除非有政府嘅許可採礦權，政府唔准任何人開礦。如果人民想採礦，要向政府申請。

白：如果外國人想投資開礦，要有乜野條件*呀？

何：要經濟部經行政院*許可，同時要有下列各條件*：(一)中國資本佔一半以上，(二)公司嘅董事長同董事嘅人數同國籍司嘅人。(三)國大中·國為上中野，銀，鐵，錫，銅，鎢，煤，油，鈾，等嘅礦藏，多數係國有嘅。如果人民想採礦，要向政府申請。

白：中以同可以係乜金·

何：以據大概計算，有富法辦公半要以，宗量未豐辦(二)一理產油大藏估重為式·佔經礦石為嘅之係極舊上數同嘅，鎢鐵靠但亦用

白：煤

何：煤

Major White: All mineral resources within the boundary of China belong to the state. If the citizens wish to prospect or exploit any mineral, what do they have to do, sir?

Lt Colonel Höh: Unless mining rights are granted by the government, no prospecting or exploitation of any mineral is allowed. In that case, the citizen will have to apply for the mining rights.

W: Under what conditions can foreigners invest in mining enterprises?

H: They must be approved by the Executive Yuan through the Ministry of Economic Affairs, subject to the following conditions. (1) The Chinese capital of the company shall be more than half of the total. (2) More than half of the directors of the company shall be Chinese citizens. (3) The chairman of the board of directors and the manager of the company shall be Chinese citizens.

W: What are the chief mineral productions in China?

H: Coal, petroleum, gold, silver, iron, tin, copper, and tungsten.

W: What are the amounts of coal and iron deposits?

H: According to the reliable estimates, the figure of coal deposits is 240,000,000,000 tons, but the actual figure is still unknown. Iron reserve is quite substantial. Most mines are exploited by primitive methods. Very few mines are worked with modern machinery and scientific methods.

白少校：中國國境之內，所有嘅礦物資源，都係國有嘅．如果人民想採礦，佢地要點做呀？

何中校：除非有政府嘅許可採礦權，政府唔准任何人開礦．如果人民想採礦，要向政府申請．

白：如果外國人想投資開礦，要有乜野條件*呀？

何：要經濟部各條件*：(一)中國人佔一半以上．(二)公司嘅董事長數同嘅董事．(三)國大一理產油大藏估重為式

白：國煤同可

何：中以煤據

白：何：鎢鐵靠但亦用

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

READING MATERIAL

一、該條件*是在中國科學之發展人才*之中，煤鐵國物份不少。

第二條：資源委員會為中國工業原料之供給機關，其職掌如下：

一、對於礦業之調查及研究事項。

二、關於礦業之指導及監督事項。

三、關於礦業人才之訓練事項。

第三條：有關礦業之技術及人才*之訓練，得由資源委員會會同教育部辦理之。

缺乏之中，煤東是富大量，多產要豐以，為煤為鐵礦，之產錫亦為中國科學之發展人才*之中，鎢產量華世界重要礦產。

因採，中中礦部亦大量亦為一。

但開銅，於之

中國人鑛鎢量華世界重要礦產。

科學之，產及北，鎢，錫北，華世界礦產。

科國錫之北鐵，國為東我國重要礦產。

第四條：礦業權之取得，應依據中華民國之法律，向中華民國主管機關申請探礦*或採礦*許可。

第五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第三十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第四十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第五十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第六十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第七十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第八十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第九十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百二十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百三十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百四十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百五十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百六十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百七十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百八十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第一百九十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百二十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百三十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百四十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百五十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百六十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百七十九條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十一條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十二條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十三條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十四條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十五條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十六條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十七條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十八條：外國人*得在中華民國境內探礦或採礦，但應與中華民國人民合資經營，並應遵守中華民國之法律。

第二百八十九條：

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

QUESTIONS

1. Ue-kwóh neĭ haî Chung-Kwòk yan, neĭ seúng haî Chung-Kwòk hoi k'òng, neĭ iù tîm tsŏ à?

2. Uē-kwóh neĭ m̄-haî Chung-Kwòk yan, neĭ seúng haî Chung-Kwòk ts'oî k'òng, neĭ iù tak-tó pin-kŏh kei-kwaan kè huî-hóh à?

3. Uē ngoî-kwòk yān seúng naî Chung-Kwòk hoi k'òng, k'uĭ-teî iù yaŭ ti mi-yĕ t'iū-kîn* à?

4. Chung-Kwòk kè k'òng ch'aán, pin keî chúng chì toh à?

5. Meĭ-Kwòk kè k'òng ch'aán, pin keî chúng chì toh à?

6. Oo yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?

7. Ngŏh-teî shaî ch'e kè tîn-yaū, haî yaū pin chúng k'òng-mât laî kà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kwòk kîng kîng 'a boundary, a frontier, a region, a state, a position'; kwòk kîng 'within the boundary of a country, border of a country'

k'òng ore of metals, a mine; k'òng-mât 'minerals'; k'òng ch'aán 'mineral production, ore production'; k'òng kung 'a miner, miners'; k'òng ts'eūng 'mining areas'; hoi k'òng 'to open a mine'; ts'oî k'òng 'to open a mine, to exploit a mine, to exploit minerals'; ts'oî-k'òng k'uēn 'the right of exploitation of minerals'

ch'uî-fei fei 'wrong, bad, a negative, not, not to be, without'; ch'uî-fei 'with the exception, only if, unless'

huî-hóh hui 'to promise, to allow, surname'; hui-hoh 'approval, to sanction, permission'

chún to grant, to permit, to allow, to authorize

yâm-hōh hōh 'what? why? how? which?'; yâm-hōh 'any'

shan-ts'îng to apply for, to request for

t'iū-kîn* conditions, terms, articles, sections

king to pass through, to pass by, to go through the channel, to experience, to plan, to arrange

lît to enumerate, to arrange in order, to classify, each one, a file or rank, a series; hâ-lît 'as the following'; lît hâ 'enumerated below, as follows'

tsz-poón capital, funds

túng-sẑ trustees, directors, managers; túng-sẑ ooî* 'board of directors'; túng-sẑ cheúng 'the president of the board of directors'

yān shò number of men

king-leĭ manager; a.f.: sz-leĭ

taaî-tsung tsung 'a class, a kind, ancestor'; t'ūng tsung 'having a common ancestor'; taaî-tsung 'goods in bulk'

mooî coal, coal mine

shêk-yaū yaū 'oil'; shêk-yaū 'petroleum'

ngān silver, money, treasures

sèk tin

t'ūng copper; paâk-t'ūng 'bronze'; wōng-t'ūng 'brass'

oo tungsten

ts'ōng leûng ts'ōng 'to store, to hide, to conceal, to hoard'; leûng 'quantity, capacity'; ts'ōng leûng 'the quantity of certain things that are embedded under the ground'

hóh-k'aaù k'aaù 'to depend on, to trust to, to lean on, near to'; hóh-k'aaù 'reliable, dependable, trustworthy'

koó-kaì koó 'to estimate, to count, to guess'; kaì 'count, to figure out'; koó-kaì 'to estimate, estimation'

tun ton, tonage

k'òk-shât k'òk 'true, real, really, reliable, certain, actual, solid'; k'òk-shât 'true, certain, that is certain'

shò-tsź figures, statistics

fung-foò foò 'rich, wealthy, wealth, money'; fung 'abundant, exuberant, rich, plenty'; fung-foò 'rich in content, rich, wealthy, abundant'

kaû shik old style, old fashioned, out of date, obsolete, primitive; san shik 'new style'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk tuì ngoî maû-yîk kè chìng-ch'aàk haî tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî chaang-ts'uî ngoî-ooî t'ūng shĭ-ch'eūng, t'iū-chíng kung-îp t'ūng sheung-îp, koî-shîn kaau-t'ung t'ūng wân-shue.

P: Chìng-foó tuì tsang-ka shaang-ch'aán uĕ t'iū-chíng maû-yîk shóh ts'oî-ts'uî kè yaŭ-haaû paân-faàt haî tîm kà?

H: Tsoî ch'ut-haú fong-mîn, chìng-foó koó-laî tsang-ka ch'ut-haú fòh shaang-ch'aán, t'ui-kwóng ngoî-kwòk shĭ-ch'eūng. Tsoî yâp-haú fong-mîn, chìng-foó iù yâp-haú fòh haî pit-iù mât-tsz, shaí ngoî-ooî yûng-tak shik-î. Tsẑ-ts'ūng ni chúng chìng-ch'aàk shât-haāng ĭ-loî, tuì ngoî maû-yîk ĭ yaŭ kîk taaî shíng-tsaû.

P: T'oî-Waan ch'ut-haú fòh kwòh-chóh Meĭ-Kam yat-ts'in-maân uēn ĭ sheûng ke haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Haî t'ōng t'ūng maĭ.

P: Tsoî Meĭ-Kam yat-paàk-maân uēn ĭ sheûng kè haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Haî tsiu, ch'ā-îp, koòn-t'aū.

P: T'oî-Waan yâp-haú fòh kwòh-chóh Meĭ-Kam yat-ts'in-maân uēn ĭ sheûng kè haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Haî fà-hôk feĭ-liû*, nĝ kam, nĝ kam chaì-pán.

P: Tsoî yat-paàk-maân uēn ĭ sheûng kè haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Haî kei-heì, líng-kîn*, yeûk-pán, mîn-fa, mîn-sha, shuê-kaau, yeūng-mō, ngaū-naaĭ, fà-hôk pán...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

P: În-tsoî T'oī-Waan kè chûng-iù kwòk ngoî shǐ-ch'eūng haî pin keí kòh à?

H: Tsuì taaî chi kwòk ngoî shǐ-ch'eūng waî Yât-Poón, Heung-Kóng taî-î, Meǐ-Kwòk taî-saam, Ying pông kwòk-ka taî-seì.

Major White: What is China's foreign trade policy?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The policy is to control foreign exchange and trade, to readjust industry and commerce, and to improve communications and transportation.

W: What plans has the Government adopted for increasing production and regulating trade?

H: In the export trade, the Government encourages increasing production of goods to be exported and making them more attractive to foreign markets. In the import trade, the Government requires imported goods be necessities in order that foreign exchange may be used appropriately. Since the implementation of this policy, there have been excellent results.

W: What are the goods exported from Taiwan that are over the amount of US $10,000,000?

H: Sugar and rice.

W: What are those over US $1,000,000?

H: Bananas, tea, and canned goods.

W: What are the goods imported to Taiwan that are over the amount of US $10,000,000?

H: Chemical fertilizer, mineral and mineral products.

W: Over US $1,000,000?

H: Machinery, spare parts, medicine, cotton, cotton yarn, rubber, wool, milk, chemicals...

W: Which are the important foreign markets?

H: Japan occupies the first place, Hong Kong is the second, America the third, and areas where English pounds are used the fourth.

白少校：同既生面，外貿方面既出口產業同工業製品既出口貿易所採取既政策，係鼓勵加工出口，以外銷為主導，既有成就，亦有缺點嘅？

何中校：同既外貿政策，係調整輸出入貿易結構，增加在物種極多元化，以適應國際市場需要，逐步調整貿易順差，減少貿易摩擦，促進貿易平衡發展嘅？

白少校：府出在既外貿政策，係調整輸出入貿易結構，增加在物種極多元化，以適應國際市場需要，逐步調整貿易順差，減少貿易摩擦，促進貿易平衡發展嘅？

何中校：政府出在既外貿政策，係調整輸出入貿易結構，增加在物種極多元化，以適應國際市場需要，逐步調整貿易順差，減少貿易摩擦，促進貿易平衡發展嘅？

白：台灣既出口產品，有幾多係屬於勞力密集產品呀？

何：係指勞力密集產品，即係用人工較多嘅產品，例如：紡織品、製鞋、玩具、電子產品組裝、手工藝品、農產品加工等等。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

READING MATERIAL

面少·增加入外
方不少·增加入外
業亦財政(一)與可以
工題善下：貿易，滙香蕉，
農之問改如外貿取僑滙·
在上關辦廣國，爭取僑滙·

中國外者形工(三)業鼓勵
問題重要情業滙外
有問題經濟農外
最經濟不平有效(二)欵
經加多·財衡·之推田
加極除政·關辦廣國

中國產品，國理生入宜
出口頭想有口方用
如要出口滙

農工商落後，但其產品與可以蕉，
工極多，如糖，米，茶，帽一定
極學經品，煤，紙，帽，草帽……
學經濟與財政情形，政府一定
經濟貿易，加要增定
濟貿及一
外，貨
對產口·

雖品亦化內
品，國
管之，適
面得

經推項最第
於為該灣國
關一自台美
，之·現，
中中場·二
綱其市效第
大·外成港
劃項國少香
計七取不，
政有爭有本·
施作量已日四
之工大，為第
院要，來場家
政重易以市國
行之貿行外磅
在面外實國英
方對策之，
濟廣政大三

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk tuì ngoî maû-yîk kè chìng-ch'aàk haî tîm-yeûng* kà?

2. Tsoî ch'ut-haú fong-mîn, chìng-foó kè yaŭ-haaû paân-faàt haî tîm à?

3. Tsoî yâp-haú fong-mîn, chìng-foó seúng tîm à?

4. T'oî-Waan kè ch'ut-haú fòh, kwòh-chóh Meĭ-kam yat-ts'in-maân ĭ sheûng kè haî pîn keí yeûng fòh-mât à?

5. Kwòh-chóh Meĭ-kam yat-paàk-maân uen ĭ sheûng kè haî mi-yĕ à?

6. T'oî-Waan kè yâp-haú fòh, kwòh-chóh yat-ts'in-maân Meĭ-uēn kè haî mi-yĕ à?

7. Ch'uî-chóh fà-hôk feî-liû*, nĝ kam chi ngoî, T'oî-Waan chûng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ yâp-haú fòh à?

8. T'oî-Waan t'ūng pin kwòk kè maû-yîk tsuì toh à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tuì ngoî maû-yîk yîk 'to exchange, to transact business'; maû-yîk 'trade, exchange of goods'; tuì ngoî maû-yîk 'foreign trade, international trade'

chaang-ts'uî chaang 'to strive, to wrangle, to contend, to struggle, to fight, to argue'; ts'uî 'to take, to receive'; chaang-ts'uî 'to strive for, to struggle for, to fight for'

ngoî-ooî ooî 'to remit, to advance money, waters converging to one spot, whirling waters'; ooî ts'în* 'to remit money, to remit'; ngoî-ooî 'foreign exchange'; k'iū ooî 'remittance from Overseas Chinese'

shĭ-ch'eūng shĭ 'market, city'; ch'eūng 'ground, field'; shĭ-ch'eūng 'market, trade'

t'iū-chîng t'iū 'to blend, to harmonize, to adjust, to mix, to stir, to provoke, to investigate'; tiû 'to transfer, to change, to move'; t'iū-chîng 'to regulate, to adjust, to readjust'

wân-shue wân 'to transport, to ship'; shue 'to transport, to ship, to lose, to be beaten'; wân-shue 'transportation'

tsang-ka tsang 'to add to, to increase'; ka 'to add, to increase, to put in'; tsang-ka 'to increase, to augment, to add to'

shaang-ch'aán production, to give birth to, parturition

ts'oî-ts'uî to adopt, to use, to resort to

yaŭ-haaû haaû 'effect, effectiveness, function, to offer one's services, to initiate, to follow the example'; yaŭ-haaû 'effective'; yaŭ-haaû paân-faàt 'effective method'

ch'ut-haú to export, export, exportation, exit

t'ui-kwóng t'ui 'to push, to expel, to deduce'; kwóng 'broad, wide, extensive, manifold, versatile, Kwangtung, Kwangsi'; t'ui-kwóng 'to extend, to broaden, to increase'

yâp-haú to import, import, importation, entrance

pit-iù pit (lit) 'must, will, certainly, necessarily, an emphatic particle'; pit-iù 'must, to have to, necessary, bound to, a necessity, an essential'

mât-tsz goods, merchandize, raw material, commodity; pit-iù mât-tsz 'goods for necessity, daily necessity'

tsẑ-ts'ūng...ǐ-loî since...; a.f.: tsẑ..., tsẑ...haû, tsẑ-ts'ūng...ǐ-haû

MeǏ-Kam MeǏ 'America, the United States'; kam 'gold, dollars, money'; MeǏ-Kam 'the U.S. dollars'

tsiu banana, plantain; a.f.: heung-tsiu; AN: chèk

ch'ā-îp ch'ā 'tea, tea leaves'; îp 'leaves, blade'; ch'ā-îp 'tea, tea leaves'

koòn-t'aū* koòn 'a jug, a pitcher, a can, a bottle, a jar'; koòn-t'aū* 'canned food, canned goods'; koòn-t'aū shîk-pán 'canned foods'

feǏ-liû* feǏ 'fat, greasy, fertilizer'; liû 'materials, ingredients'; uēn-liû* 'raw material'; feǏ-liû* 'fertilizer'

chaǏ-pán finished product, product

lǐng-kîn* spare parts, accessories

yeûk-pán yeûk 'medicine, drugs, fire powder'; yeûk-pán 'medicine, drugs'

mǐn-fa cotton; abbr: mǐn

mǐn-sha cotton yarn

shuê-kaau shuê 'a tree (AN: p'oh) to plant'; kaau 'gum, glue, rubber, sticky'; shuê-kaau 'rubber'

yeūng-mō yeūng 'sheep, goat, ram'; mō 'hair, surname'; yeūng-mō 'wool'

ngaū-naaǏ naaǏ 'milk, breast'; ngaū-naaǏ 'milk, cow milk'

Ying pông Ying 'England, Great Britain'; pông 'pound, lbs, scale, to weigh '; Ying pông 'English pound, pound sterlings'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk ǐ-ts'în kè t'ung-sùn t'ūng kaau-t'ung to hó lôk-haû. Chì-tò Ts'ing Ch'iū moôt-îp t'ūng î-shâp shaì-keî ch'oh-îp shî, Chung-Kwòk chì heî-shaú chuè-ì koî-shîn. În-tsoî Chung-Kwòk kè kaau-t'ung sẑ-hông, yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chaàk koón-leǐ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yaū Kaau-T'ung Pô foô-chaàk koón-leǐ. Koi pô fan waì t'ìt-lô, kung-lô, shuî-wân, hōng-hung, yaū-chìng, tîn-sùn, kóng-chìng, heì-tseûng paàt-kòh pô-moōn.

P: Chì Mān-Kwòk î-shâp nîn kaú-uêt shâp-paàt yât Tung-Pak sẑ-pìn shî, ts'uēn Chung-Kwòk kè kwòk-yîng, shaáng-yîng, mān-yîng kè t'ìt-lô chî pat-kwòh yat-maân-ngˇ-ts'in kung-leǐ. Shóh king chi teî, chî k'âp ts'uēn kwòk mîn-tsik paàt-fân chi yat. Yan-waî t'ìt-lô tsoî kwòk-fōng uě kwan-sẑ fong-mîn chi chûng-iù sìng, shóh-ǐ Tseúng Kaaì-shêk ts'āng ts'ó-ǐ yat-kòh t'ìt-lô kìn-ch'ìt kè ngˇ nîn kaì-waâk. Ni kòh kaì-waâk kè mûk-tik haî tîm kà?

H: K'uǐ kè mûk-tik haî ue ngˇ nîn noî kìn-chuk hó toh t'ìt-lô, kìn-laâp yat ts'uēn kwòk sìng chi t'ìt-lô mŏng, tsang-ka kwòk-mān ts'oî-foò, ǐ shik-yìng kwòk-fōng uě kòk fong-mîn chi sui-iù.

P: Hóh-sik haû-loî ni kòh kaì-waâk m̄-shîng-kung. Tîm-kaaî à?

H: Yan-waî Chung Yât chìn-chaang paaù-faàt, kan-chuê haî Taî-Î-Ts'ż Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn t'ūng noî-chìn, shóh-ǐ ni kòh kaì-waâk mŏ paân-faàt shât-în.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

P: Yaū Kwóng-Chau chîk tˢung Môk-Sz-Foh tˢūng Au-Chau kè tˢìt-lô, keí shí chuk shîng kà?

H: Tˢeng-mān wâ haî Chung-Kûng chìm-lĭng Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk chi haû chuk shîng kè.

Major White: For centuries in China, communications and transportation have been amazingly backward. It was not until the close of the Manchu Dynasty or at the beginning of the 20th Century that attention was focused on improvement of communications. What organization is now responsible for matters concerning communications?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The Ministry of Communication. There are eight branches of services operated under the Ministry, namely: railway, highways, waterways, civil aviation, postal services, tele-communications, harbor administration, and meteorological services.

W: Up to the time of the Mukden Incident on 18 September 1931, the total length of railways in China, including all government owned, provincial and private-owned, was less than 15,000 kilometers, traversing over or passing through only one eighth of the national territory. In view of the importance of railways to national defense and military operations, Generalissimo Chiang Kai-shek at one time drafted a five-year railway construction plan. What was the objective of this plan?

H: The objective was to construct many railroads within five years. It aimed at the formation of a national railway network designed to enhance the welfare of the people and to meet the need of national defense.

W: Unfortunately, this plan did not succeed. What was the reason?

H: The Sino-Japanese War broke out, and World War II and Civil War took place. It was impossible for this plan to be materialized.

W: When was the railroad connecting Canton and Moscow completed?

H: It was said that the railroad was completed after the Communists took over the Chinese mainland.

白少校：中國到中國交通既理呀？前朝起事，通葉注，既末首項，交十善個，通世·機，都紀現關，好初在員，落葉中責，管後·時，

何中校：由交通部員責水，月營萬國防介計劃內之應，成跟所以，為鐵，政，門·事營所一·重鐵既經之困要路目

白：至民國全路地為性建的目建民需後中界辦，公路，政九國一全國蔣年？五國以適性，計劃發戰，個爭同實現·

何：佢既惜為可因，路，加面之，鐵增方，多各，好網與，築路防，建鐵國，內之應，年性適，

白：世次計劃布，解二計，點第個，係呢，功住以，唔跟所，戰戰實現·

何：

白：由廣州直通莫斯科同歐洲嘅鐵路，幾時築成㗎？

何：聽聞話係中共佔領中國大陸之後築成嘅。

之育教，事之務文化，民服濟，人經對家，府國要。政及重為設為，業建極展防，事國發交對之；一事業

通用政二通國變所交多國過交與事路於具中經空民北鐵對工，陸人東，府通時後海應八里。政交葉立之適一公一國；末成國以九千之中利朝國中可年五份，便清民然未十萬八來不至。雖重二一積以極。通，但國有面年通始交設，民只國千交原善建步至路全數，為改力進。鐵及去意極意努大要國只過注，注之極需全地大力始年有之，之不人府十已防時經

之計以二法育年，第無教五網及劃與之路爭計化路鐵戰項文鐵之日該濟，設性中以建國因所經一全後。發，防草立要爆國曾建需繼惜。對石在之相可路介的面戰為鐵蔣目方大極因，其各界。極要。應世現重劃適次實

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

QUESTIONS

1. Tò mi-yĕ kè shì-haû, Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó chì heî-shaú chuè-ì koî-shîn kaau-t'ung t'ūng t'ung-sùn à?

2. În-tsoî Chung-Kwòk kè kaau-t'ung sẑ-hông, yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chaàk à?

3. Kaau-T'ung Pô fan-hoi keî toh kòh pô-moōn à?

4. Tîn-pò t'ūng tîn-wâ*, shûk-ue pin-kòh pô-moōn à?

5. Tseúng-Kaaì-Shêk tîm-kaaî iù ts'ó-ĭ yat-kòh t'ìt-lô kìn-ch'ìt kè nĝ nîn kaì-waâk à?

6. Ni kòh kaì-waâk kè mûk-tik haî tîm à?

7. Kìn-shìng-chôh ts'uēn kwòk t'ìt-lô mŏng chi haû, tuì kwòk-mān t'ūng kwòk-fōng tîm à?

8. Haû-loî ni kòh kaì-waâk mŏ paân-faàt shât-în, tîm-kaaî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

t'ung-sùn sùn 'to inquire into, to make judicial questioning, news'; t'ung 'to communicate, to have knowledge, to pass through'; t'ung-sùn 'communication and transportation, correspondence'

lôk-haû backward, underdeveloped

moôt-îp moôt 'the end, finally, insignificant, dust, powders'; îp 'leaf, period'; moôt-îp 'the last years (pertaining to a century and dynasty)'

ch'oh-îp ch'oh 'at first, at the beginning, the first'; ch'oh-îp 'the first years (pertaining to a century and dynasty), the beginning'

t'ìt-lô mŏng t'ìt-lô 'railways, railroads'; mŏng 'net, network'; t'ìt-lô mŏng 'railway network'

kung-lô kung 'public, governmental, official'; kung-lô 'highways'

shuî-wân shuî 'water, sea'; wân 'transportation'; shuî-wân 'waterways, waterway transportation'

hōng-hung hōng 'navigation, voyage, to travel'; hung 'air, Air Force, sky, empty, in vain'; hōng-hung 'aviation'

yaū-chìng yaū 'pertaining to post office and mails'; yaū-chìng 'postal administration'; yaū-chìng kûk 'post office'; yaū-chìng kûk cheúng 'postmaster'

tîn-sùn tîn 'pertaining to telegram and telephone'; tîn-sùn 'tele-communications'

kóng chìng kóng 'harbor, port'; kóng chìng 'harbor administrations'

heì-tseûng heì 'air, steam, sky, weather, climate'; tseûng 'phenomenon, elephant'; heì-tseûng 'meteorological services, meteorology'

pô-moōn moōn 'door, profession'; pô-moōn 'branches of services'

sẑ-pìn sẑ 'affairs, events, matter'; pìn 'to change, to transform'; sẑ-pìn 'incident, political incident (as Pearl Harbor incident in 1941)'; a.f.: sẑ-kîn

kwŏk-yîng nation-owned, state-owned; shaáng-yîng 'province-owned'; shĭ-yîng 'city-owned, municipality-owned'; mān-yîng 'private-owned'

chûng-iù shìng shìng 'nature, disposition, quality'; chûng-iù shìng 'importance'

ts'āng ts'āng 'already, past, sign of the past, surname'; a.f.: ts'āng-king 'already, once before, past'

ts'ó-ĭ ts'ó 'to draft, grass, straw, herbs, careless, hasty, rough'; ĭ 'to draft, to make a blueprint, to intend, to attempt, to contemplate'; ts'ó-ĭ 'to draft (plan, statement)'

kìn-ch'ìt kìn 'to build, to construct, to establish, to erect'; ch'ìt 'to build, to establish, to erect, to raise, to set, supposed, for example'; kìn-ch'ìt 'to build, to construct, construction, what has been done'

kìn-chuk chuk 'to build, to construct', synonym: kìn, kìn-ch'ìt; kìn-chuk 'to build, building'

ts'oî-foð ts'oî 'wealth, treasure, money'; foð 'wealthy, rich, abundant'; ts'oî-foð 'wealth, treasure, valuables'

shik-yìng shik 'to suit, suitable, just, then, to reach to'; shik-yìng 'to suit, to meet, to adapt'

sui-iù sui 'to need, ought, to have to, must, it is necessary that..., needful'; pìt-sui 'must, required, necessary'; sui-iù 'necessity, need, requirement, ought, required, needful, necessary'

hóh-sik sik 'pity, to love, to take care of, to be sparing of, unfortunately, too bad!'; hóh-sik 'too bad! how sad! pitiable! Alas!'

chìn-chaang chìn 'war, warfare, battle, combat'; chìn-chaang 'war'

paaù-faàt paaù 'to explode, to burst, to crack, to crackle, to pop'; paaù-faàt 'to break-out, breakout (as war, revolution), to explode by revolution'; taaî chìn paaù-faàt 'the breakout of war'

kan-chuê kan 'to heel, to follow, to accompany, to imitate'; kan-chuê 'following this, there was...'

noî-chìn civil war

shât-în to realize, to materialize, to come true

chîk t'ung chîk 'straight, outspoken, frank'; t'ung 'to pass through'; chîk t'ung 'to reach one place from another place without any obstruction (as railroads, highways)'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk yaŭ haî-t'úng kè kung-lô kìn-ch'ìt heî-shaú-tak shâm-ch'î. Mān-shuèt taî-yat-t'iū hóh-ĭ peî heì-ch'e haāng kè kung-lô haî tsoî yat-kaú-yat-î nîn kìn-chuk kè. Tsŝ chìng-foó tsik-kîk kìn-ch'ìt san lô uĕ sau-chîng kaû lô chi haû, în-tsoî kung-lô taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keî ch'eūng à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Taaî-yeùk* yaŭ shâp-yat-maân kung-leĭ. K'eî-chung siú pô-fân haî p'o-hó lô mîn* kè, taaî pô-fân haî naî lô.

P: Tsoî Chung Yât chìn-chaang shî-k'eî chung, kung-lô shîng waî kwan-yûng uĕ mān-yûng kaau-t'ung wân-shue tsuì chûng-iù kè kaau-t'ung sìn. Tîm-kaaî à?

H: Yan-waî t'ìt-lô shaû-chóh kîk taaî kè p'òh-waaî kè kìt-kwóh, tsoì yaū-ue kìn heì-ch'e lô kaaù t'ìt-lô waî yūng-î uĕ king-tsaì, shóh-ĭ kung-lô shîng waî kwan-yûng uĕ mān-yûng kaau-t'ung wân-shue tsuì chûng-iù chi kaau-t'ung sìn.

P: Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó kìn-chuk kung-lô, chak-chûng mi-yĕ à?

H: Chak-chûng ue kìn-chuk san lô, tsìp-pòk kung-lô, uĕ sau-chîng kaû lô, lîng-tò kòk shaáng kung-lô lîn-tsìp.

P: T'în Mĭn Kung-Lô yaû kiù tsô Mĭn-Tîn Kung-Lô. Ni t'iū mān-mēng* kè kung-lô lîn-tsìp Chung-Kwòk t'ūng pin kwòk à?

H: K'uĭ lîn-tsìp Chung-Kwòk haû-moōn* t'ūng Mĭn-Tîn. Ni kòh haî k'eî-tsik.

P: Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó tûng uēn keî toh yān laî chuk ni t'iū lô à?

H: Tong-shî Chung-Kwòk tûng uēn shâp-lûk-maân yān, yûng ch'aán t'ūng ch'ōh-t'aū* haî paàt-kòh uêt kè k'eî noî chuk-shîng ni t'iū yat-ts'in kung-leĭ ch'eūng kè lô.

P: Ni t'iū faan shaan uêt lĕng yaŭ shaan-laām cheùng-heì kè taaî lô, chan-haî yān-luî waĭ-taaî kè kìt-tsing pán là!

H: Haî là! Chung-Kwòk yān kìn-chuk T'în Mĭn kung-lô uĕ Meĭ-Kwòk yān kìn-chuk Meĭ-Kwòk T'aaì-P'îng Yeūng t'ìt-lô oô-seung fai-yîng.

Major White: Systematic construction of highways in China started late. It was said that the first highway for motor traffic was built in 1912. Since the Government speeded up the construction and maintenance of new and old roads, how many kilometers of highways have been constructed in China?

Lt Colonel Höh: About 11,000 kilometers. Some are surfaced roads, but most of them are earth roads.

W: During the Sino-Japanese War, the highways assumed a leading role in both military and civil transportation. What was the reason?

H: That was because of the heavy losses sustained by the railway, and due to the fact that motor roads can be built more easily and at low cost.

W: What did the Government emphasize in construction of highways?

H: Emphasis has been laid on building, connecting and maintaining lines linking various provinces.

W: The Yunnan-Burma Highway, popularly known as the Burma Road, is connected with which country?

H: It connects China's backdoor and Burma. It is a legend in itself.

W: How many people were mobilized to construct this road?

H: Some 160,000 people were mobilized and set to work, using mostly crude implements such as shovels and spades. The

road, measuring 1,000 kilometers, was opened to traffic after eight months of work.

W: This road which runs through difficult and mountainous country and fever-ridden areas is indeed a great human achievement!

H: Yes, indeed. The construction of the Burma Road by the Chinese has been compared to the building of the Union Pacific Railway in the United States.

白少校：中遲公政後大係日民點鐵由濟通政於舊公既接政中條里甚既自之得行·路份·首車既舊呀？部路用線·起汽築整長中係為交通結容與民果，再經交設俾建修幾其份成既壞路軍通線·也野呀？修整建以年與有·部路要破鐵為交側重公路，與修·路連接·公條一新大公，最既較成之，接者甸國緬人萬內築人築，成路可二路約里大公重大路路軍侧駁公路連接·呢條聞名·國呀？個係奇蹟·呢條路呀？頭公統第一九設路萬既中，輸既為用呢條同鋤千系說在極在十路時通？有聞係積現有好爭交呀？受建所輸建築新令叫連後員月路國府，約鋪戰用解路於運府建路路公中府國八長政於舊公既接政中條里

何中校：在中

白：因為

白：中國重

何：側重緬

白：滇緬連國

何：佢中當時

白：呢條翻山越嶺有山嵐瘴氣嘅大路，真
係人類偉大嘅結晶品啦！
何：係啦！中國人建築滇緬公路與美國人
建築美國太平洋鐵路互相輝映。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

READING MATERIAL

在陸上交通與運輸方面，公路與鐵路運輸工具所以在同樣重要．過去中國之陸上交通運輸又多所以設而複雜，建設側重問題多，代之需要．所以注意不交通適應時要．

建設公路較鐵路為容易而經濟．在第二次，後重要之公路大人路已通交通，軍交通與運輸工具所以在建設側重問題多，代之需要．所以注意不交通適應時要．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk taî-yat-t'iū hóh-ǐ peî heì-ch'e haāng kè kung-lô haî keî shî kìn-chuk kà?

2. În-tsoî Chung-Kwòk kè kung-lô taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keî toh kung-leĭ à?

3. Haî Chung Yât Chìn-Chaang shî-k'eî, kung-lô shîng waî kwan-yûng t'ūng mān-yûng kaau-t'ung wân-shue tsuì chûng-iù kè kaau-t'ung sìn, tîm-kaaí à?

4. Kìn-chuk heì-ch'e lô, t'ìt-lô; pin yeûng yūng-î ti t'ūng king-tsaì ti à?

5. Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó kìn-ch'ìt kung-lô, chak-chûng mi-yĕ à?

6. T'în Mĭn Kung-lô yaû kiù tsô mi-yĕ lô à?

7. Ni t'iū kung-lô lîn-tsìp Chung-Kwòk pin shuè t'ūng pin shuè à?

8. Tong-shî Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó tûng uēn keî toh yān laî chuk ni t'iū lô à?

9. Ni t'iū lô yaŭ keî ch'eūng à?

10. Yaū Mûng-Tâk-Leĭ huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè kung-lô yaŭ keî ch'eūng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

shâm very, deeply, extremely, what? who? any, so much, so that

tsik-kîk positive as opposed to negative, position action, active, active action

sau-chîng sau 'to repair, to improve, adorn'; sau-chîng 'to repair, to put in order'

p'o to spread out, to overspread, to arrange, to pave

lô mîn* mîn* 'the surface, the face, the front, personally, in person'; lô mîn* 'road pavement'

naî lô naî 'mud, soil, dirt, earth'; naî lô 'earth road, muddy road'

p'òh-waaî p'òh 'to break, to destroy, to break through, broken'; waaî 'spoiled, out of order, ruined, destroyed, damaged, bad, vicious'; p'òh-waaî 'to destroy, to demolish, to smash'

kìt-kwóh kìt 'to connect, to unite, to coagulate, to bear fruits, to tie knots, a knot'; kwóh 'result, fruit, consequences, really, truly, certainly'; kìt-kwóh 'results, outcome, consequences, to bear fruits'

yaū-ue yaū 'cause, means, instrument, source, motive, from, via, because of'; yaū-ue 'because of, arising from'

chak-chûng to emphasize, prejudiced, to incline towards, partial, biased; a.f.: chûng

tsìp-pòk pòk 'to join, to tranship, to connect, to transfer, to graft, to argue, to contradict, to annul, to reverse a decision'; tsìp-pòk 'to tranship, to connect and link, to receive and forward (as goods)'

lîn-tsìp unbroken, connected, to adjoin, to link

T'în Mĭn Kung-Lô T'în 'abbreviation of Yunnan Province'; Mĭn abbreviation of Mĭn-Tîn 'Burma'; T'în Mĭn Kung-Lô 'Yunnan-Burma Highway, Yunnan-Burma Road'

Mĭn-Tîn Kung-Lô Mĭn-Tîn 'Burma'; abbr.: Mĭn; Mĭn-Tîn Kung-Lô 'Burma Road'

haû-moōn haû 'rear, behind, later, afterwards, after'; haû-moōn 'backdoor'

mān-mēng* mān 'to hear, to smell, it is said, famous'; mān-mēng* 'famous, well-known, reputable'; a.f.: mān-mîng

k'eî-tsik k'eî 'strange, wondrous, peculiar, rare'; tsik 'traces, footsteps'; k'eî-tsik 'miracle, legend'

tûng uēn tûng 'to move, to shake, to take action'; tûng uēn 'mobilization, mobilization for war, to mobilize'

ch'aán a shovel, to shovel; AN: pá

ch'ōh-t'aū* ch'ōh 'a heavy hoe, to hoe, to dig'; ch'ōh-t'aū 'a heavy hoe, spade'

k'eî noî k'eî 'period of time, stage, phase'; k'eî noî 'within the period of time'; a.f.: k'eî-kaan noî

faan shaan uêt lĕng uêt 'to overpass, to exceed, to transgress, more'; lĕng 'a mountain range'; faan shaan uêt lĕng 'to pass through mountains, to run through mountainous country'; a.f.: p'ā shaan uêt lĕng

shaan-laām cheùng-heî unhealthy mountain vapor; synonym: cheùng-heî

yān-luî human beings, mankind

waĭ-taaî great, extraordinary, magnificent, admirable; a.f.: waĭ

kìt-tsing pán kìt-tsing 'to crystalize, crystal'; kìt-tsing pán 'crystalization, result, achievement'

T'aaì-P'îng Yeūng t'aaì-p'îng 'peaceful, peace'; yeūng 'ocean, sea, foreign'; T'aaì-P'îng Yeūng 'Pacific Ocean'

oô-seung oô 'mutual, mutually, each other, together'; seung 'mutual, each other, together, reciprocal'; oô-seung 'mutual, bilateral, mutually, reciprocally, inter-'

oô-seung fai-yîng fai-yîng 'to reflect, mirror image'; oô-seung fai-yîng 'to compare to, equally, equally good'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Tsoî Chung Yât chìn-chaang ts'în, Chung-Kwòk lūn-shuēn chi tsúng tun-waî* pat-kwòh ńg-shâp-maân tun. Tîm-kaaî à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yan lît-k'eūng tsoî Chung-Kwòk yaŭ noî-hōh shuî-wân kè k'uēn-leî, Chung-Kwòk kè hōng-îp shaû-chóh haân-chaì.

P: Chìn-chaang paaù-faàt shî, Chung-Kwòk yaŭ-faan taaî pô-fân shuēn-chèk kè tun-waî*. Tîm-kaaî à?

H: Yan shoh-shaàn sheung-shuēn k'âp shî, koò-ts'ź yaŭ-faan taaî pô-fân shuēn-chèk kè tun-waî*.

P: Chìn-chaang k'eî noî uĕ chìn haû, chìng-foó kîk chuè-ì noî-hōh hōng-îp yīng-wân chi faàt-chîn. Chìng-foó tsô-chóh ti mi-yĕ à?

H: Chìng-foó kìn-tsô-chóh hó toh koî-leūng kè san shuēn, hoi-chóh hó toh san hōng-sìn. Yan-waî seúng shuēn-chèk loî wŏng p'îng-on uĕ tsang-ka shuēn hāng ts'uk-tô, shóh-ĭ tsoî kap laū kè teî-fong ch'ìt-laâp hó toh t'oh-shuēn chaâm, yîk-shuî laai shuēn. T'ūng-shî koî-shîn hōng chìng.

P: În-tsoî Chung-Kwòk shuēn-chèk kè tun-waî* shiû-kwòh ĭ-ts'în kè, taân-haî hōng-îp kè yūng-leûng uĕ nāng-lîk peî ĭ-ts'în waî taaî. Tîm-kaaî à?

H: Yan-waî shuēn-chèk kè ch'ìt-peî uĕ k'aù-tsô koî-leūng-chóh.

P: Chìng-foó tîm-yeûng* t'aî-ch'eung tsô shuēn uĕ ch'ìt-laâp tsô-shuēn-ch'óng à?

H: Chìng-foó tsè ts'în* peî yān-mān tsô shuēn t'ĕng uĕ ch'ìt-laâp tsô-shuēn-ch'óng.

Major White: Before the war Chinese shipping was only a little more than half a million tons. Why was that?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: At that time Chinese shipping was handicapped by the inland navigation rights enjoyed by the foreign powers.

W: When the war broke out, a major portion of the shipping tonnage was saved. How was that accomplished?

H: Timely measures in evacuation of merchant vessels saved the major portion of the shipping tonnage.

W: During the war and after the war, more attention was given to the development of inland navigation. What did the Government do?

H: More ships, mostly of the improved type, have been built. New navigation lines were opened in places which were theretofore uncharted. In order to insure safer and faster shipping, towing station's have been established to pull ships upstream, especially through rapids and at difficult stretches of waters. Shipping administration has also been greatly improved.

W: Although at present the number and tonnage of ships are less than before, the total shipping capacity and capability are greater. Why is that?

H: This is due to the improvement of facilities and the fact that ships have been structurally improved.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

W: How does the Government push the program of shipbuilding and building of shipyards?

H: The Government grants loans to people to build ships and to open shipyards.

白少校：在中日戰爭前，中國輪船之總噸位*不過五十萬噸·點解呀？

何中校：因列強在中國有內河水運嘅權利，中國嘅航業受咗限制·

白：戰爭爆發時，中國有翻大部份船隻嘅噸位*·點解呀？

何：因疏散商船及時，故此有翻大部份船隻嘅噸位*·

白：戰爭期內與戰後，政府極注意內河航業營運之發展·政府做咗啲也野呀？

何：政府建造咗好多改良嘅新船，開咗好多新航線·因為想船隻來往平安與增加船行速度，所以在急流嘅地方設立好多拖船站，逆水拉船·同時改善航政·

白：現在中國船隻嘅噸位*少過以前嘅，但係航業嘅容量與能力比以前為大·點解呀？

何：因為船隻嘅設備與構造改良咗·

白：政府點樣*提倡造船與設立造船廠呀？

何：政府借錢*俾人民造船艇與設立造船廠·

業通航雙限國航交故船受美為上交重特發貿司輸側之不洋公通陸權達易，亦如交重特發貿司輸側之不洋公運多運業遠業之水航之航關輸河於外國有運內由對外最通有國靠易交國制中多……

貿展中限故運司外發在受，航公對國強極夠外船與中列展不對輸去且發位統總過而業噸制

運中始大噸位搬空開較隻政線陸及府，船加民新日）與洲上政廠，船國展本），南美洲，隆，船增．發至洋），南美洲，於要造隻線．台灣平美洲，由需造船新努力，台太北美洲之建船新努（南與灣與後代面造船新努（南與灣與發時方建船新努（南與灣與爆應一，建船新努（南與灣與戰適．廠船新努（南與灣與大以業．廠船新努（南與灣與次難航造船新努（南與灣與二通展南造船新努（南與灣與交發江時台國航洋遠洲）．

國民對較故，業發達，業發達．外業因增加．內為亦大之時字之陸數字之台灣大之在易府貿現政外

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

QUESTIONS

1. Tsoî Chung Yât Chìn-Chaang chi ts'în, Chung-Kwòk shóh yaŭ shuēn-chèk kè tun-waî* taaî-yeùk* keí toh à?

2. Tîm-kaaî kóh chân shí kè shuēn-chèk tun-waî* kòm shiú à?

3. Chung Yât Chìn-Chaang paaù-faàt kè shī-haû, Chung-Kwòk yaŭ-faan taaî pô-fân shuēn-chèk kè tun-waî*. Tîm-kaaî à?

4. Kóh chân shí chìng-foó hó chuè-ì hōng-îp. Chìng-Foó tsô-chóh ti mi-yĕ à?

5. Ī-ka Meĭ-Kwòk yaŭ yat-kaan hó taaî kè lūn-shuēn kung-sz, foô-chaàk Meĭ-Kwòk t'ūng Uĕn-Tung kè hōng-wân. Kóh kaan kung-sz kiù tsô mi-yĕ mēng* à?

6. Ī-ka Chung-Kwòk hōng-îp kè yūng-leûng t'ūng nāng-lîk taaî-kwòh ĭ-ts'în kè. Tîm-kaaî à?

7. Chìng-Foó tîm-yeûng* koó-laî yān-mān ch'ìt-laâp tsô-shuēn ch'óng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lūn-shuēn lūn 'steamship, a boat, a ship, a wheel'; shuēn 'a boat, a ship'; lun-shuēn 'steamship, a boat, a ship'

tun-waî* tun 'ton'; tun-waî* 'tonnage'

lît-k'eūng foreign powers, progressive powers

noî-hōh hōh 'river'; noî-hōh 'inland rivers'

k'uēn-leî leî 'benefit, profit, advantage, convenient'; k'uēn-leî 'privilege, rights'

hōng-îp hōng 'to sail, to navigate, to have a voyage'; hōng-îp 'shipping business'

haân-chaì haân 'to limit, to regard as a limit, to restrict, a limit, a boundary, limitation'; haân-chaì 'limitation, restriction, a fixed measure'

shoh-shaàn evacuation, to evacuate, to scatter, to disperse (as civilians from a combat zone)

k'âp shī in time, timely

koò-ts'ź koò 'a reason, a cause'; koò-ts'ź 'therefore, on this account'; a.f.: koò

yîng-wân navigation; synonym: hōng-wân

kìn-tsô tsô 'to make, to produce, to build'; kìn-tsô 'to make, to build'

koî-leūng leūng 'good, good nature, meritorious'; koî-leūng 'to improve, improvement'

loî wŏng loî 'to come', a.f.: laî; wŏng 'to go, before, former time', synonym: huì; loî wŏng 'to come and go, back and forth'

p'îng-on safe, safely, safety; a.f.: on (lit)

ts'uk-tô ts'uk 'fast, quick, speedy, speed, velocity'; ts'uk-tô 'speed, velocity'

kap laū kap 'quick, fast, haste, urgent, anxious'; laū 'current, river, stream, to flow'; kap laū 'rapid current, river where the current is rapid'

ch'ìt-laâp ch'ìt 'to establish, to set up, to arrange, to devise, to found'; ch'ìt-laâp 'to establish, to set up'

t'oh-shuēn chaâm t'oh 'to drag, to tow, to delay'; t'oh-shuēn chaâm 'tow-boat station, towing station'; t'oh-shuēn 'tugboat'

yîk-shuí yîk 'to disobey, to rebel, to oppose, contrary, rebellious, refractory'; yîk-shuí 'head tide, contrary current, against the stream'

laai to pull, to arrest; laai shuēn 'to pull ship'

hōng chìng shipping administration

yūng-leûng yūng 'to contain, to bear, to allow, to permit, to forgive, appearance'; leûng 'quantity, volume, capacity'; yūng-leûng 'capacity, volume'

nāng-lîk nāng 'able to, may, can, power, talent, ability'; nāng-lîk 'ability, capability, caliber, power'

ch'ìt-peî installation, facility, equipment

k'aù-tsô structure, frame, to construct

t'aí-ch'eung to promote, to bring forward, to pioneer, to initiate, to advocate, to originate; a.f.: ch'eung (lit)

tsô-shuēn-ch'óng ch'óng 'manufactory, workshop, plant'; tsô-shuēn-ch'óng 'ship yards, dock yards'

t'ĕng small boat, boat; AN: chèk

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Sui-în Chung-Kwòk kè mān-yûng hōng-hung sź hó tuén, taân-haî tsùn-pô-tak hó faaì. K'òng-chìn hoi-ch'î shî, Chung-Kwòk kè hōng-hung sìn yaŭ keí ch'eūng à? Fei-kei taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keí toh kà à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Tong-shî yeùk yaŭ yat-maân-seì-ts'in kung-leĭ kè hōng-hung sìn, saam-shâp-kà taaî siú pat-t'ūng kè fei-kei. Sui-în fei-kei, kei-haaî uĕ pó-k'ap k'uèt-fât, taân hōng-hung kung-sz tsûn-leûng leî-yûng shóh yaŭ kè fei-kei k'âp ch'ìt-peî. T'ūng-shî Chung-Kwòk yān tuì hōng-hung kîk chûng-shî. Hung-wân kè sui-iù chûk-tsîm tsang-ka.

C: Chung-Kwòk mān-hōng kei chi shat-sẑ lût shâm tai, haî m̄-haî à?

H: Haî, yān-mîng sòng-shat waâk fei-kei shat-sẑ chi tsúng shò, peí yâm-hōh yat kwòk waî tai.

C: Chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ chîk-tak lîng yān sîn-mô kà?

H: Tong-shî mŏ mō-sìn-tîn yăn-tô fei-kei fei-haāng, fei-kei ch'eūng mŏ uēn-shîn chi p'aaú-tô tang chî-fai fei-kei heî-fei t'ūng kòng-lôk. Ni kòh kung-tsòk haaû-lût kè keí-lûk haî chîk-tak sîn-mô kè.

C: Shaì-kaaì chuè-mîng kè Fei-Foó Cheung-Kwan Ch'ān-Naâp-Tak haí Chung-Kwòk tsô-chóh ti mi-yĕ à?

H: K'uĭ m̄-chî tuì-ue Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan yaŭ hó taaî kung-lō, t'ūng-shî tuì-ue Chung-Kwòk mān-yûng hōng-hung yîk yaŭ hó taaî kùng-hìn. Tsoî kwòh-huì shâp nîn tsóh-yaû*, sheung-îp hōng-hung haí tsoì haàk, yîng-wân, yaū-chìng kòk fong-mîn, ĭ-king hó yaŭ tsùn-pô, hó faàt-taât.

Capt Cheung: Despite the fact that commercial aviation has had but a short history in China, it has made much progress. When the Sino-Japanese War broke out, how many kilometers of air routes and how many airplanes were there in China?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: There was a mere total of 13,826 kilometers of air routes with 30 airplanes of different sizes and makes. Shortage of planes, equipment, and supplies have failed to discourage the aviation concerns from making fullest and best use of their planes and facilities. The Chinese people as a whole have become much more air-conscious than before and the demand for air travel and transport has been ever increasing.

C: The accident rate in Chinese civil aviation is very low. Is that true?

H: Yes. The total number of accidents and mishaps, whether involving casualties or damage or destruction of aircrafts, has been much lower than in any other country in the world.

C: Is there something else which is worth special mentioning?

H: The fact that there is no radio home beacon to guide the airships in flight and that planes take off or land on fields without proper or adequate lighting, makes this efficiency record definitely something to be admired.

C: What did General Chennault, USAF, world famous general of the Flying Tigers do?

H: He rendered a meritorious service to the Chinese Air Force and made a tremendous contribution to Chinese civil aviation. In the past decade or so, much wider and more extensive use has been made of commercial aviation in passenger service, air freight and mail.

張上尉：雖然係國際民用航空史好短，但中國已經進步好快．抗戰開始時，中國得幾多架飛機呀？大約有幾時當三機司同民人任也有重當世界

何中校：航空線，飛機場同值班紀錄係中國做貢獻，已經好多年，一萬公里航空線，大小與用人力對於飛機重量中要飛機喪失或為今引跑個．虎呀？國民十運，好多飛機．雖然飛機缺乏，但航空及設備．空運四千公里飛機，甚低，係唔係呀？總數，比例係幾多？慕飛機指揮率？飛行，飛機起飛係幾長呀？飛機大約有幾多架？有大械利國逐之失國得電之呢．慕飛野中中過，進一值線善．慕飛也於在客有降得著咗祇時獻．戴好經

張：中國

何：係，

張何：

何：

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

READING MATERIAL

交為民通運較之航一
中通快中，海展中較發之業步之事進業通其事交但航空．民陸短以海最其國為尤中史中在歷其之，通速

由用最但利在量業甚長盡事及航不，民雖視故史重，歷為備之甚設展業之空發事對航之航民與大民人機極國與飛有中府之內於有期短

中飛在獻．續為，貢遞繼司後司之病重公戰公府美業航大運政在事民．空對軍航之司航司將民名公民公陳之著空織此，華最航組，冬在國央華閒年其中中在期八但時，與德戰五，時司納作九死戰公陳黨一雖抗空軍產．軍航將共大將斷國虎對甚陳不

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

QUESTIONS

1. Haî k'òng-chìn hoi-ch'î kè shî-haû, Chung-Kwòk kè hōng-hung sìn yaŭ keî ch'eūng à?

2. Kóh chân shî Chung-Kwòk yaŭ keî-toh kà fei-kei à?

3. Kóh chân shî Chung-Kwòk kè fei-kei m̄-kaù, hōng-hung kè ch'ìt-peî m̄-kaù. Ti hōng-hung kung-sz tîm tsô à?

4. Chung-Kwòk mān-hōng kei kè shat-sẑ lût hó tai. Tai-tò tîm-yeûng* à?

5. Pin chúng t'in-heì yūng-î lîng fei-kei shat-sẑ à?

6. Fei-kei ch'eūng p'aaú-tô kè tang yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?

7. Fei-kei haî hung-chung fei-haāng-kán kè shî-haû, yûng mi-yĕ t'ūng fei-kei ch'eūng lîn-lòk à?

8. Taî-Î-Ts'ż Shaì-Kaaì Taaî Chìn kè shî-haû, foô-chaàk Meĭ-Kwòk Taî Shâp-Seì Hōng-Hung Tuî* kè tseung-kwan haî pin-kòh à?

9. Taî-Î-Ts'ż Taaî Chìn tá-uēn chi haû, Ch'ān Tseung-Kwan haî Chung-Kwòk tsô ti mi-yĕ mān-hōng sẑ-îp à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

man yûng hōng-hung mān-yûng 'civil'; hōng-hung 'aviation'; mān-yûng hōng-hung 'civil aviation'; a.f.: mān-hōng

tuén short, momentary

k'òng-chìn k'òng 'to resist, to oppose, to object'; k'òng-chìn 'war of resistance (Sino-Japanese War)'

pó-k'ap supply, to supply

tsûn-leûng tsûn 'to exhaust, all, utmost, entire'; tsûn-leûng 'to put forth the utmost effort, to try one's best'

leî-yûng to utilize, to make use, to take advantage, to exploit, utilization; tsûn-leûng leî-yûng 'to make the fullest and best use of'

chûng-shî shî 'sight, view, vision, to see'; chûng-shî 'to pay great attention to, to regard with esteem, to take it seriously, greatly concerned about'

hung-wân air transport, air-lift

chûk-tsîm tsîm 'gradually, gradual, step by step'; chûk-tsîm 'gradually, gradual, little by little, day by day, step by step'

shat-sẑ shat 'to lose, to miss, loss'; shat-sẑ 'mishap, accident'; fei-kei shat-sẑ 'air crash, air accident'; heì-ch'e shat-sẑ 'car accident'

lût rate; haaû-lût 'efficiency'; paàk-fân lût 'percentage, %'; ts'uk-lût 'speed'

yān-mîng human life

sòng-shat sòng 'to die, to lose, to degrade'; sòng-shat 'to lose, to die, to deprive of, death, loss'; yān-mîng sòng-shat 'casualty, loss of human lives'

tsúng shò total number, total figure

sîn-mô sîn 'to admire, to envy, to be proud of'; mô 'to admire, to adore, to honor, to esteem, to love'; sîn-mô 'to be proud of, to admire, to envy'

mō-sìn-tîn wireless, radio, radio set

yăn-tô̂ yăn 'to lead, to guide, to direct, to attract, to distract, to cause'; tô̂ 'to guide, to direct, to lead'; yăn-tô̂ 'to guide, to direct, to lead'

fei-haāng to fly, flight, flying

fei-kei ch'eūng fei-kei 'airplane'; fei-kei ch'eūng 'airport'; a.f.: kei ch'eūng

uēn-shîn perfect, completed, adequate

p'aaú-tô̂ tang p'aaú 'to run, to dash'; tô̂ 'road, avenue, ways and means, reasons, causes'; p'aaú-tô̂ 'runway'; tang 'light, lamp, lighting'; p'aaú-tô̂ tang 'runway lighting, boundary lights'

heî-fei to take off (airplane)

kòng-lôk kòng 'to descend, to drop, to fall'; kòng-lôk 'to land (airplane), landing'

chuè-mîng famous, well-known, celebrated; a.f.: chuè (lit), mîng (lit), mān-mēng*

fei-foó foó 'tiger'; fei-foó 'flying tiger'

cheung-kwan General; synonym: cheùng

Ch'ān-Naâp-Tak Cheung-Kwan General Chennault

tsoì haàk tsoì 'to load, to contain, to fill up, to carry'; haàk 'passengers, guests, customers'; tsoì haàk 'to carry passengers'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 45

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Uĕ fei-haāng yaŭ hîn-chuè chi ch'a-î kè haî yîk-chaâm wân-shue. Ts'îng neĭ kóng hă ni chúng wân-shue?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî yûng yān-lîk t'ūng ch'uk-shaang kè. King-tsaì ì p'òk-shât, maân ì shât-tsaì. Mooĭ-fūng tsoî hóh-nāng faân-waî chi noî, ĭ shuî-lô toî-t'aì lûk-lô yîk-wân.

C: Yîk-wân kè kung-kuî paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?

H: Paau-k'oòt kòk chúng yûng yān-lîk t'ūng ch'uk-shaang laai kè fòh-ch'e, t'ĕng, mûk-p'aaì, fóh-shuēn tsaì. Foō-hōh ch'uk-shaang hó-ts'ž mă, luî, lō, lòk-t'ōh...

C: Tsuì chué-iù kè yîk-wân kung-kuî haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Haî yûng mă waâk yān laai kè kaau lūn* fòh-ch'e. Ni ti fòh-ch'e mooĭ yât hóh-ĭ wân yat tun chì tun-poòn kè fòh haāng î-shâp kung-leĭ lô. T'ìt-lūn* fòh-ch'e hóh-ĭ suén-waaî lô-mîn*, ĭ-king m̄-chún haāng-shaî.

C: Haî t'ung-yûng kè shuî-lô yûng pin chúng kè wân-shue kung-kuî à?

H: Kòk chúng taaî siú kè shuēn t'ĕng hóh-ĭ wân yat tun chì seì-shâp tun kè fòh, shâm-chì-foō lûk-shâp tun kè fòh.

C: Mŏ kung-lô t'ūng shuî-lô kè teî-fong, k'uĭ-teî yûng mi-yĕ à?

H: Tsaû yûng foó-lîk t'oî fòh, taam fòh.

C: Haî Chung-Kwòk, yat-ts'in kung-leĭ kè lô, fóh-ch'e iù keî noî, fòh-ch'e iù keî noî, yîk-wân iù keî noî à?

H: Fóh-ch'e iù saam-shâp siú-shî, yîk-wân iù saam sing-k'eî. Yîk-chaâm wân-shue sui-în maân, taân-haî wán-chân, haan m̄-shiú tîn-yaū kè siu-hò, tsìt-shaáng keî paàk-maân uēn.

Capt Cheung: In direct contrast to flying is stage transportation. Please tell us something about stage transportation, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: Stage transportation is the economical and unpretentious, slow but steady, Chinese way of transporting goods by human carriers and animals. Whenever possible or feasible, waterways are used to substitute or supplement the roads and paths.

C: What do the means of stage transportation include?

H: The means used in stage transportation include carts of various types pulled by men and animals, junks, rafts, steamers, and pack animals such as horses, mules, donkeys, and camels...

C: What is the chief means of transportation?

H: Rubber-tired carts pulled by horses or by men. These carts are capable of carrying 1 to 1.5 tons for 20 kilometers per day. Iron-wheeled carts are prohibited on highways for they may destroy the road surface.

C: What means of transportation are used on navigable waterways?

H: Junks and sampans which vary in size from one ton to over 40, and even occasionally some of 60 tons are used.

C: Where no highways and waterways are available, what do they use?

H: Human carriers or coolies are used to transport the goods on their backs or shoulders.

C: In order to cover a distance of 1,000 kilometers in China, how long does it take by train, by truck, and by stage transportation?

H: It takes 30 hours by train, four days by truck, and about three weeks by stage transportation. Slow but sure, stage transportation represents tremendous savings in the consumption of gasoline...a saving of millions of dollars.

張上尉：與飛行有顯著之差異嘅係驛站運輸．請你講吓呢種運輸？

何中校：係用人力同畜牲嘅．經濟而樸實，慢而實際．每逢在可能範圍之內，以水路代替陸路驛運．

張：驛運嘅工具包括啲乜野呀？

何：包括各種用人力同畜牲拉嘅貨車，艇，木排，火船仔．負荷畜牲好似馬，騾，驢，駱駝……

張：最主要嘅驛運工具係乜野呀？

何：係用馬或人拉嘅膠輪貨車．呢啲貨車每日可以運一噸至噸半嘅貨行二十公里路．鐵輪貨車可以損壞路面，已經唔准行駛．

張：噚通用嘅水路用邊種嘅運輸工具呀？

何：各種大小嘅水路船艇可以運一噸至四十噸嘅貨，甚至乎六十噸嘅貨．

張：有公用乜野呀？

何：就用中國貨車三運電火車

張：噚中國貨車要幾耐，路，火車要幾耐呀？

何：火車雖然慢，但係穩陣，慳唔少電油嘅消耗，驛運要三星期．驛運要幾耐，驛運要幾百萬元．

READING MATERIAL

運輸交通中，以驛站運輸最為普通，最可靠，在各種運輸境與空中交通相比；中國之最環能運輸貢獻，在最原始，中慢，其上最適輸年事業而雖但何

過高盡上外國人以及畜力，代牲馬，騾，驢，駱駝……路面能水用都主工具牛，排木

運輸，運量之消政府極力改良交通，以發展經濟，增加生產，提高人民生活水準，該項運輸工具之需要，必須隨時改進，以適應實際之需要，方能收事半功倍之效。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 45

QUESTIONS

1. Yîp-chaâm wân-shue haî tîm-yeûng* kà?

2. Yîk-chaâm wân-shue kung-kuî paau-kʻoòt ti mi-yĕ à?

3. Yîk-chaâm wân-shue tsuì chué-iù kè kaau-tʻung kung-kuî haî mi-yĕ à?

4. Ni ti fòh-chʻe kè wân-shue nāng-lîk tîm-yeûng* à?

5. Yîk-chaâm wân-shue yûng pin keî chúng chʻuk-shaang à?

6. Pʻó-tʻung laî kóng, Meĭ-Kwòk yān tsuì chué-iù kè kaau-tʻung kung-kuî haî mi-yĕ à?

7. Chung-Kwòk kaû shik kè tʻĕng kè wân-shue nāng-lîk tîm-yeûng* à?

8. Haî Chung-Kwòk, haāng yat-tsʻin kung-leĭ kè lô, fóh-chʻe iù keî noî à?

9. Haî Meĭ-Kwòk, haāng seì-paàk ying-leĭ kè kung-lô, heì-chʻe iù keî noî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 45

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

hîn-chuè hîn 'evident, obvious, marked, to manifest, to show, to appear'; hîn-chuè 'obvious, apparent, marked, striking'

ch'a-î î 'different, strange, extraordinary, foreign, other, difference, discrepancy'; ch'a-î 'difference, contrast'

yîk-chaâm wân-shue stage transportation; a.f.: yîk wân

p'òk-shât unpretentious, simple and plain, pure and honest, simplicity, frugal

shât-tsaì practical, realistic, substantial; shât-tsaì sheûng 'practically, actually, in fact'

hóh-nāng possible, feasible, can; synonym: nāng

faân-waî scope, sphere, limit; tsoî hóh-nāng faân-waî chi noî 'whenever possible or feasible'

toî-t'aì toî 'to replace, in place of, for, instead of, a substitute, acting'; t'aì 'for, instead of, in place of, to substitute, to change, to replace'; toî-t'aì 'in place of another, to substitute, to take the place of'

mûk-p'aaî mûk 'wood, wooden'; p'aaî 'row, column, platoon'; mûk-p'aaî 'raft'

fóh-shuēn tsaî fóh 'fire'; fóh-shuēn 'steamer'; fóh-shuēn tsaî 'small steamer, ferry'

foô-hôh hôh 'to carry on the back or shoulder, the idea of gratitude'; hōh 'water-lily'; foô-hôh 'to carry, to bear responsibility'

mă horse, surname; AN: chèk

luî mule; AN: chèk

lō donkey; AN: chèk

lǒk-t'ōh camel; AN: chèk

lūn wheel, ship; kaau lūn 'rubber tire'; kaau lūn fòh-ch'e 'rubber tired cart, rubber tired truck'

suén-waaî suén 'to wound, to injure, to damage'; suén-waaî 'to ruin, to damage, to destroy'

t'ung-yûng t'ung 'to circulate, to understand, to go through, through, mutual'; t'ung-yûng 'in general use, interchangeable'

shâm-chì-foō shâm-chì 'even to the extent of, at the worst'; a.f.: shâm-chì-foō

foó-lîk foó 'bitter, agony, sorrow, suffering, in bad circumstances'; foó-lîk 'coolies'; a.f.: koo-lei (colloq.)

t'oì to carry between two or more persons

taam to carry on shoulders

fóh-ch'e train

siú-shì hour; a.f.: tîm-chung, chung-t'aū

wán-chân sure, dependable, careful, safe

haan frugal, thrifty, to save (money, time...); a.f.: tsìt-shaáng, shaáng

siu-hò hò 'to waste, to squander'; siu-hò 'expense, consumption, to consume, to waste'

tsìt-shaáng frugal, thrifty, to save (expense, time...); a.f.: shaáng, haan (colloq)

chaâm a station (railway), a stop (bus, taxicab, streetcar), depot (bus), check point; a.f.: yîk-chaâm wân-shue

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk tîn-sùn sẑ-îp, tsuì ch'oh haî yaū pin ti yān t'aū tsz paân-leĭ kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Tsuì ch'oh yaū ngoî-yān t'aū tsz paân-leĭ. Haû-loî kòk shuè kûk-pô hôp-paân. Haāng-chìng tsîm-tsîm* tsaâp-chung. Kwòh-huì î saam-shâp nîn loî, yaū-ue noî-luên ngoî-mŏ kè kìt-kwón, tîn-sùn sẑ-îp shaû kîk taaî p'òh-waaî.

P: Kòk chúng tîn-sùn chi chung, ĭ pin chúng ts'oî-yûng tsuì tsó à?

H: Ĭ tîn-pò ts'oî-yûng tsuì tsó. K'eî-ts'ż haî kòk shuè kûk-pô tîn-wâ*. Haû-loî shî ch'eūng-t'ŏ tîn-wâ*, mŏ-sìn-tîn t'ung-sùn, mŏ-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh. Tsuì-haû shî tîn-sùng seùng-p'ìn*. Tîn-shî i-în tsoî ch'aū-waâk kaai-tuên chung.

P: Chung-Kwòk tîn-sùn sẑ-îp faàt-chín tò tîm-yeûng* à?

H: Chung-Kwòk kè tîn-sùn sẑ-îp, ĭ tîn-pò waî chué, ĭ mŏ-sìn-tîn laî pó-chŏh. Ts'uî shî-toî kè tsùn-chín, t'ūng sẑ-îp kè faàt-chín, mooĭ nîn tîn-mān kè shau faàt uĕ tsẑ-shò yîk yan-î yat-lô yat-lŏ tsang-ka. Chì-ue tîn-mān kè chúng-luî, taaî pô-fân haî chìng-foó t'ūng kwan-sẑ tîn-mān, k'eî-t'a haî sheung-îp t'ūng sz-yān tîn-mān.

P: Taî-Î-Ts'ż Taaî Chìn k'eî noî, tîn-pò sẑ-îp tîm à?

H: Tîn-pò sẑ-îp faàt-chín taât-tò tsuì ko ch'ing-tŏ. Tuì tsòk-chìn kè pong-chôh kîk chi taaî. Mooĭ ts'ż shau-fûk yat-kòh shîng-shĭ haû, tsik fooi-fûk koi shîng uĕ k'eî-t'a kòk teî chi tîn-pò t'ung-sùn.

Major White: At the initial period, who invested in and developed the Chinese tele-communications?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: They were developed by foreigners at the initial period and later by the integration of local set-ups to gradually centralize the administration. For the past two or three decades, there has been persistent destruction as a result of civil wars and enemy aggression.

W: Among the various means of tele-communications in China, which was first established?

H: Telegraph service. Next was local telephone. Following that were long distance telephone, radio communication, and radio broadcasting. The latest addition was wireless photo service. Television is still at its planning stage.

W: To what degree is tele-communications service in China developed?

H: Tele-communications service in China centers on telegraphy with radio communication as an auxiliary. With the march of time and development of the services, the annual total of telegraph messages and wordage have been on the increase steadily. Of all the messages transmitted, the majority are government and military telegrams. The rest of them are commercial and private telegrams.

W: How was the telegraph service during World War II?

H: Telegraph service maintained to the optimum greatly

facilitated military operations. Whenever a city was recovered, telegraphic connections with other cities were immediately resumed.

白少校：中國資初部三，信掛電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人

何中校：中投最局二果電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人

投資辦理，漸*集中，外壞最早係局部電通相
初部三，信掛電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
部三，信掛電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
三，信掛電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
，信掛電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
信掛電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
掛電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
訊片，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
信息事業，最初係由邊啲人
息事業，最初係由邊啲人
事業，最初係由邊啲人
業，最初係由邊啲人
，最初係由邊啲人
最初係由邊啲人
初係由邊啲人
係由邊啲人
由邊啲人
邊啲人
啲人
人

白：各種電話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人

何：各以電話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人

白：中國電業數文電大業幫後，即訊。

何：中國電業數文電大業幫後，即訊。

白：第二報通

何：第二報通

理．後來各處去結
．過中．外壞最早呀？
．過去結
．過中．外壞最早呀？
去結
中．外壞最早呀？
結
．外壞最早呀？
外壞最早呀？
壞最早呀？
最早呀？
早呀？
呀？
？

何中校：中投最局二果電報話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人投資辦理．後來各處去結

投行，業以．長廣然展無同
資辦理．後來各處去結
辦理．後來各處去結
理．後來各處去結
．後來各處去結
後來各處去結
來各處去結
各處去結
處去結
去結
結

白：各種電話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人投行，業以．長廣然展無同

何：各以電話*訊片*，信息事業，最初係由邊啲人投行，業以．長廣然展無同

政由受邊其途播在到以，發至同電文
行，業以．長廣然展無同
，業以．長廣然展無同
業以．長廣然展無同
以．長廣然展無同
．長廣然展無同
長廣然展無同
廣然展無同
然展無同
展無同
無同
同

白：中國電業數文電大業幫後，即訊。政由受邊其途播在到以，發至同電文

何：中國電業數文電大業幫後，即訊。政由受邊其途播在到以，發至同電文

邊其途播在到以，發至同電文
其途播在到以，發至同電文
途播在到以，發至同電文
播在到以，發至同電文
在到以，發至同電文
到以，發至同電文
以，發至同電文
，發至同電文
發至同電文
至同電文
同電文
電文
文

白：第二報通政由受邊其途播在到以隨每路大係電最．該城之

何：第二報通政由受邊其途播在到以隨每路大係電最．該城之

．一，他，到大復
一，他，到大復
，他，到大復
他，到大復
，到大復
到大復
大復
復

白：第二報通政由受邊其途播在到以隨每路大係電最．該城之戰

何：第二報通政由受邊其途播在到以隨每路大係電最．該城之戰

隨每路大係電最．該城之戰城
每路大係電最．該城之戰城
路大係電最．該城之戰城
大係電最．該城之戰城
係電最．該城之戰城
電最．該城之戰城
最．該城之戰城
．該城之戰城
該城之戰城
城之戰城
之戰城
戰城
城

白：第二報通政由受邊其途播在到以隨每路大係電最．該城之戰城

何：第二報通政由受邊其途播在到以隨每路大係電最．該城之戰城

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

READING MATERIAL

在交通部管轄下之各部門中，負責管理國內國外通訊之單位是郵政總局與電信總局。郵政通訊而經濟，電信通訊而經濟之電訊之效率而言，以郵政較電信為高。郵政之經濟，但需時較長，電信之效率為短。故兩者相比，以需時需時較短為高。

隨電信時代之高日關，由於替代關係，電信事業之發達，再由電信事業之發展，電信事業之進展，電信事業之效率，電信事業之增加，電信事業之漸及，電信事業之商業，電信事業之機關，電信事業之電報，電信事業之電話，電信事業之電話，電信事業之電話

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

QUESTIONS

1. Tîn-sùn sẑ-îp yaū Haāng-Chìng Uên* pin-kòh pô koón-hât kà?

2. Yaū-chìng t'ung-sùn t'ūng tîn-sùn t'ung-sùn, pin yeûng king-tsaì ti, pin yeûng kwaì ti à?

3. Chung-Kwòk tîn-sùn sẑ-îp tsuì ch'oh haî yaū pin ti yān t'aū tsz paân-leĭ kà?

4. Kòk chúng tîn-sùn t'ung-sùn chi chung, pin chúng ts'oî-yûng-tak tsuì tsó à?

5. Pin chúng ts'oî-yûng-tak tsuì ch'ì à?

6. Tîn-pò, tîn-wâ*, mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh, mō-sìn-tîn t'ung-sùn, t'ūng tîn-shî; pin yeûng tuì kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk tsuì yaŭ yûng à?

7. Ĭ-ka mooĭ nîn yûng tîn-pò kè yān yat-lô yat-lô tsang-ka. Tîm kaaî à?

8. Haî Meĭ-Kwòk, tá tîn-pò t'ūng tá ch'eūng-t'o tîn-wâ*, pin yeûng kwaì ti à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kûk-pô local, regional, localized

hôp-paân hôp 'to combine, to integrate'; paân 'operation, to operate, to manage'; hôp-paân 'integration, annexation, the integration of certain set-ups'

tsîm-tsîm gradually, by degrees, little by little; a.f.: tsîm, chûk-tsîm, yat-lô yat-lô kóm

noî-luên civil war, anarchy; a.f.: noî-chìn

ngoî-mŏ mŏ 'to insult, to disgrace'; ngoî-mŏ 'trouble coming from without (as a foreign invasion)'

ts'oî-yûng select for use, adoption, selective

tîn-pò telegram, telegraph, cable

k'eî-ts'ż ts'ż 'number of times, frequency, secondly, next in order, secondary'; k'eî-ts'ż 'secondly, next in order, secondary, next, less important'

ch'eūng-t'ō tîn-wâ* t'ō 'a road, a path, a journey, a career'; ch'eūng-t'ō 'long distance, a long journey'; ch'eūng-t'ō tîn-wâ* 'long-distance telephone'

mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh mō-sìn-tîn 'wireless, radiogram'; kwóng-pòh 'to broadcast, broadcasting'; mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh 'wireless broadcasting'

tsuì-haû the last, final, finally, eventually

tîn-sùng seùng-p'ìn* seùng-p'ìn* 'photograph, photo'; tîn-sùng seùng-p'ìn* 'wireless photo service'

tîn-shî television

ch'aū-waâk ch'aū 'to consider ways and means, to arrange, to plan, to prepare'; ch'aū-waâk 'to plan, planning, blueprint'

pó-chŏh pó 'to supplement, to help, to assist, to patch, to mend, to add to'; pó-chŏh 'to help, to subsidize, to supplement, auxiliary, supplementary'

ts'uî subsequently, forthwith, to follow, to accord with, to accompany, together, following

tsùn-chîn progress, advancement; ts'uî shî-toî chi tsùn-chîn 'following the march of time'

tîn-mān telegraph message

shau faàt faàt 'to dispatch, to issue, to distribute'; shau faàt 'to receive and dispatch, to transmit, transmittance'

yan-î as a result, because of...thus, on which account... then, inferring from this, inconsequence of, and hence, thereby

yat-lô yat-lô gradually, steadily, gradual; a.f.: tsîm-tsîm, chûk-tsîm

k'eî-t'a the rest of..., the others

sz-yān sz 'private'; sz-yān 'private, personal'

taât-tô taât 'to reach, to arrive, to attain'; taât-tô

ch'îng-tô degree, standard, grade, required qualifications or attainments

tsòk-chìn military operation

shau-fûk fûk 'to recover, to return, to reseat, to reply, again, repeatedly, alternative'; shau-fûk 'to recapture(a place)'

fooi-fûk to restore to former condition, to resume, to recover

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Tsẑ-ts'ūng mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh sẑ-îp ch'uēn-yâp Chung-Kwòk chi haû, Chung-Kwòk yaŭ m̄-shiú mān-yîng kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oî t'ūng chìng-foó kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oî. Pin chúng tsó-chik-tak uēn-shîn ti à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Tong-în* chìng-foó tîn-t'oî tsó-chik-tak uēn-shîn-tak toh, koón-leĭ chau-tò-tak toh.

P: Chìng-foó tîn-t'oî heùng kwòk noî t'eng-ché yûng chung-poh pòh-sùng, heùng kwòk ngoî t'eng-ché yûng tuén-poh pòh-sùng. Kwóng-pòh tsìt-mûk paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

H: Tsìt-mûk paau-k'oòt yûng Chung-Mān t'ūng ngoî-mān shî-sẑ san-mān* pò-tô, în-kóng, yam-ngôk, heì-k'êk. Chî-ue Chung-Mān tsìt-mûk, ch'uî-chóh yûng Kwòk-Uĕ t'ūng Uêt-Uĕ tsô kei-poón uĕ-în chi ngoî, yîk yûng Sheûng-Hoi Wâ*, Hâ-Moōn Wâ*, Haàk-Ka Wâ*, Mūng-Koó Wâ*, Sai-Tsông Wâ*, t'ūng kòk chúng fong-în kwóng-pòh. Ngoî-mān yaŭ Ying-Mān, Yât-Mān, Ngōh-Mān, t'ūng Tung-Naam À kòk chúng uĕ-în.

P: P'îng-kwan mooĭ yat-paàk-kòh Chung-Kwòk yān yaŭ keî toh foò shau-yam-kei à?

H: Koó-kaì p'îng-kwan mooĭ paàk yān yaŭ tîng-tîm yat-saam foò shau-yam-kei.

P: Chung-Kwòk kè kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oî kè poh-ch'eūng keî toh à?

H: King Kwòk-Tsaì Mō-Sìn-Tîn Kwóng-Pòh Ooî-Ĭ chî-tîng, Chung-Kwòk kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oî kè chung-poh poh-ch'eūng nĝ-nĝ-lîng chì yat-nĝ-lîng-lîng chau-poh, tuén-poh poh-ch'eūng lûk-lîng-lîng chì î-lûk-lûk-lîng chau-poh.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

Major White: Since radio broadcasting was introduced to China, numerous private-owned and government-owned broadcasting stations came into being. Which one of these two types are better organized?

Lt Colonel Höh: Government owned broadcasting stations are much better organized and conducted.

W: The government-owned stations use medium-wave to broadcast to listeners at home and short-wave to listeners in foreign countries. What do their programs include?

H: Programs broadcast in both Chinese and foreign languages include news, lectures, speeches, music, and plays. With Mandarin and Cantonese as the basic languages for Chinese programs, various dialects such as Shanghai, Amoy, Hakka, as well as Mongolian and Tibetan are used. Among the foreign languages are English, Japanese, Russian, and various languages spoken in Southeast Asia.

W: On the average, how many radio receivers are there per every 100 Chinese persons?

H: It is estimated that there are about 0.13 sets per every 100 persons.

W: What is the wave-length of the broadcasting stations in China?

H: As designated by the International Radio Broadcasting Convention, the wave-length of broadcasting stations in China is from 550 to 1,500 kilocycles for medium-wave and from 600 to 2,660 megacycles for short-wave.

白少校：之同善
中國台完
傳電得
入播組
廣織
事得
業善
民完
營善
廣得
播多，
少·
邊
種
自從無線電台組織得完善得多，
後，中國廣播電台·
政府呀？
何中校：當然政府電台組織得完善得多，
管理到得多·
電台向國者用中波播送，向目
國包括聽短波播送·廣播節
包括講，除外話，百言客種俄每呀？
演目，
目，
白：政府
何：節目
白：
何：
白：
何：
何
文家方文一？
均
平
計國國
估中經
均廣無電
平嘅際播
六
文
外
時事新聞報道，
劇·至於做基本話，各
語，同日，
音機
收·
副呀，
多定五六
一幾指五長
點長議長波
定波會波波
有嘅播波短·
人台廣中，波
百電電嘅波週
每播線台週
廣五二
國一至
中至
三
00
00
00
六

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

READING MATERIAL

播之間全之教
廣需時達聞化
電所之到新文
線而短間事際
無，最時時國
中，最遠在一對及
法，播在法導
辦廣廣能辦報
訊最電，訊之
通圍線方通場大
信範無地種市最
電方．之此業獻
項地短遠．商貢
各之最最地工之
在到又到各，業
達間達界導事
所時內世報育

波，方長國
短地是，門
為之後波，
分到最短波
可達，為用
長能波多時
波所中長有
之波是波，
台短次之波
，電以其用長
中，所用
言其廣台多
而．最電台
長波圍際電
波長範國業
以與，故商之
中最遠．
波．
內

．，最南台地，門
台台國在電各語廈
電電中址際界莫，
營營，台國世為話，
公者後．茹全言海
與，前台真向語上
台台戰電海言之為
電電抗播上語用言
營營．廣為之常方
民市台央台同最之
，為電中電不本他
種分際為際種基其
兩可國台國各最．
有又，電之用中語話
台台台家大日其國家
電電電國最每．，客
營家之．台播語，
公國大京該廣粵話，

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

QUESTIONS

1. Haî Chung-Kwòk kè mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oî, mān-yìng kè tsó-chik-tak uēn-shîn ti, yik-waâk chìng-foó kè tsó-chik-tak uēn-shîn ti à?

2. Tîn-wâ*, tîn-shî, t'ūng mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh, pin chúng huì-tak tsuì faaì, tsuì uěn, tsuì toh teî-fong à?

3. Tîn-t'oî kè poh-ch'eūng yaŭ keî toh chúng à?

4. Sheûng-pîn saam-chúng poh-ch'eūng, pin chúng huì-tak tsuì uěn à?

5. Chung-Kwòk tsuì taaî kè kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oî kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

6. Kwóng-pòh tsìt-mûk paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?

7. Kwóng-pòh kè shî-haû, tsuì kei-poón kè uĕ-în haî pin saam chúng à?

8. K'eî-t'a kè fong-în haî mi-yĕ à?

9. Chung-Kwòk yān p'îng-kwan yat-paàk-kòh yān yaŭ keî toh foò shau-yam-kei à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ch'uēn-yâp ch'uēn 'to propagate, to preach, to introduce, to hand down'; ch'uēn-yâp 'to propagate into'

kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oî kwóng-pòh 'to broadcast, broadcasting'; tîn-t'oî 'broadcasting station'; kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oî 'broadcasting station'

tsó-chik to organize, organization

chau-tò well arranged, well taken care, considerate, thorough; koón-leĭ m̄-chau-tò 'loosely organized, loosely managed, ill-conducted'

t'ìng-ché t'eng-ché listeners, audience, those who listen; kwòk-noî t'ìng-ché 'listeners in home country'; kwòk-ngoî t'ìng-ché 'listeners in foreign countries'

chung-poh poh 'wave'; tîn-poh 'electric wave'; chung-poh 'medium wave'

pòh-sùng to broadcast; a.f.: kwóng-pòh

tuén-poh short wave

tsìt-mûk programs

ngoî-mān foreign language

shî-sẑ news, current events, world affairs

san-mān* news

pò-tô pò 'newspaper, report, to report'; pò-tô 'reports, to report, to inform'; san-mān* pò-tô 'news report'; Meĭ-Kwòk San-Mān Uĕ Shaì-Kaaì Pò-Tô 'U.S. News and World Report'

yam-ngôk music

heì-k'êk heì 'shows, movies, drama'; k'êk 'drama, play'; heì-k'êk 'drama, plays'; heì-k'êk-fà 'dramatic'; heî-k'êk 'comedy'

Kwòk-Uĕ Mandarin

Uêt-Uĕ Cantonese language

Sheûng-Hoî Wâ* Sheûng-Hoî 'Shanghai'; Sheûng-Hoî Wâ* 'Shanghai dialect'

Hâ-Moōn Wâ* Hâ-Moōn 'Amoy'; Hâ-Moōn Wâ* 'Amoy dialect'

Haàk-Ka Wâ* Hakka dialect

fong-în dialects

Tung-Naām À Southeast Asia

p'îng-kwan average, even, averagely, evenly

foò a pair, a set, vice, second to

shau-yam-kei radio, radio set, radio receiver

tîng-tîm decimal point, a.f.: siú-shò-tîm; tîng-tîm yat-saam '0.13'

poh-ch'eūng wave length

kwòk-tsaì international

Kwòk-Tsaì Mō-Sìn-Tîn Kwóng-Pòh Ooî-Ĭ International Radio Broadcasting Conference

ooî-ĭ conference, convention, meeting

chî-tîng tîng 'to designate, to decide, to appoint, stable, steady'; chî-tîng 'to designate, to appoint, to earmark'

chau-poh cycle wave (electricity); ts'in-chau 'kilocycle'; chiû-chau 'megacycle (1,000,000)'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Hŏh Chung-Kaaù, ts'îng neĭ kóng hă kwaan-ue Chung-Kwòk kè ko-táng hôk-foó peí ngŏh-teî chi?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Tsẑ-ts'ūng Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk shīng-laâp chi haû, ko-táng kaaù-yûk ĭ-king koí-shîn. Ko-táng hôk-foó fan-waî taaî-hôk, tûk-laâp hôk-uên*, t'ūng chuen-foh hôk-uên* saam-chúng. Taaî-hôk t'ūng tûk-laâp hôk-uên* hóh-ĭ ch'ìt yaŭ în-kaù uên*. Taaî-hôk paau-k'oòt mān hôk-uên*, leĭ hôk-uên*, faàt hôk-uên*, sheung hôk-uên*, kaaù-yûk hôk-uên*, nūng hôk-uên*, kung hôk-uên*, i hôk-uên*. Taân-haî tsuì tai haân-tô yaŭ saam-kaan hôk-uên*, ni saam-kaan hôk-uên* yat-tîng iù paau-k'oòt yat-kaan leĭ hôk-uên*, yat-kaan haî nūng hôk-uên* waâk kung hôk-uên* waâk i hôk-uên*. Uē-kwóh taaî-hôk shiú-kwòh saam-kaan hôk-uên* tsaû kiù tsô tûk-laâp hôk-uên*. Ch'uî-chóh i hôk-uên* sui-iù yaŭ lûk nîn fòh-ch'îng chi ngoî, k'eî-t'a kòk hôk-uên* tîng-chóh seì nîn pat-îp. Chuen-foh hôk-uên* paau-k'oòt nūng-foh, kung-foh, i-foh, iù yaŭ leŭng nîn chì saam nîn kè fòh-ch'îng. Īn-kaù uên* tsuì tai haân-tô iù yaŭ saam-kòh haî, mooĭ kòh haî iù yaŭ leŭng nîn kè fòh-ch'îng.

C: Ni ti tsuì ko hôk-foó haî pin-kòh ch'ìt-laâp kà?

H: Ni ti tsuì ko hôk-foó haî kwòk-laâp, shaáng-laâp, sz-laâp taaî-hôk. Toh-shò tsaâp-chung haî Pak-P'îng, Kwóng-Chau, Sheûng-Hoî saam-kòh mān-fà chung-sam.

C: Chîn shî ni ti taaî-hôk tîm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

H: Chìn shî, Chung-Kwòk yān kè pat-wat-pat-naaû chi tsing-shān, hóh-ǐ yaū ni ti kaaù-yûk hôk-foó kè shaang-ts'uēn t'aî-tó. Sui-în ni ti taaî-hôk haî tîk-yān chué-iù kwang-chà mûk-piu. K'uǐ-teî ǐ Chung-Kwòk ch'uēn-t'úng kin yán kong ngaî chi tsing-shān, fǎn-taù t'ō ts'uēn.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

Capt Cheung: Sir, can you tell us something about the institutions of higher learning in China?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: After the founding of the Chinese Republic, the system of higher education was improved. Institutions of higher learning were classified into three main groups: universities, independent colleges and technical schools. Universities and independent colleges might establish schools for post-graduate studies. A university consisted of colleges of arts, science, law, commerce, education, agriculture, engineering and medicine. However, there had to be at least three colleges which included science and one of the three colleges of agriculture, engineering and medicine. Those having less than three colleges fell under the independent colleges category. With the exception of medical colleges requiring a six-year course, the term for graduation of all other colleges was fixed at four years. Technical colleges, including agriculture, engineering and medicine required a two to three-year course. Schools for post-graduate study were required to have at least three departments and to give a two-year course of study.

C: By whom were these institutions of higher learning established?

H: They were nationally, provincially and privately established. Most of them were located at the three cultural centers: Peiping, Canton, and Shanghai.

C: What happened to these institutions during the War?

H: During the War the indomitable spirit of the Chinese could be observed from the existence of her educational institutions. Although these institutions have been the major targets of enemy bombings, they have survived and thrived as a true tribute to China's traditional spirit of endurance and fortitude.

張上尉：等高啲國中關於中國高等教學，大學·學院度要院少除，科要最有

何中校：啲高等大學·學院法學限定學學·外專，院要科究系之·科究系大院·外專，院要科究系之·科究系大院·外專，院要科究系之·科究系大院

張：戰時呢啲大學點呀？

何：戰時，中國人嘅不屈不撓之精神，可以由呢啲教育學府既生存睇倒．雖然呢啲大學係敵人主要轟炸目標．但由呢啲大學中國人嘅堅忍剛毅之精神，可以睇倒中國傳統堅忍剛毅之精神，奮鬥圖存．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

READING MATERIAL

建設為教育之首要，最良好基本建設如工業，國防建設重工業，建設建設建設

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè kaaù-yûk hóh-ĭ fan-hoi pin saam-k'ap à?
2. Ch'oh-táng, chung-táng, ko-táng kaaù-yûk, mooĭ yeûng iù keî toh nîn à?
3. Ko-táng kaaù-yûk fan-waî pin saam-chúng à?
4. Taaî-hôk yaŭ keî toh kòh hôk-uên* à?
5. Haî Meĭ-Kwòk tûk taaî-hôk, iù keî toh nîn chî pat-îp à?
6. Tûk i-foh iù keî toh nîn à?
7. Kan-kuî haāng-chîng tsó-chik laî kóng, taaî-hôk yaû hóh-ĭ fan waî pin leŭng-chúng à?
8. Chung-Kwòk kè saam taaî mān-fà chung-sam haî pin saam-kòh à?
9. Meĭ-Kwòk kè chîng-chî t'ūng sheung-îp chung-sam haî pin shuè à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ko-táng kaaù-yûk ko-táng 'higher, advanced, well-bred, high class'; ko-táng kaaù-yûk 'higher education, advanced education'

hôk-foó institution, school

tûk-laâp independent, independence; tûk-laâp hôk-uên* 'independent college'

chuen-foh hôk-uên* chuen-foh 'special curriculum, technical course'; hôk-uên* 'college'; chuen-foh hôk-uên* 'technical college'; a.f.: chuen-moōn hôk-uên*

în-kaù uên* graduate school, post-graduate school; synonym: în-kaù shóh

hôk-uên* college in a university, institution; a.f.: uên*; mān hôk-uên* 'college of arts'; leĭ hôk-uên* 'college of science'; faàt hôk-uên* 'college of law'; sheung hôk-uên* 'college of commerce, college of business'; nūng hôk-uên* 'college of agriculture'

kung hôk-uên* college of engineering

i kôk-uên* college of medicine

fòh-ch'îng fòh 'lessons, a lesson, homework'; ch'îng 'schedule'; fòh-ch'îng 'curriculum'

foh subject of study, department, classification of second-degree graduates under the former system; nūng foh 'Agriculture (in a university)'; kung-foh 'Engineering'; i-foh 'Medicine'; mān-foh 'Arts'; sheung-foh 'Business'; faàt-foh 'Law'; leĭ-foh 'Science'

haî departments, a department (in a university)

kwòk-laâp taaî-hôk national university

shaáng-laâp taaî-hôk provincial university; Ka-Shaáng Taaî-Hôk 'University of California'

sz-laâp taaî-hôk private university

Pak-P'îng Peiping

chung-sam center, pivot; mān-fà chung-sam 'cultural

center'; kung-îp chung-sam 'industrial center'

chìn shî wartime, in war

pat-wat-pat-naaû (naaŭ) wat 'to bend, bent'; pat-wat-pat-naaû (naaŭ) 'indomitable (spirit, will power)'; pat-wat-pat-naaû (naaŭ) chi tsing-shan 'indomitable spirit'

shaang-ts'uēn shaang 'to be born, to live in the world, living, life, to produce, survive, survival'; ts'uēn 'survival, to retain, to be in existence, to keep, to preserve, to store'; shaang-ts'uēn 'existence, survival, living'

tîk-yān enemy, foe; a.f.: tîk

kwang-chà to bomb, bombing; a.f.: chà

mûk-piu target

ch'uēn-t'ŭng tradition

kin yán kong ngaî kin 'strong, firm'; yán 'patient'; kong 'strong, firm, indomitable'; ngaî 'firm, resolute, intrepid, bold, fortitude, tenacious'; kin yán kong ngaî 'spirit of endurance and fortitude'

făn-taù to strive, to struggle'

t'ō ts'uēn t'ō 'to desire, to scheme, to plan, map, a picture'; ts'uēn 'survival, existence'; t'ō ts'uēn 'for existence'; făn-taù t'ō ts'uēn 'to strive for existence'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: "Chung-táng kaaù-yûk" ni kòh mîng-tsᵗz paau-kᵗoòt mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: "Chung-táng kaaù-yûk" ni kòh mîng-tsᵗz̄ paau-kᵗoòt pᵗó-tᵗung chung-hôk, sz-faân hôk-haaû, tᵗūng chik-îp hôk-haaû saam-chúng hôk-haaû. "Chung-hôk" paau-kᵗoòt chᵗoh-chung tᵗūng ko-chung. Kan-kuì kᵗuĭ-teî kè sìng-chat tᵗūng king-faì kè loî-uēn, chung-hôk tᵗūng chik-îp hôk-haaû yaŭ kung-laâp tᵗūng sz-laâp leŭng-chúng. Kung-laâp hôk-haaû yaŭ kwòk-laâp, shaáng-laâp, shĭ-laâp, tᵗūng uên-laâp seì-chúng. Shóh yaŭ sz-faân hôk-haaû to haî kung-laâp kè.

C: Chung-hôk keî toh nîn chaì à?

H: Chìng-foó kwᵗai-tîng chung-hôk tᵗūng sz-faân hôk-haaû lûk nîn chaì. Chung-hôk fan-hoi chᵗoh-chung saam nîn, ko-chung saam nîn. Yaŭ ti chung-hôk chî yaŭ chᵗoh-chung, ni chúng chung-hôk yîk hóh-ĭ chᵗìt-laâp. Taân-haî chung-hôk paau-kᵗoòt chᵗoh-chung ko-chung kè kaaù waì leĭ-seúng ti. Ko-chung hôk-haaû hóh-ĭ kaaù-shaû nūng-foh, kung-foh, sheung-foh.

C: Kan-kuì teî-fong fan-pᵗooì chᵗìt-laâp chung-hôk kè kaì-waâk haî tîm kà?

H: Kwòh-huì Chung-Kwòk mŏ uēn-peî kaì-waâk, kan-kuì teî-fong fan-pᵗooì chᵗìt-laâp chung-hôk. Kìt-kwóh yaŭ ti shaáng, yaū-kᵗeî-shî uēn-hoi kòk shaáng, yaŭ m̄-shiú hôk-haaû. Noî-

teî kòk shaáng liū-liū-hóh-shó, hó sui-iù hôk-haaû. Waî pó-kaù ni chúng ts'īng-yīng, ch'ìng-foó hâ lîng mooĭ shaáng fan-hoi chung-hŏk, sz-faân hôk-haaû t'ūng chik-îp hôk-haaû k'ui.

C: Chung-hôk k'ui haî tîm tîng kà?

H: Chung-hôk k'ui haî kan-kuì yān-haú, king-tsaì chŏng-fòng, mān-fā shuî-chún, kaau-t'ung kung-kuî ì tîng.

C: Chung-hôk kaaù-yûk yaŭ mi-yĕ koî-shîn à?

H: Chung-hôk haāng-chìng t'ūng fòh-ch'îng ĭ-king koî-shîn. Kaaù-ts'oî t'ūng fòh-poón noî-yūng paau-k'oòt kung-mān, Chung-Man, lîk-sź, teî-leĭ, king-kwòh shaan-koî, shik-hôp shât-tsoî ts'îng-yîng.

Capt Cheung: What does the term "secondary education" include?

Lt Colonel Hōh: It includes three kinds of schools--ordinary middle schools, normal schools and vocational schools. The term "middle school" includes both junior and senior grades. According to their nature and source of income, middle and vocational schools are of two kinds: public and private. The public schools may be national, provincial, municipal or county. Normal schools are all public.

C: How many years are there in the middle schools?

H: The Government stipulated a six-year course for middle schools and normal schools. The middle schools were divided into junior and senior grades, each of three years. Junior middle schools could be established independently, but combined junior-senior middle schools were declared preferable. Senior schools could offer courses in agriculture, industries, and commerce.

C: What is the plan for the regional distribution of institutions of secondary education?

H: In the past, there was no comprehensive plan for the regional distribution of institutions of secondary education. As a result, some provinces, especially those along the coast, were crowded with schools while interior provinces had only a few and were badly in need of them. To remedy the situation, the government promulgated regulations so that each province

was divided into middle, normal and vocational school districts.

C: How are the middle school districts created?

H: The middle school districts were created in accordance with population, financial condition, cultural level and communication facilities.

C: What improvements have been made in the field of secondary education?

H: Improvements were made in administration of the middle schools and in their curriculum. The contents of the instructional materials and the textbooks of the courses in citizenship, Chinese literature, history and geography were revised to fit actual conditions.

張上尉：「中等教育」呢個名詞包括也野呀？職中費立，有
何中校：包括學校，同初經公立，所有
學府：中學教育通三年制，中有可中
政：中學高以下，包括同有國立，
張：根據去過中學中可係分其地為分區
何：根過中中，學高商學根啲學要下職經濟狀況，文化
張：學中學中初校劃方尤內．省校
何：中中，中劃有少需府同
張：中學初係啲科，計地，校每學
何：中學立計果唔好政校？
張：學中設較農方國中各寥種，係係
何：學中立海寥呢學區區
張：中學中學立為科分有學省可情師點根
何：中學初祇．理，配完．數形範定據
張：中學中學立設沿省救中
何：中學中學立計劃有少需府同
張：中學初係啲科，計地，校每學
何：中學中學立計果唔好政校？
張：學

水準，交通工具而定．

張：中學教育有也改善呀？

何：中學行政同課程已經改善．教材同課本內容包括公民，中文，歷史，地理，經過刪改，適合實在情形．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

READING MATERIAL

「質」平省視不各重配地多分內後。

策，量數多遍政之甚普育生校育教學學教等與之故中校城。國之學大數。中「量」若寥去視海寥過重沿校不。而均之學

省文而時加各，形同增將少情府及多通政法，種人之教此區況此式救該狀除新補以濟。用為，經少採府區多，政校低之材來學高校教。年干之學善費近若準區改經為水該量育分化定盡教

，通民業方種，普公職三三。有業為校本……商分學課理與可業其地業，職。，工類，中史，種校高歷業之學，農育範中學重教師初化側等，為，多中學分文程於中可英課至通又之

普學文校。

即中中學面

方全處國度。一健壞該制府制，不於應之政育度或多適想於教制，點與理由之種處優，而樣備一壞其形備一完何其令情完是一任有，之一亦為，亦救國為度成家時補該是制漸國同相合度育已個，互適制教良，一點能度該等改何優如制。中力任其。該要之努有處使需國斷面之及之中不

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè chung-tâng kaaù-yûk fan waì pin saam-chúng à?

2. P'ó-t'ung chung-hôk paau-k'oòt pin leŭng-chúng à?

3. Ch'oh-chung keî nîn à? Ko-chung keî nîn à?

4. Kan-kuì hôk-haaû kè sìng-chat t'ūng king-faì kè loì-uēn, chung-hôk t'ūng chik-îp hôk-haaû hóh-ĭ fan waì pin leŭng-chúng à?

5. Kung-laâp hôk-haaû yaû hóh-ĭ fan shîng keî chúng à?

6. Chung-hôk kè fòh-ch'îng paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?

7. Chik-îp hôk-haaû kè fòh-ch'îng toh-shò chak-chûng mi-yĕ à?

8. Kwòh-huì Chung-Kwòk ti chung-hôk fan-p'ooì-tak m̄-p'îng-kwan. Tîm-yeûng* m̄-p'îng-kwan à?

9. Chîng-foó tîm-yeûng* pó-kaù ni chung ts'îng-yîng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

mîng-ts'z terminology, a noun; synonym: mîng, mēng*

sz-faân hôk-haaû normal school; sz-faân hôk-uēn* 'normal college'

ch'oh-chung junior high school

ko-chung senior high school

sìng-chat chat 'quality'; leûng 'quantity'; sìng-chat 'nature'

king-faì expenditure

loì-uēn source; a.f.: uēn

chaì system, to stop, to halt; a.f.: chaì-tô 'system'

kw'ai-tîng to stipulate, to require, stipulation, requirement

leĭ-seûng ideal

kaaù-shaû teaching, to teach, professor

fan-p'ooì to distribute, to disperse, to arrange, to organize, distribution

uēn-peî comprehensive, complete, perfect, fully prepared

noî-teî interior provinces, inland

liū-liū-hóh-shó shó 'to count, to enumerate'; liū-liū-hóh-shó 'sparing, sparse, very few, sparingly distributed'

pó-kaù kaù 'to rescue, to save, to remedy'; pó-kaù 'remedy, to save the situation'

hâ lîng lîng 'an order, to order, to cause, to let'; hâ lîng 'to give order, to issue order, to order, to promulgate regulations'

chông-fòng chông 'shape, form, appearance'; fòng 'condition, situation, circumstance'; pêng fòng 'condition of the illness'; shât-fòng 'actual situation, actual condition'; chông-fòng 'condition, situation'; king-tsaì chông-fòng 'economic condition, financial condition'

shuî-chún level, standard; mān-fà shuî-chún 'cultural level'

kaaù-ts'oî ts'oî 'materials, stuff, quality'; kaaù-ts'oî 'teaching materials, instructional materials'

fòh-poón textbooks

noî-yūng contents

kung-mān civics, citizenship

teî-leĭ geography

shaan-koî shaan 'to cancel, to expunge, to erase and alter, to efface, to geld'; shaan-koî 'to erase and alter, to revise'

shik-hôp to suit, to fit, to meet, to comply with

shât-tsoî actual, real; shât-tsoî ts'îng-yîng 'actual situation'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kwòk siú-hôk ne?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Siú-hôk kaaù-yûk chuè-chûng sò-ch'uî mān-maāng kè kung-tsòk. Ni chúng kung-tsòk haì chìng-foó ts'oí-naâp k'eūng-pik kaaù-yûk ngĕ nîn kaì-waâk shî hoi-shaú. Uê-suèn ngĕ nîn chi haû, seì shîng meî shaû kaaù-yûk kè ì-t'ūng shaû-kwòh yat nîn k'eūng-pik kaaù-yûk. Kan-chuê kaì-waâk shât-haāng yat-kòh seì nîn kaì-waâk, lîng ts'uēn kwòk paàt shîng saì-man-tsaî shaû-kwòh leŭng nîn k'eūng-pik kaaù-yûk. Kan-chuê yaû tsoì shât-haāng yat-kòh sei nîn kaì-waâk, hei-mông uēn-ts'uēn sò-ch'uî ts'uēn kwòk mān-maāng. Kan-kuì ni kòh kaì-waâk, Chung-Yeung Chìng-Foó, shaáng chìng-foó, shĭ chìng-foó, uên chìng-foó, hŏp-tsòk ch'aū-peî king-faì, uê-peî siú-hŏk hoi-siu.

C: Ni kòh kaì-waâk yaŭ mŏ shât-shi à?

H: Chìn-chaang paaù-faàt lîng-tò ngĕ nîn k'eūng-pik kaaù-yûk kaì-waâk, pat-nāng òn-chiù uēn tîng kaì-waâk shât-shi. Kan-kuì Kaaù-Yûk Pô kè t'úng-kaì, saam-fân chi î kè Chung-Kwòk yān-haú haî mān-maāng. K'eî-chung taaî-yeùk* î-maân-maân yān haî shâp-ngĕ suì ĭ sheûng, seì-shâp-ngĕ suì ĭ hâ.

C: Kaaù-shaû kè shî-haû, k'uĭ-teî yûng mi-yĕ uĕ-în à?

H: Chung-Kwòk kòk chúng hŏk-haaû kaaù-shaû shóh yûng kè uĕ-în, yaū-k'eî-shî haî Wā-Naām teî-fong, yîng-în yûng koi teî kè wâ* t'ūng fong-în. Sui-în king-kwòh keî ts'ż uĕ-în wân-tûng. Taân-haî laî uē kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* yat-taaì teî-

fong, kaaù-shaû Kwòk-Uĕ pat-kwòh yaŭ-uē kaaù-shaû ngoî-kwòk uĕ yat-yeûng. Yat-poon t'aaì-tô tuì Kwòk-Uĕ yaŭ-uē ngoî-kwòk wâ*. Kwóng-Tung yān kiù Kwòk-Uĕ tsô "ngoî-kong wâ*".

Capt Cheung: How about the primary education in China?

Lt Colonel Hōh: In primary education, emphasis has been laid on work in wiping out illiteracy. This was begun when a five-year plan for compulsory education was adopted by the Government. At the end of the five-year period, it was expected that more than 40 per cent of the entire number of illiterate children would have received compulsory education for one year. Following this, it was planned that a four-year program would be enforced during which 80 per cent of the children of the entire country would receive two years of compulsory education. Another four-year program was to be launched and it was expected that illiteracy would be completely wiped out. According to this plan, the Central Government, provincial, municipal and county governments were to cooperate in making appropriations for the expenditures of the primary schools.

C: Has this plan been carried out?

H: The outbreak of the War made it impossible to carry out the five-year program of compulsory education as originally planned.

Statistics of the Ministry of Education show that 2/3 of the Chinese population are illiterate. Among these illiterates, approximately 200,000,000 are within the age bracket of 15 and 45.

C: What language do they use for instruction?

H: The languages used for instruction in various schools, particularly in South China, are languages and dialects spoken in those regions and areas. Despite several language movements in regions such as the Cantonese-speaking areas, the teaching of Mandarin is regarded as the teaching of a foreign language. The general attitude toward Mandarin is identical to that toward any foreign tongue. The Cantonese people call Mandarin, "The language north of the (Yangtze) river".

張上尉：中國小學呢？

何中校：小學教育作．五年強迫教育後，一年四過一國文，
小教育注喺開教跟全育．希個
呢年四迫計年四盲省備計爆能根中萬下
種計成教劃強年．迫計根
工劃未育，令教劃據
教之一個受行全政，作籌
重政首育住國．希個
掃府．既計八跟望計
除採預兒劃成住完劃
文納算童實細又全，除央
盲強五受行仗再掃中
既迫年過一仔實除央
府，縣開學？
政備施年計既文歲
市預實五定部係五
府費有令照教人係．
政經劃發按據國人
戰爭個
呢
教授國
中

張：既二萬以
何：約二歲
張：不
何：
張：呀？
何：既話
地運動．
言該地
次語言
幾過
經
雖然
校南．
方
候學華言
時種係方
既各是同
語言，尤其
既然用該地
野語言呀？
也用仍
用所
地授方，
佢教地

但係例如講廣東話一帶地方，教授國語不過有如教授外國語一樣。一般態度對國語有如外國話。廣東人叫國語做「外江話」。

中國教育以初等教育為最主要，中等教育次之，高等教育又次之。初等教育中，以初等教育中，以小學教育而在初等教育中，以小學教育為最基本。而在初等教育中，以小學教育為最基本。

小學教育年限，高小六年，初小四年，即三學程，即時中課書，高小兩階段，需於其讀書，小管說話，小中受育理……

初等教育三為之定希發，教口一育規，爆國人之文，學戰，中國作除育入抗施，全工掃教須因實佔之一迫即惜劃約要擬強時，重草施歲文定多，最曾實年除原太部府民干掃照盲育政國若全按文教前對到完能為故戰，達後不題，劃於年作問上盲計民三工之以文年國十部大二除三個於全最份掃十每望，育三為之定希發教口一育規，爆國人之文，學戰，中國作除育入抗施，全工掃教須因實佔之一迫即惜劃

提國為次用東語數採廣外曾校以如府學其有政各尤語課，國中國授言全其對語令，度粵之下功態用用，成之仍所動能人地課運不般各授言但一東於語，，廣至一課著果統授顯結倡語最故

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè ch'oh-táng, chung-táng, ko-táng kaaù-yûk, pin chúng tsuî kei-poón à?

2. Siú-hôk kaaù-yûk iù keî toh nîn à?

3. Siú-hôk kè fòh-ch'îng paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?

4. Chung-Kwòk kaaù-yûk tsuî taaî kè mân-t'aî haî mi-yĕ à?

5. Chung-Kwòk kè mān-maāng toh-tò tîm à?

6. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô k'eūng-pik kaaù-yûk à?

7. Haû-loî Chung-Kwòk kè sò-ch'uî mān-maāng kè kaî-waâk mŏ shîng-kung. Tîm-kaaî à?

8. Haî Kwóng-Tung Shaáng, sin-shaang kaaù shue kè shî-haû, yûng mi-yĕ uĕ-în à?

9. Tîm-kaaî haî Kwóng-Tung m̄-hóh-ĭ yûng Kwòk-Uĕ kaaù-shue à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

siú-hôk primary schools

sò-ch'uî sò 'to sweep, to clean away, to exterminate, a broom'; ch'uî 'to remove, to take away'; sò-ch'uî 'to wipe out'

mān-maāng maāng 'blind, loss of sight'; mān-maāng 'illiteracy, illiterate'

ts'oî-naâp naâp 'to receive and accept, to enter, to insert, to adopt'; ts'oî-naâp 'to accept (as proposals), to adopt (as opinion)'

k'eūng-pik pik 'to force, to compel, to press'; k'eūng-pik 'to force, to compel, to press, compulsory'; k'eūng-pik kaaù-yûk 'compulsory education'

hoi-shaú to begin, to start, to commence; a.f.: hoi-ch'î, heî-shaú, ch'î

uê-suèn to expect, a budget

î-t'ūng t'ūng 'children, a child, a kid'; î-t'ūng 'children, juveniles, teenagers'

ch'aū-peî to plan, to prepare for, to make preparation; a.f.: ch'aū; ch'aū-peî king-faì 'to raise fund, fund-raising, to make appropriation'

hoi-siu to spend (money), expenditure

shât-shi to carry out (plan), to execute (plan), to apply

òn-chiù òn 'to place the hand on, to press down, introductory word to an editorial note, according to, as'; chiù 'according to, to follow'; òn-chiù 'according to, to comply with'

uēn-tîng kaì-waâk original plan, originally planned

t'úng-kaì statistics; t'úng-kaì shò-tsẑ 'statistical figures'

ǐ sheûng above

ǐ hâ below, beneath; ǐ ngoî 'besides'; ǐ noî 'within'; ǐ ts'în 'before'; ǐ haû 'afterwards'; ǐ loî 'all along, till the present'

yîng-în as before, still, yet again, as usual; a.f.: yîng

laî uē laî 'example, regulations, rules, laws'; laî uē 'for example, for instance'

yat-taaì a region, a stretch of country, a neighborhood

yat-poon general, average, most, majority

t'aaì-tô t'aaì 'manner, attitude'; t'aaì-tô 'attitude towards, behavior, demeanour'

ngoî-kong wâ* (colloq) the language north of the (Yangtse) River

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk shĕ-ooî* kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Shĕ-ooî* kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk kè mûk-tik yîk tsoî sò-ch'uî mān-maāng. Lîng mān-chùng shik tûk, shik sé, kaaù k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* sau-yeŭng tsẑ-keî, kaaù k'uĭ-teî p'ó-t'ung shĕ-ooî* shaang-oôt sheūng-shik, kaaù k'uĭ-teî kwòk noî t'ūng kwòk-tsaì taaî sẑ. Koò-ts'ź ch'ìt-laâp hó toh shîng-yān hôk-haaû, faàt yam hôk-haaû, sheung-foh hŏk-haaû, kung-foh hŏk-haaû, maāng lūng á hôk-haaû, koo-î uên*, pòk-mât uên*, ngaî-shût koón, yam-ngôk heì-k'êk uên*, t'ō-shue koón, laî shât-în ni chúng mān-chùng kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk.

P: K'uĭ-teî tîm tsô faàt à?

H: Heì-k'êk, yam-ngôk, kwóng-pòh, tîn-yîng shîng waî shĕ-ooî* kaaù-yûk yaŭ-haaû kè kung-kuî. Kaaù-Yûk Pô tsó-chik laū-tûng shik heì-k'êk paan, tò shuè piú-în. Ni ti heì-k'êk paan ch'uî-chóh heì-k'êk piú-în chi ngoî, yûng ch'eùng koh, waâk wâ*, t'ūng k'eî-t'a kòk chung ngaî-shût lîng yat-poon mān-chùng tuì shĕ-ooî* kaaù-yûk faàt-shaang hìng-ts'uì.

P: K'uĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ seúng-tò yûng mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh t'ūng tîn-yîng à?

H: Yan-waî mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh t'ūng tîn-yîng tuì-ue shĕ-ooî* kaaù-yûk yaŭ taaî kè chûng-iù sìng, shóh-ĭ Kaaù-Yûk Pô t'ui-haāng ni leŭng chúng paân-faàt. T'ūng kwóng-pòh tîn-

t'oi hìp-tîng ka-ch'aàp kaaù-yûk tsìt-mûk. Yaû t'ūng yîng-îp kung-sz hôp-tsòk p'aàk kaaù-yûk yîng-p'în*. T'ūng-shî t'ai-ch'eung ts'uēn-kwòk ǐ-ǐm mûk-shaû kaaù-yûk.

P: Shîng-tsik tîm à?

H: Chung-Kwòk sui-în tsik-kîk t'ui-haāng mān-chùng kaaù-yûk, taân-haî yan-waî teî-fong t'aaì taaî, yān-haú t'aaì toh, kaan-t'ung kw'àn-naān, noî-luên ngoî-mŏ, k'âp kòk chúng yan-sò, shîng-tsik sheûng meî hóh-koon.

Major White: What is the objective of social education in China?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: The work of social education aims at wiping out illiteracy. It teaches the people to read and to write, how to cultivate themselves, a general knowledge of social life, and information on national and international affairs. Therefore many adult schools, phonetic schools, commercial schools, industrial schools, schools for the blind, deaf and dumb, schools for orphans, museums, art galleries, schools of music and dramatic arts and libraries are established in order to realize the work of people's education.

W: How do they go about this work?

H: Drama, music, radio and motion pictures have become effective vehicles and means of social education. The Ministry of Education organized circuit dramatic troupes which have since performed in various places. Besides dramatic performances, these troupes promote interest in social education among the masses through singing, drawing and other arts.

W: Have they thought of using radio broadcasting and motion pictures?

H: Realizing the importance of radio broadcasting and motion pictures as a means of social education, the Ministry of Education popularizes these two mediums. Arrangements are

made with the broadcasting stations to insert in their scheduled programs on education and to work in close co-operation with the motion picture concerns to produce educational pictures. In the meantime, the ministry promotes audio-visual education throughout the country.

W: What is the result?

H: Mass education, though intensively carried out, has not been very fruitful because of the vast area, hugh population, lack of communication, interruptions of wars and many other factors.

白少校：中國社會教育工作嘅目的係乜野呀？

何中校：社會教育工作嘅目的係除文盲·教令民眾自己，設立社會大發，掃盲·修養識識，教育工作嘅目的，在除文盲，普通學校，社會大發，掃盲·樣活·學識此，教育工作嘅目的，亦寫地內人工，普通學校學科博圖館，點生事音育藝黎學，學，呢呀？

白：佢地有戲除畫社會大發，

何：戲劇，音效劇咗同會，播具到表各發到廣重辦節影呀？

白：佢地有戲式班畫對社會大發，

何：戲劇，樂嘅班戲其教有線大兩教教播，處演種生用播要法目片·電影所廣同時影教推定合耳電會部協司國同社育台公全播於教電業倡廣對以播影提

白：佢地為無有呢插拍育行加作染

何：因為

目授教育.

白：成績點呀？

何：中國雖然積極推行民衆教育，但係因為地方太大，人口太多，交通困難，內亂外侮，及各種因素，成績尚未可觀.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

READING MATERIAL

教甚會中等不社，高史，等等其際在中於實不由，等初育注要除教甚重會不之下育社仍育之教一之教育之有對民教國尚民國等中，國對高外，育，育長教等

異．夠文可行，接高教，歷上初，際在．可成，意性，意．盲，施強最可國育．盲，普最法讀，其辦已．效．

差不童，施效直增人有．可成遍自事有影養大之電眾修際行，民眾國施播令民及其廣素故甚因，不之題仍盲問績……成濟其做經，多由治尚政難種困

各之以育加教再會．社．多行著甚推顯

只年為強教想幫教生是是會除生是

如以一行迫理以民

中靠歲成迫育之助育難救等準補初水戲

國初而人教甚

文等言文育教此活教

目，會音外識社，育之常育劇

太育文．但育教，盲．辦教．

多以盲掃要此為掃社法育故

又仍為較育最育接做，教間叫，又會，

歲，一盲文，人下

年盲，文其文種童成之社盲育

且除兩兒除形用文教

，掃有除掃情採除會

各是兒易，施效直增人有．可成

差不童，施

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè kaaù-yûk, ch'uî-chóh ch'oh-tâng, chung-tâng, ko-táng kaaù-yûk chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ yat-chúng mi-yĕ kaaù-yûk à?

2. Chung-Kwòk kè mān-maāng yaŭ pin leŭng-chúng à?

3. Shĕ-ooî* kaaù-yûk kè mûk-tik haî tîm à?

4. Chìng-Foó ch'ìt-laâp hó toh mi-yĕ hôk-haaû laî shât-în ni chúng mān-chùng kaaù-yûk kè kung-tsòk à?

5. Ch'uî-chóh ni ti hôk-haaû chi ngoî, chûng ch'ìt-laâp ti mi-yĕ à?

6. Koo-î uên* haî yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ kà?

7. Shi-haāng shĕ-ooî* kaaù-yûk peí-kaaù yaŭ-haaû kè kung-kuî haî mi-yĕ à?

8. Neĭ ĭ-waî tîm-yeûng* chì hóh-ĭ lîng mān-chùng tuì ni ti yĕ faàt-shaang hìng-ts'uì à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

shĕ-ooî* society, community; shĕ-ooî* kaaù-yûk 'social education'

mān-chùng chùng 'a crowd, a mob, many'; mān-chùng 'the people'; mān-chùng kaaù-yûk 'mass education'

sau-yeŭng to cultivate virtue of moral excellence of the heart, to cultivate oneself.

shaang-oôt living, livelihood

shîng-yān adult

faàt yam yam 'tone, sound, music'; faàt yam 'to pronounce, pronunciation'; faàt yam hôk 'phonetics'

lūng deaf

á dumb

koo-î uên* koo-î 'orphan', synonym: koo; koo-î uên* 'orphanage, school for orphanage'

pòk-mât uên* museum

ngaî-shût koón ngaî-shût 'arts'; koón 'a public office, a hall, a tavern, a private dwelling'; ngaî-shût koón 'art gallery'; pòk-mât koón 'museum'

t'ō-shue koón t'ō-shue 'library books'; t'ō-shue koón 'library'; t'ō-shue-koón koón-leĭ-uēn 'librarian'

faàt method, ways and means, laws, regulations

tîn-yîng movie, cinema, motion picture

laū-tûng tûng 'to move, to take action, mobile, active'; laū-tûng 'mobile, circulating'; laū-tûng shik 'mobile style'

paan a class, a group, a troupe; heì-k'êk paan 'dramatic troupe'; laū-tûng shik kè heì-k'êk paan 'circuit dramatic troupe'

tò-shuè everywhere, anywhere, every place, any place

piú-în to demonstrate, to exhibit, to perform, performance

ch'eùng koh ch'eùng 'to sing, singing'; koh 'songs'; ch'eùng koh 'to sing, to sing song, singing'

waâk wa* waâk 'to draw, to paint, to make painting'; wâ* 'a drawing, a painting, a movie'; waâk wâ* 'to paint

pictures, to draw'

hìng-ts'uì interest; ngŏh tuì k'uĭ yaŭ hìng-ts'uì 'I am interested in her'; ni poón shue hó yaŭ hìng-ts'uì 'this book is very interesting'; ngŏh tuì k'uĭ faàt-shaang hìng-ts'uì 'I became interested in her'

t'ui-haāng to carry into operation what has already been decided

hìp-tîng to negotiate, to make negotiation, to sign a pact, to make arrangement with, to make agreement

ka-ch'aàp ch'aàp 'to insert into'; ka-ch'aàp 'to insert, to fill in'; ka-ch'aàp tsìt-mûk 'to insert programs'

yîng-îp kung-sz yîng abbr. of tîn-yîng 'motion picture'; yîng-îp kung-sz 'motion picture company, movie studio'

p'aàk tîn-yîng p'aàk 'to make (as movie), to strike, to pat, to clap'; p'aàk tîn-yîng 'to make movie, to produce movie'

yîng-p'ìn* movie, motion picture; abbr: p'ìn*; AN: pô, ch'ut

ĭ-ĭm mûk-shaû ĭ 'ear, ears'; ĭm 'to receive, to dye'; mûk 'eye, eyes'; shaû 'to receive, to teach'; ĭ-ĭm mûk-shaû 'audio-visual'

kw'àn-naān difficulty, hardship, hazard, difficult, hard, hazardous

yan-sò yan 'reason, cause, factor, because of, because, due to, owing to'; yan-sò 'factors'

sheûng still, and besides, yet, in addition to; sheûng meî 'not yet', a.f.: chûng meî

koon to see, to view, to behold; hóh-koon 'worth seeing, fruitful, considerable'; sheûng meî hóh-koon 'has not yet been fruitful'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Yeung În-Kaù Uên* haî mi-yĕ à?

Hôh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk tsuì ko kè hôk-shût în-kaù kei-kwaan haî kwòk-laâp Chung-Yeung În-Kaù Uên*. Chung-Yeung În-Kaù Uên* fan-hoi shâp-kòh pô-moon, paau-kˢoòt mât-leĭ hôk, fà-hôk, kung hôk, teî-chat hôk, tˢin-mān hôk, heì-tseûng hôk, tûng-mât hôk, chîk-mât hôk, sam-leĭ hôk, lîk-sź hôk, uĕ-în hôk, shĕ-ooî* hôk. Tûng-mât hôk tˢūng chîk-mât hôk haî yat-kòh pô-moon. Lîk-sź hôk tˢūng uĕ-în hôk haî yat-kòh pô-moon, Chung-Yeung În-Kaù Uên* sui-în king-faì, yān-tsˢoî, chˢìt-peî yaŭ-haân, taân-haî i-în tsik-kîk tsùn-haāng în-kaù kung-tsòk.

P: Yat-kaú-lîng-lîng nîn Chung-Kwòk yan-waî Kˢuēn-Feî Chi Luên kè kwaan-haî, Chung-Kwòk iù pˢooî-sheūng lît-kˢeūng kè Kaang-Tsź Pˢooî Foón kè tsˢîn*, lît-kˢeūng toh-shò peî-faan Chung-Kwòk. Ni ti tsˢîn* yûng laî faàt-yeūng Chung-Kwòk tˢūng ni ti kwòk-ka kè kaaù-yûk mān-fà sẑ-îp. Tsẑ-tsˢūng Chung-Kwòk tˢîng-chî pˢooî foón chi haû tsaû tîm à?

H: Ni chúng kung-tsòk toh-shò haî kˢaaù tsâng-uĕ kei-kam tˢūng tseúng-hôk-kam. Sui-în king-tsaì yaŭ-haân, taân-haî kung-tsòk shóh paau-kˢoòt kè faân-waî hó kwóng-foòt. Uē kaau-oôn kaaù-shaû, kaau-oôn hôk-shaang, pˢaaì kaaù-shaû kˢâp hôk-shaang chˢut yeūng laū hôk táng kung-tsòk.

Major White: What is Academia Sinica?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The highest academic research organization in China is the national Academia Sinica. It maintains ten institutes to include physics, chemistry, engineering, geology, astronomy, meteorology, zoology, botany, psychology, history, philology and social sciences. Zoology and botany are combined into one, and history and philology are combined into another. Despite the fact that Academia Sinica has limited funds, personnel and equipment, it carries on an extensive program.

W: The payments of the Boxer Indemnity to the foreign powers, caused by the Boxer Rebellion Incident in 1900, were returned to China to be used to promote the education and culture between China and these countries. What happened since the suspension of these payments?

H: This work depends mainly on the endowment income and scholarship. Despite financial limitations, the work covers a wide range of activities which include programs such as exchange of professors and students and awards of research professorships to study abroad.

白少校：中央研究院係也野呀？

何中校：中中央研究院嘅學術中物天學社部門，個部才，設備工匪庚．家止基係交學生金工換生同作教出洋留，包括交學金．

白：一九００中列發事點？

何：種呢

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

READING MATERIAL

立高于十學史語最經族，
國最若該文歷史亦受民開
．國及．天，歷作來，展
三全門究，學以著年言量
有為部研學理，其所語盡
關院個之質心中，該，能
機該十術地，所善但史未
之．有學，學究究．歷尚
轄一設學學物研最良於，
直之內科工植各備優對作，
府中，種，，設最．工
統其關各學學學員亦制究
總是機責化物會人績限研
國院究員理動社之成之之
中究研，物，所作境面
由研術所為學學究工環方
央學究門象言研，及各
中之研部氣語言多費等

術為項後之學駱
學欵該惜作獎王
育賠時．工或大
教項當面究，油．
化該．方研全煤金
文．源業術基國基
國欵來事學與美之
中賠要育種贈者，氏
與子主教此之名特
來，庚之化故面著福
年為費文．方最王
者經於止各中大
十關究用停靠其車
數有研定劃能．汽
去最術指計只助與
過究學被欵，補金
研國欵賠行之基
之中賠來進金氏

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk tsuì ko kè hôk-shût în-kaù kei-kwaan haî mi-yĕ à?

2. Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên* yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan koón-hât kà?

3. Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên* fan-hoi pin keî kòh pô-moōn à?

4. Kwòh-huì keî shâp nîn, Chung-Kwòk hôk-shût în-kaù kè king-faì chué-iù k'aaù mi-yĕ à?

5. Haû-loî Kaang-Tsź P'ooî-Foón t'îng-chî. Ni chúng în-kaaù kung-tsòk kè king-faì toh-shò k'aaù mi-yĕ à?

6. Yaŭ ti tseúng-hôk-kam haî yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ kà?

7. K'eî-chung tsuì ch'ut-mēng* kè tseúng-hôk-kam haî mi-yĕ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên* Academia Sinica; Kwòk-Laâp Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên* 'National Academia Sinica'

hôk-shût academic, scholastic, scholarship, learning, art; hôk-shût în-kaù 'academic research'

kung hôk engineering; abbr: kung

teî-chat hôk geology; abbr.: teî-chat

t'in-mān hôk astronomy; abbr.: t'in-mān

tûng-mât hôk tûng-mât 'animal, living creature'; tûng-mât hôk 'zoology'; abbr.: tûng-mât

chîk-mât hôk chîk-mât 'plant'; chîk-mât hôk 'botany'; abbr.: chîk-mât

sam-leĭ hôk sam-leĭ 'psychology'; sam-leĭ hôk 'psychological science'; abbr.: sam-leĭ

yaŭ-haân limited; mō-haân 'unlimited'

tsùn-haāng to carry out, to work on, to continue, to progress, to advance, to keep progressing; tsùn-haāng chung 'in advancing, in progressing'

K'uēn-Feî Chi Luên k'uēn 'fist, to punch'; feî 'bandits, rebels'; K'uēn-Feî Chi Luên 'Boxer Rebellion'

kwaan-haî relationship, causes, reasons, consequences, involvement; yaŭ-kwaan-haî 'related, concerned, connected with', a.f.: yaŭ-kwaan; uĕ...yaŭ-kwaan 'is related to..., having something to do with...'

p'ooî-sheūng to compensate, to indemnify, to repay; synonym: p'ooî, sheūng

Kaang-Tsź P'ooî Foón Kaang-Tsź 'the year of the cyclical characters, ie. year of 1900'; p'ooî foón 'payments of indemnity'; Kaang-Tsź P'ooî Foón 'The Payments of Boxer Indemnity'

faàt-yeūng to further, to glorify, to extend the glory, to brighten, to promote

kwòk-ka a nation, a country; a.f.: kwòk

t'îng-chî to discontinue, to halt, to suspend, to stop, to check; synonym: t'îng, chî (lit)

tsâng-uĕ tsâng 'to give a present, to bestow, to donate'; uĕ 'to give a present, and, with'; tsâng-uĕ 'to give as a present, a present or gift, endowment'

kei-kam endowment fund, reserve fund, foundation fund; Lòk-Shî Kei-Kam 'Rockefeller Foundation'; Fuk-Tâk Kei-Kam 'Ford Foundation'

tseúng-hôk-kam tseúng 'to encourage, to commend, to exhort, a prize or reward'; tseúng hôk 'to encourage to do literary work, to encourage people to go to school'; kam 'money, funds, cash, gold'; tseúng-hôk-kam 'scholarship, fellowship'

kwóng-foòt kwóng 'wide, broad, extensive, Kwangtung, Kwangsi'; foòt 'broad, wide, vast'; kwóng-foòt 'broad, wide, vast, extensive, many-sided'; faân-waî hó kwóng or faân-waî hó kwóng-foòt 'the scope is very broad'

kaau-oôn to exchange, mutual exchange

ch'ut yeūng yeūng 'ocean, foreign, foreign country'; ch'ut yeūng 'to go abroad, to go to foreign country'

laū hôk to go abroad to further study; ch'ut yeūng laū hôk 'to go abroad to further study'

tǎng et cetera, class, rank, grade, equal to, to wait for, to let

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk kè sz-faàt chaì-tô haî tîm kà?

Hõh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk kè sz-faàt chaì-tô yaũ saam kʻap faàt-uên* tʻūng huí-hóh shám-pʻoòn saam tsʻè. Ni saam kʻap faàt-uên* haî teî-fong faàt-uên*, ko-táng faàt-uên*, Tsuì Ko Faàt-Uên*. Chʻuí-chóh yîng-sẑ òn-kîn* tʻūng shìn-tûng noî-luên, yăn-heí ngoî-waân ì ngaí-hoî kwòk-ka on-tsʻuēn kè òn-kîn*, iù haí ko-táng faàt-uên* taî-yat tsʻè chap-haang shám-pʻoòn chi ngoî, kʻeí-tʻa shóh yaũ òn-kîn* yat-lût haí teî-fong faàt-uên* taî-yat tsʻè shám-pʻoòn, haí ko-táng faàt-uên* waâk fan uên* taî-ì tsʻè shám-pʻoòn. Uē-kwóh òn tsʻîng m̄-haî chûng-taaî kè, chak chí chún shám-pʻoòn leũng tsʻè.

P: Mooĭ kòh uên tʻūng shĭ to yaũ yat-kòh faàt-uên* mà?

H: Kan-kuì Chung-Kwòk faàt-uên* tsó-chik faàt, mooĭ kòh uên tʻūng mooĭ kòh shĭ to ying-koi yaũ yat-kòh faàt-uên*. Uē-kwóh ti uên haî saì kè, kʻuĭ-teî hóh-ĭ hôp-maaî yûng yat-kòh faàt-uên*. Uē-kwóh yat-kòh uên haî tâk-pît taaî kè, kʻuĭ hóh-ĭ yaũ yat-kòh faàt-uên* tʻūng keí kòh fan uên*. Taân-haî ni chúng paân-faàt shî-sheūng uê-tó kʻuèt-fât yān-tsʻoí tʻūng tsʻoí-chìng kwʻàn-naān.

P: Tîk-yān tsʻam-leûk tʻūng noî-chìn kè shî-haû tîm à?

H: Kóh chân shî hó toh ni ti faàt-tʻîng m̄-hóh-ĭ haî kʻuĭ-teî poón-loí kè teî-fong paân-leĭ òn-kîn*, shóh-ĭ lîng-tò uēn-kò tʻūng peî-kò tʻūng tá koon-sz kè yān chúng-chúng m̄-fong-

pîn. Waî pó-kaù ni chúng ts'îng-yîng heî-kìn, shóh-ĭ ch'ìt-laâp laū-tûng shik faàt-t'îng laî paân-leĭ taî-î ts'ż shám-p'oòn òn-kîn*. Taî-yat ts'ż shám-p'oòn i-în yaū teî-fong faàt-uên* paân-leĭ.

Major White: What is the Chinese judicial system?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: The Chinese judicial system has three grades of courts and allows three trials. The three grades of courts are the district court, the high court, and the Supreme Court. Except criminal cases and cases involving the engineering of domestic disturbance, provocation of external dangers detrimental to the national security, the first trials of which should be held by the high court, the first trials of all other cases are held by the district court, and their second trials by the high court or its branches. In minor cases only two trials are permitted.

W: Does each hsien and municipality have a court?

H: According to the Organic Law of Chinese Courts, there should be a court in each hsien and municipality. Several small hsien may share one court, while an unusually large hsien may have one court and a number of branch courts. There have been, however, both personnel and financial difficulties.

W: What happened during the enemy aggression and civil wars?

H: During those times many courts could not function at their original seats, thus causing great inconvenience to litigants, both prosecutors and defendants. As a remedy, the circuit court system was instituted to handle second trials, the first trials being left to district courts.

白少校：中國嘅司法制度係點樣？

何中校：中國嘅司法制度有三級法院同許可法院，三級法院係地方法院，高法院，最高法院。除咗特別情形而等他次次則祇准審判兩次。

白：每個縣同每個市都有一個法院嗎？

何：根據中國法院組織法，每個縣同每個縣市係一個法院。如果嘅縣市都應該有一個法院，但地可以合埋用一個法院，但係細嘅，但地一個縣係特別大嘅，但可以有一個法院同幾個分院。如果一個法院常遇倒缺乏人才同財政困難，可以有一種辦法係暫時侵佔嗰個縣嘅法官嚟幫助佢哋辦理案件。所以今日原告同被告兩方面嘅人種種唔同，本來係敵對嘅陣營，但係而家兩方面嘅人都可以坐埋一齊，好似一家人咁樣，好和平咁樣，好友善咁樣，咁樣嘅辦法，我哋稱之為調解。

以所見，起形情種呢種補救為，動流立設*件案判*院法*理辦庭法式動流立設*件案判*院法*理辦第二次審由地方
審判依然由地方法庭辦理第二次審判，為了補救呢種情形起見，所以設立流動式*法庭*辦理*案件*。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

READING MATERIAL

中國之政治制度為五權分立，或五權憲法．該五權為行政，立法，司法，考試，監察．負責執行法律者為司法，其最高機關為司法院．

司法院之最高執法機關為最高法院．最高法院之下有高等法院及地方法院．

根據中國法院之組織法，每縣每市應設有一法院，以辦理該地之案件．法院之小法院數一或數院，時有多少合併或分設，以用若干大縣小縣而定，可參考如下面之圖．

三級三審制度，遇重大情節如外交，內亂等案件，得用三審制．第一審以地方法院為初次法庭，第二審以高等法院為第二次法庭，第三審以最高法院為最後法庭．審判時，一案但起訴一次，引用法律如有錯誤，得上訴於高等法院

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk yaŭ ngˇ-kòh uên*, haāng-chìng, laâp-faàt, sz-faàt, haaú-shì, kaam-ch'aàt. Pin-kòh uên* foô-chaàk chap-haāng faàt-lût kà?

2. Sz-faàt uên* kè tsuì ko chap faàt kei-kwaan haî mi-yĕ à?

3. Chung-Kwòk kè faàt-uên* yaŭ saam-chúng, pin saam-chúng à?

4. Chung-Kwòk kè sz-faàt shám-p'oòn chaì-tô haî tîm kà?

5. Haî p'ó-t'ung ts'îng-yîng chi hâ, chî chún shám keî toh ts'ž à?

6. Uē-kwóh òn ts'îng chûng-taaî kè shî-haû tsaû tîm à?

7. Haî pîn chúng ts'îng-yîng chi hâ, yaŭ ko-tâng faàt-uên* chap-haāng taî-yat shám à?

8. Uē-kwóh yaŭ kûng-ch'aán tóng shîn-tûng kung-yan m-tsô kung, ni kîn òn-kîn* ying-koi tîm-yeûng* paân à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

sz-faàt chaì-tô sz-faàt 'judicial'; chaì-tô 'system'; sz-faàt chaì-tô 'judicial system'

k'ap a grade, a degree, a step, a class, ranks

shám-p'oðn shám 'to try, to judge, trial'; p'oðn 'to sentence, to judge, sentence (law)'; shám-p'oðn 'to try, to judge, trial'

teî-fong faàt-uên* district court

ko-táng faàt-uên* high court

Tsuì-Ko Faàt-Uên* Supreme Court

yîng-sẑ yîng 'punishment, torture, to punish'; yîng-sẑ 'a criminal case'

ðn-kîn* a law case; a.f.: ðn; AN: kîn; yîng-sẑ ðn-kîn* 'a criminal case'

shìn-tûng to instigate, to incite, to conspire

yăn-heî to induce, to make possible, leading to

ngoî-waân waân 'calamity, evil, trouble, to suffer'; ngoî-waân 'foreign invasion'

ngaì-hoî ngaì 'danger, peril, dangerous, perilous, critical'; hoî 'to injure, to harm, to kill, to murder, harmful'; ngaì-hoî 'to endanger, to jeopardize, to sabotage'

on-ts'uēn safety, security, safe; synonym: on, p'îng-on

chap-haāng to carry out, to execute, to conduct, to take place, to hold

yat-lût uniformly, totally, no exception, all

fan uên* fan 'branch'; fan kung-sz 'branch company'; fan uên* 'branch court, branch hospital'

ðn ts'îng ts'îng 'condition, circumstances, situation'; ðn ts'îng 'case condition, nature of the case'

chûng-taaî important, heavy, severe, great, weighty (in the sense of importance)

tsak a particle indicating consequence or result-wherefore, then, and so, in that case, consequently, immediately, in accordance with, a rule, a law, a pattern, a standard, a list

tsó-chik faàt faàt 'law, regulation, method'; tsó-chik faàt 'law of organization'

hôp-maaî to combine

shî-sheūng often, frequently, all the time; a.f.: sheūng (lit), shî-shî

uê to meet, to encounter, to happen, to occur

ts'am-leûk to invade, to encroach upon, to unsurp, aggression; a.f.: ts'am

faàt-t'îng a court

uēn-kò the plaintiff, the prosecutor

peî-kò the defendant

tá koon-sz koon-sz 'a lawsuit'; tá koon-sz 'to go to law, to litigate, litigation'; tá koon-sz kè yān 'litigant'

chúng-chúng various, various kinds, all kinds

waî...heî-kìn in order to..., for the sake of..., for...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Seî-yîng kè pʻoòn-kʻuèt iù yaū pin-kòh shám-hât chì hóh-ǐ chap-haāng à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Kan-kuì yîng-sẑ faàt, seî-yîng kè pʻoòn-kʻuèt yat-tîng iù yaū Sz-Faàt Haāng-Chìng Pô shám-hât chì hóh-ǐ chap-haāng. Pit-iù shì, Sz-Faàt Haāng-Chìng Pô mîng-lîng kîm-chʻaàt pô sheûng-sò, waâk mîng-lîng kîm-chʻaàt pô sz-tsẑ tʻiū-chʻa òn-kîn*. Chîk chì-tò Sz-Faàt Haāng-Chìng Pô tik-kʻòk yîng-tîng pʻoòn-kʻuèt haî hŏp là, în-haû chì hâ lîng chap-haāng seî-yîng. Chap-haāng seî-yîng kè yât-kʻeî ying-koi iù haî shau-tò mîng-lîng chi haû saam yât chap-haāng.

P: Chung-shan kaam-kàm òn-kîn*, chʻiu-kwòh nǧ nîn kè chʻeūng-kʻeî kaam-kàm òn-kîn*, oôn-yîng òn-kîn*, tʻūng yaŭ-kwaan ngoî-kwòk kʻiū-mān kè òn-kîn* ne?

H: Yîk-to iù king-kwòh Sz-Faàt Haāng-Chìng Pô shám-hât chì hóh-ǐ chap-haāng pʻoòn-kʻuèt.

P: Yaŭ-kwaan tsʻoî-chʻaán kʻuēn kè òn-kîn*, yān-sẑ òn-kîn*, kìt-fan tʻūng waî-chʻaán òn-kîn*, yaŭ-kwaan kung-kûng tsó-chik òn-kîn*, yaŭ-kwaan ngoî-kwòk tsîk-mān òn-kîn* ne?

H: Kan-kuì Mān-Sẑ Faàt, yîk-to yat-tîng iù king-kwòh Sz-Faàt Haāng-Chìng Pô shám-hât chì hóh-ǐ chap-haāng pʻoòn-kʻuèt.

P: Tsuì Ko Faàt-Uên* haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Tsuì Ko Faàt-Uên* haî tsʻuēn kwòk tsuì ko kè tsʻoî-pʻoòn shóh. Tsuì Ko Faàt-Uên* yaŭ keî kòh mān-sẑ shám-pʻoòn

t'eng, keî kòh yîng-sî shám-p'oòn t'eng. Mooî kòh shám-p'oòn t'eng yaŭ nĝ-kòh faàt-koon, k'eî-chung yat-kòh haî shaú-tsîk faàt-koon. Meî hâ p'oòn-k'uèt chi ts'în, nĝ-kòh faàt-koon yat-tîng iù yat-ts'aî kîm-t'ó.

P: Haāng-chìng faàt-uên* ne?

H: Haāng-chìng faàt-uên* yik-to haî yat-yeûng. Mooî kòh shám-p'oòn t'eng yaŭ nĝ-kòh faàt-koon, yat-kòh haî shaú-tsîk faàt-koon. Hoi shám t'ūng p'oòn-k'uèt òn-kîn*, nĝ-kòh faàt-koon yîk-to iù yat-ts'aî kîm-t'ó.

Major White: By whom must death sentences be reviewed before they can be enforced?

Lt Colonel Hōh: According to the Code of Criminal Procedure, death sentences have to be reviewed by the Ministry of Justice before they can be enforced. Whenever necessary, the Ministry of Justice may order the Prosecuting Department to make appeals or instruct it to conduct private investigations of cases. Only when the Ministry is absolutely sure of the correctness of the sentences, will it order their execution, which should take place three days after the arrival of its order.

W: How about cases involving life imprisonment, prison terms over five years, cases of deferred punishment, and cases involving foreign nationals?

H: They also have to be reviewed before the sentences are enforced.

W: How about cases involving property rights, personnel, marriage and inheritance, public organization, as well as involving foreign nationals?

H: According to the Code of Civil Procedures, the verdicts also have to be reviewed by the Ministry of Justice before they are enforced.

W: What is the Supreme Court?

H: The Supreme Court is the highest tribunal of the land. It

has several civil courts and criminal courts. In each court there are five judges, one of whom is the presiding judge. In rendering verdicts, the five judges must confer together.

W: How about the administrative courts?

H: The same applies to the administrative courts. Five judges attend each court, one of whom is the presiding judge. In holding trials and rendering verdicts, the five judges must confer together also.

白少校：死刑判決要由邊個審核至可以執行呀？

何中校：根據刑事法，死刑判決一定要由司法行政部法令司命到啦，刑三日執行。必要時，或命令檢察部私自的令該要喺上訴，直係執令案件，緩刑呢？判決，命禁件，案件既經過司法行政部審核至可以執行判決。

白：終身監禁國外期長關件，同有關公共組織案件，

何：亦都要行判決。

白：有關財產權既案件，人事案件，結婚案件，同有關財產遺產外國籍民案件呢？

何：根據民事法，亦都一定要經過司法行政部審核至可以執行判決。

白：最高法院係乜野呀？

何：最高法院係全國最高既裁判所。最高法院有幾個民事審判廳，幾個刑

法個五有聽判審個每，個係席官定要齊未下
庭開都要官亦官法席首個係件案決判同個五
判審有聽判審個每樣一係都院法政行亦院法政行：何
呢院法政行：白
討檢一齊
事審判廳，每個審判廳有五個法
官，其中一個係首席法官一定要一齊未下
判決之前，五個法官一定要齊檢討。

READING MATERIAL

根據中國法律之性質而言，法律有兩大類，一為刑事法，一為民事法．

刑事法，為死刑，終身監禁，或短期監禁，最輕者為緩刑．有多種，有長期監禁，有死刑．死刑之判決之後，須經行政部判決．法院然後命令行政部調查案件，法院然後命令檢察部執行之．判決後之年數者為重，法院然後命令檢察部執行之．若干最後，法院然後命令檢察部執行之．禁，等判決可司法行政部認為行之．監緩刑院核時令檢政法到．審要命法命是收．

根據民事法，如有關財產權之案件，人事案件，有關外國僑民之案件等，亦須經過司法行政部之審核許可後，法院然後可以執行判決．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

QUESTIONS

1. Kan-kuì Chung-Kwŏk kè faàt-lût, faàt-lût yaŭ pin leŭng taaî luî à?

2. Shám-p'oŏn chi haû kè p'oŏn-k'uèt yaŭ keî toh chúng à?

3. Ni keî chúng p'oŏn-k'uèt, tsuì ch'ŭng kè haî pin chúng à?

4. Faàt-uên* p'oŏn-k'uèt-chóh chi haû, iù king-kwòh pin-kòh kei-kwaan kè shám-hât à?

5. Pit-iù shî, Sz-Faàt Haāng-Chìng Pô hóh-ĭ mîng-lîng pin-kòh kei-kwaan sheûng-sò à?

6. Sheûng-sò tò mi-yĕ shî-haû, faàt-uên* chì chap-haāng p'oŏu-k'uèt à?

7. Faàt-uên* chap-haāng seî-yîng kè yât-k'eî, haî shau-tò mîng-lîng chi haû kè taî keî yât à?

8. Yaŭ-kwaan ts'oî-ch'aán k'uēn kè òn-kîn* haî mān-sẑ faàt, yik-waâk haî yîng-sẑ faàt à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

seî-yîng death penalty

p'oòn-k'uèt k'uèt 'to decide, to determine'; p'oòn-k'uèt 'to sentence, sentence'

shám-hât hât 'to review, to estimate, to appraise'; shám-hât 'to review, to estimate, to appraise'

yîng-sẑ faàt yîng 'penalty, punishment, torture'; yîng-sẑ faàt 'Code of Criminal Procedure'

kîm-ch'aàt pô prosecuting department; kîm-ch'aàt koon 'prosecutor'

sheûng-sò sò 'to plea, to appeal'; sheûng-sò 'to appeal'

sz-tsẑ privately, secretly, private

yîng-tîng yîng 'to recognize, to acknowledge, to admit, to confess'; yîng-tîng 'firmly believed, to be positive, to be confident, to recognize for a certainty'; yîng-waî 'to acknowledge, to believe'

hôp correct, true, total, to combine, to join, to close, to shut

yât-k'eî a date, a set date

chung-shan chung 'the end, final, finally, the whole of, after all, still, death'; chung-shan 'all one's life, a lifetime'

kaam-kàm confinement in prison, imprisonment, confinement

chung-shan kaam-kàm life imprisonment

ch'iu-kwòh to exceed, to surpass, to exceed or surpass in degree (more, longer...); synonym: ch'iu, kwòh

ch'eūng-k'eî long term, long period; ch'eūng-k'eî kaam-kàm 'long term imprisonment'

oôn slow, tardy, leisurely, gradually, to delay, to retard, to slow down; oôn-yîng 'to reprieve, deferred punishment'

yaŭ-kwaan related, concerned, to have relationship

k'iū-mān emigrants, fellow countrymen overseas; Meǐ-Kwòk k'iū-mān 'Americans residing overseas'; ngoî-kwòk k'iū-mān 'foreign nationals', abbr.: ngoî k'iū

ts'oî-ch'aán property, synonym: ch'aán; ts'oî-ch'aán k'uēn 'property rights'

waî-ch'aán waî 'to leave behind, to bequeath, to hand down, to lose or neglect, to forget, to abandon'; waî-ch'aán 'inherited property'

kung-kûng public

mān-sẑ civil case (law); mān-sẑ faàt 'Code of Civil Procedure'

ts'oî-p'oòn to try, to judge, to sentence, judgment; ts'oî-p'oòn koon 'a judge'; ts'oî-p'oòn shóh 'tribunal, court of justice'

shám-p'oòn t'eng t'eng 'a hall, a court, a lodge, a room, a chamber'; shám-p'oòn t'eng 'law court'; mān-sẑ shám-p'oòn t'eng 'civil court'; yîng-sẑ shám-p'oòn t'eng 'criminal court'

faàt-koon a judge; shaú-tsîk faàt-koon 'a presiding judge'

kîm-t'ó to confer, to discuss, to analyze, discussion, analysis; synonym: t'ó-lûn, sheung-t'ó, sheung-leūng, t'ó

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Waî sò-ch'uí chìng-foó yān-uēn mŏ-paî heí-kìn, Chung-Kwòk yaŭ shóh-waî Kung-Mô Yān-Uēn Fung-Keí Ch'ìng-Kaaì Waí-Uēn Ooî*. Neĭ hóh-ĭ kóng hă ni kòh waí-uēn ooî* peî ngŏh-teî t'eng, tak mà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Ni kòh waí-uēn ooî* fan-hoi Chung-Yeung Waí-Uēn Ooî* t'ūng teî-fong waí-uēn ooî*. Leŭng-kòh to haî yaū Sz̀-Faàt Uên* chîk-tsìp koón-hât. Chung-Yeung Waí-Uēn Ooî* yûng laí ch'ìng-kaaì ts'uēn kwòk tsìn-yâm ĭ sheûng kè haāng-chìng koon-uēn, t'ūng Chung-Yeung Chìng-Foó kòk keí-kwaan waí-yâm ĭ sheûng kè haāng-chìng koon-uēn. Teî-fong waí-uēn ooî*mooĭ shaáng ch'ìt yaŭ yat-kòh, yûng laí ch'ìng-kaaì teî-fong chìng-foó waí-yâm ĭ hâ kè haāng-chìng koon-uēn.

C: Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó ts'oî-yûng kaàk-san kaam-yûk paân-faàt. Ni kòh paân-faàt haî tîm kà?

H: Shât-shi ts'eūng-saì kaam-yûk koón-leĭ, fàn-lîn, ts'ing-kìt, waî-shaang kòk faàt-lîng. T'ūng-shī kìn-chuk san kaam-yûk, koí-shîn kaû kaam-yûk. Kaam-yûk foô ch'ìt i-uên*, kóm-fà uên*, t'ō-shue koón, wân-tûng ch'eūng. Ch'ìt yaŭ kòk chúng kung-ch'eūng, fàn-lîng yān-faân* yàn-ts'aàt, chaì haaī, tsô shaam, taù mûk, chik pò chúng-chúng kung-ngaî.

C: Chìn shī Chung-Kwòk shât-shi shik-fòng yān-faân* yâp nğ faàt-lîng. Chan tîng ká kà?

H: Chan kè. Chung-shan kaam-kàm kè yan-faân* tsoî kaam-kàm ngˇ nîn ˇi sheûng, t'ūng shâp nîn kaam-kàm kè yan-faân* tsoî kaam-yûk leŭng nîn ˇi sheûng, hóh-ˇi yâp ngˇ. Tsoî kwan-yîk shî-kaan tòng-tsòk tsoî kaam-yûk shî-kaan. Uē-kwóh haî chìn ch'eūng yaŭ tâk-pît kung-lō waâk tá-sheung î ts'aan-faì-ché, t'ō-ying ts'uî-siu.

Capt Cheung: In order to wipe out corruption caused by the government officials, China has a so-called Commission for the Disciplinary Punishment of Public Functionaries. Can you tell us something about this commission, Sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: This commission has two divisions, one central and the other local, both subject to the jurisdiction of the Judicial Yuan. The central commission punishes administrative officials throughout the country of and above the recommended rank, and public functionaries in the various Central Government organs above the delegated rank. The local commission, of which each province has one, punishes local government officials of and below the delegated rank.

C: The National Government adopted a program of prison reform. What is this program?

H: It promulgated detailed regulations concerning management training and sanitation in prisons. At the same time, new prisons were erected, and old prisons improved. Attached to each prison were a hospital, a reformatory, a library, and athletic grounds. There were several workshops teaching the inmates printing, shoemaking, tailoring, carpentry, cloth-weaving and other useful trades.

C: During the war, China promulgated regulations governing the release of convicts for military service. Is that true?

H: Yes. Life convicts having served more than five years, and convicts sentenced to ten years of imprisonment and having served more than two years of their term, may be released for military service. Their days of service in the armed forces are counted off their term of imprisonment. Furthermore, in case of special merit or disablement from battle wounds, they are pardoned.

張上尉：國會中員地聽，見戒俾起懲會弊紀員舞風委員員個人人呢府務吓政公講除謂以？掃所可嗎為有你得

何中校：地直全央員黎官同院戒中官用政會法懲同政，員司黎，行個嘅委由用員嘅一下央係會官上有以中都員政以設任開個委行任省委分兩央嘅委每府會，中上關會政員會，以機員方呢方接國政地懲員，委員轄任各委地掃府係細各舊監舊法令，真實施詳生善院，工衫，中定

張：國民政府採用革新監獄辦法，呢個辦

何：實施監獄管理，訓練，清潔，衛生，改化時建築新監獄，感各種同附動場，設有鞋，做印刷種種，工藝，織布人犯入伍法令，真釋放人犯在監禁五年以

張：戰時

何：真嘅，終身監禁嘅

上，同十年監禁嘅人犯在監獄兩年以上，可以入伍．在軍役時間當作在監獄時間．如果喺戰場有特別功勞或打傷而殘廢者，徒刑取消．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

READING MATERIAL

世界上任何一個國家，都有政府人員舞弊案件之多少，中國之情形亦是一樣。

在中國，政府為改良政治，與盡量徵公務人員除風紀員委員會之職務，為辦理政府官員之舞弊案件。

該委員會為調中央各部會及地方各機關人員戒嚴，以可委員會為犯禁之處分員中為會，中央全國有一個舞弊職員是犯于，以家人若役行國及放軍實對理釋務法犯管曾服辦人之府國與，獄政為策善監，政政對時伍項前府戰入該以政。其從比，意使自理後注，管。前為犯禁之處戰甚人監獄貢抗練之替監有訓類代，甚之種以來亦

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

QUESTIONS

1. Shaî-kaaî sheûng yâm-hōh yat-kòh kwòk-ka, to yaŭ chĭng-foó yān-uēn mŏ-paî kè òn-kîn*. Tîm-kaaî à?

2. Chung-Kwòk kè Kung-Mô Yān-Uēn Fung-Keî Ch'îng-Kaaî Waî-Uēn-Ooî*, haî yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan chîk-tsìp koón-hât kà?

3. Ni kòh waî-uēn ooî* kè yâm-mô haî tîm kà?

4. Ni kòh waî-uēn ooî* hóh-ĭ fan waî pin leŭng-chúng à?

5. Chung-yeung waî-uēn ooî*, ts'uēn kwòk yaŭ keî toh kòh à?

6. Chung-yeung waî-uēn ooî* kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ à?

7. Teî-fong waî-uēn ooî*, ts'uēn kwòk yaŭ keî toh kòh à?

8. K'òng-chìn kè shî-haû, chĭng-foó shik-fòng hó toh yān-faân*. Tîm-kaaî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

mŏ-paî paî 'fraud, corruption, evil practices, drawbacks, demerits'; leî paî 'merits and demerits'; mŏ-paî 'corruption, to practice fraud'

fung-keî keî 'disciplines, records, to record, annals'; kwan keî 'military discipline'; fung-keî 'discipline'; kwan fung-keî 'military discipline'

ch'îng-kaaì ch'îng 'to punish, to reprove'; ch'îng-kaaì 'to punish'; Kung-Mô Yān-Uēn Fung-Keî Ch'îng-Kaaì Waî-Uēn-Ooî* 'Commission for the Disciplinary Punishment of Public Functionaries'

tsìn-yâm tsìn 'to recommend'; tsìn-yâm 'recommended rank (the ranking system used for the Government officials in the Chinese National Government'

koon-uēn officials; haāng-chîng koon-uēn 'administrative officials'

waî-yâm delegated rank (the ranking system used for the government officials in the Chinese National Government) to appoint, to designate

kaàk-san to reform, reform

kaam-yûk prison, jail; a.f.: yûk

ts'ing-kìt sanitation, clean; a.f.: kìt

waî-shang hygiene, hygienic, sanitary; kung-kûng waî-shang 'public health'

faàt-lîng laws, orders and regulations promulgated by the government

foô to append, to attach, to add to, to enclose, to adhere to, an appendix, an annex, accessory, dependent on, near to; foô ch'ìt 'attached to (building, organization)'

kŏm-fà uên* kŏm-fà 'to reform (prisoners)'; kŏm-fà uên* 'reformatory'

kung ch'eūng workshop; AN: kŏh

yān-faân* prisoner, inmate; a.f.: faân-yān, kaam-faân*, faân*

yàn-ts'aàt yàn 'to print, to stamp an official seal, a stamp, a mark'; yàn-ts'aàt 'to print, printing'; yàn-ts'aàt pán 'printed matter'; yàn-ts'aàt kei 'printing machine'; yàn-ts'aàt kung-sz 'printing plant, printing company'

taù mûk taù (colloq) 'work in wood, to touch, to tease'; mûk 'wood'; taù mûk 'carpentry'; taù-mûk-lóˆ 'a carpenter'

chik pò chik 'to weave, to knit'; pò 'cloth'; chik pò 'cloth-weaving'; chik-pò kei 'cloth-weaving machine'

kung-ngaîˆ ngaîˆ 'skill, a trade'; kung-ngaîˆ 'handicraft, a trade, skill work'

shik-fòng shik 'to set free, to release, to loosen, to open out, to explain'; fòng 'to release (a prisoner), to set free (a prisoner)' shik-fòng 'to release (a prisoner)'

kwan-yîk yîk 'military service, to serve as a servant, to employ as a servant'; kwan-yîk 'military service'

tòng-tsòk to treat as, to regard as, to represent, to stand in the place of, to use one thing as the equivalent of another, to consider as being; a.f.: tòng waiˆ, tòng shîˆ, tòng

chìn-ch'eūng battlefield; AN: kòh

ts'aān-faìˆ ts'aān 'to injure, to oppress, disabled, a remnant, residue'; faìˆ 'disabled, to abolish, to discontinue'; ts'aān-faìˆ 'disabled, disablement, disability'; synonym: ts'aān

t'ō-yîng term of imprisonment, imprisonment; yaŭ-k'eîˆ t'ō-yîng 'certain number of years of imprisonment'; mō-k'eîˆ t'ō-yîng 'life imprisonment'

ts'uîˆ-siu to cancel, to rescind, to abrogate, to countermand, cancellation

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Mūng-Koó kè teî-yîng heì-haû haî tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Mūng-Koó haî À-Chau chung-sam yat-kòh taaî kouēn, mîn-tsik taaî-yeùk* seì-paàk-maân kung-leĭ. Hoî-pât yat-ts'in-ngĭ-paàk kung-ch'èk. Chau-waì yaŭ ko taaî shaanmâk waì-iŭ. Chung-kaan yaŭ Kwoh-Pik Sha-Mŏk. Heì-haû haî taaî-lûk heì-haû. Yaŭ kîk ît t'ūng kîk laăng kè pìn-fà. Teî-fong ch'iū-shap t'ūng uĕ leûng shiú, lîng-tò kaangchùng kw'àn-naān.

C: Neĭ hóh-ĭ kóng hă Mūng-Koó yān kè yĕ peî ngŏh-teî t'eng mà?

H: Mūng-Koó kè yān poón-loî haî ĭ yaū-mûk waì shaang. Haûloî k'uĭ-teî ts'am-leûk Uĕn-Tung, Kân-Tung, Au-Chau mān-fà tsuì tsó kè kwòk-ka. Tsoî Shîng-Kat-Sz-Hôn (yat-yat-lûk-î nîn chì yat-î-î-ts'at nîn) lĭng-tô chi hâ, Mūng-Koó shîng-laâp yat-kòh taaî taì-kwòk. Shâp-seì shaì-keî chi haû, yat-toî kwong-wîng kè taì-kwòk k'ing-tó, lîng-tò Mūng-Koó pìn waì saam taaî pô---Ngoî Mūng-Koó kè pak Mūng-Koó yān, noî Mūng-Koó kè naām Mūng-Koó yān, t'ūng sai-pak pô kè sai Mūng-Koó yān.

C: Shâp-ts'at shaì-keî kè shî-haû, ni chúng hò chìn kè māntsûk peî Moŏn-Ts'ing t'úng-chî, haî mà?

H: Haî. K'uĭ-teî peî Moŏn-Ts'ing fan waì m̄-shiú pô-lôk t'ūng māng-k'eî, shóh-ĭ Moŏn-Ts'ing tak-tó t'ūng-chî.

C: Ngoî Mūng-Koó suen-pò tûk-laâp haî mà?

H: K'uĭ-teî ch'ing tsẑ-keî waì Mūng-Koó Yān-Mān Kûng-Wōh Kwòk. Yat-kaú-seì-lûk nîn Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Foó shîng-yîng Ngoî Mūng-Koó tûk-laâp.

Capt Cheung: What are the geographical features and climate of Mongolia, Sir?

Lt Colonel Hoh: Mongolia is a great plateau in the heart of the Asiatic continent. The area occupies about 4,000,000 square kilometers. It lies about 1,500 meters above sea level and is enclosed on all sides by high mountain ranges, with the Gobi Desert located in the center. It has a continental climate, subject to variable extremes of heat and cold. The humidity, coupled with a scarcity of rainfall, renders agriculture highly impracticable.

C: Can you tell us something about the Mongolian people?

H: The Mongolians are tribes who originally carried on a nomadic existence, and who later assaulted the oldest civilized states of the Far East, the Near East and Europe. Under the leadership of Genghis Khan (1162-1227) the Mongols founded a world empire. After the 14th century, the states of the once glorious empire collapsed and the Mongols resolved into three main groups---the Northern Mongols of Outer Mongolia, the Southern Mongols of Inner Mongolia, and the Western Mongols in the Northwestern region.

C: In the 17th century, was this warring race ruled by the Manchus?

H: Yes, they were divided by the Manchus into a number of

tribal leagues and banners in accordance with Manchu custom, thus consolidating the Manchu rule.

C: Is it a fact that Outer Mongolia proclaimed independence?

H: Yes. It called itself Mongolian People's Republic. The Chinese Government recognized its independence in 1946.

張上尉：蒙古係點樂？

何中校：蒙古大高原，面五千繞一圍大陸氣候係一個大海拔一千陸地方，
蒙古大山脈係大陸氣候心一里．海拔一千陸地方，
積百公大高．氣候變化種地．困難．
中間．冷極，耕我地．困難嗎？
候潮濕講既遊牧生．後來文化最
以既人侵既東吉成年)領導之下，蒙古
地早年成立至一光三古既人．同西北部既
成一變內西蒙蒙古既南蒙古人，
世紀清統被滿清得倒統治．

張：可你蒙古十七係．外蒙地佢

何：蒙古人民共和國．一九
古既民族被
旗，
部落同盟
獨立．

西中，
與之多．最
原洲不漠
高亞差沙
古在原為
蒙原高藏面積
五．高西份
有蒙與部漠．
高二面，壁
之其繞戈
名中．圍為
著其北脈漠
國是之山沙
中原國有之
高中圍名
藏在周著

因適宜定遊
關不適固之
有，不無戰
他大故民好
其極人一
及化難份為
係，變困部成生．
候輸大人為
關氣運，古牧
之通展蒙遊
形季交發令以
地四因之．亦
理年又業業民
地一．商職人
於以種與族，
由所耕業處
，於工住民
素宜於之牧

民是帝，
古．，蒙
蒙地葉內
導各中，
領洲紀蒙
汗歐世外
思至四，
吉遠十份
成境，國史．部三
葉，榮為
末國光變
紀帝之古
世大族蒙
二一民；
十立古倒蒙．
建蒙傾北
族為國西

蒙承
立年
成六
立，四
獨一九
佈於
蒙宣府
外政民
後，國．
利國
勝和立
戰共獨
抗民蒙
人外
古認

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk yaŭ ngˇ-kòh ko-uēn, k'eî-chung yaŭ leŭng-kòh kiù-tsô mi-yĕ à?

2. Mūng-Koó kè taaî pô-fân mîn-tsik haî mi-yĕ à?

3. Tsuî chuè-mîng kè sha-môk kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

4. Sha-môk kè teî-fong kè t'in-heî haî tîm kà?

5. Hâ-t'in hó ît, tung-t'in hó laăng. Ni chúng haî taaî-lûk heî-haû yik-waâk haî hoî-yeūng heî-haû à?

6. Mūng-Koó yān haî yat-chúng tîm-yeûng* kè mān-tsûk à?

7. Yaū-mûk mān-tsûk kè shaang-oôt tsâp-kwaàn haî tîm kà?

8. Tîm-kaaî Mūng-Koó yān ooî shîng waî yaū-mûk mān-tsûk à?

9. Mūng-Koó taaî taî-kwòk haî yaū pin-kòh kìn-laâp kà?

10. Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó keî shî shîng-yîng Ngoî Mūng tûk-laâp à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

hoî-pât sea level

kung-ch'èk ch'èk 'foot (measurement)'; kung-ch'èk 'meters'

chau-waî chau 'all round, everywhere, comprehensive, surname'; chau-waî 'all round, encircled on all sides'

shaan-mâk mountain ranges

waî-iŭ to encircle, to surround, to enclose; synonym: iŭ, waî

chung-kaan center, between, among, in the midst of; synonym: chung

Kwoh-Pik Sha-Môk sha 'sand'; sha-môk 'desert'; Kwoh-Pik (Woh-Pik) 'Gobi'; Kwoh-Pik Sha-Môk 'Gobi Desert'

kîk ît extreme hot; kîk laăng 'extreme cold'

pìn-fà to transform, to undergo a change, evolution, metamorphosis; synonym: pìn, m̄-t'ūng

ch'iū-shap shap 'wet, damp, moist'; ch'iū 'damp, moist, tide'; ch'iū-shap 'damp, humid'

uĕ leûng uĕ 'to rain, raining, rain'; leûng 'quantity, capacity'; uĕ leûng 'rainfall'

yaū-mûk nomads; yaū-mûk mān-tsûk 'race of nomads'

ĭ...waî shaang 'to earn one's living in..., to depend one's living on..., to make a living...'; ĭ yaū-mûk waî shaang 'to carry on a nomadic existence (as Mongols)'

Kân-Tung Near East

Shîng-Kat-Sz-Hôn Genghis Khan

lĭng-tô to lead, to guide, to direct, leadership; tsoî... lĭng-tô chi hâ 'under the leadership of...'

taì-kwòk taì 'emperor, king, imperial'; taì-kwòk 'empire'; taaî taì-kwòk 'big empire'

yat-toî a generation, a dynasty, one's whole life, AN for empire; yat-toî taaî taì-kwòk 'a big empire'

kwong-wîng glorious, glory, pride, things to be proud of; synonym: wîng; kwong-wîng sź 'history of glory, glorious history'

k'ing-tó k'ing 'to overthrow, to upset, to collapse, to fall, to subvert'; tó 'to fall, to overthrow, to turn upside down'; k'ing-tó 'to overthrow (a country, a regime), overthrown, (a regime, a country), to be attracted by a woman's beauty'

hò to be fond of, to like, to be addicted to, to love; hò chìn 'warlike, warring'

t'úng-chî to rule, a county, to reign (a county)

pô-lôk tribes

māng-k'eî banners (regional division in Mongolia)

suen-pò to announce, to proclaim, to declare; a.f.: suen

ch'ing to call, to name, to declare, to praise, suitable, agreeable; ch'ing waî 'to call as'; ch'ing...waî 'to call...as'; peî ch'ing waî...'to be called as...'

shîng-yîng to recognize, to acknowledge, to admit, to confess; synonym: yîng

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Sai-Tsông ne? Sai-Tsông kè teî-yîng tˢūng heì-haû tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Sai-Tsông ko-uēn hoî-pât ko-kwòh ngˇ-tsˢin maǐ-tât. Shaan-kuk ko-kwòh saam-tsˢin kung-chˢèk. Tsˢuēn kwòk ko-uēn paau-kˢoòt Sai-Tsông poón-pô, Sai-Hong, Tsˢing-Hoî. Sai-Hong tˢūng Tsˢing-Hoî haî Chung-Kwòk shaáng-fân, taân-haî Sai-Tsông poón-pô haî Chung-Kwòk kwòk kîng chi noî kè tsŝ-chî kˢui.

P: Sai-Tsông yaŭ keî toh yān-haú à?

H: Sai-Tsông mŏ yān-haú tˢiū-chˢā. Kìt-kwóh yâm-hōh yān-haú shò-tsŝ to shîng mân-tˢaî. Tsuì hóh-nāng kè koó-kaì, Sai-Tsông poón-pô waâk-ché yaŭ tsˢat-shâp-ngˇ-maân yān.

P: Sai-Tsông kè lîk-sź haî tîm kà?

J: Sai-Tsông kè lîk-sź chˢung-moŏn-saaì shān-wâ* tˢūng chuên-kˢeî kè koò-sŝ. Sai-Tsông yān wâ kˢuǐ-teî kè tsó-sin haî shān kè haû-toî. Taân-haî kân-toî lîk-sź ka wâ Sai-Tsông tsûk tˢūng Mūng-koó tsûk shûk-ue yat tsûk. Sui-în Sai-Tsông tˢūng Chung-Kwòk kè kwaan-haî tsŝ koó pat-tsuêt, taân-haî yaū Tˢōng Chˢiū kè shî-haû heî chì waî hîn-chuè. Shâp-saam shaì-keî Mūng-Koó ching-fûk Sai-Tsông kè shî-haû, Sai-Tsông hôp-pîng Chung-Kwòk Taì-Kwòk. Tong Chung-Wā-Mān-Kwòk shîng-laâp kè shî-haû, Sai-Tsông suen-pò tˢuèt-leî Chung-Kwòk î "tûk-laâp". Haû-loî Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó shîng-laâp chi haû, chìng-foó tˢūng Sai-Tsông kè kwaan-haî chûk-tsîm*

koi-shin. Ching-foó tsó-chik Mūng Tsông Wai-Uēn Ooi* ch'ué-leĭ uĕ Mūng-Koó t'ūng Sai-Tsông yaŭ-kwaan kè sz̄-hông.

P: Pin-kòh haî Sai-Tsông kè t'úng-chî-ché?

H: Taât-Laaî La-Mā tsoî mān-sz̄ sheûng t'ūng tsung-kaaù sheûng haî Sai-Tsông tsuì ko t'úng-chî-ché.

Major White: What about Tibet? What are the geographical features and climate of Tibet?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The Tibetan Plateau is more than 5,000 meters above sea level, the valleys more than 3,000 meters in altitude. The entire tableland includes Tibet proper, Sikang, and Chinghai. The latter two are regular provinces of the Chinese Republic while Tibet proper is a "self-governing territory" within the boundaries of China.

W: What is the population of Tibet?

H: There is no census in Tibet and consequently any figure on Tibetan population is open to question. The most probable estimate is 750,000 in Tibet proper.

W: What is the history of Tibet?

H: The history of Tibet is full of myths and legends. The Tibetans believe that their ancestors were descendants of a certain god or spirit. But modern historians place the Tibetan race in the Mongolian family. Though relations between Tibet and China date from time immemorial without interruption, they first came into prominence in the days of the Tang Dynasty. With the Mongol conquest in the 13th century, Tibet was incorporated into the Chinese Empire. When the Republic was established, the Tibetans declared themselves "independent" from China. Later, with the establishment of the National Government, relations

between the Government and Tibet have been steadily improving. The Mongolian and Tibetan Affairs Commission was organized by the National Government to handle matters concerning Mongolia and Tibet.

W: Who is the ruler in Tibet?

H: The Dalai Lama is the supreme ruler both in civil and religious affairs in Tibet.

白少校：嘅？山括同部
何中校：點．包康本
　　候突原西藏．
　　氣米高．西區
　　同千國海係治
　　形五全青但自
　　地過．，嘅
　　嘅高尺康份內？
　　藏拔公西省之呀？結可十
　　西海千，國境口查．最七嘅？
白：西藏　原三部中國人調題者係充話代一古為嘅中脫成漸理
何：西藏　呢高過本係國多口問或史史人近於自至藏當佈府逐處
　　藏藏高藏海中幾人成部歷歷藏係屬係起西．宣政係會．
　　西西谷西青係有都本嘅嘅西但族關候服國藏民關員項
白：西藏　數字藏
何：西藏　口，西
　　人計．
　　何估人
　　任嘅萬
　　果能五
　　話同傳奇嘅故事．
　　神族同中朝蒙中候後西蒙關
　　家雖，．，國國後．古
　　史．絕著候民中之善蒙
　　歷族不顯時華雜立改與
白：西藏
何：西藏

白：邊個係西藏嘅統治者？

何：達賴喇嘛在民事上同宗教上係西藏最高統治者。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

READING MATERIAL

中多脈環，在地山理候，其該地氣候，一·其突·脈·形與陸大之原米山地於屬高千亞於大五拉由亦五為馬喜脈·氣候冷·國約喜脈·氣候冷·中拔為山之極為海脈之地天極原·山高該冬天高部·最，係，熱，藏南高界關極西西最世關極之，全之天國山為境夏

來實，從確，甚以來，不據·史根五萬·歷有字七十有數為約查調口人口總之其實計，估之未

種夠，他教密，不秘，導為會社藏及報聞，西難，新濟稱困之經人輸藏，界運西治世通於政以交對之所·之面藏楚·藏方西清西各對甚於，人不由素般形因一情故育國·

藏史思，府代吉政，成民國，至族·立獨·而併屬代話·與傳但一直於·事近干故奇若神後同合國滿之古之中充神蒙將離史為與，脫後歷先藏時，之祖西藏然，藏其明西稱証服後，自己征立人家汗成

政，在喇嘛，賴西藏民族·達導領為者上教治上統宗高與最上之神，精治上

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

QUESTIONS

1. Sai-Tsông haî Chung-Kwòk kè pin pîn à?
2. Sai-Tsông kè yān-haú taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keî toh à?
3. Ts'uēn Shaî-Kaaî kè yān tuî Sai-Tsông kè ts'îng-yîng to m-haî keî ts'ing-ch'óh. Tîm-kaaî à?
4. "Shān-wâ*" t'ūng "chuên-k'eî" haî tîm-kaaî à?
5. Kwaan-ue Sai-Tsông t'ūng Mūng-Koó kè kwaan-haî, kân-toî lîk-sź ka tîm wâ à?
6. Sai-Tsông keî shî peî Mūng-Koó yān ching-fûk à?
7. Sai-Tsông keî shî t'uèt-leî Chung-Kwòk tûk-laâp à?
8. Pin-kòh haî Sai-Tsông kè tsuî ko t'úng-chî-ché à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

maĭ-tât meters; a.f.: kung-ch'ĕk

shaan-kuk valley

poón-pô poón 'original, authentic'; poón-pô 'proper (geography)'

Sai-Hong Sikang Province

Ts'ing-Hoî Chinghai Province

shaáng-fân shaáng 'province, state'; shaáng-fân 'province, state'

ch'ung-moŏn moŏn 'full, filled, full of, satisfied, the whole of, complete, filled up'; ch'ung-moŏn 'full of'

saaì all, all gone, entirely, completely; ch'ung-moŏn-saaì 'full of'

shān-wâ* shān 'deity, God, spirit, divine, energy'; shān-wâ* 'myths'

chuên-k'eî legend, legendary

koò-sẑ story, tale

tsó-sin ancestors

haû-toî toî 'generation, to replace, in place of, for, instead, a substitute, acting'; haû-toî 'descendants, following generations'; haû yat-toî 'next generation'; hâ yat-toî 'next generation'

ka used as a suffix to indicate the agent, it indicates a specialist in any branch, a class or school, equivalent to -ist, -ian ; a house, a family, a home, relatives; used as a prefix--my, said of one elder than oneself, ie. ka-hing 'my elder brother'; lîk-sź ka 'historian'

kân-toî contemporary, modern

shûk-ue to belong to, connected with, related

tsẑ koó koó 'ancient'; tsẑ koó 'from of old, ever since ancient time'

tsuêt to cut off, to break off, to interrupt, decidedly, extremely, very, used to strengthen a negative, ie. tsuêt pat 'never'; pat-tsuêt 'without interruption'; tsẑ koó pat-tsuêt 'without interruption since ancient time'

T'ōng Ch'iū Tang Dynasty; a.f.: T'ōng

yaū...heî since..., from... on

chì waî to the utmost degree, extremely; a.f.: chì, tsuì, fei-sheūng-chì

ching-fûk ching 'to make war, to subjugate, to quell'; fûk 'to serve, to submit, to be willing'; ching-fûk 'to compel submission by war'

hôp-pìng pìng 'to combine, two together, united, to annex'; hôp-pìng 'to incorporate, to annex, to integrate'

tong...kè shî-haû during the time..., when...

t'uèt-leî t'uèt 'to undress, to strip, to cast off, to escape from, to slip off'; leî 'to leave, away from, apart from, distance'; t'uèt-leî 'to cast off, to separate from, to escape from'

ch'ué-leĭ to handle, to manage, to dispose

t'úng-chî-ché ruler, one who rules the country

Taât-Laaî La-Mā Dalai Lama (leader of Tibet)

tsung-kaaù religion; a.f.: kaaù

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Tsoî ngoî-kwòk kè Chung-Kwòk yān toh-shò haî pin shuè kè Chung-Kwòk yan à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Paàk-fân chi kaú-shâp-kaú tsoî ngoî-kwòk kè Chung-Kwòk yān haî naām fong yān. Kaán-chîk uēn-ts'uēn haî yaū Kwóng-Tung Shaáng Kwóng-Sai Shaáng t'ūng Fuk-Kìn Shaáng laî kè.

C: Chung-Kwòk yān keî shî hoi-shaú î mān huì ngoî-kwòk kà?

H: Taaî-yeùk* î-ts'in nîn ts'în tsóh-yaû*, tong Ts'ūn-Ch'î-Wōng-Taì hōp-pìng în-tsoî kè Uêt-Naām, shîng waì Chung-Kwòk Taì-Kwòk yat pō-fân lǐng-t'ó kè shî-haû, naām fong yān ǐ-king hoi-ch'î heùng Tung-Naām À kòk kwòk î mān. Chì-tò Sùng Ch'iū kè shî-haû, m̄-shiú naām fong yān huì Naām-Yeūng* kòk kwòk. Chì Mîng Ch'iū shî, Wā-Naām kè yān haî kóh ti teî-fong chìng-chî sheûng ǐ-king yaū hó taaî shaì-lîk. Chì-tò Ts'ing Ch'iū kè shî-haû, sui-în kàm-chí î mān huì ngoî-kwòk, taân-haî i-în m̄-shiú Kwóng-Tung yān kaì-tsûk ch'ut kwòk. K'uǐ-teî ts'ang-king haî Hōh-Laan t'ūng Sai-Paan-Nga kè shûk-t'ó shaû-kwòh taaî t'ō-shaàt. K'uǐ-teî yîk-to peî hó toh kòh kwòk-ka leî-yûng tsô hōp-yeùk kè lō-kung. În-tsoî k'uǐ-teî shaû-tó hó toh kwòk-ka p'aaî wā, t'ūng chúng-chúng k'eî-shî kè m̄-hó toî-uê.

C: Tsoî ngoî-kwòk kui-laū kè Chung-Kwòk yān yān-shò yaū keî toh à?

H: Kan-kuì Haāng-Chìng Uên* K'iū-Mô Waí-Uēn Ooî* tsuì-kân pò-

kò, tsoî ngoî-kwòk kui-laū kè Chung-Kwòk yān tsúng-kûng yaŭ yat-ts'in-ngĕ-paàk-maân ĭ sheûng. K'eî-chung T'aaì-Kwòk yaŭ seì-paàk-maân yān. Mă-Loî-À yaŭ î-paàk-ngĕ-shâp-maân yān. Yàn-Tô-Naî-Sai-À yaŭ î-paàk-maân yān. Uêt-Naām yat-paàk-maân yān. Taan-tûk Sing-Kà-Poh yat shuè, saam-fân chi î yān-haú haî Kwóng-Tung yān t'ūng Fuk-Kìn yān.

Capt Cheung: What part of China are the Chinese living abroad originally from?

Lt Colonel Hōh: 99 per cent of the Chinese living in foreign countries are southern Chinese. Practically all of them are from Canton (Kwangtung) and Kwangsi and Fukien.

C: When did the Chinese start to migrate to foreign countries?

H: The southern Chinese migration into the Southeast Asian countries began some 2,000 years ago when Chin Shih Huang Ti (221 B.C.) made the present Vietnam a part of his empire. Chinese emigrants went in large numbers to the South Sea countries during the Sung Dynasty (960-1127 A.D.) and Chinese political influence was strongly felt during the reign of the Ming (1280-1368 A.D.) The Ching (1644-1911 A.D.) Dynasty banned migration to foreign territories. Nevertheless, parties of Chinese emigrants, mostly from Canton, moved continuously to foreign countries. They were subject to wholesale massacre in Dutch and Spanish possessions at one time. They were also objects of exploitation in the form of contract labor in many countries. At present they are generally excluded from many countries and subject to discrimination of various kinds and degrees.

C: What is the number of Chinese living abroad?

H: According to a recent report issued by the Overseas Chinese Affairs Commission of the Executive Yuan, there are at least 15,000,000 Chinese living in foreign countries among which there are 4,000,000 in Thailand, 2,500,000 in Malay, 2,000,000 in Indonesia, 1,000,000 in Vietnam. In Singapore alone, 2/3 of the population are Cantonese and Fukienese.

張上尉：中國嘅邊處係廣東省，併合一部始嘅。方清
何中校：人多數係由國外全嘅去當南民，併部始嘅。方清
張：中國人在完黎民，成，移方南好大勢，土個佢歧
何：大約九直省移右，候國南華有雖少荷。合國過國委中務嘅
在國百南西人二現份向時至政朝但佢受國地視國行外
外人份方省幾千在領東候明治嘅係地過家受嘅居政國
國呀之人同時年嘅土南，朝上時依曾大利倒唔留院居
中嘅？九、福開前越嘅亞唔時已候然經屠用好好嘅僑留
十簡建首左南時各少，經，唔喺殺做多待中務嘅
九直省移右，候國南華有雖少荷。合國過國委中務嘅
張：中國約
何：大
張上尉：中國嘅邊處係廣東省，併合一部始嘅。方清
何中校：人多數係由國外全嘅去當南民，併部始嘅。方清
張：中國人在完黎民，成，移方南好大勢，土個佢歧
何：大約九直省移右，候國南華有雖少荷。合國過國委中

人·萬尼人·
百萬度萬口係
四印百人
有人·一南二
國萬越分之
泰十萬三
中五人·處，
其百萬一人·
上·二百坡福建
以有二百架同
萬來亞有星人
百馬西亞獨東
單
廣

時，領越漸該力體時，如勢各勢政盛國，國在濟主最各後國，君國亞．中力在中南國但勢尚國潤．東等．方中廣，西獨如當在國，尼後，現韓度先大前，比之印土極以土在，屬仍國領現甸處力民之括緬各勢中土南衰，之國包，地等．

外唐廣，國有甚一份．華向後方之部人之始．地牙大建留開帝之班個皇民西中，福居一始移與人人國九第秦．蘭國西在十之朝荷中廣，九之朝明及告之外農家國，國在葉千．人商若害國，年損中葉近之工惜大

在中移朝南與宋東土人方南暑，面方侵朝，括屬南各包份華據中

括工受包勞僑，約華廣合．甚之策圍低政範最華業及排職，施之葉實

大可極

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwŏk tsuì kʻeūng-shîng kè shī-haû, lĭng-tʻó yaŭ keî taaî à?

2. Tung-Naām-Å paau-kʻoŏt pin keî kòh kwŏk à?

3. Haî Chung-Kwŏk kŏk kòh chʻiū-toî, taî-yat-kòh hoi-chʻî heùng ngoî-kwŏk ì-mān kè haî pin chʻiū à?

4. Chʻuî-chóh Tsʻūn Chʻiū chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ pin chʻiū à?

5. Ī Man kè teî-fong paau-kʻoŏt pin ti kwŏk-ka à?

6. Heùng ngoî-kwŏk ì mān kè Chung-Kwŏk yān taaî pô-fân haî pin shuè yān à?

7. Haî ngoî-kwŏk kui-laū kè wā-kʻiū, naām fong yān chìm paàk-fân chi keî à?

8. Ti wā-kʻiū haî ngoî-kwŏk tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

9. Haî Saam-Faān-shĭ kè Chung-Kwŏk yān, taaî pô-fân haî pin shaáng yān à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

naām fong yān southerners, southern Chinese

kaán-chîk almost, practically, simply; synonym: ch'a-m̄-toh

Kwóng-Sai Shaáng Kwangsi Province

Fuk-Kìn Shaáng Fukien Province

wōng-taì king, emperor; synonym: wōng, taì; Ts'ūn-Ch'î-Wōng-Taì 'Chin Shih Huang Ti (221 B.C.), the King of Chin Dynasty', a.f.: Ts'ūn-Ch'î-Wōng; Ts'ūn Ch'iū 'Chin Dynasty'

Uêt-Naām Vietnam; abbr.: Uêt

lĭng-t'ó t'ó 'soil, territory'; lĭng-t'ó 'territory, soil'

ì mān immigration, emigration, migration

Sùng Ch'iū Sung Dynasty (960-1127A.D.)

Naām-Yeūng* South Sea, South Pacific

Míng Ch'iū Ming Dynasty (1280-1368 A.D.)

shaì-lîk influence, authority, strength; synonym: shaì

Ts'ing Ch'iū Ching Dynasty (1644-1911 A.D.)

kàm-chî to prohibit, to forbid, to ban, to outlaw, to restrain, against; a.f.: kàm

ch'ut kwòk to go abroad; a.f.: ch'ut yeūng

Hōh-Laan Holland, Dutch

shûk-t'ó shûk 'to belong to, to be subject to, connected with, depending on, colonies'; shûk-t'ó 'colonies, tributary State'

t'ō-shaàt shaàt 'to kill, to murder, to execute, to slaughter'; t'ō-shaàt 'slaughter, massacre, to slaughter'; a.f.: t'ō

hŏp-yeŭk a contract; a.f.: hŏp-t'ūng

p'aaì wā p'aaì 'to expel, to dispose, to exclude, to push, to clear out, a row, a line, a rank, a platoon of soldiers, to

place in order'; p'aaî wā 'to expel Chinese, to exclude Chinese, anti-Chinese'; p'aaî ngoî 'to expel foreigners, anti-foreign'

k'eî-sẑ discrimination, to discriminate; chúng-tsûk k'eî-sẑ 'racial discrimination'

toî-uê treatment, wages, to treat; m̄-hó kè toî-uê 'mistreatment'

kui-laū kui 'to dwell, to reside, to live'; kui-laū 'to dwell, to reside, to live'; kui-laū ngoî-kwòk 'foreign settlement, to reside in foreign country'

T'aaî-Kwòk Thailand; abbr.: T'aaî

Mă-Loî-À Malaya; abbr.: Mă-Loî, Mă

Yàn-Tô-Naî-Sai-À Yàn-Tô 'India'; Yàn-Tô-Naî-Sai-À 'Indonesia'

taan-tûk alone, only, single, solely, merely; a.f.: taan, tûk

Sing-Kà-P oh Singapore

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 59

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Hoí-Ngoî Wā-K'iū haí hoí-ngoî kòk teî tsó-chik-chóh keí-ts'in-kòh t'uēn-t'aí. Kóh ti t'uēn-t'aí paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Paau-k'oòt chik-îp t'uēn-t'aí, shĕ-ooî* t'uēn-t'aí, oí kwòk t'uēn-t'aí. Taaî toh-shò haî t'ūng-tsung t'ūng-heung kè yān tsaû-teî tsó-chik kè ooî-koón t'ūng kung-shóh.

P: Ooí-yik Taî-Ĩ-Ts'ż Shaí-Kaaí Taaî Chìn meî paaù-faàt ts'în, pat-shiú Wā-K'iū ooî kaù-tsaí kam ooí kwòk. Mooĭ uêt kè kam ngaâk taaî-yeùk* keí toh à?

H: Mooĭ uêt kam ngaâk yeùk waí ts'at-ts'in-maân uēn.

P: Kóm, mooĭ nîn k'iū-ooî kè tsúng ngaâk yeùk waí shâp-yik uēn. Kóh ti ts'în* kè yûng-t'ō haî tîm kà?

H: Sui-în taaî pō-fân yûng-laí tsìp-tsaí k'iū-paau kè ts'an-shûk, taân-haî tuí-ue chìng-foó kè shau chi p'îng-hāng, yîk yaŭ yaŭ-leî kè yîng-heúng.

P: Chìn haû, Hoí-Ngoî Wā-K'iū ts'āng-king taaî-leûng t'aū tsz, pong-chŏh Tsż-Yaū Chung-Kwòk kìn-ch'ìt. K'uĭ-teî t'aū tsz kè fong-shik haî tîm kà?

H: T'aū tsz fong-shik paau-k'oŏt kuen foón, tsz-kam, kei-heí, yān-ts'oí táng...

P: Haí ngoî-kwòk yaŭ keí ts'in-kaan Chung-Mān hŏk-haaû, kaaù-shaû Wā-K'iū tsź-taî. Ts'ź chúng hŏk-haaû yûng mi-yĕ wâ* kaaù-shaû à?

H: Paàk-fân chi kaú-shâp-kaú ĭ sheûng yûng Kwóng-Tung wâ* shaû fòh.

Major White: Chinese in foreign lands have several thousand organizations. What do these organizations include?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: They include professional organizations, social organizations and patriotic societies. But most of them are local guilds organized by people from the same clan or from the same native district.

W: It is recalled that before the outbreak of World War II, numerous loyal sons of China abroad remitted relief funds to China. What was the amount per month?

H: About $70,000,000 per month.

W: In that case, a sum of about $1 billion per year has been sent by the Chinese abroad. How was the money spent?

H: Although a greater part was sent to the families and relatives of these overseas Chinese, it played an important and advantageous part in China's national receipts and expenditures.

W: A number of investments were also made by the Chinese abroad to help Free China's reconstruction. In what form were these investments made?

H: In the form of donation, capital, machinery, and personnel ...

W: Several thousand Chinese schools for Chinese children were established in foreign countries. What language do they use in the courses of instruction?

H: 99 per cent use Cantonese language in their instruction.

白少校：海外華僑喺海外各地組織咗幾千個團體，嗰啲團體包括啲乜野呀？

何中校：包括職業團體，社會團體，愛國團體，大多數係同宗同鄉嘅人就地組織嘅會館同公所。

白：回憶第二次世界大戰未爆發前，不少華僑約幾多呀？

何：每月金額約為七千萬元。

白：敢，每年僑滙總額約為十億元，嗰啲錢嘅用途係點樣？

何：雖然大部份用黎接濟僑胞嘅親屬，但係對於政府嘅收支平衡，亦有有利嘅影響。

白：戰後，海外僑胞曾經大量投資，幫助自由中國建設，佢地投資嘅方式係點樣？

何：投資方式包括捐款，資金，機器，人才等……

白：喺外國有幾千間中文學校，教授華僑子弟，此種學校用乜野話教授呀？

何：百份之九十九以上用廣東話授課。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 59

READING MATERIAL

根據僑委會之統計數字，居留於全世界各地之華僑約有一千五百萬人．此數字約為全國總人口四十份之一．

華僑雖居留國外，但大部份之親屬仍在中國．由於過去中國不強，外國時時排華，華僑極受歧視．今僑胞覺得國強之程度，要．所以僑胞亦特別愛國．其愛國之程度，不下於中國本部之中國人．

中滙政利，滙多政響．助量助勝僑然衡影．援大幫之年雖平之劾曾時事每，於利有後同戰．途對有與戰，取業用，有國及屬爭事之上亦愛，親，設欵接，子弟其時其戰建於間濟，中文學校．百示戰濟作之至但經華僑課．表，接黨國．定少語不粵為前面產中元屬穩有用僑胞戰方共由億親及外九在一對自十其，外，於為濟支，國十海見國戰資約接收之份起回抗投額於之國欵府與總用府

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 59

QUESTIONS

1. Kan-kuì K'iū-Mô Waí-Uēn Ooî* kè t'úng-kaì shò-tsẑ, Hoî-Ngoî Wā-K'iū taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keì toh yān à?

2. Ni kòh shò-tsẑ taaî-yeùk* haî ts'uēn kwòk tsúng yān-haú kè keì fân chi keì à?

3. Wā-K'iū sui-în kui-laū kwòk ngoî, taân-haî k'uĭ-teî kè ts'an-shûk toh-shò haì pin shuè à?

4. Tîm-kaaî ooĭ yaŭ kóm-yeûng* kè ts'îng-yîng à?

5. Tîm-kaaî ti Wā-K'iū kòm oì kwòk à?

6. Wā-K'iū shî-shî ooî foón ooì kwòk. Ti ts'în* kè yûng-t'ō haî tîm kà?

7. K'iū-ooî tuì-ue Chung-Kwòk kè king-tsaì ts'oí-chîng yaū mi-yĕ pong-chôh à?

8. Kwòk ngoî ti Wa-K'iū tsź-taî Chung-Man hôk-haaû, toh-shò yûng mi-yĕ wâ* shaû fòh kà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 59

VOCABUALARY AND NOTES

hoi-ngoi overseas, a foreign land, beyond the seas; Hoi-Ngoi Wā-K'iū 'Overseas Chinese, Chinese residing overseas'

t'uēn-t'ai a community, a society, an organization, a united body, a group

oi kwǒk patriotic, loyal to one's country, to love one's country; oi-kwǒk-ché 'patriot'

t'ūng-tsung clansmen, of the same stock, people of the same clans

t'ūng-heung people from the same native district or province, fellow-provincials, fellow-countrymen

tsaû-teî from local, indigenous, on the spot

ooî-koón guildhall, guild, association

kung-shóh clan association

kaù-tsaì kam kaù-tsaì 'to relieve distress either with money or with food', a.f.: tsaì; kam 'money, fund, cash, gold'; kaù-tsaì kam 'relief fund'

ooî to return to, to return from, to relapse, Mohammedans, a time, an occasion, a chapter in a novel, a round (boxing, games, etc); Ooî-Kaaû 'Mohammedanism'; ooî kwǒk 'to return to one's country'

ngaâk a fixed number, quota, a settled number, the forehead; ngaâk-shǒ 'a fixed number'; kam ngaâk 'a fixed number of funds'; tsúng ngaâk 'total'

uēn a dollar, the Mongol Dynasty, the first, the head, the chief, the eldest, the principal

yik one hundred million; shâp yik 'a billion'

yûng-t'ō t'ō 'road, way, route'; yûng-t'ō 'usage, the use of'

tsìp-tsaì to help (by money or supply), to supply

k'iū-paau paau 'the womb, brothers by the same mother, fellow-countrymen'; k'iū-paau 'countrymen residing overseas (Overseas Chinese)'; a.f.: Wā-K'iū 'Overseas Chinese'

ts'an-shûk family dependents, relatives, family connections

shau chi shau 'income, to receive what is due, to gather together, to collect, to close, to put away, to bind, to restrain, to bring to an end'; chi 'to spend, to pay, to withdraw (money), to pay out, branch'; shau chi 'receipts and expenditures'; shau chi p'îng-hāng 'balance of receipts and expenditures'

yaŭ-leî leî 'advantage, profit, benefit, interest'; yaŭ-leî 'advantageous, beneficial, good'; pat-leî 'disadvantageous'

yîng-heúng after-effects, influence, to influence, to affect

taaî leûng leûng 'quantity'; taaî leûng 'large scale, large quantity, large amount, magnanimous, liberal-minded'

tsẑ-yaū free, freedom, liberty; Tsẑ-Yaū Chung-Kwòk 'Free China'

fong-shik form, method

kuen foón kuen 'to donate, to contribute(money, etc)'; kuen foón 'to donate money, donation, contribution (money)'

tsz-kam capitals; a.f.: tsz-poón

tsź-taî children, juniors, young people

ts'ź (lit) this, here, now; a.f.: ni

shaû fðh to teach, to give lecture, instruction

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk yān kè tsung-kaaù sùn-yeŭng haî tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yaŭ ti yān, yat fong-mîn paaî tsó-sin, t'ūng-shî yaû yûng kòk chúng tsung-kaaù î-shik, hó-ts'ž Uē Kaaù, Fât Kaaù, Ooî Kaaù, Tô Kaaù, Kei-Tuk Kaaù...Shóh-ĭ, tò-taî sùn mooĭ chúng kaaù kè yān yaŭ toh-shiú, shât-tsoî hó naān chi-tô.

P: Yaŭ yān wâ, Chung-Kwŏk yān paaî tsó-sin, m̄-haî yat-chúng tsung-kaaù, haî yat-chúng maî-sùn. Tîm-kaaî à?

H: Chung-Kwŏk yān chûng haaù-tô. K'uĭ-teî ĭ-waî paaî tsó-sin, tsaû ooĭ tak-tô tsó-sin kè tsuk-fuk t'ūng pó-oô. Kóm yeûng*, ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ wâ-tak paaî tsó-sin m̄-haî yat-chúng tsung-kaaù, pat-kwŏh haî yat-chúng lūn-leĭ haāng-waî kè piú-în.

P: Chung-Kwŏk kè tsung-kaaù t'ūng Chung-Kwŏk kè chìt-hôk kè kwaan-haî tîm kà?

H: K'uĭ-teî haî leŭng-chúng m̄-t'ūng kè yĕ. Laî-uē, Tô Ka t'ūng Tô Kaaù. Tô Ka haî yat-chúng chìt-hôk, tô kaaù haî yat-chúng tsung-kaaù. K'uĭ-teî pat-taân m̄-t'ūng, î-ch'é seung faán.

P: Chung-Kwŏk chué-iù kè tsung-kaaù haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Chung-Kwŏk haî yat-kòh sùn-yeŭng tsẑ-yaū kè kwòk-ka. Chué-iù kè tsung-kaaù haî Uē Kaaù, Fât Kaaù, Ooî Kaaù, Tô Kaaù, La-Mā Kaaù. Tsẑ-ts'ūng Sai-Fong kè T'in-Chué Kaaù t'ūng Kei-Tuk Kaaù ch'uēn yâp Chung-Kwŏk chi haû, yîk yaŭ m̄-shiú yān sùn ni ti kaaù.

Major White: What is the attitude of the Chinese people towards religion?

Lt Colonel Hōh: Some Chinese may worship their ancestors and at the same time follow various religious rituals such as those of Confucianism, Buddhism, Mohammedanism, Taoism, Christianity... Therefore it is almost impossible to find out the number of people who believe in each religion.

W: It is said that worship of ancestors by the Chinese is a superstitious practice and not a religion. What does that mean?

H: The Chinese people emphasize filial piety. They believe that such worship would bring blessings and protection from the dead. Therefore, we can say that ancestor-worship is not a religion but an action demonstrating a filial and ethical practice.

W: What is the relation between the Chinese religions and Chinese philosophies?

H: They are two different things. For example, there is a distinction between Taoism as a philosophy and Taoism as a religion. Their teachings are not only different, but are contradictory.

W: What are the chief religions in China?

H: China is a country in which every person has the undisputed freedom of religious belief. The chief religions are

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

Confucianism, Buddhism, Mohammedanism, Taoism, Lamaism.

Since the introduction of Christianity to China, there have been many who believe in this religion.

白少校：中國人嘅宗教信仰係點㗎？

何中校：有啲人，一方面拜祖先，同時又用各種宗教儀式，好似儒教，佛教，回教，道教，基督教……所以，到底信每種教嘅人有多少，實在好難知道．

白：有人話，中國人拜祖先，唔係一種宗教，係一種迷信．點解呀？

何：中國人重孝道．佢地以為拜祖先，就會得到祖先嘅祝福同保護．敢樣，我地可以話得拜祖先唔係一種宗教，不過係一種倫理行為嘅表現．

白：中國嘅宗教同中國嘅哲學嘅關係係點㗎？

何：佢地係兩種唔同嘅野．例如，道家同道教．道家係一種哲學，道教係一種宗教．佢地不但唔同，而且相反．

白：中國主要嘅宗教係乜野呀？

何：中國係一個信仰自由嘅國家．主要嘅宗教係儒教，佛教，回教，道教，喇嘛教．自從西方嘅天主教同基督教傳入中國之後，亦有唔少人信呢啲教．

世界上任何一個國家，都有不同之傳統哲學，與風俗習慣．因而影響每個國家都有不同之宗教信仰．

一般言之，中國人注重倫理．而「倫理」之最大表現，中國人宗教信仰之一方面，如儒教，道教，佛教，回教，道教，基督教，猶太教，天主教，回教等各種不同之宗教，或有人說，拜祖先是一種迷信．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

QUESTIONS

1. Shaì-kaaì sheûng yâm-hōh yat-kǒh kwǒk-ka, to yaŭ m̄-tʻūng kè tsung-kaaù. Tîm-kaaí à?

2. Haaù-tô haî tîm-kaaí à?

3. Chung-Kwǒk yān tsung-kaaù sùn-yeŭng kè fong-shik tʻūng Sai-Fong yān m̄-tʻūng. Tîm-yeûng* m̄-tʻūng à?

4. Paaì tsó-sin haî tîm-kaaí à?

5. Yaŭ yān wâ, paaì tsó-sin haî yat-chúng maî-sùn. Tîm-kaaí à?

6. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô maî-sùn à?

7. Chung-Kwǒk chué-iù kè tsung-kaaù haî mi-yĕ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

sùn-yeŭng sùn 'to believe in, to believe, to trust, belief, letter'; sùn-yeŭng 'belief, faith'; tsung-kaaù sùn-yeŭng 'religious belief'; sùn-yeŭng tsî-yaū 'freedom of belief'

paaì tsó-sin paaì 'to worship, to bow, to honor, to respect, to visit'; tsó-sin 'ancestor'; paaì tsó-sin 'to worship ancestors, worship of ancestors'

ì-shik ceremonies, a rite, rituals ; tsung-kaaù ì-shik 'religious rituals'

Uē Kaaù kaaù 'religion, to teach, to instruct', a.f.: tsung-kaaù; Uē Kaaù 'Confucian religion'; Uē Ka 'Confucianist philosophy'

Fât Kaaù fât 'buddha'; Fât Kaaù 'Buddhist religion'; Fât Kà 'Buddhist philosophy'

Ooì Kaaù Mohammedan religion

Tô Kaaù Taoist religion; Tô Ka 'Taoist philosophy'

Kei-Tuk Kaaù Kei-Tuk 'Christ'; Kei-Tuk Kaaù 'Protestantism, Christian religion'

maì-sùn superstition, superstitious

chûng to emphasize, to stress, to secure respect for, weighty (in the sense of important), severe, still, yet, moreover, else, too and; chûng haaù-tô 'to emphasize filial piety'

haaù-tô haaù 'filial'; haaù-tô 'filial piety'; chûng haaù-tô 'to emphasize filial piety'

tsuk fuk fuk 'blessings, happiness'; tsuk 'to bless, to invoke, to pray to'; tsuk fuk 'to invoke blessings, to bless'

pó-oô pó 'to protect, to guarantee'; oô 'to protect, protection'; pó-oô 'to protect, protection'

lūn-leĭ ethics, ethical, filial and ethical

haāng-waì behavior, conduct, act, action

piú-în manifestation, expression, to show, to express, to manifest, to reveal, to exhibit; synonym: piú

chìt-hôk philosophy

Tô Ka Taoist philosophy

pat-taân not only, a.f.: m̄-chî (colloq), m̄-tsîng-chî

seung faán seung 'mutual, inter-'; faán 'contrary, but, instead of, to rebel, anti-, to turn over, to retreat'; seung faán 'opposite, on the contrary, contrary to'

La-Mā Kaaù Lama religion

Sai-Fong Western, Caucasian; Tung-Fong 'oriental, occidental'

T'in-Chué Kaaù T'in-Chué 'Lord'; T'in-Chué Kaaù 'Catholic religion'

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE - CANTONESE

REFRESHER COURSE

VOLUME III

ED022178

AL 001 478

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

C H I N E S E - C A N T O N E S E

Refresher Course

Volume III

Instructional Units 61-90

March 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

MATERIALS

Printed Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Recorded Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	"Free China's Fighting Men" MF 30-8444
	1 reel	"Mighty Chinese Armed Forces" USALS 86
	1 reel	"Production of Combat Intelligence" TF 30-1494

*FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 61-90

PRINTED MATERIALS

This volume contains 30 fifty-minute instructional units (Instructional Units 61 through 90) designed for classroom instruction. Each unit contains the following parts:

Oral Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in oral fluency. New elements of the language are introduced for review and study in this part only. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. It is transcribed in romanization, calligraphed in Chinese characters, and translated into idiomatic English.

Reading Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in reading. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. There is a gradual development from conversational to literary style. It is calligraphed in Chinese characters.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. It is transcribed in romanization. The questions and approved answers, calligraphed in Chinese characters, are in the Instructor's Manual.

Vocabulary and Notes. This part contains a complete list of vocabulary and grammatical notes which are intended for study by the student and support current or subsequent materials.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 61-90

RECORDED MATERIALS

As the classroom supervisor or instructor available may or may not be a native linguist, each Instructional Unit is supported by one individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

Oral Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Reading Material. This part also contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Instructional Units, the following study procedures are to be observed when the classroom supervisor or instructor available is not a native linguist:

1. Listen to the Oral Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

2. Repeat after the Oral Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

3. Listen to the Reading Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material.

4. Repeat after the Reading Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material.

5. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

6. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

7. If more time is available, repeat Step 2 and 4.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 61-90

CORRELATED MATERIALS

Instructional Units 61 through 90 are to be correlated with 13 fifty-minute language laboratory practice units (Language Laboratory Practice Units 27 through 39) designed for individual practice. Each unit contains the following parts:

Aural Comprehension Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in aural comprehension. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. As this part is for aural comprehension, no printed material is necessary for the student. This part, transcribed in romanization, is in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. No printed material is necessary for the student. The questions and approved answers, transcribed in romanization, are in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Instead of printed material, the student is issued an individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 61-90

Aural Comprehension Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Language Laboratory Practice Units, the following study procedures are to be observed:

1. Listen to the Aural Comprehension Material Listening Practice.

2. Repeat after Aural Comprehension Material Repeat Practice.

3. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

4. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

5. If more time is available, repeat Step 1, 2, 3, and 4, and/or record at the end of the tape a resumé of the Aural Comprehension Material.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 61-90

TESTING MATERIALS

Instructional Units 61 through 90 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 27 through 39 are to be further correlated with 2 fifty-minute formal testing units (Formal Testing Units 5 and 6) designed to test the student's mastery of the materials in these units. Specific instructions and guidance to the student in connection with the tests are given in each of the Formal Testing Units which are "For Official Use Only".

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 61-90

SCHEDULE

7th Wk				8th Wk				9th Wk			
M	Hr	91 IU	61	M	Hr	106 IU	71	M	Hr	121 IU	81
		92 IU	62			107 IU	72			122 IU	82
		93 LLPU	27			108 LLPU	31			123 LLPU	36
T	Hr	94 IU	63	T	Hr	109 IU	73	T	Hr	124 IU	83
		95 IU	64			110 IU	74			125 IU	84
		96 LLPU	28			111 LLPU	32			126 FTU	6
W	Hr	97 IU	65	W	Hr	112 IU	75	W	Hr	127 IU	85
		98 IU	66			113 IU	76			128 IU	86
		99 LLPU	29			114 LLPU	33			129 LLPU	37
T	Hr	100 IU	67	T	Hr	115 IU	77	T	Hr	130 IU	87
		101 IU	68			116 IU	78			131 IU	88
		102 LLPU	30			117 LLPU	34			132 LLPU	38
F	Hr	103 IU	69	F	Hr	118 IU	79	F	Hr	133 IU	89
		104 IU	70			119 IU	80			134 IU	90
		105 FTU	5			120 LLPU	35			135 LLPU	39

IU - Instructional Unit

LLPU - Language Laboratory Practice Unit

FTU - Formal Testing Unit

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 61-90

CONTENTS

Instructional Unit	Page
61	1
62	8
63	15
64	23
65	30
66	37
67	44
68	52
69	60
70	67
71	75
72	82
73	89
74	96
75	102
76	109
77	117
78	124
79	131
80	139
81	146
82	153

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 61-90

Instructional Unit	Page
83	160
84	167
85	173
86	180
87	187
88	194
89	202
90	211

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 61

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan kè yĕ-chìn tsó-chik haî tîm kà, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan kè yĕ-chìn kei-poón taan-waî* haî sz. Keî kòh sz tsaâp-hôp-maaî shîng kwan. Keî chi kwan tsaâp-hôp-maaî shîng chaâp-t'uēn-kwan. Yaū chìn k'ui sz-lîng chî-fai.

P: Mooĭ kòh sz kè shât-lîk keî taaî à?

H: Ngŏh m̄-haî keî ts'ing-ch'óh. Ngŏh t'eng-mān mooĭ kòh sz kè tsòk-chìn shât-lîk ĭ-king tsang-k'eūng. Yān-uēn t'ūng chong-peî yîk toh-chóh. Taân-haî mooĭ kòh sz kè shât-lîk t'ūng fóh-lîk kè shò-tsẑ pat-t'ūng, seung ch'a hó uĕn.

P: Ni ti sz yaŭ mi-yĕ p'ooì-peî t'ūng fàn-lîn à?

H: Mooĭ kòh sz yîk-to m̄-t'ūng. Yaŭ hó kè tsòk-chìn keî-lûk kè yaŭ kaaù hó kè chong-peî t'ūng fàn-lîn, lîng-tò k'uĭ-teî shîng waî shaang-lîk kwan. Ts'ui-shî chún-peî tsòk-chìn.

P: Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan tuì tâk-pît ping-chúng tîm à?

H: Hó chuè-ì ch'ung-shât tâk-pît ping-chúng kè shât-lîk. Yaŭ hó toh ni ti taan-waî* ĭ-king peî-kaaù ĭ-ts'în tsang-ka keî p'ooĭ. Yaū-k'eî-shî ĭ p'aaù-ping t'ūng kung-ping waî tsuì hîn-chuè. Chong-kaàp pô-tuî* taan-waî* t'ūng chìn-taù lîk yîk tsang-ka m̄-shiú. Yaŭ ts'în-t'ō kè kwan-koon t'ūng sẑ-ping p'aaî huì ngoî-kwòk shaû ko-sham fàn-lîn.

Major White: What is the field organization of the Chinese Army, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The basic field organization of the Chinese Army is the division. Divisions are grouped together to form armies and group armies under the command of area commanders.

W: What is the strength of each division, sir?

H: I'm not sure. I understand the fighting strength of the division has been increased with addition of personnel and equipment. The numerical strength and fire-power in an individual division may be varied to a considerable degree.

W: What kind of equipment and training do these divisions have?

H: They vary from each other. Those with good combat records are to receive better equipment and training so that they may serve as mainstays in combat readiness.

W: What does the Chinese Army think about its special arms, sir?

H: Much attention has been paid to the strengthening of the special arms. The number of these units has been increased several times the previous figures. Increases in artillery and engineering corps are particularly noteworthy. Mechanized units are also increased both in number and in fighting strength. Career officers and men have been sent abroad for advanced training.

白少校：中，架，點係組織戰野既軍陸國中校？

何中校：師·合·集指揮·作戰多既係軍集團力楚經係同野埋合軍幾·大我强個相備·備·兵兵經兵位*既練，備？力前為力士·

白：個唔每我

何：

白：啲呢每

何：

白何：國注中好

白：好幾著加去·唔外

何：單位*係師·既作戰紀錄佢·

白：基軍戰成由呀？聞人員實遠練既練準呀實以兵鬥同

何：本·區司校令·戰令作·有加顯增派·增最亦兵

白：戰野既聽·師差同訓時點既較工戰官

何：個同力·

白：師裝同

何：既備火力既

白：好訓練

何：

白：有同隨種種比同同軍·

何：

白：

何：

白：

何：

白：

基本集師，軍，軍，團軍，組織之干單位*有集合而成單位*，若干師集團，為營，連，排，之單位*班集合而成集團軍。

戰實戰之備，取隊*部程為干員，之定將若人差而可力，其要時需實同之要事必之隊*都軍，部後以見各戰，起於與小利强大勝增力事實

訓黃，，法全府以校有校校練完政，軍者學學訓後，訓種名士兵式戰內受各著軍砲國圖美有較，德式範來國，校校用德能官中兵學學採替可軍，士官兵國代在之練與軍步中式，種訓官軍有前國備兵之軍陸校戰美配各要隊*之央學用與位*需部種中種等採練單之於兵，兵校漸*訓各代至種校之學漸式派時各軍別訊時美量應練埔特通戰用盡適

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 61

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan kè taan-waî* yaŭ mi-yĕ à?

2. Yĕ-chìn tsó-chik kè kei-poón taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ à?

3. Wōng-Pò Kwan-haaû haî pin shuè à?

4. Chung-Kwòk ch'uî-chóh yaŭ Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaû chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ yat-kaan chuè-mîng kè mi-yĕ lûk-kwan kwan-haaû à?

5. Tâk-pît kè ping-chúng hôk-haaû haî mi-yĕ à?

6. Neĭ shûk-ue mi-yĕ ping-chúng à?

7. Chìn ts'în Chung-Kwòk ts'oî-yûng pin kwòk kè fàn-lîn paân-faàt à?

8. Haû-loî tsîm-tsîm ts'oî-yûng pin kwòk kè fàn-lîn paân-faàt à?

9. Ī-ka Tsẑ-yaū Chung-Kwòk ts'oî-yûng pin kwòk kè fàn-lîn paân-faàt?

10. În-tsoî Tsẑ-Yaū Chung-Kwòk p'aaì hó toh kwan-koon huì pin kwòk shaû fàn?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 61

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

yĕ-chìn field operation, a battle in the open, irregular skirmishing; yĕ-chìn kwan 'field army'

tsaâp-hôp to group together, to assemble, to gather together; synonym: tsaâp, hôp

chi AN (branch, stick, pen, army, branch, twig

chaâp-t'uēn-kwan chaâp-t'uēn 'bloc'; chaâp-t'uēn-kwan 'army group, group army'

chìn k'ui war zone, war theater; taî-yat chìn k'ui 'first war zone'

sz-lîng commander, commanding officer; a.f.: sz-lîng-koon; chìn-k'ui sz-lîng 'commander of war zone'

shât-lîk strength

tsang-k'eūng to strengthen, to increase

chong-peî equipment; Meî-Kwòk chong-peî 'American-equipped'; Meĭ Shik chong-peî 'American-equipped'; a.f.: p'ooì-peî

fóh-lîk fire power

p'ooì-peî equipment, to equip; a.f.: chong-peî; Meĭ shik p'ooì-peî 'American-equipped'; p'ooì-peî leūng-hó 'well-equipped'

shaang-lîk kwan fresh troops, reinforcement

ts'uî-shî at all times, any time, whenever

ping-chúng arm; a.f.: ping-foh; îp-foh 'service' ; ping foh t'ūng îp-foh 'arm and service'; tâk-pît ping-chúng 'special arm'

ch'ung-shât to strengthen, to increase, to build up

p'ooĭ double, to double, joined to a numeral--a time, one-fold; yat p'ooĭ 'one time, 100%'; leŭng p'ooĭ 'two times'

p'aaù-ping p'aaù 'artillery, cannon, gun'; p'aaù-ping 'artillery unit, artillery'

kung-ping engineering unit, engineer

chong-kaàp kaàp 'armor, scale, fingernail, a cyclic

character'; chong-kaàp 'armor, armored'; chong-kaàp pô-tuî* 'armored unit, mechanized unit'

chìn-taù lîk combat strength

ts'în-t'ō future (individual and career); a.f.: ts'în-ch'îng; yaŭ ts'în-t'ō 'promising, good prospect and future'

ko-sham advanced, profound, further; ko-sham fàn-lîn 'further training, advanced training'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 62

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan kè chong-peî tʻūng pó-kʻap kè taaî-kʻoì tsʻîng-yîng tîm à, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Sui-în Chung-Kwòk î-kʻaaù Meĭ-Kwòk kung-kʻap fei-kei, chʻŭng pʻaaù, tʻūng kʻeî-tʻa san shik chong-peî, taân-haî kʻuĭ tsẑ-keî kè ping-kung chʻóng chaì-tsô chʻung-fân hing ping-heì faàt-kʻap kwan-tuî*. Waî shik-yîng ping-kung chʻóng kè sui-iù heî-kìn, chʻìt-laâp hó toh kòng-tʻìt chʻóng, fóh-yeûk chʻóng, fà-hôk chʻóng. Toh-shò ping-kung chʻóng yaŭ kʻuĭ-teî tsẑ-keî kè faàt-tîn-kei, tsʻong-foò, tʻūng-maaî fan-pò kè tui-tsik shóh tʻūng pó-kʻap tîm.

P: Chaì-fûk kè tsʻîng-yîng tîm à?

H: Tung-tʻin tʻūng hâ-tʻin kè chaì-fûk, sut-shaam, taî-shaam-foò, haaî mât yaŭ chʻung-fân kè faàt-kʻap. Sui-în yat pô-fân kè mât-tsz haî ngoî-loî kè, taân-haî toh-shò yûng poón-teî chaì-tsô kè pò laî tsô chaì-fûk.

P: Chung-Kwòk ping kè haú-leūng tîm à?

H: Kʻuĭ-teî mooĭ yān mooĭ yât chʻuî-chóh pʻooì-kʻap taaî-yeùk* î-shàp-seì-kòh on-sẑ* maĭ waâk î-shâp-lûk-kòh on-sẑ* mîn-fán chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ chʻung-fân taû*, tsʻoì, tʻūng yûk, ĭ Chung-Kwòk yān kè piu-chún, leūng-shîk hó chʻung-tsuk, yîng-yeŭng hó kaù, yám shîk pʻîng-kwan.

Major White: What is the general condition of equipment and supplies of the Chinese Army, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: Although China has to depend upon the United States for supplies of airplanes, heavy artillery, and other modern equipment, her arsenals are producing enough small arms to equip her troops. Iron and steel mills, powder factories, chemical works have been founded to meet military work shops needs. Most of the arsenals have their power-generators, and store-houses, distribution dumps and supply points.

W: What about the uniforms?

H: Winter and summer uniforms, shirts, underwear, shoes and socks are adequately provided for the troops. Part of the materials are imported, but they generally use home-spun cloth for uniforms.

W: What about the Chinese soldier's rations?

H: The Chinese soldiers are given about 24 ounces of rice or 26 ounces of flour per person a day, besides a sufficient quantity of beans, vegetables, and meat. As far as the Chinese standard is concerned, the ration is adequate and full of nourishment, and the diet is balanced.

白少校：中國陸軍既裝備同補給既大概*情形點呀，中校？

何中校：雖然中國倚靠美國供給飛機，重砲，，同其他新式造兵工，但係佢自己軍隊*·好多數兵工廠火藥廠自己既發設立好多數倉庫，同埋佢既堆積廠·電機，給點·同補情夏襪物製既人士*有既標飲食既同鞋既地兵每安重人够

白：服天

何：制冬

白：國地

何：中佢

制服，恤衫，底衫褲，份
份既來黎呀？
發既，但係多數用本
給·雖然一部份
制服·

配六菜食好
大約*二十四個外，
安同充足，營養好
士*麵粉之中國
個，以
粒*，粮均·
除二十
咗十
給個，好
士*肉，
大安同充
約*二十四個外，
麵粉之中國
以營養好
均·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 62

READING MATERIAL

倚中內製用之火
上，援在量使廠，
度項中為部兵學
程各時務區應化
干在同任戰適，
若助適，其各為廠
中國援普廠發金鋼
時，濟為工備，五千
戰事兵若有國設廠
大軍重立與中國電
次之及設器時中發
二國機份兵當，
美飛省輕於要廠
靠以地造由需藥

困難，
隊部用地之布衫，
運因各廠，與本，羊毛衫，
輸方利本，羊毛衫，
始，給軍服花棉之品．
已開遍設毛天常
雖能政如種種
援未，各各
時資與及
當物服援軍襪，
美援軍美成毛
美以份製羊

制度．
給，菜，肉等．
配取採軍粉，豆，
方面，國麵，米
軍糧品為
於配自給．
至之供自
主要自
能

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 62

QUESTIONS

1. Taî-Î-Ts'ż Taaî-Chìn kè shī-haû, Chung-Kwòk tsuì î-k'aaù pin kwòk kè oōn-chôh à?

2. Kóh chân-shī Chung-Kwòk î-k'aaù Meǐ-Kwòk kè mi-yĕ oōn-chôh à?

3. Kóh chân-shī kè Meǐ-Kwòk kwan-sż oōn-chôh paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ?

4. Kóh chân-shī Chung-Kwòk ping-kung ch'óng taaî-leûng chaì-tsô pin chúng ping-heì?

5. Tîm-kaaî Chung-Kwòk yaû kìn-laâp hó toh kòng t'ìt ch'óng à?

6. Chung-Kwòk kè chaì-fûk ch'óng chaì-tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

7. Chì-ue kwan-leūng fong-mîn, Chung-Kwòk ts'oî-ts'uî mi-yĕ chaì-tô?

8. Chung-Kwòk kwan-leūng kè chué-iù p'ooì-k'ap pán haî mi-yĕ à?

9. Meǐ-Kwòk yān toh-shò shîk maǐ yik-waâk mîn-fán à?

10. Chung-Kwòk ping kè yīng-yeŭng kaù mà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 62

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

taaî-k'oì in general, probably, generally, for the most part

î-k'aaù to depend on, to rely on, to count on; a.f.: kaaù

kung-k'ap to supply, to provide with, to furnish, to equip; synonym: kung, k'ap

ping-kung ch'óng ping-kung 'ordnance'; ping-kung ch'óng 'arsenal'

chaì-tsô to make, to manufacture, to produce, to form, to compound; a.f.: chaì, tsô

ch'ung-fân enough, sufficient, ample, a full measure

hing ping-heì ping-heì 'arm, weapon', synonym: mŏ-heì; hing ping-heì 'small arm'; ch'ŭng ping-heì 'heavy weapon'

faàt-k'ap to issue to, issuance

fóh-yeûk ch'óng fóh-yeûk 'fire powder'; fóh-yeûk ch'óng 'powder factory'

faàt-tîn-kei generator

ts'ong-foò ts'ong 'granary, a bin'; foò 'storehouse, dump, armoury'; ts'ong-foò 'storehouse, warehouse, stockroom'

fan-pò pò 'to distribute, to arrange'; fan-pò 'to distribute, to scatter, distribution'

tui-tsik shóh tui 'a pile, a heap, mass, to heap, to pile up'; tsik 'to pile up, to store, to accumulate, to gather, to hoard'; tui-tsik 'to pile up, to hoard'; tui-tsik shóh 'dumps'

pó-k'ap tîm pó-k'ap 'to supply, supply'; tîm 'point, station, dot'; pó-k'ap tîm 'supply joint, supply station'

taî-shaam-foò taî-shaam 'underwear, T-shirt'; foò 'pants, trousers'; taî-foò 'shorts'; taî-shaam-foò 'underwear (T-shirt and shorts)'

ngoî-loî imported, foreign, foreign made

haú-leūng leūng 'provision'; haú-leūng 'ration'

p'ooì-k'ap p'ooì 'to ration, to distribute, to share, to match, to pair, worthy'; p'ooì-k'ap 'to ration, ration, rationing goods'

on-sẑ* ounce

mîn-fán mîn 'wheat'; fán 'powder'; mîn-fán 'flour'

taû* bean, pea

piu-chún standard, normal standard, a mark to aim at, an example, basis of comparison; piu-chún fà 'to standardize, standardized'

leūng-shîk provisions, food

ch'ung-tsuk tsuk 'enough, satisfied, complete, the foot'; ch'ung-tsuk 'sufficient for, ample, enough, well-supplied'

yîng-yeūng nourishment, nutrition

yám shîk yám 'to drink, drinking, beverage'; shîk 'to eat, eating, food'; yám shîk 'food and drink, food'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 63

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Kwan-sẑ kaaù-yûk kwai pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chàak chué-chʰî kà, chung-kaaù?

Hōh-Chung-Kaaù: Yaū Kwan-Sẑ Fàn-Lîn Wai-Uēn Ooî*. Taân-haî yaŭ hó toh tâk-pît kwan haaû chîk shûk kʰeî-tʰa kwan-sẑ kei-kwaan.

P: Tsʰaam-Maū Hôk-Haaû haî tîm kà?

H: Tsʰaam-Maū Hôk-Haaû haî Chung-Kwòk kwan-sẑ fàn-lîn kè tsuì ko hôk-haaû. Fàn-lîn lûk-kwan, hoì-kwan, hung-kwan kwan-koon. Chì-uēn kwan-koon pit-sui yaŭ kʰuĭ-teî kè taan-waî* chî-fai koon pó-tsìn, tʰūng tsʰaam-ka haaú shì, haaú shì kʰâp-kaàk, chì hóh-ĭ yâp Tsʰaam-Maū Hôk-Haaû. Haî Tsʰaam-Maū Hôk-Haaû, kʰuĭ-teî hôk-tsaâp luĭ chì-tò kwan kè tsʰaam-maū tʰūng chî-fai chik-chaàk. Pîng-chʰé hôk tsʰaam-maū kè chik-cheúng.

P: Kwan-koon kwan-sẑ kaaù-yûk kè kei-poón hôk-haaû haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Kei-poón hôk-haaû haî Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû. Ni kaan hôk-haaû kè tsʰîn-shan tsik-haî chuè-mîng kè Kwóng-Chau Wōng-Pò Kwan Haaû. Tsẑ-tsʰūng yat-kaú-î-seì nīn Wōng-Pò Kwan Haaû hoi-paân ĭ-loì, Chung-Yeung Kwan Haaû tʰūng fan haaû pat îp-chóh taaî-yeùk* shâp-maân-kòh kwan-koon hôk-shaang. Meî chʰìt-tʰuì tò Tʰoî-Waan chi tsʰîn, ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ kaú-kaan ĭ sheûng kè fan haaû saàn-pò haî kòk shaáng teî-fong.

P: Ni ti kwan-koon shaang kè fàn-lîn haî tîm kà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 63

H: King-kwòh yat nîn chì saam nîn kè fàn-lîn, kʻuǐ-teî peî yâm-mîng waì shiù-waì. Fûk-yîk shò nîn chi haû, kʻuǐ-teî waâk-ché peî pʻaaì huì tâk-pît ping-chúng hôk-haaû shaû kó-táng fàn-lîn.

Major White: Which organization is responsible and in charge of military education, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The Board of Military Training. However, a number of special schools are under other military organs.

W: What is the Staff College?

H: The Staff College is the highest institution of military learning in China, open to officers in the land, naval, and air forces. Candidates must have the recommendation of their unit commanders and pass an examination before they may enter the Staff College. In the college they are taught staff and command duties from brigade to army, together with functions of staff officers.

W: What is the basic school of military education for officers?

H: The basic school is the Central Military Academy. Its predecessor was the famous Whampoa Military Academy in Canton. Since 1924 when the Whampoa Academy was first established, the Central Military Academy and its branches have graduated approximately 100,000 cadets. Before the withdrawal to Taiwan, it had more than nine branch schools distributed in various provincial areas.

W: How much training do these cadets receive?

H: The cadets are given one to three years of training after which they are commissioned as second lieutenants. After a few years service, they may enter special arms schools for advanced training.

白少校：軍事教育歸邊個機關負責主持㗎，多好。

何中校：軍事訓練委員會*，但係有關軍事機構，其他軍校、志官學校、揮格學校，

白：謀參謀：中校軍別校校練軍薦可地責事校校辦大台嘅官年少派去被

何：參謀：由特學學訓願保至佢職軍學軍開咗到上軍一為被

白：少校：？

何：中校：

白：

何：

白：

何：

白：

何

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 63

READING MATERIAL

美人漸部參，軍身國十訓高級
歐與已大，校之前全在軍最高揮後
較府礎，學學本之在生陸國之指然
雖政基作大官基校校學，全軍位，
育於之工．軍軍最該該業後為三單格
教由育育持陸軍，．，畢灣校空由及
事，教教主有海言校前，台學海須試
軍後事事責校，而學陸校至謀陸，考
之立軍軍員學校軍官大分撤參練者；
國成國之會*育學陸軍退間府．訓校試
中國中國員教官以軍撤九政部責入考
般但斷．事事軍．陸未有民南員願加
一，不立軍軍軍軍校央．設國灣，志參
後之建歸之陸學中校市自台一．須．
落民漸份國，官為軍城．在之才並訓
中校軍校埔大上心校人，受
學軍學黃干以中軍謀薦校
謀空官為若萬練之參保入

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 63

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kwan-sẑ kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan chuế-ch'ì à?

2. Uē-kwóh yat-kòh kwòk-ka kwan-sẑ kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk tsô-tak m̄-hó, kóh kòh kwòk-ka ooī tîm à?

3. Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû kè ts'în-shan haî pin kaan kwan-haaû?

4. Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaû haî pin-kòh kìn laâp kà?

5. Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû yaŭ keî toh kaan fan-haaû à?

6. Yâp kwan-haaû tûk-shue kè hôk-shaang haî chì-uên kè, yik-waâk haî peî k'eūng-pik kè à?

7. Tsẑ-ts'ūng hoi-paân chi haû, pat-îp kè hôk-shaang yaŭ keî-toh à?

8. Tsẑ-ts'ūng Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó ch'ìt-t'uì tò T'oî-Waan chi haû, Lûk-Kwan fàn-lîn chung-sam haî T'oî-Waan pin shuè à?

9. Chung-Kwòk yaŭ mi-yĕ hoî-kwan hôl-haaû à?

10. Chung-Kwòk yaŭ mi-yĕ hung-kwan hôk-haaû à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 63

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kwai to belong to, under the jurisdiction of, to make part of, under the charge of, to return to, to go back

chué-ch'ī to take charge of, to be responsible for, to handle, to manage, to preside over

chîk shûk chîk 'directly, direct', a.f.: chîk-tsìp; shûk 'to belong to', a.f.: shûk-ue; chîk shûk 'directly belong to, under the direct jurisdiction of'

ts'aam-maū staff officer, staff; ts'aam-maū-cheúng 'chief of staff'; ts'aam-maū hôk-haaû 'Staff College'

chì-uên uên 'willing, willingly, a wish'; chì-uên 'willing, voluntary, willingly, voluntarily'

pit-sui necessary, required, to have to, must; a.f.: pit, sui

pó-tsìn pó 'to guarantee, to protect, to insure, to go bail for, to reserve'; tsìn 'to recommend and guarantee'; pó-tsìn 'to recommend and guarantee, recommendation'

ts'aam-ka to participate, to take part, to join, to attend; synonym: ts'aam

k'âp-kaàk to pass (in an examination), up to the standard or grade, up to the mark

hôk-tsaâp to learn by practice, to practice, to learn; a.f.: hôk, tsaâp

luĭ brigade, to travel, to lodge at, a hotel

chik-chaàk duty, responsibility, official charge; a.f.: chik, chaàk, chaàk-yâm

pîng-ch'é also, moreover, in addition, but yet, still; a.f.: pîng, ch'é, ì-ch'é

chik-cheúng function, duty, responsibility

ts'în-shan predecessor, forerunner

hoi-paân to establish, to start operation, to put into operation; synonym: hoi

fan haaû branch school

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 63

kwan-koon hŏk-shaang a cadet

ch'ìt-t'uì ch'ìt 'to withdraw, to remove, to dissolve, to dismiss'; t'uì 'to withdraw, to give back, to turn back, to return unaccepted, to recede (as tide, fever)'; ch'ìt-t'uì 'to withdraw, to retreat, to pull out, withdrawal'

saàn-pò to spread, to scatter, to disseminate, to disperse; synonym: saàn, pò

yâm-mîng to appoint, to nominate, mission; a.f.: yâm, waî-yâm, waî

fûk-yîk fûk 'to serve, to submit, to be willing, to swallow, a dose of medicine, clothe'; yîk 'military service, battle, to serve as a servant, servant'; fûk-yîk 'to render the military service'

shŏ several, a few, number, account, to calculate, to count, to enumerate

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 64

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiû-Kaaù: Fàn-lîn haû-peî kwan-koon tsʰoî-yûng mi-yĕ kè paân-faàt à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Shóh yaŭ ko-kʰap chung-hŏk tʰūng taaî-hŏk kè naām hŏk-shaang yat-tîng iù haî hŏk-haaû shuè shaû kwan-sî kaaù-lîn. Tʰūng-maaî pat-chóh îp kè shué kà, yat-tîng iù tŏ kwan yîng shaû ko-táng fàn-lîn. Ni chúng kè fàn-lîn haî tʰūng tong-teî pŏ-tuî*, waâk chuè kwan, waâk foŏ-kân kwan haaû, mât-tsʰìt hôp-tsŏk hîp-tʰūng uēn-shîng fàn-lîn. Kaú-m-kaú Kwan-Sî Fàn-Lîn Waî-Uēn Ooî* pʰaaì kîm-chʰā koon tʰiū-chʰā mooĭ kaan hŏk-haaû kè fàn-lîn tsùn-haang tʰūng shîng-tsik.

P: Chung-Kwŏk kè kwan haaû yaŭ mi-yĕ kè koî-shîn à?

H: Yaū shât-tsaì tsŏk-chìn shóh tak kè king-îm, sau-koî taaî pŏ-fân kè fàn-lîn. Laî-uē Chung-Yeung Kwan-Koon Hŏk-Haaû tʰūng fan haaû, tʰūng kʰeî-tʰa kè tâk-pît ping-chúng hŏk-haaû, hó chuè-chûng chuen-moōn fàn-lîn. Seúng lîng-tŏ paan-fōng* tʰūng chìn chʰeūng yaŭ mât-tsʰìt kwaan-haî, kan-kuì shât-tsaì tsŏk-chìn shóh sui-iù kè tʰiū-kîn* laî shât-haāng kwan-sî fàn-lîn. Shóh-ĭ tsoî kaaù tsʰoî sheûng, kaaù shût sheûng, chʰîng-tsuî sheûng yaŭ m̄-shiú kang-koî.

P: Kʰuĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ yĕ-chìn în-tsaâp kà?

H: Tong-în* yaŭ la. Kuî-haāng yĕ-chìn în-tsaâp, m̄-chî toh-kwòh ĭ-tsʰîn, î-chʰé yaŭ-kòm-toh-tak-kòm-toh. În-tsaâp-tak kîk chi pik-chan tʰim pòh.

Major White: What measures have been taken in the matter of training of reserve officers, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The training of reserve officers takes place in senior high schools and colleges where all male students are required to take military drill on their own school campuses, and by an intensive training in barracks the summer following their graduation. Such training is conducted and accomplished in close cooperation and coordination with local forces or garrisons or nearby institutions of military training. From time to time, the Board of Military Training sends inspectors to check up on the progress and results of training.

W: What improvements have been made by the Chinese military schools?

H: Experience gained in actual combat has modified considerably the training. For example, specialization is emphasized in the Central Military Academy and its branches as well as in the various special arms schools. Closer relationship between classrooms and battlefields is sought by basing education on actual fighting requirements. Numerous changes have thus been made in teaching materials, methods, and procedures.

W: Do they conduct field maneuvers?

H: Of course they do. Field maneuvers are conducted more often than before and as much as possible in a most realistic way.

呀？一埋受地切事學份分好
法生同營當密軍間部同，戰所所有
辦學．軍同，久每大校校*房作練序上
既男練到係校唔查改學學班際訓程同戰．
野既教要練軍久調．呀？修官種到實事，
也學事定訓近．官績善，軍兵令據軍上，過習
用大軍一既附練查成改驗央別想根行術多演．祇多．唔多
採同受，種或訓撿同既經中特
官學處假呢，成派行野既如既
軍中校暑．軍完會*進也得例他
備級學既練駐同員練有所．其
後高喺業訓或協委訓校戰練同
練有要咗等隊*，作練既軍作訓
訓所定畢高部合訓校既際既校
白：少校：
何：中校：

白：中國寶
何：由

白：地*
何：佢當然

演習，咁多得咁多。
演習野戰咁嘢。
演行且真落嘢。
習野有落嘢。
習嘅？

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 64

READING MATERIAL

為官．一為軍官，一為現役軍官．如加軍官之備役有軍職，參校學生都須備後可戰服役．

後備軍官為現役軍官曾受過，後備軍官為現在軍校學生，備備軍官為現在軍校學時學業時，備備能事役．

有兩類，一為職前命令時，可密野大役在練與假練合作．

兩大類無或可隨時件．時生行現役在軍政後令．

現役有軍官．府備軍服軍官，之備務．官參加

在中國，所軍訓附學營地

中校受駐校場作軍干之，軍戰據有若係習

要至與當房須故能切戰

高級練進校有事練近所受等或中．行密切

訓關作術到練真．

門之與教達訓練逼

專切驗，以在為

重密經材，極注生之教改的形極發戰事修目情

目施要程戰時

其實須練與，

練．所訓房內

練係戰與班期

班

令時，

為訓條隨發舉

的軍之序場時

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 64

QUESTIONS

1. Kwan-koon yaŭ pin leŭng taaî luî à?

2. Mi-yĕ kiù-tsô în-yîk kwan-koon à?

3. Mi-yĕ kiù-tsô haû-peî kwan-koon à?

4. Uē - kwóh chìn-chaang paaù-faàt, haû-peî kwan-koon iù m̄-iù ts'aam-ka tsòk-chìn à?

5. Chung-Kwòk kè ko k'ap chung-hôk hôk-shaang iù m̄-iù tsìp-shaû kwan-fàn?

6. Tsìp-shaû kwan-fàn kè shî-haû, hôk-haaû iù t'ūng pin ti kei-kwaan mât-ts'ìt hôp-tsòk à?

7. Kwan-haaû hó chuè-chûng chuen-moōn fàn-lîn. Mûk-tik haî tîm à?

8. Tîm-kaaî iù lîng-tò paan-fōng* t'ūng chìn-ch'eūng faàt-shaang mât-ts'ìt kwaan-haî?

9. Shât-shi kwan-fàn kè shî-haû, iù kan-kuì mi-yĕ t'iū-kîn* à?

10. Kwan-fàn kè kaaù-ts'oî shî-shî yaŭ kaang-koî, tîm-kaaî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 64

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

haû-peî kwan-koon haû-peî 'reserved'; haû-peî kwan-koon 'reserved officer'

kaaù-lîn lîn 'to train'; kaaù-lîn 'to drill, drills, coach'; kwan-sẑ kaaù-lîn 'military drills'; kwan-sẑ fan-lîn 'military training', abbr.: kwan fàn

shué kà shué 'summer heat, hot'; kà 'holiday, vacation'; shué kà 'summer vacation'

kwan yîng barracks, military camp

tong-teî on the spot, place concerned, local place

chuè kwan chuè 'to station at, to occupy (troops), to stop at, sojourn'; chuè kwan 'the stationed soldier, the troops of occupation, to station troops at'

mât-ts'ìt closely connected, closely related, close; mât-ts'ìt kè kwaan-haî 'close relationship'

hìp-t'ūng to coordinate, coordination, coordinated

kaú-m̄-kaú kaú 'a long time'; kaú-m̄-kaú i.e. 'from time to time, once in a while'

kîm-ch'ā koon kîm 'to inspect, to search'; ch'ā 'to investigate, to find out, to search'; kîm-ch'ā 'to inspect, to search, inspection'; kîm-ch'ā koon 'inspector'

sau-koî to modify, to revise, to amend, to reform, to remodel

chuè-chûng to emphasize, to stress; a.f.: chûng

chuen-moōn specialized, special, professional; chuen-moōn fàn-lîn 'specialized training, special training'

paan-fōng* classroom

kaaù shût shût 'technique, trick, device, method'; kaaù shût 'teaching technique, teaching method'

ch'îng-tsuî tsuî 'procedure, in order, a preface; ch'îng tsuî 'procedure, sequence, order, process, agenda'

kaang-koî(kang-koî) to change, to modify, to alter, to amend; a.f.: kaang, koî

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 64

în-tsaâp maneuver; synonym: <u>în</u>; <u>kwan-sẑ</u> <u>în-tsaâp</u> 'military maneuver'

kuî-haāng to conduct, to take place, to put into operation, to hold, to stage

yaŭ-kǒm...tak-kǒm... i.e. as ... as possible; <u>yaŭ-kǒm-toh-tak-kǒm-toh</u> 'as much as possible, as many as possible'

pik-chan acted just like real, vivid, it strives with the original for likeness

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 65

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Ch'uí-chóh neĭ kóng-kwòh ti kwan haaû chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ kwan-sẑ kaaù-yûk hôk-haaû à, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haí Kwòk-Fōng Pô, Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Pô, Hoí-Kwan Tsúng-Pô, Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Pô, Luēn-K'ān Tsúng-Pô koón-hât chi hâ, yaŭ Ts'íng-Pò Hôk-Haaû, Lûk-Kwan Pô-Ping Hôk-Haaû, Lûk-Kwan P'aaù-Ping Hôk-Haaû, Kung-Ping Hôk-Haaû, Wân-Shue Hôk-Haaû, Kwan-Sui Hôk-Haaû, Chong-Kaàp Pô-Tuî* Hôk-Haaû, T'ung-Sùn Hôk-Haaû, Ping-Kung Hôk-Haaû, Kwan-I Hôk-Haaû, Shaù-I Hôk-Haaû, Kwan-Koon Ngoî-Uĕ Hôk-Haaû, Tûng-Uēn Kòn-Pô Hôk-Haaû, Hoí-Kwan Lûk-Chìn-Tuî* Hôk-Haaû...Ch'uí-chóh ni ti chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ hó toh tâk-pît paan, tsòk tuén k'eí waâk ch'eūng k'eí fàn-lîn tâk-pît yâm-mô. Ni ti haî t'aí waān-kíng laí ts'aù í tsó-chik k'âp kaaí-saàn kà.

P: Chung-Kwòk kè mŏ-chong pô-tuî* kè koí-p'in t'ūng fàn-lîn haî yat-kîn king-yān kè kît-tsòk laī kè. Tuì mà?

H: Haî là, shiù-kaaù. Yan-waî Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan ping-uēn kòm p'ōng-taaî. Kung-tsòk iù fan-hoi keí kòh kaai-tuên. Mooĭ kòh kaai-tuên tsuì tai haân-tô iù keí kòh uêt. Mooĭ kòh kaai-tuên kè hoi-ch'î, koí-p'in t'ūng shaû fàn kè pô-tuî* iù taât-tò yan t'ūng chong-peî kè shât-lîk kè piu-chún. Ĭ shât-teî tsòk-chìn king-îm waí kei-ch'óh, laí shât-haāng uēn-shîn kè fàn-lîn. Kaú-m̄-kaú ko-k'ap cheúng-koon peî p'aaì ch'ut huì chí-tô, heùng koí-p'in pô-tuî* ts'uēn-t'aí tseùng-sẑ fàn-wâ*.

Major White: Besides the military schools you mentioned before, what are the other institutions for military education, sir?

Lt Colonel Höh: Under the direction of the Ministry of National Defense, GHQ of Ground Forces, GHQ Naval Forces, GHQ Air Forces and GHQ Combined Service Forces are the Intelligence School, Infantry School, Artillery School, Engineer's School, Transportation School, Quartermaster Corps School, Mechanized Unit School, Signal School, Ordnance School, Army Medical School, Veterinary School, Officer's Language School, Mobilization Cadre School, Marines School...besides, there are a number of special classes for short or long term training for special duties. They are established and dissolved as the situation requires.

W: The reorganization and training of the Chinese armed forces is a stupendous task. Isn't it so?

H: Yes, indeed, Major. Because of the huge size of the Chinese Army, the work has to be carried out in several stages, each lasting at least several months. At the beginning of each stage, units to be reorganized and trained are brought up to standard strength in men and equipment. A comprehensive training program, based on experience gained in actual combat, is enforced. High-ranking officers are sent out from time to time to give guidance or orientations to the rank and file of units under reorganization.

白少校：也有重外之校呀軍校過講教你事咗除野喺空有軍校通獸幹咗啲作啲嘅。

何中校：部，總部下，陸軍校，運學校，軍醫學校，海軍學校，管兵學校部，部步學甲校語戰好特組同對陸個個受力礎高部總軍兵裝學外陸有練而編。國幾幾同實基久編軍勤陸工，工官軍重訓凌改嘅中開要編嘅為唔改嘅學陸聯，校兵軍海，期黎嘅黎為分度改備驗久向育，校學，外長境隊作困要限，裝經。作低始同戰練導部學學需校校之或環部傑。作低始同戰練導總報兵軍學學啲期睇裝嘅校工最開人作訓指。國軍情砲，訊醫部呢短係武人少。段嘅到地嘅去話。

白：國啦

中：係啦

何：學，校，員……除，班，呢，嘅件。

麗個階要以完派士咁每個隊。行被將員。每部準實官體段。嘅標黎長全月訓嘅，級隊。

兵？

國，此學，在部，軍校，部軍總部·在種校，防陸總部·兵學學校，國為勤有，兵校校，為聯校校，學學關門與學學校，機部，育兵兵學校輸部政要部教步工訊，員軍重總事如，通校動高個軍軍，校，學，最四空，校學校醫校之有，下學隊學獸學國下部之別戰隊，語中之總門特陸部校外部軍與軍甲學官防海四校海裝醫軍

未階部戰實軍·練每各作，陸訓·使，驗之次編·化經良每改月準之優大·之段時量作成庵階須盡地隊為干度能實部極若限力據各員過低實根使兵經最與後，軍須，備然練國陸必久裝·訓中前，甚員等之開始須之又完段隊力施

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 65

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk tsuì ko kè kwan-Chìng kei-kwaan haî mi-yĕ à?
2. Kwòk-Fōng Pô chi hâ, yaŭ pin seì-kòh chué-iù kwan-sẑ pô-moōn?
3. Mi-yĕ kiù-tsô Hoî-Kwan Lûk-Chìn Tuî* à?
4. Kwan-Sui foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
5. Kwan-tuî* kè shaû-i foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
6. Ts'ing-pò hôk-haaû haî yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ kà?
7. Neĭ shaû-kwòh ch'eūng k'eî kè ts'ing-pò fàn-lîn, yik-waâk tuén k'eî kè ts'ing-pò fàn-lîn à?
8. Neĭ shik kóng pin chúng ngoî-uĕ à?
9. Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan ping-uēn kòm p'ōng-taaî. Mooĭ ts'ẑ fàn-lîn meî hoi-ch'î chi ts'in, sin iù tîm à?
10. Fàn-lîn chi ts'in, tîm-kaaî sin iù koî-p'in à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 65

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Pô Tsúng-Pô 'Headquarters, General Headquarters'; a.f.: Tsúng-Sz-Lîng-Pô; Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Pô 'General Headquarters of the Army, General Headquarters of the Ground Forces', a.f.: Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng-Pô, Lûk Tsúng

Hoî-Kwan Tsúng-Pô General Headquarters of the Naval Forces; a.f.: Hoî-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng-Pô, Hoî Tsúng

Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Pô General Headquarters of the Air Force; a.f.: Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng-Pô, Hung Tsúng

Luēn-K'ān Tsúng-Pô Luēn-K'ān 'Combined Service Force'; a.f.: Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô; Luēn-K'ān Tsúng-Pô 'General Hq of the Combined Service Force'; a.f.: Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsúng-Sz-Lîng-Pô

ts'îng-pò intelligence

pô-ping infantry

kwan-sui quartermaster

kwan-i medical corps, military physician

shaù-i shaù 'animals'; shaù-i 'veterinary surgeon, veterinarian'

ngoî-uĕ foreign language; a.f.: ngoî-mān

kòn-pô cadre; Tûng-Uēn Kòn-Pô Hôk-Haaû 'Mobilization Cadre School'

tuén k'eî short period

t'áî...laî ts'aù ts'aù 'to collect, to consolidate'; t'aî...laî ts'aù 'all depends, all depends on...'; t'aî waān-king laî ts'aù 'all depends on the situation, as the situation requires'

kaaî-saàn to dissolve, dissolution

mŏ-chong armed, armament, military

koî-p'in p'in 'to organize, to arrange in order, to compile, to edit , to fabricate' koî-p'in 'to reorganize, to revise, re-organization, revision'

king-yān king (keng) 'to startle, to frighten, to alarm,

alarmed, frightened'; king-yān 'stupendous, remarkable, wonderful, startling, admirable'

kît-tsòk kît 'a hero, heroic'; kît-tsòk 'masterpiece, celebrated work'

ping-uēn uēn 'personnel'; ping-uēn 'troops strength, manpower in the troops'

p'ōng-taaî p'ōng 'huge, enormous, great'; p'ōng-taaî 'huge, enormous, great'

shât-teî on the spot, actual ground

cheúng-koon superior, supervisor, commander, officer

ts'uēn-t'aî all, whole, a whole, entire, everyone

cheùng-sẑ officers and soldiers (pertaining to everyone in a military combat unit)

fàn-wâ fàn 'teaching, to instruct, to give speech'; fàn-wâ* 'to give speech (superior to inferior), orientation, instruction'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 66

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Yan-waî T'oî-Waan Meĭ-Kwòk Kwan-Sẑ Koò-Mân T'uēn kè kung-tsòk, shaî-tò Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan kè tsó-chik, fàn-lîn, chong-peî to hó ts'ui-heùng Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan kè piu-chún. Taân-haî tsuì tai haân-tô yaŭ yat tîm m̄-t'ūng, Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan yaŭ shóh-waî Chìng-Kung. Chìng-Kung haî mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yan-waî seúng taât-tò kûng-t'ūng on-ts'uēn heî-kìn, Meĭ-Kwòk Luēn-Pong Chìng-Foó t'ūng k'eî-t'a kwòk-ka kè yān wōh-haaî hôp-tsòk. K'eî-t'a kwòk-ka kè yān waâk-ché yaŭ k'uĭ-teî kè fung-tsûk tsaâp-kwaàn, chaî-tô, tsó-chik. T'ūng ngŏh-teî kè m̄-t'ūng. Chung-Kwòk Mŏ-Chong Pô-Tuî* kè Chìng-Kung tsaû haî yat-chúng kan-kuì k'uĭ-teî kè king-îm î sui-iù kè chaî-tô.

C: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, ngŏh-teî yat-tîng iù în-kaù ni chúng chaî-tô kè pooì-kîng, yâm-mô, chik-cheúng, în-haû chì hóh-ĭ tsòk yat-kòh shîng-kìn.

H: Tuì là, sheûng-waì. M̄-haî tsaû hó yūng-î ooĭ peî yat-kòh mîng-ch'ing kè ng̀-ooî, hó lŏ-ts'ó kóm hâ yat-kòh kìt-lûn.

C: Ngŏh seung-sùn Meĭ-Kwòk Mŏ-Chong Pô-Tuî* mŏ ni chúng seung t'ūng kè kei-k'aù.

H: Neĭ waâk-ché kóng-tak ngaam. Taân-haî t'ūng Meĭ-Kwan Ch'aam-Maū yâm-mô seung ts'ž kè teî-fong yaŭ hó toh.

Capt Cheung: Due to the work of the United States Military Assistance Advisory Group, Formosa, the organization, training, and equipment of the Chinese Army have been brought much closer to the standard of the US Army. However, there is at least one thing which is quite different. The Chinese Army has the so-called Political Department. What is this Political Department, Sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: In the interest of mutual security, the United States Government works in harmony with the peoples of many other nations. The people may have customs, traditions, systems, or organizations differing from our own. The Political Department of the Armed Forces of the Republic of China is such a system which their own experience has convinced them is necessary.

C: If that is the case, we must study the background, mission, and functions of this system before formulating opinions.

H: You are right, Captain. Otherwise it is too easy to be misled by a name in arriving at a hasty and poor conclusion.

C: I assume that there is no similar organization in the US Armed Forces.

H: You may be right. However, many staff functions within the US Forces are quite similar.

張上尉：作，裝但陸？國合嘅我工要
工嘅練，準中國呀？美諗地同政需
嘅團訓標，中野，和佢．嘅而
問，訓標，也見人有織隊*驗
顧織軍唔工全家或，裝嘅經
事組陸點、政安國人度武地
軍嘅國一．同他嘅制國佢
國軍美有工共其家，中據
美陸向度政到同國慣，根
台中好低所想政其，唔一度
為到都最有為邦．俗嘅係制
因使備係軍因聯作．風地就嘅
係敢，我地一定要研究呢種制度
嘅背景，任務，職掌，然後至可
以作一個成見．

何中校：台灣國趨限謂達府佢習同種．
因使備係軍因聯作．風地就嘅
係嘅制度．

何：對啦，上尉．唔係就好容易會被一個結
名稱嘅誤會，好魯草敢下一個
論．

張：我相信美國武裝部隊*有呢種相同嘅機
構．

何：你或者講得啱．但係同美軍參謀任務相
似嘅地方有好多．

自民為安政美機行，國為數·之之，之實來該國多夠國全見全構年各美在不美安起安機近與，現件*及同想同兩·，日·條界共理共此助好今者之世種高一用援良之導上由一最有利事為·略領事自有之設·軍甚作侵之軍與府全內團與績合處團與略政安家問助成諧到集上侵邦同國顧援作和黨主濟之聯共主助濟工民產民經黨國現民援經之人共與在產美實干事國構與在界家共故為若軍該機府世國禦，·在與各兩政由主防全策國構對此之

努力，極美之地積趨於同政治部·之漸干織經機構·團備若組景此問裝有工背無顧與仍政之內事練織之國隊*內軍訓組軍中軍華織之國據國駐組隊*為根美國之軍者是在美軍國著構但於國兩顯機·但由國但最別成·中·特組使化方·此而

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 66

QUESTIONS

1. Tsẑ-Yaū Shaì-Kaaì haî tîm-kaaî à?

2. Tsẑ-Yaū Shaì-Kaaì paau-k'oòt pin ti kwòk-ka à?

3. Tsẑ-Yaū Shaì-Kaaì tsuì kán-iù kè kwòk haî pin kwòk à?

4. Kûng-Ch'aán Shaì-Kaaì tsuì kán-iù kè kwòk-ka haî pin kwòk à?

5. Kûng-t'ūng on-ts'uēn haî tîm-kaaî à?

6. Meĭ-Kwòk kè kûng-t'ūng on-st'uēn chìng-ch'aàk kè mûk-tik haî tîm à?

7. Meĭ-Kwòk tîm-kaaî iù oōn-chôh k'eì-t'a kwòk-ka fōng-uê Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng?

8. Meĭ-Kwòk tîm-yeûng* haî Tsẑ-Yaū Shaì-Kaaì kòk-kwòk shât-haāng kûng-t'ūng on-ts'uēn kè chìng-ch'aàk à?

9. Meĭ-Kwòk chuè T'oî-Waan kè Kwan-Sẑ Koò-Mân T'uēn foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

10. Meĭ-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* mŏ Chìng-Chî Pô. Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* yaŭ Chìng-Chî Pô. Tîm-kaaî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 66

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

koò-mân t'uēn koò-mân 'adviser'; t'uēn 'group, community, a regiment'; koò-mân t'uēn 'advisory group'

shaî-tò to cause, to let, to make possible.

ts'ui-heùng ts'ui 'to tend to a direction, to follow, to run after, to aim at, to hasten'; ts'ui-heùng 'to run after, to follow, to approach to a direction, to tend to a direction, tendency'

Chìng-Kung Political Department (in the Chinese Nationalist Army); synonym: Chìng-Chî Pô

kûng-t'ūng on-ts'uēn kûng-t'ūng 'mutual, bilateral'; on-ts'uēn 'security, safety, safe'; kûng-t'ūng on-ts'uēn 'mutual security'

Luēn-Pong Chìng-Foó luēn-pong 'federal, confederation'; Luēn-Pong Chìng-Foó 'Federal Government'

wōh-haaî hôp-tsòk wōh-haaî 'harmony, harmonized, harmonious'; hôp tsòk 'to cooperate, cooperation'; wōh-haaî hôp-tsòk 'to cooperate and work in harmony'

pooì-kîng background

tsòk to form, to formulate, to make, to do, to work, to write (book)

shîng-kìn opinion, prejudice, difference in opinion

m̄-haî tsaû (IE) otherwise, if not; a.f.: uē-kwóh m̄-haî

mîng-ch'ing name, title, topic

ng̀-ooî ng̀ 'mistake, error, mistaken, erroneous, wrong, to impede, to do harm'; ng̀-ooî 'to misunderstand, misunderstanding, misunderstood, misleading'

lŏ-ts'ó reckless, heedless, careless, impetuous, rude, hasty

kìt-lûn lûn 'to discuss, to reason, to argue, to converse, an essay, an article, -ism, -ology'; kìt-lûn 'conclusion, to conclude'; hâ kìt-lûn 'to draw a conclusion'

seung t'ūng seung 'mutual'; t'ūng 'the same, similar, and,

for, with'; <u>seung</u> <u>t'ūng</u> 'similar, analogy, alike, resemble'

kei-k'aù setup, organization, agency, unit

seung ts'ž <u>ts'ž</u> 'alike, resemble'; <u>seung</u> <u>ts'ž</u> 'similar, alike, resemble'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 67

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* Chìng-Kung kè lîk-sź haî tîm kà? Tîm-kaaì Chìng-Kung kòm chûng-iù ne, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chìng-Kung chaì-tô haî yat-kaú-î-seì Kwóng-Tung Wōng-Pò Kwan Haaû fàn-lîn san pin kè shì-haû ĭ-king hoi-ch'î. Tsoî kwòh-huì saam-shâp keì nîn, ni kòh chaì-tô lîng-tò koon ping yaŭ oì kwòk sz-seúng, chìng-î sùn-yeŭng. Tuì kwan-tuî* yaŭ m̄-shiú kùng-hìn, shóh-ĭ Chung-Kwòk yān tuì-ue Chìng-Kung chaì-tô, yaŭ pit-iù sìng t'ūng chûng-iù sìng.

C: Chìng-Kung kung-tsòk kè tsung-chî haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Yan-waî Chung Kûng yat-heùng yûng hei-p'ìn, shàm-t'aù, fan-fà shaú-tuên, sung-ch'î Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* tsó-chik, tûng-iū koon ping chìn-taù sẑ-heì, taât-shîng k'uĭ-teî ts'am-leûk kè mûk-tik. Waî tuì-foô ni chúng kè hîp-pik, Chìng-Kung kè kung-tsòk haî chì-tsoî k'ìt-faàt Ngōh-Kwòk uĕ Chung Kûng kè yam-maū, ka-k'eūng kwan-tuî* t'ūng yān-mān kè t'uēn-kìt, húng-koò pô-tuî* on-ts'uēn, p'ooì-yeŭng kwan-tuî* sẑ-heì, kìn-laâp pit shìng sùn-nîm.

C: Ŏh! Uēn-loî haî kóm. Chìng-Kung kung-tsòk haî seúng yîng ts'ing yĕ-maān t'ūng mān-mîng kè fan-pît, kîk-k'uēn t'ūng mān-chué kè fan-pît. Uē-kwóh nāng-kaù yîng ts'ing mûk-piu, ka-k'eūng tsòk-chìn tsó-chik, în-haû k'uĭ-teî chì hóh-ĭ chìn shìng tîk-yān.

Capt Cheung: What is the historical background of the Political Department in the Chinese Armed Forces? Why is the Political Department so important, Colonel?

Lt Colonel Höh: The beginning of the Political Department dates back to 1924 when the first military cadres were being trained at the Whampoa Military Academy in Canton. For the past three decades, this system has succeeded in infusing patriotic sentiments and firm belief in their just cause among the officers and men, and contributed much to the achievements of their Armed Forces. Therefore, the Chinese are convinced of the necessity and the importance of this political system.

C: What are the purposes of the Political Department's activities?

H: The traditional methods of the Chinese Communists in achieving their goal of military conquests have been deception, penetration, and subversion which aim at the disintegration of the Chinese Nationalist's military organization and shattering the morale of their troops. To cope with this menace, the activities of the Political Department are to dig out the conspiracies of the Russians and the Chinese communities, to strengthen friendly relations between the military personnel and the civilians, to insure security of the troops, to maintain their will to fight, and to increase their faith in final victory.

C: Oh, I see. The work of the Political Department is to mark distinction between barbarism and civilization, totalitarianism and democracy. It is true that only with a clear objective in mind and a closely knit fighting force can they hope to defeat the enemy.

張上尉：中國軍隊政工嘅歷史係點嚟？點解政工要咁重要呢，中校？

何中校：政工制度喺一九二四廣東黃埔軍校開始，到官軍對於政校過去有有政工作共中段，戰鬥為謀固立原蠻分作敵

張：政工為因

何：軍隊政工嘅新十幾年，已經制度令人對性。

張：啊！

何：思想，信仰中國重要性呀？

何：貢獻，必要野心騙，滲透，分化手官目嘅陰肇建野嘅強勝清主加戰認民，以想同標可作極清地係權目至工別夠後然，組織。

何：國軍隊成佢嘅迫，政工嘅侵略嘅，政共結氣，中國士隊。

何：旨用中氣，付呢種發俄人養培。

何：在軍全念。政分能果如。

何：志強安信敢明文。部必來同別戰人。

何：支持，動搖，建

何：與嘅隊。

何：工，認佢。

何：隊，部。

何：隊勝係。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 67

READING MATERIAL

民之始於開始，由於信仰，國父之上以十年中，由於命信仰，國父建立三十年中，革命經驗，政工肇始於民國十三年，在有極大的安全，培養軍隊之士氣，建立必勝之信念。

中國歷史上各時期中，革命經驗，政工肇始於民國十三年，在有極大的安全，培養軍隊之士氣，建立必勝之信念。

中國軍制之建立，有三十年中，革命經驗，政工肇始於民國十三年，在有極大的安全，培養軍隊之士氣，建立必勝之信念。

中國政工制度之建立，開始於民之上以十年中，由於命信仰，國父建立三十年中，革命經驗，政工肇始於民國十三年，在有極大的安全，培養軍隊之士氣，建立必勝之信念。

中國軍政工制度之建立，開始於民之上以十年中，由於命信仰，國父建立三十年中，革命經驗，政工肇始於民國十三年，在有極大的安全，培養軍隊之士氣，建立必勝之信念。

中國軍政建

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 67

QUESTIONS

1. Chìng-kung haî mi-yĕ à?
2. Tsòk-chìn kè shī-haû, uē-kwóh yān-yan mŏ oì-kwòk sam, kwan-tuî* t'ūng yān-man m̄-t'uēn-kìt m̄-hôp-tsòk, tsaû ooĭ tîm à?
3. Tîm-yeûng* chì hóh-ĭ lîng pô-tuî* sẑ-heì ko à?
4. Chung-Kûng yat-heùng yûng kè shaú-tuên haí tîm à?
5. Chung-Kûng yûng hei-p'ìn, shàm-t'aù, fan-fà kè mûk-tik haî tîm?
6. Iù tuì-foô Chung-Kûng kè yam-maū, chìng-foó ying-koi tîm-yeûng* tsô?
7. Mān-chué chìng-foó haî mi-yĕ à?
8. Kîk-k'uēn chìng-foó haî mi-yĕ à?
9. Meĭ-Kwòk Chìng-foó haî mān-chué chìng-foó yik-waâk kîk-k'uēn chìng-foó à?
10. Kûng-ch'aán chìng-foó haî mān-chué chìng-foó yik-waâk kîk-k'uēn chìng-foó à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 67

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chìng-î justice, just cause

pit-iù sìng pit-iu 'indispensable, must', pit-iù sìng 'indispensability, necessity'

tsung-chî aim, purpose, requirement, standard; synonym: chî

Chung Kûng Chung 'China, Chinese'; Kûng abbr. of Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng 'Communist'; Chung Kûng 'Chinese Communist, Red China'; Meĭ Kûng 'American Communist'

yat-heùng up to the present, heretofore

hei-p'ìn to cheat, to take advantage of, to deceive, deception, cheating, humbug; a.f.: hei, p'ìn

shàm-t'aù to infiltrate, to penetrate, infiltration, penetration, subversion

fan-fà to disintegrate, to split, to degenerate, to divide, to defect

shaú-tuên trick, scheme, plot, knack, method

sung-ch'ĭ (ch'î) sung 'loose, lax, slack, not tight, to let go, to unleash, to relax, lenient'; ch'ĭ 'to relax, to slow down, to unstring a bow , slack, lax, loose'; sung-ch'ĭ 'to loosen, to slow down, to soften up'

tûng-iū to shaken, to weaken (one's will), unsteady, wavering; synonym: tûng, iū

chìn-taù to combat, combat, fighting; chìn-taù yān-uēn 'combatant'

sẑ-heì moral, spirit

taât-shĭng to accomplish, to fulfill, to realize, to attain, to reach; a.f.: taât-tò, taât; yâm-mô taât-shĭng 'mission accomplished'

tuì-foô to deal with, to match against, to face

hìp-pik threat, menace, intimidation, to threaten, to intimidate

chì-tsoî to aim at, with the aim at

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 67

k'ìt-faàt to expose and make known(plot, scheme), to uncover

yam-maū conspiracy , scheme, plot

ka-k'eūng to strengthen, to enhance

t'uēn-kìt to unite together, to stand together in a united front, union

húng-koò to stabilize, to insure security, well-guarded, stable, invulnerable, impregnable

p'ooî-yeŭng to cultivate, to maintain, to nourish, to culture

sùn-nîm faith, confidence; pit shìng sùn-nîm 'faith and confidence to win the victory'

yîng ts'ing yîng 'to recognize, to find out, to tell the difference, to admit'; yîng ts'ing 'to distinguish, to tell the difference, to realize, to be aware of'

yĕ-maān barbarism, barbarious, uncivilized

mān-mîng civilization, civilized

fan-pît difference, distinction, to distinguish, to discriminate, farewell, to depart, good-bye

kîk-k'uēn totalitarianism

mûk-piu target, objective

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 68

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* chìng-kung tsˢaam-maū tsó-chik haî-tˢúng haî tìm kà?

Hœh Chung-Kaaù: Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô haî Kwòk-Fōng Pô yat-kòh môk-liū taan-waî*. Shaû Tsˢaam-Maū Tsúng-Cheúng kè mîng-lîng, foô-chaàk shóh yaŭ kwan-tuî* chìng-chî kung-tsòk.

C: Taan-waî* fong-mîn tìm à?

H: Sz kˢap ĭ sheûng kè taan-waî* yaŭ chìng-chî pô. Tˢuēn kˢap kè taan-waî* yaŭ chìng-chî chˢuè waâk chìng-chî shat. Ying kˢap tˢūng lîn kˢap kè taan-waî* yaŭ chìng-chî chî-tô uēn.

C: Kˢuĭ-teî tìm-yeûng* hîp-tiû kung-tsòk à?

H: Sz ĭ sheûng kè chìng-chî pô chué-yâm, haî kóh kòh taan-waî* chué-koon kè chìng-chî môk-liū cheúng. Foô-chaàk hîp-tiû chìng-chî pô kòk foh waâk kòk tsó chˢué-leĭ kóh kòh taan-waî* kè chìng-chî sẑ-mô. Tˢuēn, ying, lîn kè chìng-chî chˢuè chué-yâm, haî kóh kòh taan-waî* kè foò chué-koon, yîk-to haî chué-koon kè chìng-kung tsˢaam-maū.

C: Tsˢíng neĭ yûng yĕ-chìn pô-tuî* laî kuî yat-kòh laî.

H: Yĕ-chìn pô-tuî* chí-fai koon chi hâ yaŭ yat-kòh kwan-sẑ môk-liū cheúng tˢūng yat-kòh chìng-chî môk-liū cheúng. Tsˢaam-maū cheúng hîp-tiû Tsˢaam-Yat, Tsˢaam-Î, Tsˢaam-Saam, Tsˢaam-Seì tˢūng tâk-îp tsˢaam-maū. Chìng-chî pô chué-yâm hîp-tiû Chìng-Yat, Chìng-Î, Chìng-Saam, Chìng-Seì tˢūng chìng-kung tâk-îp tsˢaam-maū. Haî chí-fai haî-tˢúng sheûng, tsˢaam-maū cheúng tˢūng chìng-chî pô chué-yâm chîk-tsìp haî chí-fai koon chi hâ.

Capt Cheung: What is the organization of the political staff in the Chinese Armed Forces?

Lt Colonel Hŏh: The General Political Department is a staff organization of the Ministry of National Defense and is responsible for the overall political activities under the command of the Chief of General Staff.

C: How about the units?

H: Each of the units above and including division level has a political department. Each of the units below and including regiment level has a political section or a political officer.

C: How do they coordinate?

H: The chief of the political department in units above division level is the chief of the political staff and is responsible for the direction and coordination of the political section's operations within the unit. The chief of the political section in regimental, battalion and company units is the commander of the unit as well as the political staff officer to the commander.

C: Please use a field unit as an example.

H: A commander of a field unit has a political chief of staff as well as a military one. The military chief of staff directs and coordinates the operations of G-1, G-2, G-3, G-4 and special staff; whereas the political chief of

staff directs and coordinates the operations of S-1, S-2, S-3, S-4, and political special staff. In the chain of command, the military chief of staff and the political chief of staff are directly under the commander.

張上尉：中國軍隊政工參謀組織系統係點嘅？

何中校：總政治部係國防部一個幕僚單位，受參謀總長嘅命令，負責所有軍隊政治工作。

張：單位方面點呀？

何：師級以上嘅單位有政治部，團級嘅單位有政治處或政治室，營級同連級嘅單位有政治指導員。

張：佢地以師級以上嘅單位協調工作呀？

何：師以上嘅政治部主任，係嗰個單位主官部治任係用部長調業政謀治幕僚協特，參政幕長同一業同。事謀四政特長下軍參參調工謀之倒個，協政參官一個長三任同，揮部政統嗦主四上指部，政指任一謀，嗦主參二，部

張：你戰

何：請野

中國國防部設總政治部，該部為國防部之幕僚單位*，受參謀總長之命令，主持國軍各部隊*之政治工作。

由於對中共作戰之經驗與環境之需要，師單位*之國軍參謀單位*設政治部，負責處理該單位*之政營級以上主官事務，團單位*設政治幕僚單位*設政治指導員。

設事參僚，長，軍，幕四謀下為三治政參，之長參政，揮官謀，為三上指揮參二任政統接指，參主，系直於長，部二揮之，僚一治政指官倒幕參政，在揮為治調，一，指隊*政協謀政謀受部與責參調參任戰長員業協業主野僚，特責特部以幕長及員工治事僚，政政軍幕四長及與

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 68

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwŏk pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chaàk kòk pô-tuî* chìng-chî kung-tsŏk à?

2. Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô shûk-ue pin-kòh kei-kwaan à?

3. Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô iù tsìp-shaû pin-kòh cheúng-koon kè mîng-lîng à?

4. Sz k'ap ĭ sheûng taan-waî* kè chìng-kung tsó-chik kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

5. Pin-kòh haî yat-kòh sz kè chìng-chî môk-liū cheúng à?

6. T'uēn k'ap taan-waî* kè chìng-kung tsó-chik kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

7. Yîng k'ap t'ūng lîn k'ap kè chìng-kung tsó-chik yaū pin-kòh foô-chaàk à?

8. Pin-kòh haî yat-kòh yĕ-chìn pô-tuî* kè kwan-sz̀ môk-liū cheúng à?

9. Ts'aam-maū cheúng foô-chaàk hîp-tiû pin keî kòh taan-waî* à?

10. Haî chî-fai haî-t'úng sheûng, chìng-chî pô chué-yâm t'ūng ts'aam-maū cheúng shaû pin-kòh chî-fai à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 68

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tsó-chik haî-t'úng haî-t'úng 'system'; tsó-chik haî-t'úng 'system of organization'

Chìng-Chî Pô Political Department; Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô 'General Political Department'

mô̂k-liū an advisor, a staff officer, a staff advisor; mô̂k-liū cheúng 'chief of staff'

Ts'aam-Maū Tsúng-Cheúng Ts'aam-Maū Cheúng 'Chief of Staff'; Ts'aam-Maū Tsúng-Cheúng 'Chief of General Staff', abbr.: Tsúng-Cheúng

ch'uè a department (smaller than pô), an office, a place, condition, circumstance, to manage, to handle, to dwell; Chìng-Chî Ch'uè 'Political Department (smaller than Chìng-Chî Pô)'

shat a home, household, house, apartment, an office, a department (smaller than pô); Chìng-Chî Shat 'Political Department (smaller than Chìng-Chî Pô)'

chî-tô uēn chî-tô 'to guide, to direct, to supervise, supervision, guidance'; chî-tô-uēn 'director, political officer'; chìng-chî chî-tô-uēn 'political officer'

hî̂p-tiû to coordinate, coordination, coordinated

chué-yâm Chief, Officer in Charge, head of an office, Chairman; Chìng-Chî Pô Chué-Yâm 'Chief of Political Department'

chué-koon commanding officer, officer in charge, head of an office

tsó section (smaller than pô and ch'uè), to organize, to form

sî̂-mô affair, matter, business

kuî laî kuî 'to raise, to point out, to cite'; laî 'example, instance, regulation, rule'; kuî laî 'to cite example, for instance, for example'; kuî...laî 'for...example'

Ts'aam-Yat G-1

Ts'aam-Î G-2

Ts'aam-Saam G-3

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 68

Ts'aam-Seì G-4

tâk-îp ts'aam-maū special staff; yat-poon ts'aam-maū 'general staff'

Chìng-Yat S-1

Chìng-Î S-2

Chìng-Saam S-3

Chìng-Seì S-4

chî-fai haî-t'úng chain of command

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 69

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* Chìng-Kung Tsʻaam-Maū, tʻūng Meǐ Kwan Yat-Poon Tsʻaam-Maū Tâk-Îp Tsʻaam-Maū kè chik-cheúng peî-kaaù tîm à, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî sìng-chat fong-mîn tʻūng tsòk-yûng fong-mîn laî kóng, pîng mǒ mat fan-pît. Mˉ-tʻūng-ché, Chung-Kwòk yûng tsaâp-chung fong-faàt, Meǐ-Kwòk yûng fan-shûk fong-faàt.

C: Neǐ chî mi-yě ì-sz à?

H: Oōn-în-chi, yan-waî Chung-Kwòk tsòk-chìn waān-kîng mˉ-tʻūng, tsòk-chìn tuì-tseûng mˉ-tʻūng. Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* yîng waî iù tsaâp-chung yaŭ tî chʻaam-maū chik-cheúng, shīng waî chìng-kung tsʻaam-maū chik-cheúng. Haî Meǐ Kwan ni-ti chik-cheúng haî fan-shûk yat-poon tsʻaam-maū tʻūng tâk-îp tsʻaam-maū kè.

C: Neǐ hóh-ǐ yûng yat-kòh tʻō laî kaaî-shik mà?

H: Hóh-ǐ. Ngŏh sin iù kîng-kò neǐ. Shóh yaŭ ni ti tʻō to haî Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* kè peì-mât mān-kîn*. Neǐ ǐ-king yaū Meǐ-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* tʻūng Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* pʻai-chún hóh-ǐ paân-leǐ pó-mât sî-hông, paau-kʻoòt tsuêt-tuì kei-mât, kîk kei-mât, kei-mât, mât.

C: Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Kung Tsʻaam-Maū tʻūng Meǐ Kwan Koò-Mân Tʻuēn tîm-yeûng* hîp-tiû à?

H: Meǐ Kwan Koò-Mân Tʻuēn Lûk Hoî Hung Kwan to pʻaaì yat-kòh luēn-lòk koò-mân tʻūng Chìng-Chî Pô Chué-Yâm tʻūng kʻuǐ kè tsʻaam-maū pó-chʻî hôp-tsòk, chî-tô shik-tòng hîp-tiû chìng-chî oôt-tûng tʻūng pô-tuî* fàn-lîn.

Capt Cheung: What is the comparison of functions between the political staffs of the Chinese Forces and the general and and special staffs of the US Forces, Colonel?

Lt Colonel Hōh: They are similar in their objectives and nature. The difference is that the Chinese system is centralized, the US is not.

C: What do you mean by that?

H: In other words, the Chinese Forces, in view of the particular circumstances in which they are placed and the nature of the enemy they are fighting, deem it necessary to centralize some of the staff functions as functions of the political staff. These functions are normally distributed among the general and special staffs in the case of US Forces.

C: Can you use a chart to explain to us?

H: Certainly. First I must caution you that these charts are classified by the Chinese Forces. But anyway, you have been cleared by the US and Chinese Forces to handle classified matters including top secret, secret, confidential, and restricted (still being used by the Chinese).

C: What is the coordination between the Chinese Political Staff and MAAG?

H: An officer each from the US Army,US Navy, and US Air Force of MAAG was appointed to serve as liaison-advisor to work with the Chief of the Political Department and to furnish him and his staff guidance for the proper coordination of political activities with military training.

張上尉：般一呀，軍點呀，集中參謀，同美較比，掌職既參謀工參政*隊*軍特業參中國謀校？

何中校：係中集講用黎國中法。面同作用方面，方別，美思為唔參喺同個要軍軍密，謀一先國國保密，參謀工團點樣*協調
喺性質方面同唔同用分屬方法，意因象啲，對有掌參解你祕中，密國包括，密顧問
方也法野，之戰中職般以，係由辦極政呀顧問合部

張：你指言換

何：作集謀一，要參屬分，為工分係，認政係治活動保絡顧持同，境隊*為掌，環軍成職，戰國，啲職既。

張：你可以

何：可以經都，已可密，准機，對北絡*，件*隊*，呢啲你，

張：國軍

何：中美

圍政，訓練。陸治指導。海部導。空主適。軍任當。都同協。派佢調。一既參。個聯謀。

般作在中，於國部，集美一與為集之屬中治工與之上，為言分在政政象軍質者者換是但於用對美性同用．軍．掌採戰與在不所法美內職國作謀，大國方在之謀中及參較最中屬，掌參．境工比其．分項職工內環政之．中為事謀政之戰軍掌別集者各參中室作國職分與用之業集治為國謀無屬所戰特是政因中參並分國作及，或是於業，之美工謀面處，．關特言上．政參方治法同謀上作法關般軍政方不參用工方有一國或中軍協中之與團問顧合作，適軍聯持密訓練．美空保之隊＋部參謀海參謀陸工派其與政團及動國問任活中顧主治部政至於軍顧治調，政調國當協

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 69

QUESTIONS

1. Haî sìng-chat sheûng, Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Kung ts'aam-Maū t'ūng Meǐ-Kwan kè Yat-Poon Ts'aam-Maū yaŭ mi-yĕ m̀-t'ūng à?

2. Haî tsòk-yûng sheûng, Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Kung ts'aam-Maū t'ūng Meî-Kwan kè Tâk-Ìp Ts'aam-Maū yaŭ mi-yĕ fan-pît à?

3. Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Kung Ts'aam-Maū kè fong-faàt haî fan-shûk yik-waâk tsaâp-chung?

4. Chung-Kwòk Chìng-Kung Ts'aam-Maū yûng tsaâp-chung fong-faàt. Tîm- yeûng* tsaâp-chung?

5. Tîm-kaaî Chung-Kwòk ts'oî-yûng Chìng-Kung tsaâp-chung kè fong-faàt à?

6. Tsẑ-Yaū Chung-Kwòk ì-ka kè tsòk-chìn tuì-tseûng haî pin-kòh à?

7. Chìng-Chî Pô iù t'ūng Meǐ-Kwan Koò-Mân T'uēn pin ti yān luēn-lòk à?

8. Tîm-kaaî Chìng-Chî Pô iù t'ūng Meǐ-Kwan Koò-Mân T'uēn mât-ts'ìt luēn-lòk?

9. Pó-mât sẑ-hûng yaŭ pin seì chúng à?

10. Tîm-kaaî iù yaŭ seì chúng m̀-t'ūng kè pó-mât sẑ-hûng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 69

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

yat-poon ts'aam-maū general staff

tsòk-yûng objective, effect, function, purpose

pîng intensive particle before a negative, and, also, or, at the same time, together with, united, together; pîng meî 'it has by no means as yet'; pîng pat 'by no means'; pîng mŏ mat fan-pît 'actually no difference'

fan-shûk decentralization, to branch out separately, to decentralize

fong-faàt method, ways and means; synonym: paân-faàt, faàt, faàt-tsź

ì-sz meaning, idea, thought,; mi-yĕ ì-sz? 'what does it mean?'; neĭ chí mi-yĕ ì-sz? 'what do you mean? what are you trying to say?'

oôn-în-chi in other words

tuì-tseûng the object to deal with, the object under consideration, the opposite party, the opponent

yîng waî to recognize for a certainty, to be sure, to consider to be

t'ō a chart, a drawing

kaaî-shik to explain, to justify, explanation, justification

kîng-kò to warn, to caution, warning,indication

peì-mât classified, secrecy

mān-kîn* document, paper

p'ai-chún p'ai 'to comment, to make a note on the document (superior to inferior), to make a critique, to reply in writing officially to an inferior, officially authorized, a lot'; chún 'to allow, to approve'; p'ai-chún 'to approve (writing or verbal), to assent to a petition, to authorize'

mât restricted (document)

luēn-lòk liaison, to get in touch, to keep contact

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 69

pǒ-ch'ǐ to maintain, to hold fast, to keep intact

shik-tòng suitable, appropriate, proper

oôt-tûng activity, active

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 70

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chìng-kung tsʻaam-maū kè tsòk-îp chʻîng-tsuî haî tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Tʻūng kʻeì-tʻa tsʻaam-maū seung tʻūng. Tsòk-îp chʻîng-tsuî hóh-ǐ fan waì lûk-kòh pô-chaaû: Yat, chì-fai koon suen-pò tsòk-chìn kʻoì-nîm. Î, chông-fòng pʻoòn-tuên. Saam, hâ-tîng kʻuèt-sam. Seì, ǐ-tîng kaì-waâk. Ngˇ, hâ-taât mîng-lîng. Lûk, tuk-tô tʻūng shât-shi.

C: Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* chìng-kung yān-uēn yān shò keì toh à?

H: Lûk Hoî Hung Kwan taaî-yeùk* yaŭ î-maân keì yān. Chûng fàn-lîn hó toh.

C: Ngŏh hó seúng în-kaù kʻuĭ-teî kè sam-chìn kung-tsòk. Mooĭ kʻap kè chaàk-yâm faân-waì haî tîm kà?

H: Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô i-kuì Kwòk-Fōng Pô kè kʻuèt-chʻaàk, foô-chaàk kaì-waâk kè chʻaàk-tîng, tʻūng tuk-tô shât-shi. Kòk Tsúng-Pô foô-chaàk chìn-leûk shìng sam-chìn kung-tsòk kè chap-haāng, tʻūng chìn-shût shìng sam-chìn kung-tsòk kè tuk-tô. Kòk kʻap pô-tuî* foô-chaàk chìn-shût shìng sam-chìn kung-tsòk kè chap-haāng.

C: Yaŭ mi-yĕ chuen yâm sam-chìn kung-tsôk kè keì-kʻaù à?

H: Yaŭ kòk teî-kʻui sam-chìn chì-fai shóh, uē-mān kaù-tsaì chaâm, pòh yam tuî*...Sam-chìn fong-shik paau-kʻoòt tîn-tʻoì kwóng-pòh, chân-teî haàm-wâ, faàt-shê suen-chʻuēn pʻaaù-taân*, hung-pʻiu heì-kʻaū, hoì-pʻiu chʻuēn-taan, hung-tʻaū chʻuēn-taan...

Capt Cheung: What is the procedure of political staff operation?

Lt Colonel Hōh: Like other staff operations, the procedure may be divided into six phases: 1. Announcement of concept of operation by commander. 2. Evaluation of situation. 3. Decision. 4. Planning. 5. Issuance of order. 6. Supervision and execution.

C: What is the strength of political personnel in GRC (Government of the Republic of China) Armed Forces?

H: There are about 20,000 political officers in the Army, Navy and Air Force. More are being trained.

C: I am interested in their psychological warfare activities. What is the scope of responsibilities at each level?

H: The General Political Department is responsible for overall planning and supervision of psywar activities in accordance with the policy prescribed by MND (Ministry of National Defense). Political Departments at GHQ level are charged with the execution of strategical psywar activities and supervision over tactical psywar activities. Political Departments (Sections) in lower echelons are responsible for the execution of tactical psywar activities.

C: What are the agencies exclusively engaged in psywar activities?

H: They are the psywar command ports, fishermen's relief stations, broadcasting detachments... Their psywar activities

include broadcasting, loudspeakers on battlefields, firing of leaflets, launching of balloons, drifting of leaflets on the sea, dropping of leaflets from the air...

張上尉：政工其為戰定達隊軍空多。

何中校：同分作下下軍海陸好。

張：中國海陸好。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：參他六概決命政大約。

何中校：謀參個念心令工約有。

張：國海陸好想責。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：謀既作相驟：二，四，六，人員二。

何中校：既謀參步驟：二，四，六，人萬幾。

張：中國海陸好研任。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：作業同：一，狀擬督數幾。

何中校：業程序作，況定導幾人。

張：中國海陸好究範。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：程序係點嗦？

何中校：序可以佈係程官宣佈，三，業指揮斷．五，作判計劃實施．

張：中國海陸好但圍據定略心戰心戰……話，海。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：點嗦？

何中校：可以佈點程官宣佈，三，指揮斷．五，判計劃實施．同多呀？重訓練好。

張：中國海陸好地係點嗦？

何：總政各有。

張上尉：嗦？

何中校：以佈，三，五，．

張：中國海陸好既級既。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：工作．每級既計部同，

何中校：作．每級既計部總，同部．

張：中國海陸好策施既導作構民括砲投。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：員各行各執？濟站，播飄。

何中校：員各行各執．既呀？濟站廣播，空……。

張：中國海陸好決實作督工機漁包傳空。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：既導工既戰既，式宣，

何中校：既導工既戰既，式宣傳單。

張：中國海陸好部督戰作心作所方射單。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：防同心工性工揮戰發傳。

何中校：防同心工性工揮戰發傳。

張：中國海陸好國，性戰術戰指心。

何：總政各有。

張上尉：治劃員戰隊野地播陣氣。

何中校：治劃員戰隊野地播陣氣。

張：中國海陸好部既責術員專區音地球。

何：總政各有。

他佈心導之如計戰之機
其宣決督・其與官定・序揮下六・程指・業・一・三・令・作之參謀之工政工參謀之作業・一・三・命・達下・況判斷・步驟狀・五・計劃・二・念定・擬・施・實四作參謀戰概相同國軍國中

為：之性導督一下劃略，各部之部作部督人治與工級政敵政定戰總對總策心，

在總政治部各動方式，如流之砲傳單等。多，站心宣空構救濟施射陸發大甚戰傳投

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 70

QUESTIONS

1. Uē-kwóh yat-kòh chî-fai koon tuì-ue chông-fòng kè p'oòn-tuên m̄-ngaam, tsaû ooǐ tîm à?

2. Neǐ ǐ-waì yat-kòh pô-tuî* kè tsòk-chìn kaì-waâk haî yaū pin-kòh ǐ-tîng kà?

3. Sam-leǐ chìn haî mi-yĕ à?

4. Tá cheùng kè shī-haû, tîm-kaaî iù yûng sam-laǐ chìn à?

5. Sam-leǐ chìn kè tsuì ko k'uèt-ch'aàk yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan k'uèt-tîng kà?

6. Pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chaàk kaì-waâk sam-leǐ chìn à?

7. Pin ti kei-kwaan foô-chaàk chap-haāng sam-leǐ chìn à?

8. Shât-shi sam-chìn kè fong-shik paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?

9. Shât-shi chân-teî haàm-wâ kè shī-haû, neǐ ǐ-waì kóng ti mi-yĕ chì hó à?

10. Tsẑ-Yaū Chung-Kwòk kè sam-chìn taan-waî* tîm-yeûng tseung ti ch'uēn-taan faàt-tò Chung-Kwòk Taaî-Lûk à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 70

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tsòk-îp operation, work, homework

pô-chaaû phase, step, synonym: pô

k'oì-nîm concept, conception, idea

p'oòn-tuèn to judge, to evaluate, to appraise and decide, judgment, evaluation, appraisal; synonym: p'oòn, tuèn; chông-fông p'oòn-tuèn 'evaluation of situation'

k'uèt-sam resolution, decision, determination, to decide, to resolve; hâ k'uèt-sam 'to make decision'; a.f.: hâ-tîng k'uèt-sam

ǐ-tîng to draft, to plan; a.f.: ǐ, ts'ó-ǐ; ǐ-tîng kaì-waâk 'planning, to make plan'

hâ-taât to issue (order, decision); hâ-taât mîng-lîng 'to issue order, issuance of order', a.f.: hâ mîng-lîng

tuk-tô to supervise, supervision; tuk-tô t'ūng shât-shi 'supervision and execution'

sam chìn psychological warfare; a.f.: sam-leǐ tsòk-chìn, sam-leǐ chìn

chaàk-yâm responsibility, duty; abbr: chaàk

i-kuì to comply with, to base on, in accordance with, compliance, basis, foundation; a.f.: i-chiû, i, kan-kuì

k'uèt-ch'aàk k'uèt 'to decide, to determine, resolution, decision, determination'; ch'aàk 'policy'; k'uèt-ch'aàk 'final decision, policy, decision, to decide policy'

ch'aàk-tîng to make plan, to study the plan and make a decision

chìn-leûk strategy; chìn-leûk shìng 'strategic, strategy in nature'

chìn-shût tactics; chìn-shût shìng 'tactical, tactics in nature'

chuen yâm chuen 'specialized, special, solely, exclusive'; yâm 'to appoint, to designate, appointment, designation, duty'; chuen yâm 'to designate exclusively, exclusive designation, with exclusive designation and duty'

teî-k'ui area, district, region, post; synonym: k'ui

chî-fai shóh shóh 'place, that which, where'; chî-fai shóh 'command post'

uē-mān fisherman; a.f.: uē-yān

chân-teî position (combat), battlefield

haàm-wâ to send call (by loudspeakers); chân-teî haàm-wâ 'to send call on battlefield'

faàt-shê to fire, to shoot, firing; synonym: faàt, shê

suen-ch'uēn propaganda, publicity

p'aaû-taân* taân* 'shell, bullet'; p'aaû-taân* 'artillery shell'

hung-p'iu hung 'air, sky, empty'; p'iu 'to flutter, to whirl (as the wind), floating'; hung p'iu 'blown in the air, fluttering in the air'

heî-k'aū balloon

hoî-p'iu (p'iù) drifting on the sea, floating and sinking on the sea

ch'uēn-taan leaflet

hung-t'aū t'aū 'to drop down, to throw'; hung-t'aū 'air drop'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 71

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* kē Faán Ts'ĭng-Pò Tuî* yîk-to haî taî-shûk Chìng-Chî Pô, tuì mà, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Mǭ-ts'òh là. Shiù-kaaù.

P: Neĭ hóh-ĭ tseung Faán Ts'ĭng-Pò kè yâm-mô k'oì-fòng kóng hă peî ngōh-teî t'eng mà?

H: Tong-în hóh-ĭ la. Taî-yat haî pó-mât. Paau-k'oòt paan-pò pó-mât kw'ai-tîng, chong-chì pó-mât ch'ìt-peî, shât-shi pó-mât kîm-ch'ā, shau-tsaâp t'ūng ch'ué-leĭ sìt-laû peì-mât sẑ-kîn*. Taî-Î haî fōng tîp. Paau-k'oòt yān-sẑ t'iū-ch'ā, koó-laî kîm-kuî, ch'aàk-tûng tsẑ-shaú, peì-mât ching-p'òh. Taî-saam haî fōng-faân peì-mât p'òh-waaî. Paau-k'oòt waâk-tîng kàm-k'ui, ch'ìt-laâp kîng-peî t'ūng kaàk-leî ch'ìt-shi, kìn-laâp t'ung-haāng shik-pît chaì-tô, yān-uēn haāng-tûng koón-chaì. Taî-seì haî fōng-chaì yam-maū poôn-luên. Paau-k'oòt kè yĕ t'ūng taî-î hông fōng-tîp kè yat-yeûng.

P: Faán Ts'ĭng-Pò Tuî* yaŭ mi-yĕ shîng-tsâu à?

H: Tsẑ-ts'ūng yat-kaúnǧ-lîng nîn ĭ-loî, shóh yaŭ Chung-Kwòk Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng kè kaàn-tîp* tsó-chik t'ūng yam-maū oôt-tûng, to peî* Faán Ts'ĭng-Pò k'âp-shî yaŭ-haaû chaì-chî t'ūng p'òh-waaî. Ni tîm yat-tîng haî chîk-tak kóng kè.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 71

Major White: The CIC of the GRC Forces is attached to the Political Department also. Is that true, Colonel?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: That's right, Major.

W: Can you tell us the missions undertaken by the CIC?

H: Certainly. 1. Security. This includes promulgation of security regulations, installation of security equipment, security inspection, and collection and disposal of security leakage cases. 2. Anti-espionage. This includes personnel investigation, encouragement of informant, persuasion to surrender, and detection of spy rings. 3. Measures against sabotage. This includes marking of the restricted areas, setting up guard posts and isolation facilities, issuance of ID cards and passes, and control of personnel conduct. 4. Prevention of conspiracy and rebellion. The things included are identical to those of item 2.

W: What are the past achievements of the CIC?

H: Since 1950, all Chicom (Chinese Communist) spy rings and subversion activities were effectively broken up in time. This is something which is definitely worth special mention.

屬隸係都亦隊*中校？

白少校：我俾施密調密包設
何中校：你吓俾頒實秘事祕·離
白：可講括，漏人，壞隔員
何：當然概況包備洩括首破同·
任務保密處·動祕警制度陰諜
情報隊*既對少校既一裝收係舉係，防設識係二就來同効講
反嗎，中校·既情報？第，二檢三區通第同野年組時值
軍隊*啦反嗎啦規檢·鼓·定查第勵第禁立·野也〇諜*及係
國部治錯將聽以密密件*，破劃，管括隊*九既情一
中政市以地可保保事查偵括施動包報一黨反點
白：情從
何：自反

心有組織，對外在不可缺少。

與為間諜，破壞總統，尚中共之陰謀，分化政治，尚中共之陰謀，分化

傳宣反間此種工作，或陰謀，分化

除反間此種工作，或陰謀，分化

部反滲透分化

最情報工作，

重要工作，

要之工作，

作，除傳宣反間此種工作，或陰謀，分化

之工作，除傳宣反間此種工作，或陰謀，分化

破壞規定及勵項立所

集定及勵項立所

鼓勵項立所

三建項

反情報之保密保護，第一項：防止敵人對我實施，第二項：防止敵人對我實施，第三項：防止敵人對我實施，第四項：防止敵人對我實施，第四項：防止敵人對我實施，第四

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 71

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* kè Faán Ch'îng-Pò Tuî* taî-shûk pin-kòh kei-kwaan à?

2. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô Faán Ch'îng-Pò à?

3. Tîm-kaaî Faán Ch'îng-Pò kung-tsòk kòm chûng-iù à?

4. Faán Ch'îng-Pò kung-tsòk faân-waî hóh-ĭ fan-waî pin seì Lông à?

5. Neĭ ĭ-waî tîm-yeûng* chì hóh-ĭ fōng-faân sìt-laû kwan-sẑ peì-mât?

6. Faán Ch'îng-Pò tsó-chik tîm-yeûng* chaì-chî tîk-yān kaàn-tîp* oôt-tûng à?

7. Fōng-tîp kè shî-haû, tîm-kaaî iù koó-laî oô-seung kîm-kuî à?

8. Uē-kwóh yaŭ yān kîm-kuî Faán Ch'îng-Pò yān-uēn, neĭ ĭ-waî tîm-yeûng* paân chì hó à?

9. Tîm-yeûng* chì hóh-ĭ yaŭ-haaû ch'aàk-tûng tîk-yān kaàn-tîp* tsẑ-shaú à?

10. Tîm-kaaî iù kìn-laâp t'ung-haāng shik-pît chaì-tô à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 71

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

faán ts'ìng-pò faán 'anti-, counter-contrary, opposite, instead of, but, to rebel, to turn over, to turn back'; faán ts'ìng-pò 'counter-intelligence'; faán ts'ìng-pò tuî* 'counter-intelligence corps, CIC'

k'oì-fòng fòng 'condition, situation, in addition, moreover'; k'oì fòng 'general outline, overall situation'

paan-pò promulgation, to promulgate; abbr.: paan

chong-chì to install, installation; synonym: chong, chì

shau-tsaâp to collect, collection; synonym: tsaâp, shau

sìt-laû to leak (secret, security, information, news); sìt-laû peì-mât 'security leak, security leakage'; abbr.: sìt mât

sẑ-kîn* incident, event, case, affair

fōng tîp tîp 'a spy, a secret agent'; a.f.: kaàn-tîp; fōng 'to prevent, to guard against'; fōng tîp 'anti-espionage'

kîm-kuî to give secret information about someone's wrongdoing, to make known someone's wrongdoing by submitting a secret report or information to certain authorized agencies

ch'aàk-tûng to offer a plan and persuade, to persuade

tsẑ-shaú to surrender oneself to (police, government, etc)

ching-p'ðh ching 'to reconnoiter, to trace, to detect, reconnaisance'; p'ðh 'to break, to find out, broken'; ching-p'ðh 'to detect and discover a plot'

fōng-faân to prevent, prevention, measures against

peì-mât p'ðh-waaî sabotage

waâk-tîng waâk 'to draw (lines, pictures, etc)'; waâk-tîng 'to delimit, to delimit boundaries, to define or mark off (as boundaries)'

kàm-k'ui kàm 'to forbid, to restrain, to prohibit, to restrict'; k'ui 'area'; kàm-k'ui 'restricted area, out of bounds'

kîng-peî guard, garrison, guard post, to guard

ch'ìt-shi facility, plan, program, method, arrangement

t'ung-haāng passable, passage, to be allowed to pass (thoroughfare), to circulate; t'ung-haāng chìng 'a pass for passing certain restricted areas'

shik-pît to identify, identify, identification; t'ung-haāng shik-pît 'passes and ID cards'

haāng-tûng conduct, action, movement

koón-chaì to control, to govern, to limit; yān-uēn haāng-tûng koón-chaì 'control of personnel conduct'

fōng-chaì to prevent and halt

poôn-luên poôn 'to rebel, rebel, to desert, rebellion, defection, mutiny, treason'; poôn-luên 'rebellion, revolt, defection, mutiny'

kaàn-tîp* a spy, espionage; a.f.: tîp, kaàn; kaàn-tîp* tsó-chik 'spy ring'

chaì-chì to stop, to halt, to suppress, to subdue, to break; a.f.: chaì, chì

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 72

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shìu-Kaaù: Mi-yĕ kei-kwaan foô-chaàk fàn-lîn kòk k'ap chìng-kung yān-uēn à, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chìng-Kung Kòn-Pô Hôk-Haaû.

P: Chìng-Kung Kòn-Pô Hôk-Haaû yaŭ mi-yă fàn-lîn à?

H: Yaŭ kei-ch'óh fàn-lîn, chuen-îp fàn-lîn, sham-tsô fàn-lîn, ch'ūng wan fàn-lîn.....

P: Yaŭ mi-yĕ fàn-lîn paan à?

H: Yaŭ chìng-kw'ai paan, ko-k'ap paan, ch'oh-k'ap paan, haû-peî kwan-koon fàn-lîn paan, chìng-chî tsòk-chìn în-kaù paan.

P: Neĭ hóh-ĭ kóng hă chìng-kw'ai paan peî ngŏh-teî t'eng mà?

H: Chìng-kw'ai paan fan-hoi poón-foh paan t'ūng îp-foh paan. Paau-k'oòt t'aî-yûk, san-mān*, meĭ-shût, yam-ngôk, tîn-yîng heì-k'êk. Ch'uī-chóh shaû chìng-kung fàn-lîn chi ngoî, chìng-kung yān-uēn haî ping-foh îp-foh ch'ut-shan kè, fan sùng huì kòk ping-foh îp-foh hôk-haaû shaû fàn. Fàn-lîn k'uĭ-teî ĭ-ts'în kè chuen-foh.

P: Tseùng kaaù kaai-k'ap kè kòn-pô tîm à?

H: K'uĭ-teî peî suén shaû lûk hoì hung kòk kwan-chúng ch'aam-maū hôk-haaû t'ūng Kwòk-Fōng Taaî-Hôk kè fàn-lîn.

P: Foŏ-Nuĭ Tuî* ne?

H: Yîk-to yaū Chìng-Kung Kòn-Pô Hôk-Haaû fàn-lîn. Foŏ-Nuĭ Tuî* shóh heúng-shaû kè k'uēn-leî t'ūng naām-yān mō-î.

Major White: What organization is responsible for the training of political personnel, sir?

Lt. Colonel Höh: The Political Staff School.

W: What type of training is conducted at the Political Staff School?

H: Basic training, special training, advanced training and refresher training...

W: What are the courses of training?

H: They have a regular course, an advanced course, a basic course, a reserve officers training course and a political warfare course.

W: Can you tell us something about the regular course?

H: The regular course is divided into a general staff class, a special staff class which includes a physical training section, an information section, an arts section, a music section and a movie and drama section. In addition to political training, political officers with military background are despatched to appropriate service schools for training in their former specialized fields.

W: What about the officers of general and field grades?

H: They are selected for training in the command and general staff schools of the three services and the National Defense College.

W: How about WACs?

H: They are also trained by the Political Staff School. WACs enjoy the same privileges as men.

白少校：負責訓練各級政工人員嘅機關，也野呀，中校？

何中校：政工幹部學校。

白：政工幹部學校有乜野訓練呀？

何：有基礎訓練，專業訓練，深造訓練，重溫訓練……

白：有乜野訓練班呀？

何：有正規班，高級班，初級班，後備軍官訓練班，政治作戰研究班。

白：你可以講吓正規班俾我地聽嗎？

何：正規班分開本科班同業科班，包括體育，新聞，音樂，美術，戲劇，電影，政工人員各以階級選送佢地受陸海空各軍種參謀學校同國防大學嘅訓練。

白：女都有乜野訓練班呀？

何：婦女隊所亦由政工幹部學校訓練，婦女隊嘅受訓人無異。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 72

READING MATERIAL

部訓有練本，治礎班訓為術，政基練官分美，總括訓軍又*，練，包其備班閒，訓種練．後規新，之練訓班．正，部訓造級班體．幹工校與，研究括．深初

中幹訓高治科影，國部練級作班；戲，政學，班戰；劇．關於工科，政業電，及，樂，立，規，班，科音，設練正班

如科軍，業各，外或去，練科派，訓兵選，工各被，政送部，受分幹，除，級，者校受訓練．部身與，幹出級大學受訓練．

各級或訓．國防

科受校及

種學校及

政工幹部訓練學校，除訓練男政工幹部外，並訓練婦女隊*．婦女隊*所享受之權利與男幹部無分別．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 72

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk yaŭ mi-yĕ Chìng-Kung hôk-haaû à?
2. Chìng-Kung Kòn-Pô Hôk-haaû yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ kà?
3. Kòn-Pô haî mi-yĕ à?
4. Chìng-Kung Kòn-Pô haî mi-yĕ ì-sz à?
5. Chìng-Kung fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt pin seì chúng à?
6. Chìng-kw'ai paan fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?
7. Neĭ haî m̄-haî chìng-kw'ai kwan-yān à?
8. Neĭ tuì-ue t'aî-yûk, san-mān, meĭ-shût, yam-ngôk, tîn-yîng, heì-k'êk, pin yeûng yaŭ hìng-ts'uì à?
9. Neĭ haî ping-foh ch'ut-shan, yik-waâk îp-foh ch'ut-shan à?
10. Chung-Kwòk Foŏ-Nuĭ Tuî* shóh heúng-shaû kè k'uēn-leî t'ūng naām Chìng-Kung Kòn-Pô yaŭ mi-yĕ fan-pît à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 72

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Chìng-Kung Kòn-Pô Hôk-Haaû Political Staff School

chuen-îp specialized course, special course; chuen-îp fàn-lîn 'training in special course, special training'

sham-tsô advanced study, to further study; sham-tsô fàn-lîn 'advanced training'

ch'ūng to repeat, again, re- , duplicated, again and again, a layer

wan to review (as a lesson), to revive, to refresh, warm, mild, genial, gentle, kindly, to warm up, surname; ch'ūng wan 'to review, to refresh'

chìng-kw'ai regular; chìng-kw'ai kwan 'regular army'; chìng-kw'ai paan 'regular course, regular class'

ko-k'ap advanced, high level, high-ranking; ko-k'ap paan 'advanced course, advanced class'

ch'oh-k'ap basic, elementary, fundamental; ch'oh-k'ap paan 'basic course, elementary course, basic class, elementary class'

poón-foh poón 'native, I, my, our, we AN (book, magazine), original, origin, root, source'; poón-foh 'regular fixed course in a curriculum; poón-foh paan 'general staff class'

îp-foh branch of service, special staff; îp-foh paan 'special staff class'

meĭ-shût art

ping-foh branch of army (infantry, artillery, cavalry, etc)

ch'ut-shan to begin life, to embark upon one's career

fan sùng fan 'separately, to separate, to divide; sùng 'to send, to present'; fan sùng 'to send separately, to despatch separately'

Cheùng General officer; a.f.: Cheùng-Koòn

Kaaû Field Grade Officer (from Major to Colonel); a.f.: Kaaû-Koon

kwan-chŭng branches of armed forces (Army, Navy, Air Force)

foŏ-nuĭ female, feminine, women; synonym: foŏ, nuĭ; foŏ-nuĭ tuî* 'WACs'

heŭng-shaû to enjoy, to receive, to accept, to entitle; a.f.: heŭng

î different, strange, extraordinary, foreign, heterodox; mŏ-î 'not different, similar, the same, alike'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 73
ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiû-Kaaù: Chìn-teî chìng-mô kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ à, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî Ch'ūng kìn teî-fong chìng k'uēn.

P: Chìn-teî chìng-mô kè t'aî-chaì haî tîm kà?

H: Haî shât-shi kwan chìng yat-uēn fà chaì-tô.

P: Chìn-teî chìng-mô kè wân-yûng haî tîm kà?

H: Haî tûng-uēn chìn-teî yān-lîk mât-lîk, chi-oōn kwan-sî tsòk-chìn.

P: Chìn-teî chìng-mô kè tsó-chik haî tîm kà?

H: Chung-Yeung shìng-laâp T'úng-Shuì Pô, t'úng-ch'aū chìn-teî kwan chìng sî-ì, T'úng-Shuì Pô ĭ Kwòk-Fōng Pô Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô tsô chìn-teî chìng-mô môk-liū kei-k'aù. Chìn-K'ui Fong-Mîn-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô tsô chìn-k'ui kwan-sî mān-sî kè tsuì ko chî-fai kei-k'aù, ì-ch'é hóh-ĭ shaû-k'uēn sz k'ap ĭ sheûng kè sz-lîng pô, foô-chaàk t'ui-haāng chìn-teî mān-sî haāng-chìng.....

P: Chìn-k'ui ĭ hâ kòk k'ap chìng-chî pô ne?

H: K'uĭ-teî tsang ch'ìt chìn-teî chìng-mô ch'uè, foô-chaàk paân-leĭ chìn-teî chìng-mô. Yaū chìn-k'ui chì-tò sz k'ap pô-pô to yaŭ chìn-teî chìng-mô kung-tsòk pô-tuî* p'ooì-shûk. Foô-chaàk chap-haāng chìn-teî chìng-mô kung-tsòk.

Major White: What is the purpose of military government?

Lt. Colonel Höh: The purpose is to re-establish local government.

W: What is the system of military government?

H: The system is to incorporate civil administration into the military system.

W: What is the application?

H: It is mobilization of manpower and material resources in theaters of war in support of military operations.

W: What is the organization of military government?

H: At the top level there is a supreme command responsible for military and civil affairs in theaters of war. The General Political Department is a staff organization in charge of military government affairs under the supreme command. Theater command headquarters is the highest command directing military operations and civil administration in theaters and has the authority to delegate the power of military government to headquarters above and including division level.

W: How about the political departments under theater command?

H: They will have a military government section to handle military government affairs exclusively. A military government detachment is attached to each unit from theater command down to division, to handle civil administration.

白少校：戰地政務既目的係乜野呀，中校？

何中校：戰地政務既方政權·

白：戰地政務既體制係點㗎？

何：係政施軍務一元化制度·

白：戰政務運用係點㗎？

何：係政員戰人力物力，支援軍事作戰·

白：戰政成組織係點㗎？

何：中央統帥部，統籌總戰政事宜，

地政建設既統帥部國防構軍政做戰總司

地重務既地方政治部軍高指揮

戰地政務既戰區事權以上既

務地體一運人組帥以僚戰而，部，構令機司

.....

白：戰區以下各級戰地有執

何：佢地政政政政務·政務·政戰行

呢？

處，負責辦理戰地政務·

至到師部都負責·

區隊屬部·

作部·

作工

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 73

READING MATERIAL

地重劃事戰，為化軍中作之政力工項工作軍物力各項實人之該為地部治要體員政重動甚為總國亦權用中作政運方其務地度作戰。

成部區指，府帥戰高部，政統令部工各級政央之司下以理政二、三、最戰地務事構事之宜機民上以戰責戰地辦地一、中、建議軍事傑軍事政幕軍級師政處，都配之執行。

至於部，部司並戰設戰地戰區地地，統為令可地戰區地政籌戰部以民地至政務戰地為授事政師務級工作

立以方揮員政務隊統總面機責治部五員，帥政軍構推行增由責，

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 73

QUESTIONS

1. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô chìn-teî à?
2. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô chìn-teî chìng-mô à?
3. Chìn-teî chìng-mô kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ à?
4. Neĭ ĭ-waì tîm-kaaî iù ch'ūng kìn teî-fong chìng-k'uēn à?
5. Chìn-teî chìng-mô kè t'aî-chaì haî tîm à?
6. Neŭ ĭ-waì tîm-kaaî iù shât-shi kwan-chìng yat-uēn fà chaì-tô à?
7. Tsòk-chìn kè shī-haû, tîm-kaaî iù tûng-uēn chìn-teî kè yān-lîk t'ūng mât-lîk à?
8. Pin-kòh kei-k'aù taam-yâm tûng-uēn chìn-teî yān-lîk t'ūng mât-lîk à?
9. Pin-kòh kei-k'aù haî t'úng-shuì-pô kè chìn-teî chìng-mô môk-liū kei-k'aù à?
10. Pin-kòh kei-kwaan haî chìn-k'ui kwan-sẑ mān-sẑ kè tsuì ko chî-fai kei-kwaan à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 73

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chìn-teî combat zone, military operation area, theater of war

chìng-mô chìng 'administration, political; mô abbr. of sî-mô 'affair, matter, business, feature'; chìng-mô 'administration affair, government affair, politics'

chìn-teî chìng-mô military government, combat zone administration

ch'ūng kìn to re-establish, to rebuild, to reconstruct, re-establishment, reconstruction

chìng k'uēn k'uēn 'power and right, authority, prerogative'; chìng k'uēn 'political power, ruling power (a nation), regime'; teî-fong chìng-k'uēn 'local government, local ruling authority'

t'aî-chaì system (social, political, military, educational, administration etc)

yat-uēn fà yat-uēn 'a common denominator'; yat-uēn fà 'to be incorporated and become uniform, incorporation, all in one'

wân-yûng application and manipulation

yān-lîk manpower

mât-lîk material resources

chi-oōn to support

T'úng-Shuì Pô shuì 'field marshal, commander-in-chief'; T'úng-Shuì 'Supreme Commander, Commander-in-Chief'; T'úng-Shuì Pô 'Supreme Command'

t'úng ch'aū t'úng 'all in one, to gather into one'; ch'aū 'to manage, to handle, to prepare, to collect'; t'úng-ch'aū 'to centralize and manage'

sî-ì affair, matter, business; synonym: sî-mô, mô, sî

fong-mîn-kwan regional army, troops in a certain war theater; Taî-Yat Fong-Mîn-Kwan 'First Regional Army'

Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô sz-lîng 'commander'; Tsúng-Sz-Lîng 'Commander-in-Chief'; Sz-Lîng Pô 'Headquarters'; Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô 'Headquarters of Commander-in-Chief'; Chìn-K'uí Fong-Mîn-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô 'Headquarters of Theater Command'

shaû-k'uēn shaû 'to give, to grant, to delegate'; shaû-k'uēn 'to delegate the power, to authorize'

tsang ch'ìt tsang 'to increase, to augment, to add'; tsang ch'ìt 'to augment (setup, organization)'

chìng-mô ch'uè ch'uè 'section, an office'; chìng-mô ch'uè 'political affairs section, administrative section, executive office'

p'ooì-shûk p'ooì 'to distribute'; p'ooì-shûk 'to attach (organizations, units, etc)'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 74

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chìn-k'ui shîng-laâp chìng-mô waî-uēn ooî*. Ni kòh waî-uēn ooî* foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

Höh Chung-Kaaù: Foô-chaàk paân-leî sui-tsîng shî-k'eî chìn-teî chìng-mô.

P: Haî t'ui-haāng chìn-teî chìng-mô shî-k'eî, uēn-poón yaŭ kè teî-fong chìng-foó tîm à?

H: K'uĭ-teî foô-shûk ue chìn-teî chìng-mô tsó-chik.

P: Chìn-teî chìng-mô shât-shi shî-k'eî haî tîm kà?

H: Haî chìn-taù shî-k'eî, sui-tsîng shî-k'eî, t'aaî-p'îng shî-k'eî.

P: Chìn-taù shî-k'eî haî chî mi-yĕ ì-sz à?

H: Tsòk-chìn k'ui-wîk noî, chìn-taù haāng-waî kaî-tsûk ts'uēn-tsoî, tsaû haî chìn-taù shî-k'eî.

P: Sui-tsîng shî-k'eî ne?

H: Chìn-taù haāng waî kò yat tuên-lôk, chî-on tît-tsuî taaî-chì fooi-fûk chìng-sheūng, tsaû tsùn-yâp sui-tsîng shî-k'eî.

P: T'aaî-p'îng shî-k'eî ne?

H: Teî-fong chìng-foó chìng k'uēn kúng-koò, fooi-fûk p'îng-shî haāng-chìng t'aî-chaî, tsaû haî t'aaî-p'îng shî-k'eî.

Major White: A military government commission is set up in each theater of operations. What is the commission for?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: To handle military government affairs during the consolidation period.

W: During the period of military government, what happens to the original local government?

H: They are part of the military government setup.

W: What are the periods of application of military government?

H: They are the combat period, consolidation period, and peace period.

W: What do you mean by combat period?

H: It is the period during which hostility is still going on.

W: How about the consolidation period?

H: It is the period during which hostility is concluded, and peace and order are restored.

W: The peace period?

H: It is the period during which normal civil administration is restored after local government has been well established.

白少校：委員會*，呢個委員會*負責成立政務委員會*·呢個委員會*負責辦理綏靖時期戰地政務·

何中校：係，原本有嘅地方行政府屬於實施戰地政務時期，指戰鬥行為繼續存在，就係戰鬥時期呢？

白：推翻呢個政府嘅組織·

何：但係戰鬥時期嘅政務組織·

白：戰鬥時期係點樣？

何：係戰鬥時區域戰鬥行為終止，治安秩序大致恢復正常，就進入綏靖時期·

白：綏靖時期呢？

何：綏靖時期為一段落，治安秩序大致恢復正常，就進入綏靖時期·

白：太平時期呢？

何：太平時期·地方政府政權鞏固，恢復平時行政體制，就係太平時期·

立期有織·成時原組區靖綏期，戰理時地政務之組織，處戰政於負責政務會*戰行都附屬之中會*·政府，地委推員政方政地級關於員政地級

時與續段靖·稱個三期為時行為告為時制，分靖鬥行被綏政可綏，其戰鬥區為行施期，該稱時實時內期·常期復之鬥區時正時恢務戰地鬥復二，政為戰戰恢第後地期作為序入固戰時·稱秩進鞏期關於三期，方就序時期·平在，後方太存落區地為

此三時期為實施戰地政務時須要經過之三個階段·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 74

QUESTIONS

1. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô chìn-k'ui à?

2. Chìng-Mô Waî-Uēn Ooî* foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

3. T'ui-haāng chìn-teî chìng-mô kè shī-k'eī, uēn-poón kè teî-fong chìng-foó foô-shûk pin-kòh kei-k'aù à?

4. Shât-shi chìn-teî chìng-mô, hóh-ĭ fan-hoi pin saam-kòh shī-k'eī à?

5. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô chìn-taù shī-k'eī à?

6. Chìn-taù shī-k'eī kwòh-chóh chi haû, tsaû haî mi-yĕ shī-k'eī à?

7. Sui-tsîng shī-k'eī haî tîm kà?

8. Sui-tsîng shī-k'eī chi haû, haî mi-yĕ shī-k'eī à?

9. T'aaì-p'ìng shī-k'eī teî-fong chìng-foó kè chìng-k'uēn tîm à?

10. Ī-ka Meĭ-Kwòk haî m̄-haî haî t'aaì-p'ìng shī-k'eī à?

立期有織·成時原組織，區靖綏處理戰地政務之組責政務戰時附屬於戰地委推，國該在府，政方各級

時與續段靖·稱個，繼一綏期，三期為告為時制，為時行為劃靖體分靖鬥行被綏政可綏戰鬥區為行，其戰該稱時，平常期復正時恢之鬥區時內期，實施期，

關於中會·務·政地戰時·稱秩進羣期·於三期，方就序時關該時時地，秩平

政務委員會·

關於戰地政務委員會之組織及其職權，茲分述如下：

政之務各級戰地政務委員會，為該地區最高之政務指導機關，其職權為：

期·平在，後方太存落區地為

此三時期為實施戰地政務時須要經過之三個階段·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 74

QUESTIONS

1. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô chìn-k'ui à?
2. Chìng-Mô Waî-Uēn Ooî* foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
3. T'ui-haāng chìn-teî chìng-mô kè shî-k'eî, uēn-poón kè teî-fong chìng-foó foô-shûk pin-kòh kei-k'aù à?
4. Shât-shi chìn-teî chìng-mô, hóh-ĭ fan-hoi pin saam-kòh shî-k'eî à?
5. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô chìn-taù shî-k'eî à?
6. Chìn-taù shî-k'eî kwòh-chóh chi haû, tsaû haî mi-yĕ shî-k'eî à?
7. Sui-tsîng shî-k'eî haî tîm kà?
8. Sui-tsîng shî-k'eî chi haû, haî mi-yĕ shî-k'eî à?
9. T'aaì-p'îng shî-k'eî teî-fong chìng-foó kè chìng-k'uēn tîm à?
10. Ī-ka Meĭ-Kwòk haî m̄-haî haî t'aaì-p'îng shî-k'eî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 74

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Chìng-mô wai-uēn ooî* military government commission, administrative commission

sui-tsîng to pacify, pacification; sui-tsîng shì-k'eì 'pacification period, consolidation period'

shì-k'eì period, phase, stage

uēn-poón original, a.f.: uēn, uēn yaŭ, poón-loì, uēn-loì

teî-fong chìng-foó local government

foô-shûk foô 'accessory, attachment, to attach, to enclose, to belong'; foô-shûk 'to belong to, to attach to, a part of' a.f.: shûk, shûk-ue

chìn-taù shì-k'eì combat period

t'aaì-p'ìng peaceful, pacific, peace; t'aaì-t'ìng shì-k'eì 'peace period'

k'ui-wîk zone, region, district; a.f. teî-k'ui, k'ui, wîk

chìn-taù haāng-waì haāng-waì 'conduct, behavior'; chìn-taù haāng-waì 'hostility', synonym: chìn-chaang haāng-waì

ts'uēn-tsoî going on, to exist, existence; synonym: ts'uēn, tsoî

tuên-lôk a stage (period), a period, a paragraph

kò yat tuên-lôk to come to an end

chî-on public peace and order

tît-tsuî order, orderliness, system, programme

taaî-chì generally, practically

chìng-sheūng normal; fooi-fûk chìng-sheūng 'to restore to normal, to become normal again'

tsùn-yâp to enter, to reach, to go in, to move into

p'ìng-shì peacetime, usually, ordinarily

haāng-chìng t'aî-chaì administrative system, administration

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 75

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chìn-teî chìng-mô kung-tsòk haî tîm kà, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Ts'ó-tîng faàt-lîng t'ūng kw'ai-cheung, ch'aàk-tîng kung-tsòk fong-faàt.

P: Ch'uî-chóh ni ti chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ ne?

H: Fàn-lîn t'ūng ch'uĕ-peî chìn-teî chìng-mô kòn-pô. Uê-peî tseung-loî faán-kung taaî-lûk kè shî-haû yìng-yûng.

P: Ni chúng chìn-teî chìng-mô yaŭ mŏ shât-îm-kwòh ne?

H: Haî Kam-Moōn t'ūng Mă-Tsó ni leŭng shuè teî-fong kuî-haāng chìn-teî chìng-mô shât-îm. Shîng-tsik fei-sheūng chi hó.

P: Ts'ìng neĭ kóng hă kwaan-ue mān-chùng tsó-chik t'ūng fàn-lîn kè yĕ. Mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ?

H: Mûk-tik haî shaî chìn shî yaŭ-haaû tûng-uēn mān-lîk, chi-oōn ts'în-sìn kwan-tuî* tsòk-chìn.

P: Mān-chùng tsó-chik t'ūng fàn-lîn haî yaū pin-kòh hîp-tsôh kà?

H: Yaū kòk k'ap taan-waî* hîp-chôh teî-fong chìng-foó shât-shi.

P: Mān-fōng yâm-mô tuî* kè fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

H: Paau-k'oòt kwaan-sẑ fàn-lîn, kaù-sheung fàn-lîn, sau-leĭ t'ìt-lô, kìn-chuk k'iū-leūng, sau-chîng shuî koón, siu-fōng fàn-lîn.....

Major White: What are the activities of military government, Colonel?

Lt. Colonel Höh: Drafting of laws and regulations, planning of operational procedures.

W: Is there anything else besides these?

H: Training and conservation of civil administration cadres for future use in the event of a counter-attack on the Chinese mainland.

W: Have experiments been conducted in military government?

H: Yes. Kinmen and Matsu are areas where experiments in military government have been conducted. The results have been very successful.

W: Can you tell us something about the organization and training of civilians? What is the purpose?

H: The purpose is to secure maximum support of military operations by civilians in time of war.

W: By whom is the organization and training of civilian implemented?

H: The various echelons are instructed to give assistance to local governments in this respect.

W: What does civil defense training include?

H: It includes military training, first aid, railroad repair, bridge construction, replacement of damaged water pipes, fire-fighting training.....

白少校：戰地政務工作係點㗎，中校？
何中校：草定法令同規章，策定工作方法·
白：除咗訓練同反戰地政務之外，重有乜野呢？
何：訓練種類係幹部·預備將來
白：呢啲地政務有冇實驗過呢？
何：喺金門馬祖呢兩處地方舉行戰地政
務實驗·成績非常之好·
白：請你講吓關於民衆組織同訓練嘅野·
目的係線軍隊作戰·
何：目的係動員民力，支援前
白：民衆組織同訓練係由邊個協助㗎？
何：由民防包括各級單位隊協助訓練，修理鐵路，
包括軍事訓練，修整水管，消防訓練
建築……

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 75

READING MATERIAL

台灣．大陸．大四大對部自由中國之重要工作為：一．建設台灣大陸攻反攻此外，政治工作台灣大陸政府才能收復大陸人民之心．二．加強後方建設，以備將來達到此目的．三．準備反攻大陸之戰地政務，組織戰地政訓時務之實施．四．目前中國軍事上極重視．故總動員準備工作亦甚重要．

建設台灣為三民主義模範省，修明政治，厲行法治，嚴肅軍紀，厚植國力

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 75

QUESTIONS

1. Chìn-teî chìng-mô kung-tsòk paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?
2. Chìng-Foó tîm-kaaî iù fàn-lîn t'ūng ch'uĕ-peî chìn-teî chìng-mô kòn-pô?
3. Neĭ ĭ-waî Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó faán-kung taaî-lûk yaŭ hei-mông mà?
4. Tseung-loî Chìng-Foó faán-kung taaî-lûk kè shî-haû, neĭ ĭ-waî yaū Wā-Naām pin-kòh shaáng hoi-ch'î chì hó à?
5. Haî Tsê-Yaū Chung-Kwòk, pin leŭng-kòh tó chì k'ăn taaî-lûk à?
6. Neĭ ĭ-waî Kam-Moōn huì taaî-lûk tsuì k'ăn kè teî-fong yaŭ keî uĕn?
7. Neĭ koó Kam-Moōn kwan-tuî* kè shât-lîk tîm à, sê-heì tîm à?
8. Tîm-kaaî ngŏh-teî iù tsó-chik t'ūng fàn-lîn mān-chùng à?
9. Mān-Fōng Yâm-Mô Tuî* kè fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?
10. Neĭ ĭ-waî tîm-kaaî iù fàn-lîn Mān-Fōng Yâm-Mô Tuî* à?

ts'ó-tîng to draft (law, regulation, plan etc); a.f.: ǐ, ǐ-tîng, ts'ó, ts'ó-ǐ

kw'ai-cheung regulation, rule

ch'uě-peî to conserve, conservation, a.f.: ch'uě

kung to attack, to assault

faán-kung counterattack, to counterattack

yìng-yûng to make use, to apply and use, to use; a.f.: yûng

shât-îm to experiment, experiment

Kam-Moōn Quemoy, Kinmen

Mă-Tsó Matsu

mān-lîk mān 'people, civilian, citizen; mān-lîk 'help from the civilian, manpower from the civilian, manpower'

ts'în-sìn front line, frontier

hîp-tsôh to assist, to give assistance, assistance; synonym: tsôh

mān-fōng civil defense

mān-fōng yâm-mô tuî* civil defense team, civil defense mission team

kaù-sheung kaù 'to rescue, to save'; sheung 'wound, wounded, to injure'; kaù-sheung 'first aid, to rescue and save the wounded'; kaù-sheung tuî* 'first aid team'

sau-leǐ to repair, to fix, repair; a.f.: sau-chîng, sau, chîng

k'iū a bridge

k'iū-leūng leūng 'pillar, beam'; k'iū-leūng 'bridge'

shuî koón koón 'a tube, a pipe (water, oil, gasoline), to manage, to control'; shuî koón 'water pipe'; yaū koón 'oil pipe'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 75

siu-fōng fire-fighting; siu-fōng tuî* 'fire-fighting unit, fire department'; <u>siu-fōng fàn-lîn</u> 'fire-fighting training'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 76

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Mān-fōng kè p'in-chaì t'ūng tsó-chik tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yaŭ kòk chúng yâm-mô tuî* p'in-tsó, uē fōng-oô tuî*, kwan-k'ān tuî*, suēn-pôk tuî*, foŏ-nuĭ tuî*, t'ūng k'eì-t'a.

P: Tsúng-kûng yān shò keî toh à?

H: Taaî-yeùk* ts'at-shâp-î-maân k'eūng.

P: Kwaan-ue mān-sẑ kung-tsòk, sò-loî hó chûng-shî waì-lō kung-tsòk. Waì-lō kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Haî ĭ shĕ-ooî* kè lîk-leûng, t'aì-ko sẑ-heì, ì-ch'é tsang-tsùn kwan mān kè kóm-ts'îng.

P: Waì-lō kung-tsòk fan-hoi keî toh chúng à?

H: Hóh-ĭ fan waì king-sheūng sìng, kwaì-tsìt sìng, lām-shî sìng saam-chúng.

P: Waì-lō kè fong-shik haî tîm kà?

H: Mât-chat waì-lō t'ūng tsing-shān waì-lō. Mât-chat waì-lō haî ĭ yât-sheūng yûng-pán t'ūng shîk-mât waì chué. Tsing-shān waì-lō hâi ĭ hong-lôk, t'aî-yûk, shue-tsîk, wâ*-pò, pò-chî waì chué. Chap-haāng waì-lō kung-tsòk kè taan-waî* haî Kwan-Yān Chi Yaŭ Tsúng Shĕ t'ūng fan shĕ.

P: Yaŭ mŏ iù-yān mîng-laū ts'aam-ka waì-lō à?

H: Yaŭ-tîng* la. Yîk yaŭ m̄-shiú ngaî-yān mîng-sing piú-în waì-lō t'im.

Major White: What is the organization of civil defense?

Lt. Colonel Höh: There are various mission teams such as the relief and rescue teams, camp service teams, ship teams, WACs, and others.

W: What is the total strength?

H: Approximately 720,000 strong.

W: As far as employment of the civilian force is concerned, certain emphasis has been placed on troop-cheering work. What is the purpose of troop-cheering?

H: The purpose is to bolster troop morale by means of civilian support and in so doing create a feeling of comradeship between servicemen and civilians.

W: How are troop-cheering activities carried out?

H: Continuously, seasonally, and temporarily.

W: In what forms are troop-cheering activities carried out?

H: Through material donations and spiritual relaxation. The former puts stress on material donations such as consumer goods and food stuffs. The latter stresses spiritual relaxation such as services rendered by the Special Service, physical training, distribution of books, magazines, and newspapers. The action agency of troop-cheering affairs is the Friends of the Armed Forces Association and it's branches.

W: Do dignitaries and celebrities participate in troop-cheering?

H: Definitely. There are many artists, actors and actresses performing also.

白少校：民防嘅編制同組織點㗎？

何中校：有各種任務隊編組，如防護隊，軍勤隊，船舶隊，婦女隊，同其他。

白：總共人數幾多呀？

何：大約七十二萬強。

白：關於民事工作，素來好重視慰勞工作。慰勞嘅目的係乜野呀？

何：係以社會嘅力量提高士氣，而且增進軍民嘅感情。

白：慰勞工作點樣實行呀？

何：經常性，季節性，臨時性。

白：以勞，位係慰報單勞神畫嘅慰精，作。質。籍工社の物主書勞分。為，慰同。勞物育行社。㗎？慰食體執總加少點神同，友參唔係精品樂主之流有式同用康為人名亦方勞常以紙軍人。嘅慰日係報係要啦添勞質有定慰物有有：

何：

有隊，織船強組與隊二制勤十編軍七防，有民隊約之護員國防人中如作由，工自隊。

於務等關任隊女婦各種

進季：一報之者生作增，種。畫人隊學工並性兩主，軍勞，勞，常有為籍為慰星慰氣經式物書位加明視士為方食，單參影重高分之及育之。電向提可勞品體作社，一量作慰用，工分流，力工。日樂勞之名，作之勞種以康慰市會工會慰三，以行各社事社。性勞，執縣，民以情時慰勞。各人於是感臨質慰主及要至的之，物神為社政目民性為精紙總軍其軍節一為報友有等。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 76

QUESTIONS

1. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô mān-fōng à?
2. Mān-fōng tsó-chik haî uê-peî chîn shî yûng yik-waâk p'îng-shî yûng kà?
3. Mān-fōng tsó-chik yaŭ pin keî chúng yâm-mô tuî* à?
4. Neĭ ĭ-waî fōng-oô tuî* taam-yâm mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?
5. Waî-lŏ kè mûk-tik haî tîm à?
6. Uē-kwóh kwan-tuî* t'ūng mān-chùng kè kóm-ts'îng m̄-hó, tsaû tîm à?
7. Waî-lŏ kung-tsòk fan-hoi keî toh chúng à?
8. Mât-chat waî-lŏ ĭ mi-yĕ waî chué à?
9. Tsing-shān waî-lŏ ĭ mi-yĕ waî chué à?
10. Ts'aam-ka waî-lŏ tuî* kè yaŭ pin ti yān à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 76

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

p'in-chai system of organization, organization

p'in-tsó p'in 'to arrange'; tsó 'to organize, section'; p'in-tsó 'to organize, to arrange and organize, organization'

fōng-oô tuî* oô 'to protect, to guard against'; fōng-oô 'relief and rescue, first-aid and emergency rescue'; fōng-oô tuî* 'relief and rescue team'

kwan-k'ān tuî* k'ān 'diligent, service'; kwan-k'ān 'camp service'; kwan-k'ān tuî* 'camp service team'

suēn-pôk (p'aàk) steamer, ship; suēn-p'aàk tuî* 'ship team'

k'eūng strong, strong (statistical figures), powerful

waì-lō waì 'to console, to cheer up, to give comfortable feeling, to sympathize, consolation'; waì-lō (mostly for troops) 'to cheer, to give comfortable feeling, to sympathize, consolation'; lō-kwan 'troop-cheering work'

lîk-leûng strength, power, influence, support, force

t'aì-ko to boost, to bolster, to enhance, to increase, to raise up, to improve

tsang-tsùn to increase, to enhance, to create, to improve, to promote

kwan mān service men and civilians

kôm-ts'îng relationship, friendship, friendliness, companionship; ts'îng-kôm 'sentiment, emotion, feeling'

king-sheūng frequent, often, continuous, constant, frequently, often, continuously, constantly; king-sheūng sìng 'continuous in nature'

kwaì-tsìt kwai 'season'; tsìt 'festival, important feasts in a year'; kwaì-tsìt 'seasons'; kwaì-tsìt sìng 'seasonal, season in nature'

mât-chat material; mât-chat waì-lō 'material donations'

shîk-mât food stuff

hong-lôk recreation, special service

shue-tsî̂k books

wâ*-pò magazines

pò-chî newspapers; a.f.: pò

Kwan-Yān Chi Yaŭ Shĕ yaŭ abbr. of p'aāng-yaŭ 'friends'; shĕ 'a society, an association'; Kwan-Yān Chi Yaŭ Shĕ 'friends of Armed Forces Association'

shĕ a society, an association; tsúng shĕ 'main office of the association'; fan shĕ 'branch office of the association'

iû-yān dignitary, important people

mîng-laū celebrity

ngaî-yān ngaî 'skill, talent, arts'; ngaî-yān 'artist, people with talents and success in movies, shows, theatrical activities, etc'

mîng-sing sing 'stars'; mîng-shing 'a star (movies, shows, etc)'; tîn-yîng mîng-sing 'movie star'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 77

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Hong-lôk kung-tsòk kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: T'iū-tsai kwan chung shang-oôt, ts'uk-tsùn koon ping shan sam kîn-hong, kik-faàt koon ping fūng-poôt chiu-heì, t'aī-ko chìn-taù lîk-leûng.

C: Hong-lôk kè tsó-chik haî tîm kà?

H: Yaū Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô tuk-tô chi hâ, yaŭ Hong-Lôk Tsúng-Tuî, Hoî-Kwan Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Pô kè Hong-Lôk Taaî-Tuî, t'ūng-maaî kwan k'ap kè Hong-Lôk Tuî*. Ch'uī-chóh ni ti chi ngoî, yaŭ sz k'ap kè yam-ngôk tuî*, t'uēn k'ap kè îp-uē tuî*.

C: Neĭ kè ì-sz chî Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô kè Hong-Lôk Tsúng-Tuî foô-chaàk kaì-waâk Lûk Hoî Hung saam kwan kè hong-lôk kung-tsòk. Ī-ch'é tuk-tô kòk hong-lôk kung-tsòk kè tsùn-hāng, haî mà?

H: Mŏ-ts'òh là. Neĭ kóng-tak tuì là.

C: Hong-lôk kè oôt-tûng paau-k'oôt mi-yĕ ne?

H: Paau-k'oôt fòng tîn-yîng, tsô wâ*-k'êk, hoi yam-ngôk ooî*.

C: Mooĭ kòh laĭ-paaì mooĭ kòh taan-waî* yaŭ keî-toh ts'ż piú-în à?

H: P'îng-kwan mooĭ kòh laĭ-paaì sheŭng-în leŭng ts'ż. Shaî koon ping tsing-shān wôk-tak shik-tòng kè t'iū-tsai.

C: Shîng-tsik tîm à?

H: Yan-waî king-faì t'ūng yān-uēn k'uèt-fât, haaû-kwóh meî taât-tò leĭ-seúng ch'îng-tô.

Capt. Cheung: What is the purpose of special services?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: To provide relaxation to service men, to improve the health of officers and men both mentally and physically, to stimulate their vigor and to strengthen their combat effectiveness.

C: What is the organization of special services?

H: Under the supervision of GPD there are Special Services, the SS Battalion of GHQ Navy and GHQ Air Force, and the SS Teams at army level. Besides these, there are music bands at division level, and amateur teams at regimental level.

C: Do you mean the GPD Special Services is responsible for the planning of and supervision over special services activities throughout the armed services?

H: Yes, that's correct.

C: What do special services activities include?

H: They include movies, drama, and music.

C: How many performances does each unit have per week?

H: An average of two performances per week, in an effort to provide appropriate relaxation for officers and men.

C: What are the results?

H: Because of the lack of funds and personnel, the effectiveness has not been developed to the ideal degree.

張上尉：康樂工作既目的係也野呀？

何中校：康調康，激發官兵蓬勃朝氣，提高戰鬥力量。

張：康樂組織係點樣？

何：由康樂總隊，有康樂總隊，同埋政治軍級師部既康樂大隊，康樂大隊呢啲之外，海軍有意計且啦。除咗團級既總隊部軍樂隊，團級既總海各康樂隊，三軍既康樂隊外，餘隊負責。

張：你既康樂工作進行，係嗎？

何：有錯啦。

張：康包括做單上既調劑。

何：樂括個均衡點經想。

張：每平成因。

何：作既目的係也野呀？

何中校：樂劑軍中發官兵蓬勃朝氣，提高戰鬥力量。

張：康樂組織係點樣？

何：由康樂總隊，有康樂總隊，同埋政治軍級師部既康樂大隊，康樂大隊呢啲之外，海軍有意計且啦。除咗團級既總隊部軍樂隊，團級既

其康，作·健身心·量之工兵力官門缺進戰可促高不中活，提軍生氣，是中朝作軍勃工劑蓬樂調兵官為的發激

之有導部隊台灣·總導督總樂隊中心·督部軍康祖樂及樂，治空有馬康康作政與隊門立個工總部部金設五樂在總級於部四康；軍師並東二之織海隊·組部隊部共三進之隊級餘南總練之樂總軍業，軍訓作康樂·有部三責工於康隊隊中空員樂關有大部，陸部康下，樂級部海治項北現政各

要期由主星到最每劑·達均調當未甚廣，平之果圍等，當動通活範會得之樂獲括音兵，其包官之所劇各缺動話使員活樂影次與人程度·

康電兩費想為演經理者表於最

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 77

QUESTIONS

1. Uē-kwóh seúng t'iū-tsai kwan chung shaang-oôt, iù tîm-yeûng* tsô à?

2. Uē-kwóh koon ping kè kîn-hong ts'îng-yîng m̄-hó, tsaû tîm à?

3. Hong-lôk kung-tsòk yaū pin-kòh pô-moōn foô-chaàk à?

4. Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô tsuì ko kè Hong-Lôk Tuî* kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

5. Hoî-Kwan Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Pô kè Hong-Lôk Tuî* kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

6. Hong-Lôk kè oôt-tûng paau-k'oôt mi-yĕ à?

7. P'îng-kwan laî kóng, mooĭ kòh laĭ-paaì mooĭ kòh taan-waî* yaŭ keî toh ts'è hong-lôk oôt-tûng à?

8. Ni chúng hong-lôk oôt-tûng kè mûk-tik haî tîm à?

9. Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô hong-lôk kung-tsòk haaû-kwóh tîm à?

10. Tîm-kaaî Tsúng Chìng-Chî Pô kè hong-lôk kung-tsòk chûng meî taât-tò leĭ-seúng kè ch'îng-tô à?

INSTRUCTION UNIT 77

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

t'iū-tsai to harmonize, to adjust, to blend, to amuse, to compensate, to provide relaxation, relaxation, amusement, compensation

kwan chung in the military service, in the military camp

ts'uk-tsùn to promote, to improve, to enhance and make possible

koon ping koon 'officer, official'; ping 'soldier, enlisted man'; koon ping 'officer and enlisted man'

shan sam shan 'the body, the trunk, physical'; sam 'the heart, the mind, affection, mental'; shan sam 'physical and mental, body and mind, health'

kik-faàt to stimulate, to ignite

fūng-poôt vigorous, lively, full of vitality, full of strength

chiu-heì the vigor of youth, the stimulating air of the dawn

tsúng-tuî the main team, the chief team

taaî-tuî group (Air Force), battalion (in certain special or training units)

hong-lôk tuî* tuî* 'a team, a band'; hong-lôk tuî* 'special service team'

yam-ngôk tuî* a music band

îp-uē amateur; îp-uē-tuî* 'amateur team'

Saam Kwan Armed Forces

fòng tîn-yîng fòng 'to show (movie), to display, to place, to release, to fly (kite)'; fòng tîn-yîng 'to show movie'; fòng yān-faân* 'to release a prisoner'

wâ*-k'êk drama, play

yam-ngôk ooî* ooî* 'meeting, gathering, association'; yam-ngôk ooî* 'a concert'

sheŭng-în to perform (show, play, concert, etc), performance; synonym: piú-în, în

wôk-tak wôk 'to obtain, to come into possession, to catch, to take in hunting'; wôk-tak 'to obtain, to come into possession'

haaû-kwóh effect and result, effectiveness, fruitfulness; synonym: haaû, kwóh, kìt-kwóh

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 78

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Neǐ tuì Chung-Kwǒk Hung-Kwan kè yě shûk m̄-shûk-shik à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: To keî shûk. Neǐ yaŭ mi-yě mân-t'aì à?

C: Nāng faú tseung Chung-Kwǒk Hung-Kwan kè lîk-sź leûk-leûk* kóng hă peî ngŏh-teî t'eng.

H: Chung-Kwǒk Hung-Kwan haî Chung-Kwǒk Saam Kwan tsuì haû-heî kè fan-foh. Chung-Kwǒk Hung-Kwan pat-kwǒh yaū yat-kaú-saam-î ch'ǒng-laâp. Sui-în tong-shî Chung-Yeung Hōng-Hung Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû shîng-laâp, taân-haî yaū kǒk teî-fong chìng-foó fan-pît ch'ìt-laâp fàn-lîn hôk-haaû, t'ūng tsó-chik hung-kwan chung-tuî. Chîk chi-tò yat-kaú-saam-lûk nîn, ni ti foô-shûk kǒk shaáng chìng-foó kè hung-kwan Lôk-haaû t'ūng hung-kwan chung-tuî sin-haû kwai Kwǒk-Mān Chìng-Foó koón-hât. T'úng-yat chî-fai.

C: Chung-Kwǒk Hung-Kwan kè kei-poón taan-waî* haî mi-yě à?

H: Kei-poón taan-waî* haî chung-tuî. Chung-tuî shîng waì taaî-tuî. Taaî-tuî foô-shûk kǒk chî-fai pô. Chung-tuî fan waì fan-tuî, p'ó-t'ung yaŭ saam-kǒh fan-tuî.

C: Chî-fai pô yaŭ mi-yě fan-foh taaî-tuî t'ūng chung-tuî à?

H: Yaŭ kǒk chúng fan-foh taaî-tuî t'ūng chung-tuî. Fei-kei yaŭ kwang-chà kei, (hing-yîng kwang-chà kei, chung-yîng kwang-chà kei, ch'ŭng-yîng kwang-chà kei foó-ch'ung kwang-chà kei), k'ui-chûk kei, ching-ch'aàt kei, chìn-taù kei, wân-shue kei..... Yaŭ ti fei-kei haî yûng lōh-suēn-tseúng faàt-tûng kè. Yaŭ ti fei-kei haî p'àn-heì kei.

Capt. Cheung: Are you familiar with things pertaining to the Chinese Air Force, Colonel Hōh?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: Quite. Do you have any questions?

C: Can you tell us briefly the history of the Chinese Air Force?

H: The Chinese Air Force is the youngest branch of the Chinese armed forces. The CAF dates back only to 1932. The Central Aviation Academy was established at that time, and various training institutions were founded and squadrons organized by different local governments. It was not until 1936 that these institutions and squadrons attached to the provincial governments were brought into the fold of the National Government and placed under one command.

C: What is the basic unit of the Chinese Air Force?

H: The basic unit is the squadron. Squadrons are formed into groups which are in turn attached to the different commands. Squadrons are divided into flights, usually three flights to a squadron.

C: Are there groups and squadrons of various branches under each command?

H: Yes. There are groups and squadrons of different branches. Among them are bombers (light bombers, medium bombers, heavy bombers, dive bombers), pursuit planes, observation planes, fighters, transports..... Some of them are propeller-driven, and some are jets.

張上尉：你對中國空軍嘅野熟唔熟識呀，何中校？

何中校：熟·你有乜野問題呀？

張：能否我哋歷史暑暑*講吓俾我何：中國空軍嘅分科·立，

何中校：熟國·空軍嘅二創立成立訓練到都幾中國·係中國三軍學校直至政府將地空中國然係中軍不過央方織，呢歸大隊，中基本隊指揮各隊·單·揮分科同炸，用氣

張：能否我哋歷史暑暑*講吓俾我何：中國空軍嘅分科·立，

何中校：熟國·空軍嘅二創立成立訓練到都幾中國·係中國三軍學校直至政府將地空中國然係中軍不過央方織，呢歸大隊，中基本隊指揮各隊·單·揮分科同炸，用氣

張上尉：你對中國空軍嘅野熟唔熟識呀，

何中校：熟·你有乜野問題呀？

張：能否我哋歷史暑暑*講吓俾我

何：中國空軍嘅分科·立，

何中校：熟國·空軍嘅二創立成立訓練到

都幾中國·係中國三軍學校直至政府

將地空中國然係中軍不過央方織，呢

歸

歷史當學訓廿雜統

立之建軍空民後轄，

官軍始空立至先管

軍國空開航設．隊接

中廿一中各中軍府

，一中在行空政

以年央省隊中直

三民創分軍校中

空於近府空學歸

陸軍附政織軍而

海空海省組空，

之國上各並省府

國中在時，各政

中．府同校，方揮

在短政．學年地指

最時校練五各一

中而以

中隊中隊

由部．

揮隊．

隊指分

中軍三

空各分

為於可

位屬隊

單附中

本隊每

基大．

之．隊

軍隊分

空大為

國成下

偵為，有

察重俯種

機，可分炸機

逐又轟發動，有

驅機型槳旋

，炸輕螺

轟炸機．轟用

有轟機炸機

輸轟轟飛

類運型種

種，中有機．氣

之機，鬥機機噴

飛戰炸炸為

機，轟轟機

型衝飛機

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 78

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè Hoî Lûk Hung Saam Kwan, pin kwan kè lîk-sź tsuì tuén?

2. Tsòk-chìn kè shī-haû, Hung-Kwan tîm-yeûng* kán-iù à?

3. Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan keî shī kìn-laâp kà?

4. Tong-shī kè Hung-Kwan Hôk-Haaû kiù tsô mi-yĕ à?

5. Tong-shī ch'uī-chóh Chung-Yeung Hōng-Hung Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ k'eī-t'a kè Hung-Kwan Hôk-Haaû à?

6. Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan kè kei-poón taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ à?

7. Mooĭ chung-tuî yaŭ keî toh fan-tuî à?

8. K'ui-chûk kei haî yûng laī tsô mi-yĕ kà?

9. Lōh-suēn-tseúng fei-kei faaì ti yik-waâk p'àn-heì kei faaì ti à?

10. Ī-ka Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan shóh yûng kè fei-kei, toh-shò haî lōh-suēn-tseúng fei-kei, yik-waâk p'àn-heì kei à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 78

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

shûk-shik to be well acquainted with, to be familiar with, to know about

nāng faú (lit)? nāng 'can, possible, energy, ability'; faú 'whether or not, not, on the contrary, to deny'; nāng faú? 'can or can't?, would it be possible that...?, would it be all-right if....?'

leûk-leûk* leûk 'briefly, slightly, a little, a summary, outline or sketch, a plan, strategy'; leûk-leûk* 'briefly, a summary of, general outline of, a little, slightly'

haû-heî that which starts afterwards, that which starts behind, to start late

fan-foh branch of Armed Forces, branch course, branch subject

ch'ðng-laâp to found, to establish; a.f.: ch'ðng-paân, ch'ðng

Chung-tuî Squadron (Air Force), Company (Infantry), Battery (Artillery)

sin-haû one after another, one at a time, one by one, separately

Chî-Fai Pô Command (Air Force)

Fan-Tuî Flight (Air Force), Squad (in certain special or training units)

kwang-chà kei a bomber

hing-yîng yîng 'model, style, pattern, type'; hing-yîng 'light model'; hing-yîng kwang-chà kei 'light bomber'

chung-yîng medium model; chung-yîng kwang-chà kei 'medium bomber'

ch'ŭng-yîng heavy model; ch'ŭng-yîng kwang-chà kei 'heavy bomber', a.f.: ch'ŭng kwang-chà kei

foô-ch'ung to dive, to dash downward, diving; foô-ch'ung kwang-chà kei 'dive bomber'

k'ui-chûk to expel, to drive out, to chase away, to excommunicate, a.f.: k'ui, chûk; k'ui-chûk kei 'pursuit plane'

ching-ch'aàt to reconnoiter, reconnaissance; ching-ch'aàt kei 'reconnaissance plane'

chìn-taû kei fighter plane

wân-shue kei transport plane, cargo-transport plane

lŏh-suēn-tseŋng propeller (Air Force); a.f.: ch'e-îp* (colloq.)

faàt-tûng to start (engine, war, attack, revolt, riot, incident), to put into motion; lŏh-suēn-tseŋng faàt-tûng 'propeller driven'

p'àn-heì kei p'àn 'to puff out, to spurt'; p'àn-heì 'to fume, to puff out air'; p'àn-heì kei 'jet plane'; a.f.: p'àn-shê kei

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 79

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Tîm-kaaî Chung-Kwòk kiù Paàt-Uêt Shâp-Seì Yât tsô 'Hung-Kwan Tsìt" à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yat-Kaú-Saam-Ts'at Nīn Paàt-Uêt Shâp-Seì Yât, Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan hoi-ch'î chìn-sẑ haāng-tûng, tsúng-kûng yat-paàk-līng-saam kà fei-kei ch'ut-tûng fan paàt ts'ì tsaâp-kik Yât-Poón chìn-laâm t'ūng lûk-kwan chân-teî. Chà-ch'ām t'ūng p'ðh-waaî shâp-keî-chèk laâm t'ĕng, waî-mît ch'ong-foò t'ūng kei-teî, kik-lôk kei kà fei-kei. T'ūng-shī kóh yât keî kà Chung-Kwòk k'ui-chûk kei tsît-kik shâp-paàt kà Yât-Poón ch'ŭng-yīng kwang-chà kei. Kik-lôk lûk-kà. Tsẑ-ts'ūng kóh yât chi haû, Chung-Kwòk yān kiù kóh yât tsô "Hung-Kwan Tsìt".

C: "Fei-Foó Tuî*" meî hôp-pìng Meĭ-Kwòk Taî-Shâp-Seì Hōng-Hung Tuî* chi ts'în, kìn-laâp mi-yĕ kung-fan à?

H: Yaū Ch'ān Naâp-Tak Sheûng-Kaaù (haû-loī shing tsô Shiù-tseùng) chî-fai, t'ūng yaū Tseúng Kaaì-Shêk Foo-Yān* taam-yâm mīng-uê chî-fai chi hâ, "Fei-Foó Tuî*" haî haî Yat-Kaú-Seì-Yat Nīn Shâp-Uêt tsó-chik, Yat-Kaú-Seì-Î Nīn Ts'at-Uêt hôp-pìng. Tsoî ni kòh tuén shī-k'eī luĭ-pîn, "Fei-Foó Tuî*" haî Chung-Kwòk, Mĭn-Tîn, T'aaì-Kwòk, Uêt-Naām kè lĭng-hung, kìn-laâp waĭ-taaî kè kung-fan, kei-foō shīng-waī yat-kîn k'eī-tsik. Haî tuén-tuén keî kòh uêt chi noî, ni ti yŭng-kóm pat-p'à seî "î-sẑ" kik-lôk î-paàk-paàt-shâp-seì-kà tîk-yān fei-kei. Sò-shê t'ūng

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 79

kwang-chà kè fong-faàt tá seî tîk-yān kè shò-mûk t'ūng waî-mît heî-ts'oî kè shò-leûng, to kaì m-tsûn.

Capt. Cheung: Why do the Chinese call 14 August "Air Force Day"?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: The Chinese Air Force went into action on 14 August 1937, when a total of 103 Chinese planes participated in eight raids on Japanese warships and army positions, sinking and damaging more than ten ships, destroying depots and positions, and shooting down two Japanese planes. On the same day, a few of the Chinese pursuit planes intercepted eighteen Japanese heavy bombers and shot down six of them. Since that day, the Chinese have called it "Air Force Day".

C: Before the "Flying Tigers" were integrated into the U.S. 14th Air Force, what part did they play?

H: Under the command of Colonel (later Major General) Claire L. Chennault, and with Madame Chiang Kai-shek as honorary commander, the "Flying Tigers" were organized in October 1941 and were integrated in July 1942. Within this short period of time, the "Flying Tigers" played an outstanding part in aerial warfare in the skies of China, Burma, Thailand, and Vietnam (then Indo-China). It is almost a legend in itself. Within a matter of a few months, these courageous and undaunted "soldiers of fortune" shot down 284 enemy aircraft, besides uncounted numbers of enemy personnel and materials killed and destroyed by their strafings and bombings.

張上尉：解釋中國吔八月十四日做「空軍節」點呀？

何中校：一九三七年八月十四日，中國空軍三艦隻幾百零戰幾十擊落驅炸機，中國七戰出陣毀·十架日併野始機軍，機擊六個合也立建納由「飛虎隊」蔣虎九期國勳幾士」射同一時泰功短「義掃目，同日共擊破地架型之後，空隊之前，日總襲同基幾重日·次沉同日本個節」十四航下，一日壞，中轟炸機·中國空軍事動地滅同八·做美功(後夫喺年，南乎之二炸器·開飛陸艇飛截落吔未來人一七「飛嘅成內百嘅材軍架同艦架機擊人隊」上介隊」四裏，個擊同毀

張：「飛虎隊」

何：由陳

之年出艦隻，動六四
戰六軍戰幾出機十
抗廿空本十時日月
於國國日艦同落八
對民中擊日機擊年
軍為日襲燬逐，每
空，該次炸驅機定
國者．八與國炸府
中念擊分沉中轟政
爭，紀出，炸日型民
中得軍架果該重國
戰空三結．本，
日．日百地幾架日起．
中大四一陣機八該軍
在甚十機軍日十自空
獻月飛陸落擊．為
貢八動與擊截架日

人保
身行責作短短建
前飛員隊在架．幾
之願為部勳十軍
隊志務空為任陸功八
航多其助之百
四員．協大二
十隊揮與偉機
第．指，立敵
國成校全建落．
美組上安區擊蹟．

為年德之戰，奇
隊納空國內之
虎三陳領中之史
飛國由國時月戰
民．中當個空
於員護在幾立

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 79

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè Hung-Kwan Tsìt haî keî uêt keî yât à?

2. K'òng-chìn kè shî-haû, Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan keî shî hoi-ch'î hāng-tûng?

3. Yat-kaû-saam-ts'at nîn paàt-uêt shâp-seì yât Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan ch'ut-tûng keì toh kà fai-kei à?

4. Kóh yât Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan ch'ut-tûng kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ à?

5. Kóh yât Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan tsaâp-kik kè kìt-kwóh tîm à?

6. Kóh yât Chung-Kwòk yûng mi-yĕ fei-kei tsît-kik Yât-Poón kwang-chà kei?

7. K'òng-chìn kè shî-haû, Meĭ-Kwòk Fei-Foó Tuî* yaū pin-kòh chî-fai?

8. Haû-loî Ch'ān Naâp-Tak Sheûng-Kaaù shing-tsô mi-yĕ à?

9. Tong-shî Tseúng Foo-Yān haî Fei-Foó Tuî* taam-yâm mi-yĕ koon-chik à?

10. Haû-loî Fei-Foó Tuî* haî pin ti kwòk-ka kè lĭng-hung kìn-laâp waĭ-taaî kè kung-fan à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 79

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Hung-Kwan Tsìt tsìt 'festival, feast, a segment, a node, to restrain, to be thrifty'; Hung-Kwan Tsìt 'Air Force Day'

ch'ut-tûng to go forth to battle, to move (as troops), movement (as troops), sortie (Air Force)

tsaâp-kik to make a surprise raid, to raid, to invade; a.f.: tsaâp, ch'ut-kik

chìn-laâm warship; a.f.: laâm, kwan-laâm, ping-laâm

ch'ām to sink, to capsize, drown, lost, ruined; chà-ch'ām 'to bomb and sink'

laâm t'ĕng t'ĕng 'boat, craft (LST, junks etc), submarine'; laâm t'ĕng 'warship and craft (LST, junks etc) and submarine'

waî-mît to destroy, to damage, to demolish, to wipe out; a.f.: waî, mît

kei-teî base (military)

kik-lôk lôk 'to drop downward, to go down, to lower, to fall down'; kik-lôk 'to shoot down (airplane)

tsît-kik tsît 'to intercept, to cut off, to bring to a stop, to bar the way, to separate'; tsît-kik 'to intercept and attack'

hōng-hung tuî* Air Force unit; Taî Shâp-Seì Hōng-Hung Tuî* 'The U.S. 14th Air Force'

kung-fan merit, worthy service; a.f.: kung-lō, kung, fan

Shiû-Tseûng Major General

foo-yān* madame, Mrs.; Tseúng Foo-Yān* 'Madame Chiang, Madame Chiang Kai-shek'

mîng-uê honorary, fame, reputation; mîng-uê chî-fai 'honorary commander'; mîng-uê haaû-cheúng 'honorary principal'

lĭng-hung lĭng 'territory, territorial, to receive from, to obtain from, collar'; lĭng-hung 'territorial sky, territorial air'; lĭng-hoî 'territorial water, territorial sea'

tuén-tuên short (time, words), so short

yŭng-kôm brave, courageous, bold; a.f.: yŭng

pat-p'à seî not afraid of death, undaunted

î-sî martyr

sò-shê to strafe, strafing; a.f.: sò, shê

shò-mûk figures, number, amount

heì-ts'oì equipments and materials

shò-leûng quantity; a.f.: shò, leûng

tsún to exhaust, to do the utmost, all, utmost, entire, end; kaì m̄-tsûn 'unaccountable, uncounted, innumerable'; a.f.: shô m̄-tsûn

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 80

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan yān-uēn yaŭ mi-yĕ fàn-lîn à, chung-kaaù?

Hōh Chung-kaaù: Yan-waî hōng-hung tsùn-pô, fei-kei koî-leūng, fei-haāng keî-shût, pó-yeŭng fong-faàt chúng-chúng kè leĭ-yaū, Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan tsuì chûng-iù fàn-lîn haî tak-tó Meĭ-Kwòk tong-kûk hôp-tsòk, p'aaì Hung-Kwan yān-uēn tò Meĭ-Kwòk fàn-lîn. Hó toh p'ai Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan koon ping-t'ūng kwan-koon-shang ĭ-king tò-kwòk Meĭ-Kwòk, hôk-tsaâp kà shaî tsuì san shik kè Meĭ-Kwòk fei-kei, t'ūng hôk-tsaâp k'eî-t'a kè chong-peî.

C: K'uĭ-teî hôk-shīng chi haû tsô mi-yĕ à?

H: K'uĭ-teî faan-huì Chung-Kwòk, haî chìn-taù pô-tuî* fûk-mô, haî fei-haāng hôk-haaû taam-yâm kaaù-lîn kung-tsòk.

C: K'uĭ-teî haî Hung-Kwan chìn-taù pô-tuî* taam-yâm ti mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

H: Yaŭ hung-k'ān t'ūng teî-k'ān leŭng chúng. Hung-k'ān yān-uēn paau-k'oòt fei-haāng uēn, lĭng-hōng uēn, kwang-chà uēn, kei-kwaan-ts'eung-shaú, ching-ch'aàt uēn, hung-chung yîng-seùng* yān-uēn. Teî-k'ān yān-uēn paau-k'oòt kei-haaî sẑ, chong chà-taân* kè yān-uēn táng. Chûng yaŭ ti peî p'aaì huì fōng-hung pô-tuî*, foô-chaàk uê-fōng tîk-yān kè hung-tsaâp, t'ūng tang-fóh koón-chaì táng.

Capt. Cheung: What training do the Chinese Air Force personnel receive, Colonel?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: In view of the progress in aviation, improvement of aircraft, techniques in flying, ways and means of maintenance, and various reasons, the most important training program of the Chinese Air Force has been the training of its personnel in the United States, with the cooperation of the U.S. government (American authorities). Many groups of Chinese officers and men and cadets have been sent to the United States to learn to handle modern American planes and other equipment.

C: What do they do after they complete their training?

H: They return to China for service in combat units or to instruct in flying schools.

C: What do they do in the Air Force combat units?

H: They are classified into these two categories: air crews and ground crews. The former includes pilots, navigators, bombardiers, machine gunners, reconnaissance and aerial photographers. The latter includes mechanics and bomb-loading personnel. In addition, some of them are assigned to air defense units and charged with the responsibility of blackouts and the prevention of enemy air attacks.

張上尉：中國空軍人員有乜野訓練呀，中校？

何中校：因為航空進步，飛行中當練已嘅技術空保最重要空空，同乜嘢做，中國由美國訓生式備局好經美軍翻飛嘢呀勤行手勤員負劃

張：佢地作飛槍地人，管

何：佢地工括關．嘅隊火

張：佢地野包機員彈部燈

何：有乜訓練員，人炸空同

改良，飛行中當練．
嘅理倒美國官新裝
得到美軍最嘅服務，嘢
機種係員兵駕其？部隊
種練人官習習呀？
進養派國，做嘢戰門
方空中美機後國校戰
法訓軍軍學學野戰教隊
飛種練人官習習呀？部隊
航空軍作，過飛之中學軍
術空合多到國成去行空？
作
工任
嘅
人員相裝防，
勤炸影，去襲
空轟中士派空
，空械被嘅
種員，機嘅人
兩航員括有敵
勤領察包重防
地，偵員．預．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 80

READING MATERIAL

國當高，空軍
中府受鬥美空
對政接戰「留」，
局國國，為位
當中美術之單
國，去技稱戰
美時生行人作
中，戰官飛般至
過在軍包．被軍
經．空圍等別空
戰大批範作分新
抗甚大練工，設
部助派訓養後，建
全援選．保國位
在事年練，回單
軍每訓械．練
之局級機軍」訓

人炸．養
勤轟員保被燈
地，人，員與
員航影人員相
人領中彈人員
勤，空炸部機空
空員，裝一敵
種，行員，尚預
兩括偵械外，責有防
有包，機之員
員手括此隊，
人人槍包除部
軍勤關員工作．
空空機人等防之
．，勤員各制
員地人至管

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 80

QUESTIONS

1. K'òng-chìn kè shî-haû, pin kwòk tuì Chung-Kwòk kè kwan-sî oōn-chôh tsuì taaî à?
2. Chung-Kwòk mooĭ nìn p'aaì taaî-p'ai hung-kwan yān-uēn huì pin kwòk shaû-fàn?
3. Fàn-lîn kè faân-waì paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?
4. Hung-kwan yān-uēn fàn-lîn-uēn chi haû, tsô mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?
5. Hung-kwan yān-uēn yaŭ pin leŭng-chúng à?
6. Fei-haāng uēn shûk-ue hung-k'ān yān-uēn yik-waâk teî-k'ān yān-uēn à?
7. Fei-haāng uēn foô-chaâk mi-yĕ à?
8. Hung-kwan kei-kwaan-ts'eung-shaú foô-chaâk mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?
9. Pó-yeŭng yān-uēn shûk-ue hung-k'ān yik-waâk teî-k'ān à?
10. Pó-yeŭng yān-uēn foô-chaâk mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 80

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pó-yeŭng maintenance

leĭ-yaū reason, cause, grounds

tong-kûk the authority, the government; Meĭ-Kwòk tong-kûk 'the authority of the United States, the U.S. Government'; Chung-Kwòk tong-kûk 'the authority of China, the Chinese Government'

kà-shaî to operate (vehicles, airplane, ship); kà-shaî uēn 'pilot (airplane)'

hôk-shîng to complete schooling, to complete a course, to graduate

hung-k'ān yān-uēn hung-k'ān 'air service, flight duty'; hung-k'ān yān-uēn 'air crew, air service personnel'

teî-k'ān yān-uēn teî-k'ān 'ground service (Air Force), ground duty'; teî-k'ān yān-uēn 'ground crew (Air Force)'

fei-haāng-uēn fei-haāng 'flight, flying, to fly (airplane)'; fei-haāng uēn 'pilot (airplane), a.f.: kà-shaî uēn

lĭng-hōng uēn navigator

kwang-chà uēn bombardier

kei-kwaan-ts'eung-shaú ts'eung-shaú 'gunner (rifle, machine gun)'; kei-kwaan-ts'eung 'machine gun'; kei-kwaan-ts'eung-shaú 'machine gunner'

ching-ch'aàt uēn reconnaissance personnel

hung-chung yîng seùng* yîng seùng* 'to take photo, to snap'; hung-chung yîng-seùng* 'aerial photograph'

kei-haaî sî mechanic

chong chà-taân* chong 'to install, to load, to set'; chà-taân* 'bomb'; chong chà-taân* 'to load bomb, to set bomb'

fōng-hung air defense; a.f.: hung-fōng

uê-fōng to prevent, to take precaution, precaution, preventive measure

hung-tsaâp air raid

tang-fóh koón-chaì tang-fóh 'lighting'; koón-chaì 'to regulate, to control, to put under control'; tang-fóh koón-chaì 'blackout'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 81

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Tuì-ue fōng-hung mân-t'aì, Chung-Kwòk yaŭ mi-yĕ kaì-waâk à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Mooĭ yat-kòh teî-k'ui ch'ìt yaŭ fōng-hung sz-lîng pô. Ni kòh sz-lîng pô t'ūng tong-teî kè ko-shê p'aaù pô-tuî* t'ūng Hung Kwan chìn-taù pô-tuî* mât-ts'ìt hôp-tsòk. Kûk-pô t'ūng kòk teî-k'ui kè tîn-wâ* t'ūng mō-sìn-tîn luēn-lòk t'ung-sùn, lîng-tò ts'uēn kòh Tsŝ-Yaū Chung-Kwòk shīng waì yat-kòh kuî yīng fōng-hung ts'ìng-pò mŏng. T'ūng-shì ts'oî-yûng k'eì-t'a kè tsik-kîk t'ūng siu-kîk fōng-hung paân-faàt, pó-oô yān-mān kè shaang-mîng, fōng-uê hung-tsaâp.

C: Chung-Kwòk kè ko-shê p'aaù-ping lîn kè fóh-lîk tîm à?

H: Hó hó. Sheûng ts'ż Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn, k'uĭ-teî taaî hîn shan-shaú. Yaū-k'eì-shî ts'at-shâp-ng̃ kung-leì haú-kìng kè ko-shê p'aaù, keî-lûk mooĭ saam-paàk-faàt tá-chùng yat ts'ż. Yan-waî Chung-Kwòk ko-shê p'aaù m̄-t'ìng kóm faàt-shê, pik-tò Yât-Poón kè tsaâp-kik fei-kei ts'oî-ts'uì ko-hung fei-haāng fei-tak ko ti yaû ko ti, lîng-tò k'uĭ-teî kè kwang-chà kei hó naān mîng-chùng mûk-piu.

C: Kòm sai-leî à!

H: Neĭ koó a? ..... Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh kóm kóng. Ngŏh t'eng-mān yat-kòh koò-sẑ kóm wâ: Yaŭ yat ts'ż yat-kòh p'aaù-ping lîn taî-yat t'sż faàt p'aaù, tá lôk saam-kà fei-kei. Yan-waî p'aaù-taân* tá-chùng taî-yat chèk tsoì yaŭ chà-taân* kè fei-kei. Fei-kei paaù-chà, lîng-tò k'eì-t'a leŭng-chèk to p'òh-waaî-chóh.

Capt. Cheung: In the matter of air defense, what plans does China have?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Each region has an air defense headquarters which functions in close cooperation with anti-aircraft artillery units and combat units of the Chinese Air Force in that area. Local and inter-regional telephonic and radio communications knit entire Free China into a huge network of air defense intelligence. Other active and passive measures are also taken to safeguard the public against air attack.

C: What is the fire power of the Chinese anti-aircraft batteries?

H: Pretty good. During the last World War, they have given a good account of themselves, especially the 75 millimeter A.A. guns which registered one hit in every 300 shots. The incessant pounding of the Chinese A.A. guns forced the Japanese raiders to fly higher and higher, thus making it harder for the Japanese bombardiers to hit their objectives.

C: That was terrific!

H: What do you think?.....Pardon me for the expression. I heard of a story that a battery once bagged three planes with the first one shell - the hit caused the first bomb-laden plane to explode, thus destroying the other two.

張上尉：對於防空問題，中國有乜野計劃呀？

何中校：每個空軍地區設有防空司令部，呢一個地區同部隊*同部隊*通訊，各令部部隊*既高射砲部隊*既巨型積防空戰區同部電自局部聯絡個巨型積極生命，高射砲部隊*既大五發停採令。

張：中國好好，尤紀國既啲難利呀？

何：好好，上次是每射擊高中！

張：屘估一個第一次係咁樣。

何：你唔使估，我有打一架有其他人民既財產，保護人民既財產，保護人民既財產，保護

安防部部同電巨短滅生
空國令門局線一最消之
領無司戰當無為在面民
之係空軍空與成象方人
國即防空防台國民極護
一防一與，電中使積保
對空有隊外播由．在，
空無設部之廣自網．面
防：區空此，個報形方
話地防除司全情情極
中，人個之．公令空之消
爭有每地作話．防襲在
戰．，當合電絡之空，
代要國與切之聯織道機
近重中部密地持組知敵．
在為由令持該保有內之產
甚自司保與位又間襲財
全在此隊時單大期空命

在二次大戰時，中國之高射砲兵連使用七十五公釐口徑高射砲．砲手技術優良，在防空上有極大功勳．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 81

QUESTIONS

1. Fōng-hung haî mi-yĕ ì-sz à?
2. Uē-kwŏh yat-kòh kwòk-ka mŏ hung-fōng, tsaû tîm à?
3. Fōng-hung sz-lîng pô foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
4. Mi-yĕ shî-haû yûng tang-fóh koón-chaì à?
5. Tang-fóh koón-chaì kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ à?
6. Fōng-hung tong-kûk tîm-kaaî iù t'ūng mō-sîn-tîn t'oî pó-ch'î luēn-lôk?
7. Uē kwŏh yat-kòh kwòk-ka mŏ fōng-hung ts'îng-pò mŏng, tsaû tîm à?
8. Ko-shê p'aaù yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?
9. Chung-Kwòk ko-shê p'aaù kè haú-kìng yaŭ keî taaî à?
10. Sheûng-ts'ż Taaî-Chìn kè shî-haû, Chung-Kwòk ko-shê p'aaù-shaú kè keî-shût tîm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 81

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ko-shê p'aaù anti-aircraft gun; ko-shê p'aaù pô tuî* 'antiaircraft artillery unit'

kuî yîng kuî 'huge, enormous, giant'; kuî yîng 'huge, giant size'

ts'îng-pô mŏng mŏng 'network, net'; ts'îng-pô mŏng 'intelligence network'; fōng-hung ts'îng-pô mŏng 'network of air defense intelligence, air warning network'

siu-kîk passive; tsik-kîk 'active'

shaang-mîng life (human, animal)

p'aaù-ping lîn battery (artillery); ko-shê p'aaù-ping lîn 'anti-aircraft battery'

taaî hîn shan-shaú shan-shaú 'dexterity, physical skill'; taaî hîn shan-shaú 'a good demonstration of one's physical skill or ability, to give a good account of oneself'

kung-leî millimeter, mm

haú-kìng caliber

faàt round (artillery), bullet, to issue, to dispatch; yat-faàt p'aaù-taân* 'one round of artillery'

chùng to aim and hit the target, to attain the target, to fall into a trap; tá-chùng 'to shoot and hit the target, to strike and hit the target', a.f.: kik-chùng

pik to force, to compel, to crowd, near; pik-kân 'to draw near'

ko-hung fei-haāng ko-hung 'high altitude'; ko-hung fei-haāng 'high altitude flying'

...ti yaû...ti ...-er and ...-er, ...more and more; ko ti yaû ko ti 'higher and higher'; uěn ti yaû uěn ti 'farther and farther'

mîng-chùng to aim and hit the target; mîng-chùng mûk-pin 'to hit the target'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 81

sai-leî terrific

faàt p'aaù to fire artillery, to shell, to launch shelling

tá-lôk to shoot down; a.f.: kik-lôk

paaù-chà paaù 'to break'; paaù-chà 'to explode, to burst, explosion'; a.f.: paaù, chà

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 82

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk Hoî-Kwan tîm à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk kè hoî-ngôn sìn kòm ch'eūng, Hoî-Kwan saì-tò hó hóh-lîn. Toh-shò kè laâm t'ĕng haî yaū Meĭ-Kwòk t'ūng yaŭ-kwan sùng peî k'uĭ kè. Laâm t'ĕng kè tun-waî* keì-în m̄-toh. Shaû-kwòh leūng-hó kè fàn-lîn kè yān-uēn yîk-to hó shiú.

P: Ngŏh t'eng-mān wâ Taî-Ĭ-Ts'ì Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn kè shî-haû, Yât-Poón t'uēn-pô fuk-moôt Chung-Kwòk Hoî-Kwan, haî mà?

H: Neĭ hóh-ĭ kóm wâ, k'eî-shât taaî pô-fân laâm t'ĕng haî yan-waî fung-sóh Ch'eūng-Kong, tsî-kei chôk-ch'ām tsúng-kûng lûk-maân-saam-ts'in-paàt-paàk tun laâm t'ĕng. Taân-haî tò-taî Yât-Poón Hoî-Kwan haî shaì-kaaì shó saam shó seì tsuì k'eūng kè hoî-kwan, yúng yaŭ k'eūng-taaî laâm-tuî*. Paau-k'oòt hōng-hung mŏ-laâm, chuê-lîk laâm, ch'ŭng ts'ūn-yeūng laâm ts'ūn-yeūng laâm, waî-mît laâm, ts'îm-shuî t'ĕng, ts'îm-shuî mŏ-laâm, wân-shue laâm, uē-luî t'ĕng, pò luî t'ĕng, sò-luî t'ĕng, tang-lûk t'ĕng, ying yaŭ tsûn yaŭ. Ī Chung-Kwòk pat-kwòh yaŭ ng̃-shâp-kaú-chèk taaî siú laâm t'ĕng.

P: Kóm Chung-Kwòk Hoî-Kwan tîm tsô à?

H: Chung Kwòk Hoî-Kwan waî-yaŭ yûng moh-t'òk uē-luî t'ĕng, t'ūng yûng hoî-p'iu shuî-luî tuì-foô Yât-Poón Hoî-Kwan. Chung-Kwòk Hoî-Kwan yaū-kik tuî* fòng-pò tsî-chaì shuî-luî, kik-ch'ām t'ūng p'òh-waaî keî-shâp-chèk Yât-Poón kè chìn-laâm t'ūng sheung shuĕn.

Major White: How about the Chinese Navy, Colonel Höh?

Lt. Colonel Höh: The coast line of China is long and the size of the Chinese Navy is negligible and pitiful. Most of the vessels were presented to China by the United States and the allied powers. The tonnage of ships is small, and the number of trained personnel is only a handful.

W: I understand the Japanese wiped out the entire Chinese Navy during World War II. Is that true?

H: You may say something like that. But actually most of the ships were sunk to blockade the Yangtse River. An aggregate tonnage of 63,800 tons was scuttled. After all the Japanese Navy was the third or the fourth strongest in the world, it had all types of ships including aircraft carriers, battleships, heavy cruisers, destroyers, submarines, submarine tenders, transports, torpedo boats, mine-layers, mine-sweepers, landing crafts, and anything you could possibly name. On the other hand, China had a mere total of 59 ships of various sizes.

H: The Chinese Navy resorted to the use of motor torpedo boats and drifting mines against the Japanese Navy. Scores of Japanese warships and merchantmen were sunk or damaged by native made mines released by naval guerilla mine-layers.

白少校：中校！好唔都好友到細國既員，日
何中校：中校，海由嘅既練訓，為三海
軍點岸數嘅良好世中實自艘三隊·數
海嘅·俾受·第部話長百世強艦，毀輸，
國國憐送·少話全敢鎮八係有力艦，運艘，
中中可軍多好聞本以封千軍擁主滅艦登有國海漂遊壞
白：聽我可
何：你可
白：敢中國
何：中

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 82

READING MATERIAL

最一二·擁轟本時，用上定力·送全·略本砲日戰並海決實之贈安之侵，日本被大·取之軍國之人時在各平各英要重海各海敵爭常海太洋與果軍中，美領禦戰經沿動平國如中歐護防日地，發太各，軍係保能中各間本南東中三艇能不動海期日服遠爭空艦，不，發沿短年征鎮戰海部夠，強本·極一內封代軍近陸份，強不日隊+·在四期軍近國大不力年艦·九短海在中且位+門七之內一極之故在而噸戰三大之·在大·陸細·面面九強圍領本強通方方一有範佔日其交性之勝利，海軍與陸空軍一樣重要·

抗戰開始時，中國為對付日海軍起見，曾鑿沉大批艦艇封鎖長江·戰後，在美國援助之下，重建海軍·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 82

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè Hoî Lûk Hung saam kwan, pin kwan kè shât-lîk tsuî saî?
2. Uē-kwóh yat-kòh kwòk-ka kè hoî-kwan m̄-k'eūng, tsaû tîm à?
3. Sheûng-ts'ż Taaî-Chîn kè shî-haû, Chung-Kwòh tîm-kaaî fung-sóh Ch'eūng-Kong?
4. Tong-shî Chung-Kwòk yûng mi-yĕ paân-faàt fung-sóh Ch'eūng-Kong à?
5. Neĭ koó fung-sóh hoî-ngôn kè paân-faàt yaŭ keî-toh chúng à?
6. Hōng-hung mŏ-laâm yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ kà?
7. Ts'îm-shuî t'ĕng yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?
8. Waî-mît laâm yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?
9. Pò-luî t'ĕng t'ūng sò-luî t'ĕng yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?
10. Tang-lûk t'ĕng haî yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ kà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 82

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

saì small, tiny, little, young, careful

yaŭ-kwan friendly troops; yaŭ-kwòk 'friendly nation'

fuk-moôt wipe out, annihilate

fung-sóh to blockade, blockade

Ch'eūng-Kong Yangtze River

chôk-ch'ām chôk 'to chisel through, to quarry (stone)'; chôk-ch'ām 'to chisel through and sink it (ship), to scuttle'

shó saam shó seì third or fourth best; shó yat shó î 'first or second best', the best or second best'

yúng yaŭ yúng 'to possess, to embrace, in possession'; yúng yaŭ 'to possess, in possession'

k'eūng-taaî strong (nation, force, strength)

laâm-tuî* laâm 'warship'; laâm-tuî* 'fleet'; Taî-Ts'at Laâm-Tuî* 'Seventh Fleet'

hōng-hung mŏ-laâm aircraft carrier

chué-lîk laâm chué-lîk 'main force, main troops, principal force'; chué-lîk pô-tuî* 'main force at the front'; chué-lîk laâm 'battleship'

ts'ūn-yeūng laâm cruiser; ch'ŭng-ts'ūn-yeūng laâm 'heavy cruiser'

waî-mît laâm waî-mît 'to destroy, to annihilate, to destroy, to ruin'; waî-mît laâm 'destroyer (Navy)'; a.f.: k'ui-chûk laâm

ts'îm-shuî t'ĕng submarine

ts'îm-shuî mŏ-laâm tender (navy)

wân-shue laâm transport (navy warship)

uē-luî t'ĕng uē-luî 'torpedo'; uē-luî t'ĕng 'torpedo boat'

pò-luî t'ĕng pò-luî 'mine-laying'; pò-luî t'ĕng 'mine-layer (navy)'

sð-luî t'ĕng sð-luî 'mine-sweeping'; sð-luî t'ĕng 'mine-sweeper (navy)'

tang-lûk t'ĕng tang-lûk 'to land (sea to land), landing'; tang-lûk t'ĕng 'landing craft'

moh-t'ðk uē-luî t'ĕng moh-t'ðk 'a motor'; moh-t'ðk fà 'motorized'; moh-t'ðk uē-luî t'ĕng 'motor torpedo boat'

shuî-luî mine (navy); hoî-p'iu shuî-luî 'drifting mine, floating mine'

yaū-kik tuî* yaū-kik 'guerilla warfare'; tá yaū-kik 'to conduct guerilla warfare'; yaū-kik tuî* 'guerilla unit'

fðng-pð to lay, to display, to place, to set

tsẑ-chaî self-made, native made; tsẑ-chaî heî-ch'e 'self-made automobile, native made automobile, local made automobile'

kik-ch'ām to sink (by bombardment, by mine or torpedo)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 83

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô kè tsó-chik haî tîm kà, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî mō-fóng Meǐ Kwan Koò-Mân T'uēn kè Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsó laî tsô mō-faân. Ni kòh tsó-chik yaŭ paàt-kòh haāng-chìng ch'uě, shâp-yat-kòh pô-moōn, yat-kòh hìn-ping ch'uě, yat-kòh peì-shue ch'uě, yat-kòh foò-koon ch'uě.

P: Ni paàt-kòh ch'uě haî mi-yě à?

H: Wân-shue Ch'uě T'ung-Sùn Ch'uě, King-Leǐ Ch'uě, Ping-Kung Ch'uě, Kwan-I Ch'uě, Ts'oî-Mô Ch'uě, Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uě. Tâk-Chúng K'ān-Mô Ch'uě.

P: Wân-Shue Ch'uě tsô-kwòh mi-yě à?

H: Kan-kuì Meǐ-Kwòk kè hìn ǐ, kìn-laâp yat-kòh san kè luēn-hôp k'ān-mô. Tseung t'ìt-lô, kung-lô, noî-hōh wân-shue kè chî-fai hôp-pìng shīng waî yat-kòh kei-k'aù.

P: Ts'oî-Mô ne?

H: Yan-waî seúng t'aî-ko sẑ-heì shóh-yaŭ Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* kè koon ping kè san-shuî tsang-ka-chóh. Ī-wŏng Lûk-Kwan kè ping kè san-shuî peî-kaaù t'ūng-k'ap kè mān-koon kè san-shuî tai leŭng p'ooǐ chì ng̀ p'ooǐ. Kwòh-huì Lûk-Kwan TS'oî-Mô t'ūng Kwan-Sui kè kung-tsòk haî yaū yat-kòh kei-kwaan ch'ué-leǐ. Haî Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô chi hâ, tsó-chik yat-kòh Kwan-Sui Ch'uě, tsẑ-keî haî yat-kòh tûk-laâp pô-moōn, t'ūng Ts'oî-Mô Ch'uě t'uèt-leî-chóh.

Major White: What is the organization of General Headquarters, Combined Service Forces, Colonel Höh?

Lt. Colonel Höh: It is modeled after the Combined Services Division of the U.S. Army Advisory Group. This system is composed of eight directorates or administrations, eleven departments, one gendarmerie headquarters, one secretariat, and one adjutant's office.

W. What are these eight directorates or administrations?

H: They are: Transportation, Signal, Quartermaster, Ordnance, Medical, Finance, Engineering and Special Service.

W: What does the Transportation Directorate do?

H: A new united service was established in accordance with American suggestions, which unified the command of railway, highway and river transportation into one single outfit.

W: How about finance?

H: The pay for officers and men in the Chinese armed forces was raised in order to bolster their morale. Hitherto, army personnel had been paid two to five times less than civil servants of corresponding rank. In the past, army finance and quartermaster work all came under the same department. Under the Headquarters of Combined Service Forces, a separate Quartermaster Directorate was organized, making it independent of its finance department.

白少校：聯合勤務總司令部嘅組織係點㗎，
何中校？

何中校：係模做模範．個部門，一個副官署．
黎署，十一個秘書也訊，財務署，工程署．特種
一個署，個署係通署，經理署，兵工署，
勤署，醫務署．

白：呢八輸運合輸
何：運根據美國嘅建議，路鐵併成一個機構．
勤務指揮部．

白：財務為因
何：想嘅薪水至工勤需財務為兵嘅兩需聯個，
提薪水比五作務署務官兵低軍係一門
高水士增較倍係總，署隊軍薪務理組立
氣加同．由司自脫軍陸嘅財處，獨
有．嘅去個部係咗中以文陸機之一．
所咗級過一令已離國往官軍關下個

重之司令部之下，有四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

在中國國防部之下，有四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

中國一·陸軍總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

國防部之下，有四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

部之下，有四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

之下，有四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

下，有四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

，有四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

有四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

四個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

個獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

獨立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

立總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

總司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

司令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

令部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

部，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

，二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

二·海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

海軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

軍總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

總司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

司令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

令部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

部，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

，三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

三·空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

空軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

軍總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

總司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

司令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

令部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

部，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

，四·聯合勤務總司令部。

四·聯合勤務總司令部。

聯合勤務總司令部。

合勤務總司令部。

勤務總司令部。

務總司令部。

總司令部。

司令部。

令部。

部。

。

組，工務問，

勤署兵勤務醫

聯官，種勤軍

之副署特之，

團，理署工，

問署經署空兵

顧書，程陸，

軍秘署工海理

倣如訊，理經

模署，通署處，等

是個署，務為訊勤

部一輸，職，特

總十運署要輸程

勤有，醫主運工

聯織署軍其如，

組兵，，務，

此憲署署題財

文之級同較比，為一律增加，盡量使

過去國軍官兵之薪水，比較同級之文

官之薪將與文人之待遇相等。

政府人員之薪水所有官兵至五倍，

軍公教人員之薪水兩倍。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 83

QUESTIONS

1. Luēn-hôp K'ān-Mô Tsúng-Pô taî-shûk pin-kòh kei-kwaan à?
2. Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
3. Neĭ ĭ-waî foò-koon foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
4. King-Keĭ Ch'uĕ foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
5. Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uĕ foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
6. Kwan-i foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
7. Neĭ koó Tâk-Chúng K'ān-Mô Ch'uĕ foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
8. Tîm-kaaî Chîng-Foó tsang-ka koon ping kè san-shuî à?
9. Ĭ-wŏng kwan-yān kè san-shuî peî-kaaù t'ūng k'ap kè mān-koon kè san-shuî tai kei-toh p'ooĭ à?
10. Keî-în kwan-yān kè san-shuî peî mān-koon kè tai kòm toh, uē-kwóh m̄-tsang-ka kwan-yān kè san-shuî, tsaû tîm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 83

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

luēn-hôp united, to unite together; Luēn-Hôp Kwòk 'the United Nations'

Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô General Headquarters of Combined Service Forces; abbr.: Luēn-K'ān Tsúng-Pô

mō-fóng to imitate, to model, imitation; a.f.: fóng

Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsó tsó 'office (division, section, group)'; synonym: ch'uè, t'eng, ch'uě (shuě), kûk, sz; Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsó 'Combined Service Division'

ch'uě (shuě) office (department, bureau), directorate

Hìn-Ping Ch'uě hìn-ping 'military police'; Hìn-Ping Ch'uě 'Gendarmerie Headquarters, Office of Military Police'

Peì-Shue Ch'uě peì-shue 'secretary'; Peì-Shue Ch'uě 'Office of Secretariat'

Foò-Koon Ch'uě foò-koon 'adjutant, aide-de-camp; Foò-Koon Ch'uě 'Office of Adjutant'

Wân-Shue Ch'uě Office of Transportation

T'ung-Sùn Ch'uě Office of Signal Service

King-Leǐ Ch'uě Office of Quartermaster

Ping-Kung Ch'uě Office of Ordnance

Kwan-I Ch'uě kwan-i 'military physician'; Kwan-I Ch'uě 'Office of Medical Service'

Ts'oî-Mô Ch'uě ts'oî-mô 'financial affair'; Ts'oî-Mô Ch'uě 'Office of Finance'

Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uě kung-ch'îng 'engineering'; kung-ch'îng tuî* 'team of engineer'; Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uě 'Office of Engineer

Tâk-Chúng K'ān-Mô Ch'uě tâk-chúng 'special kind, special'; Tâk-Chúng K'ān-Mô Ch'uě (Office of Special Service'; abbr.: Tâk-K'ān Ch'uě

hìn-ǐ to suggest, to give a suggestion, to advise, suggestion, proposal, advice

san-shuî salary, wage, income, pay

t'ūng-k'ap k'ap 'rank, class, level'; t'ūng k'ap 'corresponding rank, same rank, same class, same capacity'

mān-koon civilian officer

Kwan-Sui Ch'uĕ kwan-sui 'quartermaster'; Kwan-Sui Ch'uĕ 'Office of Quartermaster'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 84

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Kwan-I Ch'uĕ ne? K'uĭ-teî foô-chaàk mi-yĕ ne?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Kwan-I Ch'uĕ tsûn-lîk fàn-lîn ch'ung-fân yān-uēn, kung-yìng kwan-tuî* kè kwan-i tuî* kè sui-k'aū. Ch'ìt faàt wôk-tak t'ūng chaì-tsô taaî-yeûng kwan-i yûng-pán. Koî-shîn i-chî sheung-ping t'ūng pêng-yān kè ch'ìt-peî.

P: Paau-k'oòt noî-foh i-shaang, ngoî-foh i-shaang, ngā-i, hon-oô, yeûk-tsai sz tsoî noî, k'uĭ-teî yaŭ keî toh kòh yaŭ tsz-kaàk kè kwan-i yān-uēn à?

H: Kaì-maaî saaì, tsúng-shò m̄-kwòh yat-maân yān, taân-haî toh-shò meî-ts'āng shaû-kwòh leūng-hó kè fàn-lîn.

P: K'uĭ-teî yaŭ mi-yĕ kuî-t'aî kè fàn-lîn kaì-waâk ne?

H: Kwan-I Ch'uĕ ch'ìt laâp Kwan-I Hôk-Haaû. Tsung-chî haî haî keî nîn chi noî fàn-lîn taaî-leûng kwan-i. T'ūng-shî hîn-sùng yaŭ king-yîm kè kwan-i huì ngoî-kwòk sham-tsô.

P: K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* pó-kaù k'uèt-fât kwan-i yûng-pán kè mân-t'aî à?

H: Kwan-i yûng-pán yat-heùng k'uèt-fât. Ch'uî-chóh tsẑ-keî hóh-ĭ chaì-tsô kè lîng-suì kè yĕ chi ngoî, ch'a-m̄-toh shóh yaŭ kè yeûk-pán, yeûk-luî*, chuè-shê tsai ..... yat-k'oì haî yaū Meĭ-Kwòk tsoî mât-tsz sheûng kung-k'ap.

Major White: How about the Medical Administration? What are they responsible for?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: The Medical Administration is striving to train enough personnel for its medical units for the armed forces, to procure and manufacture sufficient quantities of medical supplies, and to improve facilities for wounded and sick soldiers.

W: Including doctors, surgeons, dentists, nurses and pharmacists, how many qualified medical personnel do they have?

H: All in all, the total does not exceed 10,000. But most of them are not adequately trained.

W: What concrete plan do they have for training?

H: The Medical Administration established a Medical Center for the purpose of training a corps of army doctors and surgeons within the next few years. At the same time, experienced army medical personnel have been sent abroad for advanced studies.

W: What do they do to remedy the shortage of medical supplies?

H: There has always been a scarcity of medical supplies. With the exception of the small items that they themselves can manufacture, practically all medicine, drugs, vaccines.... have been materially supported by the United States.

白何少校中校：應得治看個數有係製有係？供獲醫，多多幾送年有題問可多一已唔……呢，法善醫，係遣呢？嘅時·既責份求品·生佢呀人練計宗·深用品自差劑·負充需用備醫，員萬訓練·醫國醫除外注供給·地練嘅既醫設科內人一嘅訓校軍外軍之，上佢訓隊軍嘅外在醫過好嘅學量去之野料資？力醫量人，師軍唔良體醫大醫缺嘅藥物呢盡軍大病生劑嘅數過具軍練軍救向碎，在署署嘅造同醫藥格總受野立訓嘅補一零品國醫醫隊製兵科，資，曾也設內驗樣品嘅藥美軍軍同傷內護有嘅未有署之經點用造嘅由

白：括埋地醫

包：計佢軍

白：地醫

何：佢軍

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 84

READING MATERIAL

醫隊，軍病之最
之生與傷院得
軍衛品立醫獲
三練藥建善以
責訓量三改可
負一大．四時．
署：造要，隨治
醫下製需院兵醫
軍如並之醫官與
之類得隊屬病藥
部種獲軍親傷醫
總作法應人各之
勤工設供軍使效
聯其二以與，有
國．，院度最
中作隊材醫制與
工藥器兵政要
藥醫醫官行需

在事成科有
為軍練外約
旨與訓，共
宗隊已生總
其部，醫．
．各來科等
校至以內師
學派辦：劑
醫，開括藥
軍醫校包，
立軍該類護
設批從種看
並大自員，
署養．人醫
醫培務藥牙
軍內服醫，
期關之生藥
短機功醫一萬人．

部大故，廠藥製之好概材良之缺藥醫國中與品藥之份由於由美國供給．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 84

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chaàk Saam Kwan kè i-chî kung-tsòk à?

2. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô kwan-i à?

3. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô hon-oô à?

4. I-shaang yaŭ kaî-toh chúng à?

5. Neĭ ĭ-waî yeûk-tsai sz foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

6. Kwan-I Ch'uĕ ch'ìt-laâp kwan-i hôk-haaû kè tsung-chî haî mi-yĕ à?

7. Yaŭ tsz-kaàk kè kwan-i yān-uēn yaŭ keî-toh kòh à?

8. Fàn-lîn-chóh kwan-i chi haû, p'aaî k'uĭ-teî huì pin shuè kung tsòk?

9. Tîm-kaaî hîn-sùng yaŭ king-îm kè kwan-i huì ngoî-kwòk sham-tsô à?

10. Chung-Kwòk kwan-i yûng-pán yat-heùng k'uèt-fât. Toh-shò yeûk-pán haî yaū pin kwòk kung-k'ap kà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 84

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tsûn-lîk with all one's power, with all one's strength, with one's best effort

kung-yìng to supply, to provide, to furnish; a.f.: kung, kung-k'ap

sui-k'aū demand, need

ch'ìt faàt to devise means, to plan, to strive for

i-chî to treat (medicine), treatment (medicine); a.f.: i, chî

sheung-ping wounded soldiers

pêng-yān patient, sick person

noî-foh internal medicine

ngoî-foh surgery; ngoî-foh i-shang 'surgeon'

ngā-i ngā 'tooth, teeth'; ngā-i 'dentist'

yeûk-tsai sz yeûk 'medicine, drugs'; yeûk-tsai 'prescription, pharmacy'; sz 'one who is experienced or skillful or an expert in certain work, teacher'; yeûk-tsai sz 'pharmacist'

tsoî noî within the scope, included

yaŭ tsz-kaàk eligible, qualified

kaì-maaì saaì kaì 'to count, to sum up, to figure out, plan'; kaì-maaì saaì 'all in all, all included'

kuî-t'aî concrete

hîn-sùng hîn 'to send (persons)'; hîn-sùng 'to send (persons), to repatriate'

yaŭ king-yîm experienced

lîng-suì odds and ends, fragmentary, petty, small items

yeûk-liû* drugs

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 85

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uĕ haî mi-yĕ à?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uĕ haî yat-kòh san kè pô-moōn. Ni kòh kei-kwaan meî shîng-laâp chi ts'în, k'uèt-shiú yat-kòh kuî-t'aî kè kaì-waâk t'ūng yat-kòh tâk-pît kei-kwaan chuen-moōn foô-chaàk pó-yeŭng t'ūng ch'uĕ-ts'uēn kung-ch'îng chong-peî. Kim-ché foô-chaàk ni chúng kung-tsòk kè yān-uēn taaî toh-shò haî meî-ts'āng shaû-kwòh tâk-pît fàn-lîn.

P: Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uĕ ch'òng-laâp chi haû tsaû tîm à?

H: Tsẑ-ts'ūng ch'òng-laâp chi haû, haî chîn-leûk sheûng kè iù-tîm kìn-chuk tâk-pît ts'ong-foò, fòh-ts'ong, taân-yeûk foò, t'ūng tui-tsik shóh. Yaū kaam-ch'aàt koon kaam-tuk tîm-shau fan-p'ooî t'ūng ch'ué-leĭ kwan-yûng kung-ch'îng mât-pán.

P: Yaū Meĭ-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* î-kaau Chung-kwòk kè san kung-ch'îng mât-tsz tîm-yeûng* ch'ué-leĭ à?

H: Tsik-hak yûng-laî chong-peî san kè kung-ch'îng pô-tuî*.

P: Meĭ shik kè kung-ch'îng chong-peî kaù m̄-kaù à?

H: M̄-kaù. M̄-kaù Meĭ shik kè kung-ch'îng chong-peî kè pô-tuî*, i-în yûng Chîn-Shìng Yât-Poón Yât foo-wôk tak-laî kè chong-peî.

P: Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uĕ kè ch'eūng k'eî kaì-waâk haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Tseung-loî kaì-waâk tá-suèn kìn-chuk toh ti pó-yeŭng t'ūng chong-tsô kè kung-ch'óng, lîng-t'ò ni kòh kei-kwaan hóh-ĭ tsẑ k'ap tsẑ yeŭng.

Major White: What is the Engineering Administration?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: The Engineering Administration is a new department. Before its establishment, there was no overall plan or special organization charged with the maintenance and storage of engineering equipment. Moreover, most of the personnel responsible for the work were not specially trained.

W: What happened after the Engineering Administration was established?

H: Since it was created, special warehouses, ammunition dumps and various other kinds of dumps have been constructed at strategic points. Inspectors supervise the receiving, distribution and disposition of military engineering materials.

W: How do they handle the new engineering materials transferred to China by the U.S. armed forces?

H: They are immediately used to equip new engineering units.

W: Do they have adequate American engineering equipment?

H: No. The units which do not have adequate American equipment still utilize the equipment captured from the Japanese since V-J Day.

W: What are the long range plans of the Engineering Administration?

H: Future plans call for the construction of maintenance and manufacturing plants to make the organization self-sufficient.

白少校：程工關計養種特署創立別所理處國樣*用既．依備署計工養
何中校：工程未劃同工別創立別所理軍處黎工唔然．既劃廠．
白：工程署成同儲作訓立之倉．軍隊*理裝程夠用既．新備式勝戰美
何：自從係立一存既練之後庫由用務呀？備裝美戰美
白：美由即美唔
何：刻式夠
白：程來
何：工將
白何：
白：
何：
白：
何：
白何：
白：
何：
白何：
白：
何：
白

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 85

READING MATERIAL

門，包上積餘理部作戰與與，新工在庫材，隊+一程(二).藥器程是工．彈程工署之備，工新程軍裝倉新備工三程貨之裝之空工，交，部陸存庫務備總海儲倉國裝．

中掌(一).建(三)．工職：點．資用其括要所物軍國為保築點(四).程勤責與別美配品聯員養特收分物

輸射樑，運掃橋對與之隊+炸壞程轟破工機被事日理軍在修．國時兵等中當工塲時，隊+機獻部飛戰貢各，大大助路次極協公二有，通下路交之鐵

本國部日中一由在現，中國式美，故備份為後之裝部程一，日工本勝式備國批程中大工從獲之式

自俘隊+程隊+日軍工份為

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 85

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwŏk Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uĕ shûk-ue pin-kŏh kwan-sẑ pô-moŏn à?
2. Luĕn-K'an Tsúng-Pô kè chik-cheúng haî tîm à?
3. Kung-ch'îng haî mi-yĕ à?
4. Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uĕ haî chîn-leûk iù-tîm kîn-chuk ti mi-yĕ à?
5. Taân-yeûk foŏ yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?
6. Tui-tsik shŏh haî yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ kà?
7. Kung-Ch'îng Ch'uĕ tîm-yeûng* ch'ué-leĭ Meĭ Kwan î-kaau kè kung-ch'îng mât-tsz?
8. Î-Ts'ẑ Taaî-Chîn kè shî-haû, kung-ch'îng tuî* yaŭ mi-yĕ kùng-hîn?
9. Tîm-kaaî î-ka Chung-Kwŏk kung-ch'îng tuî* yaŭ Yât-Poŏn kè chong-peî à?
10. Chung-Kwŏk keî shî chîn-shîng Yât-Poŏn à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 85

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

k'uèt-shiú to lack, to want

ch'uě-ts'uēn to store, storage; a.f.: ch'uě-ts'ōng, ch'uě, ts'uēn, tsông

kim moreover, besides, also, together with, to annex, to unite in one (as jobs, duties); kim chik 'to fill more than one office'; kim-chê 'moreover, besides, in addition'

taaî toh-shò great majority, most of

iù-tîm important points, important areas; chîn-leûk iù-tîm 'strategic points'; ts'îng-pò iù-tîm 'essential elements of information, EEI'

fòh-ts'ong warehouse, storage; a.f.: ts'ong-foò

taân-yeûk ammunition, ammo

taân-yeûk foò ammunition dump

tîm-shau to check and receive (materials, equipments, items)

mât-pán materials, goods

î-kaau to transfer (a position, an administration, materials, equipment) to (a successor, receiver, recipient)

kung-ch'îng pô-tuî* engineering units

Meǐ shik American style, American made; Yât shik (Japanese style, Japanese made'

foo-wôk to capture (prisoners, weapons, materials)

chong-tsô to make and install (manufactory)

kung-ch'óng factory, manufactory, manufacturing plant; a.f.: ch'óng

tsî k'ap tsî yeŭng self-sufficient, self-supporting

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 86

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Ping-Kung Ch'uĕ ne?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk i-în iù i-k'aaù k'eî-t'a kè kwòk-ka kung-k'ap kwan-yûng pó-k'ap. Shóh-ĭ Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan yaŭ kòk chúng pat-t'ūng chaì-tsô kè kwan-haaî ping-heì t'ūng taân-yeûk. Ping-Kung Ch'uĕ ĭ-king uēn-shîng yat-kòh waâk-yat kaì-waâk.

P: Kei-poón sheûng yûng Meĭ shik kè ts'eung-haaî t'ūng taân-yeûk.

H: Tong-în la. Sui-în t'iū-chîng hing ping-heì kè kaì-waâk ch'a-m̄-toh ĭ-king uēn-shîng, taân-haî yaŭ ti pô-tuî* i-în yûng Chung-Kwòk tsẑ-chaì t'ūng k'eî-t'a kwòk-ka chaì-tsô kè ping-heì. Paau-k'oòt loî-fûk ts'eung, ts'ẑ-to, k'a-pan ts'eung, tsẑ-tûng pô-ts'eung, ch'ung-fung ts'eung, tsẑ-tûng shaú-ts'eung, chuén-lūn shaú-ts'eung, hing kei-kwaan-ts'eung, ch'ŭng kei-kwaan-ts'eung, shaú-laū-taân*, ts'eung-laū-taân*.....

P: Ch'ŭng ping-heì, p'aaù-ping-heì, ch'ŭng p'aaù-ping-heì tîm à?

H: Uē pik-kik p'aaù, laū-taân* p'aaù, ka-nūng p'aaù ko-shê p'aaù, p'îng-shê p'aaù, fóh-tsìn p'aaù, p'àn-fóh heì..... yîk-to haî yat-yeûng.

P: Taân-yeûk uē p'aaù-taân* t'ūng ts'eung-taân* tîm à?

H: Chung-Kwòk chî hóh-ĭ chaì-tsô tsẑ-keî sui-iù kè p'aaù-taân* paâk-fân chi î-shâp. Ts'eung-taân* paàk-fân chi saam.

Major White: How about the Ordnance Administration?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: China still relies on other countries for military supplies. For this reason the Chinese army is equipped with weapons and ammunition of various kinds and makes. The Ordnance Administration has already worked out a plan to unify all materials.

W: ... Basically using weapons and ammunition of American make.

H: Definitely. Although the readjustment in light arms is nearly completed, some units are still using weapons of Chinese make as well as some manufactured by other countries. These include rifles, bayonets, carbines, automatic rifles, sub-machine guns, automatic pistols, revolvers, light machine guns, heavy machine guns, hand and rifle grenades...

W: How about heavy weapons, artillery and heavy artillery pieces?

H: The same thing applies to mortars, howitzers, cannons, AA guns, antitank guns, rockets, flame throwers...

W: How about ammunition such as shells and bullets?

H: China can only produce 20% of the shells and 3% of the bullets she needs.

白少校：兵工署呢？

何中校：兵中軍不工上喇，多用器自轉手器，擊平都係一樣。

白：本然基當兵迫重兵

何：如中國

給供各·家有國軍計劃·要然給經式然完自括槍槍，手榴彈*，槍榴彈*……

種兵·，重機關槍，

依所軍成槍整，同復衝輕機關槍，重機關槍，

靠以械一械輕但其槍鋒槍，槍關槍，

其中兵個同兵係他，槍關槍，

他國器劃彈器有國刺，

哌陸同一藥哌哟家刀自

國軍彈計·計劃隊*造卡手槍，動

家有藥劃·差依哌兵槍，

各·兵·唔然

砲，兵器*砲，加農砲，高射砲，

砲，榴彈*砲，火箭砲，噴火器……亦

國用同署用·已中·動輪手槍，

署依補製已美雖經國包步手

呢？

要·哌完哌調成製來，

然給造經式然完自括槍槍，

軍不工上喇多用器自轉手器，

白：弹藥

何：中

砲彈*如砲彈*同槍彈*點呀？

祇可以製造自己需要哌砲彈*百份之二十·槍彈*百份之三·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 86

READING MATERIAL

軍器兵槍，空兵輕賓手彈高器射等。陸重卡輪榴火械，故彈式，海為彈，轉槍砲噴軍槍式開國國砲責分槍刀，農給之英，中美與負可與刺槍彈加砲供經為後，在藥署械彈，手榴，箭國口式立後，彈工軍砲槍動手砲火各同型成利練械兵之給分或，槍榴砲岸美不械署勝訓軍化部補可槍槍關，歐種軍工戰受之國總之藥復鋒機砲海依靠各之兵抗國美勤藥彈來衝重擊，國，普，化去由完聯彈，為，迫砲中最式一員自已國與器分槍槍如射過去隊去德統人中械兵可步關器平部過，藥種下術軍輕又動機兵，各，式彈兵之技之與器自輕重砲在藥日械批助之

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 86

QUESTIONS

1. mi-yĕ kiû tsô ping-kung à?

2. Tsẑ-Yaū Chung-Kwòk kwan-tuî* yûng kè ts'eung-haaî taaî-yeûk toh-shò haî pin kwòk chaî-tsô kà?

3. Ping-heì hóh fan wai pin leŭng-chúng à?

4. Loî-fûk ts'eung, ts'ẑ-to, haî hing ping-heì yik-waâk ch'ŭng ping-heì?

5. K'a-pan ts'eung, tsẑ-tûng pô-ts'eung, ch'ung-fung ts'eung, shaú-ts'eung, kei-kwaan ts'eung, shaú-laū-taân* haî hing ping-heì yik-waâk ch'ŭng ping-heì?

6. Tsòk-chìn kè shî-haû, mi-yĕ shî-haû hoi-ch'î yûng ts'ẑ-to à?

7. Pik-kik p'aaù, laū-taân* p'aaù haî hing ping-heì yik-waâk ch'ŭng ping-heì?

8. Pik-kik p'aaù toh-shò haî pin ti teî-fong yûng kà?

9. Ko-shê p'aaù yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?

10. P'îng-shê p'aaù yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 86

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

i-k'aaù to depend on, to rely on, to count on; synonym: i k'aaù, î-k'aaù, i-laaî

kwan-haaî weapons; synonym: haaî

waâk-yat to unify, to standardize, to be uniform; synonym: piu-chún fà

ts'eung-haaî weapons; a.f.: kwan-haaî

loî-fûk ts'eung rifles; a.f.: loî-fuk ts'eung, pô-ts'eung

ts'ż-to ts'ż 'to stab, to prick, to pierce, a thorn'; to 'knife'; ts'ż-to 'bayonets'

k'a-ban ts'eung carbines; a.f.: mă-ts'eung, k'a-pan

tsż-tûng pô-ts'eung tsż-tûng 'automatic, spontaneous, voluntary, willingly'; pô-ts'eung 'rifle'; tsż-tûng pô-ts'eung 'automatic rifles'; tsż-tûng p'aaù 'automatic artillery piece'

ch'ung-fung ts'eung ch'ung-fung 'to assault, to charge'; ch'ung-fung ts'eung 'sub-machine guns'

tsż-tung shaú-ts'eung shaú-ts'eung 'pistols, revolvers'; tsż-tûng shaú-ts'eung 'automatic pistols'

chuén-lūn shaú-ts'eung revolvers

hing kei-kwaan-ts'eung light machine guns

ch'ŭng kei-kwaan-ts'eung heavy machine guns

shaú-laū-taân* hand grenades

ts'eung-laū-taân* rifle grenades

ch'ŭng ping-heì heavy weapons

p'aaù-ping-heì artillery pieces

ch'ŭng p'aaù-ping-heì heavy artillery pieces

pik-kik p'aaù mortars

laū-taân* p'aaù howitzers

ka-nūng p'aaù cannons

p'ing-shê p'aaù antitank guns

fóh-tsìn p'aaù fóh-tsìn 'a rocket'; fóh-tsìn p'aaù 'rockets, rocket launchers, bazookas'

p'àn-fóh heì flame throwers

ts'eung-taân* bullets; p'aaù-taân* 'artillery shells'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 87

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Sau-chìng-chóh kè yeŭng-lŏ chaì-tô yaŭ mi-yĕ yau-tîm t'ūng k'uèt-tîm à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yat, t'iū-ch'a t'ūng sun-mân kè kìt-kwóh peî-kaaù chún-k'ŏk ti. Î, chi-foô foón-hông shaú-tsûk kaán-taan-fà-chóh. Saam, shaû hing sheung kè koon ping hóh-ĭ peî p'aaì ooî uēn-poón foô-shûk pô-tuî*, m̄-shaî în-ch'ì. Seì, tuì waî-hâ ts'an-shûk uĕ ĭ kòk chúng fong-pîn t'ūng haaú-luî.....

C: Chì-ue sheung ping fong-mîn, tîm-yeûng* chiù-liû ne?

H: Yat, yaŭ kà-shûk kè, sùng k'uĭ-teî faan uk-k'eî. Î, Ĭ-ts'în yaŭ chik-îp ì mŏ ts'aān-faì kè, peî k'uĭ-teî tsô-faan kaû-shì kè kung-tsòk. Saam, Ts'aān-faì-chóh waâk Ĭ-ts'în shat îp kè, p'aaì k'uĭ-teî huì chik-îp hôk-haaû, waî-ch'ì k'uĭ-teî kè shaang-oôt. Seì, Uên-ì tsô nūng-foo kè, peî t'în-teî k'uĭ-teî kaang-chùng. Nğ, Shaû-kwòh leūng-hó kaaù-yûk ì seúng kaì-tsûk k'uĭ-teî kè hôk-îp kè, p'aaì k'uĭ-teî faan-huì hôk-haaû tûk-shue. Lûk, M̄-hóh-Ĭ tsô yâm-hōh kung-tsòk ì yaû mŏ ka-shûk kè, chún-huî k'uĭ-teî taû-laū haî i-uên* shuè, yaū Chìng-foó foó-sut.....

Capt. Cheung: What are the advantages and disadvantages of the revised pension system, Colonel?

Lt. Colonel Höh: There are hardly any disadvantages. The advantages are: 1. Results of investigations and inquiries are more accurate. 2. Payment is simplified. 3. Officers and men with minor injuries can be sent back to their original units without delay. 4. Consideration and facility are given to survivors....

C: How do they take care of wounded soldiers?

H: 1. Those who have families are sent home. 2. Those who had jobs before and who are not physically handicapped are given their old jobs. 3. Those who are disabled or who were out of employment before are sent to vocational schools and are provided with means of livelihood. 4. Those who are willing to become farmers are given land to farm. 5. Those who are well-educated and are willing to continue their studies are sent back to school. 6. Those who are unfit for any employment and who have no families are permitted to remain in hospitals and live on Government stipends.

張上尉：同點優野也有制度老中校？結果較咗原遺……

何中校：啲。受屬親下。前翻失持，以做前維好，派佢任地。三，附屬以前夫良過，以許郵……。

張：於至有養何詢項兵使方，送有作佢活地續校又院處，

何：一，有正點調支傷隊，各方嘅業嘅，嘅地想去作喺修缺一，二，輕部與傷家有舊業佢俾育地何逗

嘅單派四，慮料呢？

比化田對

較咗。

準確

嘅，

考照翻嘅，殘職願。

比或校，農意

二，地以夫，

簡被。

果

咗呀查付嘅，

既，問手可延便點佢殘。地。耕佢讀有處，

嘅，同款官唔種面，而工派生佢繼學而醫

嘅，

嘅，

嘅，

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 87

READING MATERIAL

其年暑果．部於二．前其
，因約結化屬至．以將活曾校，．受讀准自鼓
度在約結化屬至．以將活曾校，．受讀准自鼓
制現多，之簡已來便四再者，做，家生往學者郵大之
老而甚詢續原方其其業維持以至屬撫極
養務人點與手田種送使失能五送親責有
之服之優查之派各，前其地，又府士
同家作之調金被以者者以，無員氣
不國工有為效人曾有個續各一繼界護能世保不係全是關宗旨歲

下為受隊傷如之遣四良書許從勵
三．兵以工送願好．其此．
如較．傷兵前作至意教六．逼制
現：準輕四方前作．職做育不留度
修一確傷對面有．職三業農而能在實
正對．官遺：職三業如學夫想做醫行
之於二，兵下一．業如學夫想做醫行
養養支可之如而已校者繼任院後，
老老付以親有不殘學，續何內，對
制者養盡屬家殘廢或，給業作由部
度之老快與屬廢或，給業作由部
之調金被以者者以，使田者而政隊
優查之派各，前其地，又府士
點與手田種送使失能．遣無員氣
甚詢續原方其其業維持以至屬撫極
多，之簡已來便四再者，做，家生往學者郵大

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 87

QUESTIONS

1. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô yeŭng-lŏ à?
2. Yeŭng-lŏ chaì-tô kè tsung-chî haî tîm à?
3. Haî Meĭ-Kwòk, tò-chóh keî-toh suì tsaû hóh-ĭ shan-ts'îng yeŭng-lŏ?
4. San kè yeŭng-lŏ chaì-tô tuì-ue shaû hing sheung kè koon ping tîm à?
5. Tuì-ue waì-hâ ts'an-shûk tîm à?
6. Tuì-ue yaŭ ka-shûk kè sheung ping tîm à?
7. Tuì-ue ĭ-ts'în yaŭ chik-îp ì mŏ ts'aān-faì kè tîm à?
8. Tuì-ue ĭ-king ts'aān-faì waâk-ché ĭ-ts'în shat îp kè tîm à?
9. Tuì-ue uên-ì tsô nūng-foo kè tîm à?
10. Tuì-ue pat nāng tsô yâm-hōh kung-tsòk ì yaû mŏ ka-shûk kè tîm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 87

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

sau-chìng to amend, to revise

yeŭng-lŏ chaì-tô yeŭng 'to rear, to feed, to raise'; yeŭng-lŏ 'to pension the aged, to care for parents in their old age'; yeŭng-lŏ chaì-tô 'pension system'; yeŭng-lŏ kam 'pension money'

k'uèt-tîm drawbacks, shortcomings, weak points, disadvantages; a.f.: tuén-ch'uè, yeûk-tîm

sun-mân to inquire, to question, to interrogate, inquiry, questioning, interrogation; sun-mân ch'uè 'office for inquiry, office for information'

chún-k'òk accurate, precise, exact; a.f.: chún

chi-foô to pay, to make payment; a.f.: chi, foô

foón-hŏng a sum of cash, cash; a.f.: foón, ts'în*, kam

shaú-tsûk process, procedure, red-tape, formality, technicality

kaán-taan simple (as opposite to complex); a.f.: kaán; kaán-taan fà 'to simplify, to make it less complex'; a.f.: kaán fà

în-ch'ì to delay, to postpone; synonym: în, ch'ì-în

waì-hâ to leave behind (after one's departure or death), bequeathed, left to another (after one's death); a.f.: waì

uĕ ǐ to give to, to grant, to concede to, to allow; a.f.: uĕ

chiû-liû to care for, to aid, to take care of; a.f.: chiû-koò, tá-leǐ

ka-shûk family members, family folks

shat îp shat 'to lose, loss'; îp 'job, employment, business, profession'; shat îp 'unemployed, unemployment, jobless'; shat îp kam 'unemployment fund'

waì-ch'ì to maintain, to provide with

uên-î willing; a.f.: uên

nūng-foo farmer; a.f.: nūng-yān

t'în-teî t'în 'rice field'; t'în-teî 'rice field, condition, circumstances, state of things'; tō-chóh kóm kè t'în-teî 'situation has developed to such a condition'

hók-îp schooling, studying

chún-huî to allow, to permit, to grant permission, to approve

taû-laū to sojourn, sojourn, to stay (in a place for the time being)

foó-sut to be compassionate, to show pity and to relieve (the survivors) by providing with means of livelihood and compensation; foó-sut kam 'pension for war-survivors'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 88

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Pin-kòh koón-hât Kwòk-Fōng Pô kà, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Tsúng-T'úng haî ts'uēn kwòk kè Hoî Lûk Hung Kwan Taaî-Uēn-Shuì. Kwòk-Fōng-Pô yaū Tsúng-T'úng kòh-yān chîk-tsìp koón-hât, yaū Hāng-Chìng Uên* míng-î sheûng koón-hât.

P: Taaî-t'aî laî kóng, Kwòk-Fōng Pô kè tsó-chik haî tîm kà?

H: Kwòk-Fōng Pô yaŭ Kwòk-Fōng Pô Poón-Pô t'ūng Tsuì Ko Ts'aam-Maū.

P: Kwòk-Fōng Pô Poón-Pô luĭ-pîn yaŭ mi-yĕ tsó-chik à?

H: Yaŭ Kwòk-Fōng Pô-Cheúng t'ūng seì-kòh Kwòk-Fōng Ts'ž-Cheúng. K'uĭ-teî foô-chaàk kaì-waâk t'ūng chaì-tîng fong-cham.

P: Tsuì Ko Ts'aam-Maū ne?

H: Yaŭ Ts'aam-Maū Tsúng-Cheúng t'ūng saam-kòh Ts'aam-Maū Ts'ž-Cheúng. K'uĭ-teî foô-chaàk chî-fai t'ūng tiû-tûng ts'uēn kwòk kwan-tuî*. K'uĭ-teî chi hâ yaŭ Tsuì Ko Yat-Poon Ts'aam-Maū t'ūng Tsuì Ko Tâk-Îp Ts'aam-Maū.

P: Tsuì Ko Yat-Poon Ts'aam-Maū yaŭ mi-yĕ tsó-chik à?

H: Yaŭ lûk-kòh t'eng. Taî-Yat T'eng foô-chaàk yān-sẑ hāng-chìng. Taî-Î T'eng foô-chaàk Ts'ìng-Pò. Taî-Saam T'eng foô-chaàk kaì-waâk tsòk-chìn. Taî-Seì T'eng foô-chaàk K'an-Mô Pó-K'ap. Taî-Nğ T'eng foô-chaàk P'in-Chaì Fàn-Lîn. Taî-Lûk T'eng foô-chaàk Īn-Kaù Faàt-Chîn.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 88

P: Tsuì Ko Yat-Poon Ts'aam-Maū tîm-yeûng* faàt mîng-lîng à?

H: Ǐ Ts'aam-Maū Tsúng-Cheúng mîng-î heùng kòk Tsúng Sz-Lîng Pô faàt mîng-lîng.

Major White: Who has control over the Ministry of National Defense, Colonel Höh?

Lt. Colonel Höh: The President is the Commander-in-Chief of the Land, Sea, and Air Forces. The Ministry of National Defense is under the direct control of the President and nominal control of the Executive Yuan.

W: Generally speaking, what is the organization of the Ministry of National Defense?

H: It consists of the Office of the Minister of National Defense and The Supreme Staff.

W: What is the organization within the Office of the Minister of National Defense?

H: It consists of The Minister and four Vice-Ministers. They are responsible for planning and policy-making.

W: How about the Supreme Staff?

H: The Chief of Supreme Staff and three Deputy Chiefs of Supreme Staff. They are responsible for the command and movements of all troops and forces. Under them, there is a Supreme General Staff and a Supreme Special Staff.

W: What is the organization of the Supreme General Staff?

H: There are six divisions. 1. Personnel and Administration. 2. Intelligence. 3. Planning and Operations. 4. Services and Supply. 5. Organization and Training. 6. Research and Development.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 88

W: How does the Supreme General Staff issue directives?

H: Directives are issued to all General Headquarters in the name of the Chief of Supreme Staff.

白少校：校？

何中校：中校元帥，由何軍大管轄，負地參之邊總國行黎部部防責參謀責下謀。

白：體防國高參

何：大國國有最有

白：高六

何：最有

白：高參

何：最以

部海個管既部也國方針

防既統上部本有個定

國國總義防部便四制

轄全由名國防裏同同？

管係部院，國部長劃呢長揮最

個統防政講有本部計謀總指有

參陸人轄組同野防針

空直接·織最組次·

謀？

行員補六

政·計·

責給廳員

事廳務第

織人三勤·

組責第責練

野員·員訓

也廳報廳制

有一情四編·

謀第責第責展謀名

參·員·員發參長

般廳廳戰廳究般總

一個二作五研一謀

次軍同

長·隊·

謀國謀

參全參

個動般

三調一

同同高

點義

令·

部發命令·

令司總

呀令

樣向各

呀？

負之參

地業

低特

高

第劃第責

負地

低地

之全受
國為部
全部防
為防國
樣，國
一之義
統統名
總總在
國在，上
美，關際
與帥機實
統元政，
總大軍轄
國軍之管
中空高院
陸最政
海國行

最，計參長動最
與長責為總之有
部部員官，隊下參，發司
本防部主長部之般報究總
部國防之次責部一情研各
防為國部謀員本高，向
國官，本參，謀最政練義
門，主長謀個隊參，行訓名
之次參三軍高謀事制之
部部防高有國最參人編長
大防國最下全，業責，總
兩國個，之動定特員給以
有，四針長調決與別補謀
部部有方總同之謀分務參
防本下定，揮略參；勤般，
國謀之制長指戰般廳，一令
參長與總責，一個戰高命
高部劃謀員員高六作最發

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 88

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè Hoî Lûk Hung Kwan Taaî-Uēn-Shuì haî pin-kòh à?
2. Meǐ-Kwòk kè Hoî Lûk Hung Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng haî pin-kòh à?
3. Tsoî mîng-î sheûng, Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Fōng Pô yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan koón-hât à?
4. Shât-tsaì sheûng, Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Fōng Pô yaū pin-kòh chîk-tsìp koón-hât?
5. Kwòk-Fōng Pô yaŭ pin leŭng taaî pô-moōn à?
6. Kwòk-Fōng Pô foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
7. Ts'aam-Maū Tsúng-Cheúng foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?
8. Tsuì Ko Yat-Poon Ts'aam-Maū yaŭ keî-toh kòh t'eng à?
9. Tsuì Ko Yat-Poon Ts'aam-Maū pin-kòh t'eng foô-chaàk ts'îng-pò kung-tsòk à?
10. Tsuì Ko Yat-Poon Ts'aam-Maū yûng mi-yĕ paân-faàt heùng kòk tsúng-sz-lîng pô faàt mîng-lîng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 88

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Hoí Lûk Hung Kwan Taaî-Uēn-Shuì taaî-uēn-shuì 'field marshal'; a.f.: uēn-shuì; Hoí Lûk Hung Kwan Taaî-Uēn-Shuì 'Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces, Generalissimo'

kòh-yān individual

mîng-î titles, names; mîng-î sheúng 'nominal, ceremonial'

taaî-t'aì laì kóng generally speaking, in general; a.f.: yat-poon laì kóng, p'ó-t'ung laì kóng

Kwòk-Fōng Pô Poón-Pô poón-pô 'proper part, main part'; Kwòk-Fōng Pô poón-pô 'the Ministry of National Defense itself'

Tsuì Ko Ts'aam-Maū Supreme Staff; a.f.: Tsuì Ko Ts'aam-Maū Poón-Pô

Kwòk-Fōng Ts'è-Cheúng Vice Minister of National Defense

chaì-tîng to make (policy, designs)

fong-cham guide-lines, policy, mode of action, a scheme

Ts'aam-Maū Ts'è-Cheúng Deputy Chief of Supreme Staff

tiû-tûng to move (troops, personnel); tiû-tûng kwan-tuî* 'to move troops, troop movement'

Taî-Yat T'eng First Division (of Ministry of National Defense), G-1

Taî-Î T'eng Second Division (of Ministry of National Defense), G-2

Taî-Saam T'eng Third Division (of Ministry of National Defense), G-3

Taî-Seì T'eng Fourth Division (of Ministry of National Defense), G-4

Taî-Ńğ T'eng Fifth Division (of Ministry of National Defense), G-5

Taî-Lûk T'eng Sixth Division (of Ministry of National Defense), G-6

Ĭ...mîng-î in the name of...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 89

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk-Shiù-Kaaù: Tsuì Ko Tâk-Îp Ts'aam-Maū yaŭ mi-yĕ tsó-chik à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yaŭ kaú-kòh kûk: Foò-Koon Kûk foô-chaàk faàt-pò kw'ai-cheung, pó-koón tóng-òn keî-lûk, tuk-tô foò-koon k'ān-mô. Kwan-Faàt Kûk foô-chaàk chap-hāng kwan-faàt. Uê-Suèn Kûk foô-chaàk p'in-tsô uê-suèn. Mān-Sî Kûk foô-chaàk chìm-lĭng k'ui mān-chìng k'âp mât-tsz fan-p'ooì. Sź-Chìng Kûk foô-chaàk hāng-chìng sź k'âp Ts'aam-haaú tsz-liû. Kaam-Ch'aàt-Kûk foô-chaàk kaam-ch'aàt sî-mô. San-Mān Kûk foô-chaàk faàt-pò san-mān* siu-sik. Uê-Peî Sî-Mô Kûk foô-chaàk kwan-tuî* uê-peî yān-uēn sî-mô. Pó-On Kûk foô-chaàk teî-fong pó-on pô-tuî* k'âp t'uēn-tuî* sî-mô.

P: Lûk Hoî Hung Saam Kwan kè Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô haî chîk-tsìp taî-shûk Ts'aam-Maū Tsúng-Chúeng, haî mà?

H: Haî là. Luēn-Hôp K'ān-Mô Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô yîk haî yat-yeûng.

P: Hoî-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô yaŭ mi-yĕ tsó-chik à?

H: Yaŭ Hoî-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Paân-Kung-T'eng, kòk t'eng kûk ch'uè, kòk Laâm-Tuî* Sz-Lîng-Pô.

P: Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô ne?

H: Yaŭ Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Paân-Kung-T'eng, Kwan-K'ui Sz-Lîng-Pô, Kung-Yìng Sz-Lîng-Pô, Fàn-Lîn Sz-Lîng-Pô, Hōng-Hung Kung-Îp Kûk. Chìn-taù pô-tuî* mooì kòh taaî-tuî yaŭ

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 89

saam-kǒh chung-tuî, mooǐ kǒh chung-tuî yaŭ seì-kǒh fan-tuî.
Mooǐ kǒh fan-tuî yaŭ lûk-kà fei-kei.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 89

Major White: Colonel, what is the organization of the Supreme Special Staff?

Lt. Colonel Höh: There are nine bureaus. 1. Bureau of the Adjutant - responsible for publication of regulations and keeping of records. 2. Bureau of the Judge Advocate - responsible for execution of military law. 3. Bureau of the Budget - responsible for setting up the budget. 4. Bureau of Civil Affairs - responsible for civil administration and distribution in occupied areas. 5. Bureau of the Historian - responsible for historical reference materials. 6. Bureau of Inspection - responsible for inspecting military affairs. 7. Bureau of Information - responsible for publication of information. 8. Bureau of Reserve Affairs - responsible for reserve personnel affairs. 9. Bureau of Provincial Military Affairs - responsible for peace preservation, local militia.

W: The General Headquarters of Ground Forces, of Naval Forces, and of Air Forces are directly under the Chief of Supreme Staff, aren't they?

H: Yes, they are, as is the General Headquarters of Combined Services Forces.

W: What is the organization of the General Headquarters of Naval Forces?

H: It consists of the Office of the Commander-in-Chief of Naval Forces, various divisions and bureaus, and Fleet Headquarters.

W: How about the General Headquarters of Air Force?

H: It consists of the Office of the Commander-in-Chief of Air Forces, Air Region Headquarters, Air Technical Service Command, Air Training Command, Bureau of Aviation Industries. As far as combat units are concerned, each group has three squadrons, each squadron has three flights, and each flight has six aircraft.

白少校：何章，何呀，組織也有參謀副官處，各局處，各部會署，各局處都有參謀副官，行政官，人事官，各部會署都有參謀副官，行政官，人事官，各部會署都有參謀副官，行政官，人事官，各部會署

部之特副局，防長高：政局案預者預國次最局史安檔造參隊，謀與個，保，編及軍務官參謀九局，佈，史，事長與參有事局發法政息隊要長般下民務之軍行消團主總一之，事章行，閘及個謀高謀局備規執配新隊兩參最參算預之，分佈安有在，業預，部務資發保部．門特，局該勤物，方防長部高局閘責官及務地國總大最法新員副政事，國謀兩．軍，別導民察務中參有謀，局分督區監事與，參局察局，領，員長下業官監各管佔料人下，聯廳令業位．之謀總，各司工單參空下軍航作業，之有與軍特總總下部空高海海之令于最，總司若與總處空練有謀陸個，訓下參，八部，之般門有令部部一部下司令令高事之隊司司最軍總艦應區在個陸與供軍四．處，．有總局部局

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 89

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Fōng Pô yaŭ pin leŭng-kòh chué-iù cheúng-koon à?

2. Kwòk-Fōng Pô Kwan-Faàt Kûk foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

3. P'in-tsô Kwòk-fōng uê-suèn, yaū pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chaàk à?

4. Uē-kwóh Kwòk-Fōng Pô iù faàt-pò san-mān, pin-kòh kûk foô-chaàk?

5. Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô chîk-tsìp taî-shûk Kwòk-Fōng Pô-Cheúng yik-waâk Ts'aam-Maū Tsúng-Cheúng à?

6. Chuè haî Uĕn-Tung kè Meĭ-Kwòk Laâm-Tuî* haî taî keî laâm-tuî* à?

7. Chuè haî Yât-Poôn t'ūng Hōn-Kwòk kè Meĭ-Kwòk Hōng-Hung Tuî* haî taî keî hōng-hung tuî* à?

8. Haî Chung-Kwòk, mooĭ kòh hung-kwan taaî-tuî yaŭ keî toh kòh chung-tuî?

9. Mooĭ kòh chung-tuî yaŭ keî toh kòh fan-tuî à?

10. Mooĭ kòh fan-tuî yaŭ keî toh kà fei-kei à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 89

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kûk board, bureau, department, station; synonym: t'eng kûk, ch'uè, tsó, foh

Foò-Koon Kûk Bureau of Adjutant

faàt-pò to issue regulations, news through publication or announcement or statement, to promulgate

pó-koón to keep safely (documents, entrusted valuables or properties)

tóng-òn file, record

Kwan-Faàt Kûk kwan-faàt 'military discipline, judge advocate'; Kwan-Faàt Kûk 'Bureau of Judge Advocate'

Uê-Suèn Kûk uê-suèn 'a budget, to estimate'; Uê-Suèn Kûk 'Bureau of the Budget'

p'in-tsô to compile and edit

Mān-Sî Kûk Bureau of Civil Affairs

chìm-lĭng k'ui occupied area, occupation area

mān-chìng civil affairs

sź abbr. of lîk-sź 'history'; Sź-Chìng Kûk 'Bureau of Historian'

ch'aam-haaú reference

tsz-liû materials (information, writings, speeches); ch'aam-haaú tsz-liû 'reference materials'

Kaam-Ch'aàt Kûk Bureau of Inspection

San-Mān Kûk Bureau of Information

siu-sik news

Uê-Peî Sî-Mô Kûk Bureau of Reserve Affairs

Pó-On Kûk pó-on 'preservation of peace'; Pó-On Kûk 'Bureau of Provincial Military Affairs'

pó-on pô-tuî* peace preservation units

t'uēn-tuî* local militia, small local military forces organized separately by the local government or people

t'eng an office (a department, a bureau, a division, a section), a hall, a big room (living room)

Laâm-Tuî* Sz-Lîng Pô Fleet Headquarters

kwan-k'ui military region, military installation; Kwan-K'ui Sz-Lîng Pô 'Air Region Headquarters'

Kung-Yìng Sz-Lîng Pô Air Technical Service Command

Hōng-Hung Kung-Îp Kûk Bureau of Aviation Industries

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 90

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô yaŭ mi-yĕ tsó-chik à Hŏh Chung-Kaaù?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Yaŭ Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Paân-Kung-T'eng, Ts'aam-Maū Ch'uè, Kwan-Sui Ch'uè, Kwan-Haaî Ch'uè, Kwan-Faàt Ch'uè, Kwan-I Ch'uè, Poò-Koon Ch'uè, Peì-Shue Ch'uè, Shaù-I Ch'uè.

P: Keì-în Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan yĕ-chîn tsó-chik ĭ sz waî kei-poón taan-waî*. Mooĭ kòh sz yaŭ mi-yĕ tsó-chik à?

H: Yaŭ Sz Sz-Lîng-Pô, Kung-Ping Ying, T'ung-Sùn Lîn, Tâk-Mô Lîn, P'aaù-Ping Ying, Ko-Shê-P'aaù Lîn, K'ê-Ping Lîn, Tsz-Chûng Ying.

P: Mooĭ kòh sz kè yĕ-chîn pô-tuî* tsó-chik haî tîm kà?

H: Mooĭ kòh sz yaŭ saam-kòh t'uēn. Mooĭ kòh t'uēn yaŭ saam-kòh ying. Mooĭ kòh ying yaŭ saam-kòh lîn. Mooĭ kòh lîn yaŭ saam-kòh p'aaî. Mooĭ kòh p'aaî yaŭ saam-kòh paan. Mooĭ kòh paan yaŭ shâp-lûk-kòh yān.

P: Ngŏh t'eng-kìn Chung-Kwòk Kwan-Tuî* kè kwan-koon m̄-yûng kaai-k'ap laî ts'ing-foo haî mà?

H: Mŏ ts'òh là. Yan-waî ch'uēn-t'úng kwaan-haî, k'uĭ-teî yûng koon-haām laî ts'ing-foo. Laî-uē Wŏng Tsúng-Sz-Lîng, Ch'ān Sz-Cheúng, Leĭ Lîn-Cheúng, Cheung Ts'aam-Maū, Maŭ-Maŭ Kûk-Cheúng, Maŭ-Maŭ Ch'uè-Cheúng.....

P: Ngŏh iù keì-tak Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan mŏ chún-tseùng kè kaai-k'ap.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 90

Major White: What is the organization of the General Headquarters of Ground Forces, sir?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: It consists of the Office of the Commander-in-Chief of Ground Forces, Staff Section, Quartermaster Section, Ordnance Section, Judge-Advocate Section, Medical Section, Adjutant Section, Secretarial Section, Veterinary Section.

W: Since the basic field organization of the Chinese Army is the division, what is the organization of a division?

H: It consists of the Division Headquarters, Engineer Battalion, Signal Communications Company, Special Service Company, Artillery Battalion, Anti-Aircraft Artillery Company, Cavalry Company, Transportation Battalion.

W: What is the organization of the field units within a division?

H: Each division has three regiments, each regiment three battalions, each battalion three companies, each company three platoons, each platoon three squads, and each squad has sixteen men.

W: I understand the officers of the Chinese Armed Forces are not called by their ranks. Is this correct?

H: Yes, you are right. Traditionally they are called by their official capacities, such as Commander-in-Chief Wōng, Division Commander Ch'ān, Company Commander Leĭ, Staff Offi-

cer Cheung, Chief of Bureau So-and-so, Section Chief So-and-so...

W: I must remember that there is no such rank as Brigadier General in the Chinese Army.

白少校：何呀，何組織呀？特務連，步兵連，
何中校：有軍處，副官處，軍醫處，
白：既然有師，每師有三個團，每個團有三個營，每個營有四個連，每個連有三個排，每個排有三個班，每個班有十個人。
何：有師，每個師有三個營，每個營有六個連，每個連有三個排，每個排有十個人。
白：我聽錯啦，我要記得。

陸軍總司令部有也野戰軍公署以下之組織，參謀處，軍醫處，軍法處，軍獸醫處，軍基本單位。

官軍長，處而主，處個，如師師下：務其長醫每同官，如特務及處軍．相主長長織，輜重營．關謀，長致其軍班組連機參長處大及，之訊之，處醫局稱令長師通包括廳法獸各名司排每公軍，之部軍長位兵部令長處防．之，連單工總司處書國別軍總械秘與分陸軍軍，貲有國陸，長性上中：長處作度下處官工程如需副之在

下長為師連，野司砲兵營，高射砲連，騎兵連，輜重營．

中國陸軍三師，每師三連，每連三排，每排三班，每班十六人．稱呼時，以官銜而不以階級．

直軍，織或營之師，每營三連，每連三排，每排三班，每班三人．

總團長組部兵團，每團三營，每營三連，每連三排，每排三班，每班三人．

陸集團戰令砲兵營，高射砲連，騎兵連，輜重營．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 90

QUESTIONS

1. Haî Meǐ-Kwòk, Hoî Lûk Hung Kwan Taaî Uēn-Shuì haî pin-kòh à?
2. Meǐ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan tsuì ko kè kwan-yān koon-chik haî mi-yě à?
3. Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan tsuì ko kè koon-chik haî mi-yě à?
4. Meǐ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Ts'aam-Maū Pô foô-shûk pin-kòh pô à?
5. Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Pô yaū pin-kòh pô koón-hât à?
6. Meǐ-Kwòk kè Lûk-Kwan Pô-Cheúng haî kwan-yān yik-waâk haî mān-koon à?
7. Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan kè yě-chìn taan-waî* haî mi-yě à?
8. Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan mooǐ kòh paan yaŭ keî toh yān à?
9. Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan yûng koon-haām ts'ing-foo, yik-waâk yûng kaai-k'ap ts'ing-foo à?
10. Meǐ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan ǐ kaai-k'ap yik-waâk koon-haām ts'ing-foo à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 90

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Ch'aam-Maū Ch'uè Staff Section

Kwan-Sui Ch'uè Quartermaster Section

Kwan-Haaî Ch'uè kwan-haaî 'weapons'; Kwan-Haaî Ch'uè 'Ordnance Section'

Kwan-Faàt Ch'uè kwan-faàt 'military laws'; Kwan-Faàt Ch'uè 'Judge-Advocate Section'; Kwan-Faàt Ch'uè-Cheúng 'Chief of Judge-Advocate Section'

Kwan-I Ch'uè Medical Section; Kwan-I Ch'uè-Cheúng 'Chief of Medical Section'

Foò-Koon Ch'uè Adjutant Section

Peì-Shue Ch'uè Secretarial Section

Shaû-I Ch'uè Veterinary Section

Sz Sz-Lîng-Pô Division Headquarters; a.f.: Sz Pô; Kwan Pô 'Army Headquarters'; T'uēn Pô 'Regimental Headquarters'; Yîng Pô 'Battalion Headquarters'; Lîn Pô 'Company Headquarters'; P'aaî Pô 'Platoon Headquarters'

Kung-Ping Yîng Engineer Battalion

T'ung-Sûn Lîn Signal Communications Company

Tâk-Mô Lîn Special Service Company

P'aaû-Ping Yîng Artillery Battalion

K'è-Ping Cavalry; K'è-Ping Lîn 'Cavalry Company'

Tsz-Chûng Yîng Transportation Battalion

ts'ing-foo to call (one's title, one's name)

koon-haām official capacity

sz-cheúng division commander; Ch'ān Sz-Cheúng 'Division Commander Ch'ān'

maŭ-maŭ so-and-so; a.f.: maŭ

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 90

kûk-cheſng chief of bureau

ch'uè-cheſng chief of section

chſun-tseùng brigadier general

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

WEST COAST BRANCH

PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

РУССКИЙ

СРПСКОХРВАТСКИ

華 語

SHQIP

MAGYAR

日 本 語

TÜRKÇE

PORTUGUÊS

فارسی

ROMÂNĂ

УКРАЇНСЬКА

ITALIANO

BAHASA INDONESIA

БЪЛГАРСКИ

POLSKI

粵 語

ČESKY

ΕΛΛΗΝΙΚΑ

한 국 어

ESPAÑOL

FRANÇAIS

العربية

ภาษาไทย

မြန်မာ ဘာ သာ

DEUTSCH

TIẾNG VIỆT NAM

CHINESE CANTONESE

REFRESHER COURSE
VOLUME IV
INSTRUCTIONAL
UNITS 91-120

KISWAHILI

U.S. ARMY

ED022178

AL 001 478

C H I N F S E - C A N T O N E S E

Refresher Course

Volume IV

Instructional Units 91-120

June 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
WEST COAST BRANCH
Presidio of Monterey, California

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

MATERIALS

Printed Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Recorded Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	"Free China's Fighting Men" MF 30-8444
	1 reel	"Mighty Chinese Armed Forces" USALS 86
	1 reel	"Production of Combat Intelligence" TF 30-1494

*FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

PRINTED MATERIALS

This volume contains 30 fifty-minute instructional units (Instructional Units 91 through 120) designed for classroom instruction. Each unit contains the following parts:

Oral Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in oral fluency. New elements of the language are introduced for review and study in this part only. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. It is transcribed in romanization, calligraphed in Chinese characters, and translated into idiomatic English.

Reading Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in reading. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. There is a gradual development from conversational to literary style. It is calligraphed in Chinese characters.

Interrogation, Translation and Interpreting Material. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the units and to interrogate, translate and/or interpret from English into Cantonese Chinese. It is written in English. The approved translations, calligraphed in Chinese characters, are in the Instructor's Manual. An exception is made in this part of Instructional Unit 120. It contains a number of questions, and is transcribed in romanization. The questions and approved answers, calligraphed in

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

Chinese characters, are in the Instructor's Manual.

Vocabulary and Notes. This part contains a complete list of vocabulary and grammatical notes which are intended for study by the student and support current or subsequent materials.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

RECORDED MATERIALS

As the classroom supervisor or instructor available may or may not be a native linguist, each Instructional Unit is supported by one individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

Oral Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Reading Material. This part also contains listening and repeat practice.

Interrogation, Translation and Interpreting Material. This part contains a number of questions in English. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his translation in Cantonese Chinese. An exception is made in this part of Instructional Unit 120. It contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Instructional Units, the following study procedures are to be observed when classroom supervisor or instructor available is not a native linguist:

1. Listen to the Oral Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material if necessary.

2. Repeat after the Oral Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

3. Listen to the Reading Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material.

4. Repeat after the Reading Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material.

5. Translate all English questions into Cantonese Chinese. Record translations on blank spaces provided between questions. For Instructional Unit 120, answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided.

6. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

7. If more time is available, repeat Step 2 and 4.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

CORRELATED MATERIALS

Instructional Units 91 through 120 are to be correlated with 13 fifty-minute language laboratory practice units (Language Laboratory Practice Units 40 through 52) designed for individual practice. Each unit contains the following parts:

Aural Comprehension Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in aural comprehension. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. As this part is for aural comprehension, no printed material is necessary for the student. This part, transcribed in romanization, is in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. No printed material is necessary for the student. The questions and approved answers, transcribed in romanization, are in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Instead of printed material, the student is issued an individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

Aural Comprehension Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Language Laboratory Practice Units, the following study procedures are to be observed:

1. Listen to the Aural Comprehension Material Listening Practice.

2. Repeat after Aural Comprehension Material Repeat Practice.

3. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

4. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

5. If more time is available, repeat Step 1, 2, 3, and 4, and/or record at the end of the tape a resumé of the Aural Comprehension Material.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

FILM MATERIAL

Instructional Units 91 through 120 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 40 through 52 are to be also correlated with 2 training films with Cantonese Chinese sound tracks for the student's viewing and commenting. The two films are as follows:

"Free China's Fighting Men". MF 30-8444. This film pertains to the armed forces of Formosa. The running time is 14 minutes.

"Mighty Chinese Armed Forces". USALS-86. This film pertains to training and strength of National China's Armed Forces. The running time is 22 minutes.

"Free China's Fighting Men" is to be shown in Hour 138 with Language Laboratory Practice Unit 40, and "Mighty Chinese Armed Forces" in Hour 159 with Language Laboratory Practice Unit 46.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

TESTING MATERIALS

Instructional Units 91 through 120 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 40 through 52 are to be further correlated with 2 fifty-minute formal testing units (Formal Testing Units 7 and 8) designed to test the student's mastery of the materials in these units. Specific instructions and guidance to the student in connection with the tests are given in each of the Formal Testing Units which are "For Official Use Only".

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

SCHEDULE

10th Wk			11th Wk			12th Wk		
M Hr 136	IU	91	M Hr 151	IU	101	M Hr 166	IU	111
137	IU	92	152	IU	102	167	IU	112
138	LLPU	40	153	LLPU	44	168	FTU	8
T Hr 139	IU	93	T Hr 154	IU	103	T Hr 169	IU	113
140	IU	94	155	IU	104	170	IU	114
141	LLPU	41	156	LLPU	45	171	LLPU	49
W Hr 142	IU	95	W Hr 157	IU	105	W Hr 172	IU	115
143	IU	96	158	IU	106	173	IU	116
144	LLPU	42	159	LLPU	46	174	LLPU	50
T Hr 145	IU	97	T Hr 160	IU	107	T Hr 175	IU	117
146	IU	98	161	IU	108	176	IU	118
147	FTU	7	162	LLPU	47	177	LLPU	51
F Hr 148	IU	99	F Hr 163	IU	109	F Hr 178	IU	119
149	IU	100	164	IU	110	179	IU	120
150	LLPU	43	165	LLPU	48	180	LLPU	52

IU - Instructional Unit

LLPU - Language Laboratory Practice Unit

FTU - Formal Testing Unit

Note - Film "Free China's Fighting Men" MF 30-8444 (14 min) is to be shown in Hour 138 with LLPU 40.

Film "Mighty Chinese Armed Forces" USALS-86 (22 min) is to be shown in Hour 159 with LLPU 46.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

CONTENTS

Instructional Unit	Page
91	1
92	8
93	14
94	21
95	27
96	35
97	41
98	48
99	54
100	60
101	68
102	74
103	82
104	88
105	96
106	103
107	111
108	118
109	124
110	132
111	138
112	144

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 91-120

Instructional Unit	Page
113	150
114	157
115	164
116	172
117	179
118	186
119	193
120	199

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 91

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Hōh Chung-Kaaû, ngŏh seúng mân hă neĭ keî kuì kwaan-ue shám-mân chìn-foo kè mân-t'aî.

Hōh Chung-Kaaû: Ngŏh hóh-ĭ tseung ngŏh shóh shik kè wâ-saaì peî neĭ chi.

C: Shám-mân chìn-foo kè shî-haû, ngŏh-teî ying-koi tîm tsô ne?

H: Ying-koi tsûn paân-faàt yaū chìn-foo shuè ts'oî-ts'uí uēn-ts'uēn t'ūng yaŭ leĭ-lûn kè taàp-òn.

C: Ts'îng-pò saú-tsaâp iù-hông ying-koi paau-k'oòt pin keî tîm à?

H: Shám-mân kè shî-haû, shám-mân koon shóh keì-lûk mooĭ tîm kè ts'îng-pò saú-tsaâp iù-hông, ying-koi paau-koòt: Mi-yĕ, keî shî, pin shuè, chì-tò mi-yĕ ch'îng-tô, pin-kòh, tîm-kaaî, kóm-yeûng* kè mân-t'aî tak-tò uēn-moŏn taàp-fuk.

C: Yat-kòh nāng-kòn kè shám-mân koon ooĭ tîm tsô ne?

H: Shám-mân kè shî-haû, k'uĭ shî-shî keì-chuê kóh ti ts'îng-pò saû-tsaâp iù-hông, yeŭng-shîng yat-chúng hóh-ĭ yaū chìn-foo shuè ts'oî-ts'uí ts'uēn pô ts'îng-pò kè nāng-lîk. Ni chúng nāng-lîk shîng waî shám-mân koon kè t'in-în tsaâp-kwaàn sîng.

C: Kòh-yān saì-tsît kè mân-t'aî ying-koi paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

H: Ying-koi paau-k'oòt sîng-mîng, kaai-k'ap, taan-waî*, chik-mô, kaaû-yûk, nîn-shuì, meî tong ping chi ts'în kè chik-îp, chuê-chî, peî foo waâk t'aū-hōng kè yât-k'eî t'ūng teî-tîm.....

Capt. Cheung: Colonel Hōh, I would like to ask you a few questions regarding interrogation of prisoners of war.

Lt. Colonel Hōh: I'll be happy to tell you all that I know.

C: What should we do when interrogating prisoners of war?

H: Every effort should be made to extract from the prisoners of war complete and logical answers to questions asked.

C: What should the essential elements of information include?

H: The essential elements of information recorded by the interrogator during the interrogation should be satisfactory answers to the questions: what, when, where, to what extent, who and why.

C: What should a skilled interrogator do?

H: He should keep EEI in mind continuously throughout the interrogation, so that the ability to obtain from the prisoner of war all available information will become second nature to him.

C: What should questions concerning personal details include?

H: They should include name, rank, organization, duties, education, age, civilian occupation, address, date and place of capture or surrender.....

張上尉：審於關句幾吓你問想我問題。校，我想問吓你幾句關於審問該報問情審

何中校：校俾你知。

張何：中戰可俾辦嘅集時蒐嘅報幾個答能嘅集採成細包教住……

何問我戰盡論蒐嘅報幾個問

何：以嘅法答要候集，點。覆幹時要取為節括育址

張：一個

何：一審

張：個

何：應

校俾你知。嘅話應該點全同有理

嘅特我所識我處採取完全做住可力習括單兵嘅點記種能然包，當降會時一嘅天該級未投官時成報嘅應階，或問佢養情官題，歲俾審，部問問名年被嘅候項全審嘅姓，

校審應該問報情

張：

何：

時由案。

項，審項，要邊解，敢

蒐處俾能力

報俾能

情戰種。

嘅由呢性。

個以。慣乜野

呢？

嘅由呢性呀？

職嘅同

務，

業，

職地點

前期

之日

位，

人該

個應

點、呀？

嘅情，

點、乜野，邊

錄括：程度，到

包官應至樣+嘅

括所該包乜問

邊記幾點、每

題得完滿

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 91

READING MATERIAL

盡之報為須項通情問必要普地審利，報為戰俘勝之情較，戰效取人種工中最爭敵多報其要得有情．靠中，獲法後問可爭法之，之戰辦項戰俘際代種要理戰實近各報心與最在用情是，使集法作快量蒐辦工最

的，目心俘實之俘戰確項戰由給要用以供報利可量情．後盡集法然俘蒐辦，戰處之作使俘問合，項戰審願案要由俘志答報到戰之之情達楚俘滿之要清戰圓值須得到價必獲得有

，人，戰俘個於，出身，級，地點．點、地至歲，階與日期度，程之間，年題，育降時問名，教投括：之姓，或關其景，俘包有括背被應點、包治與項四應政，業要此，景職報與節情及細背，位+庭之物人家單

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 91

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is your name?
2. What is your rank?
3. What is your unit or organization?
4. What was your duty?
5. What is your education?
6. How old are you?
7. What was your civilian occupation?
8. What is your home address?
9. When were you captured?
10. Where were you captured?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 91

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

shám-mân to question, to interrogate, questioning, interrogation; a.f.: shám, sun-mân

chìn-foo foo 'to hold captive, to capture (prisoner-of-war), prisoners-of-war'; chìn-foo 'prisoners-of-war'; Yât-Foo 'Japanese prisoners-of-war'; shám-mân chìn-foo 'interrogation of prisoners-ofwar'

tsûn paân-faàt every effort be made, to try one's best; a.f.: seúng tsûn paân-faàt

leĭ-lûn theory, theoretical

taàp-ồn taàp 'to answer, to reply, to give an answer'; taàp-ồn 'an answer, a reply'

saú-tsaâp to search out and gather together (information, intelligence)

iù-hông essential elements; ts'ìng-pồ iù-hông 'essential elements of information'

shám-mân koon interrogator

keì-lûk to record

uēn-moŏn satisfactory

taàp-fuk fuk 'to answer, to reply'; taàp-fuk 'an answer, to answer, to reply'

nāng-kòn capable, skilled

keì-chuê to keep in mind, to jot down

ts'uēn pô whole part, entirely

t'in-ìn natural (opposite to 'artificial'); t'in-ìn tsaâp-kwaàn 'second nature'

saì-tsìt details; kòh-yān saì-tsìt 'personal details'

sìng-mîng sìng 'a surname, last name, a clan'; mîng 'a name, a given name, to be called as, famous'; sìng-mîng 'a full name (human beings)'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 91

nīn-shuì age

chuê-chî an address; a.f.: teî-chî

t'aū-hōng to surrender (military); a.f.: hōng

teî-tîm a location, a place

heung-hâ* hometown, native place

wĭng-kaú teî-chî wĭng-kaú 'permanent'; wĭng-kaú teî-chî 'permanent address'; lām-shî teî-chî 'temporary address'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 92

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Kwaan-ue waān-kîng lîng-tò chìn-foo peî foo-lŏ waâk t'aū-hōng kè mân-t'aī ying-koi paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chìn-foo kè haāng-ch'ing lô-sìn--yaū k'uĭ tsẑ-ts'ūng leī-hoi k'uĭ shóh foô-shûk kè taan-waî*, chì-tò k'uĭ peî foo kè shī-haû shóh yûng kè lô-sìn.

C: Uē-kwóh chìn-foo haî t'ō-ping laī kè, ngŏh-teî tîm tsô à?

H: Wân-ch'ut k'uĭ t'ō-mōng kè uēn-yan. Taân-haî tuì-ue shóh yaŭ t'ō-ping, ngŏh-teî iù ch'ā-ch'ut t'ūng k'uèt-tîng t'ō-ping yaŭ mŏ shaû-kwòh ngŏh-teî ch'uēn-taan, hung-chung pòh-yam-kei, teî-sheûng pòh-yam-kei kè kóm-fà t'ūng yăn-yaŭ.

C: Kwaan-ue chìn-foo kè kwan-sẑ leĭ-lîk kè mân-t'aī ying-koi paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

H: Paau-k'oòt chîn-foo kè kwan-sẑ kè pooì-kîng t'ūng lîk-sź. Chûk-nîn tsuî-shût, hó-ts'ž uē kwòh-huì kwan-sẑ king-îm kóm-yeûng* kè yĕ.

C: Taan-waî* tsó-chik ne?

H: Ts'eūng-saì fan-sik kòk taan-waî* kè faan-hô, yaū kwan, sz, t'uēn, yīng, lîn, p'aaī, paan. Uē kwóh chìn foo haî tâk-pît taan-waî* waâk tâk-pît kei-kwaan kè yān-uēn, ch'ā-mîng, ni kòh taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì tsó-chik t'ūng yâm-mô.

Capt. Cheung: What should be included in questions concerning the circumstances leading to capture of a prisoner of war or to his surrender?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: The route followed by the prisoner of war from the time he became separated from his assigned unit or organization until the time of his capture.

C: What do we do in case the prisoner of war is a deserter?

H: Obtain the reason for his desertion. However, in all cases of desertion, we should determine whether or not the prisoner of war was influenced by leaflets, or aerial or ground loud-speaker broadcasts.

C: What should be included in questions concerning the military history of the prisoner of war?

H: Questions should be included that require as answers, chronological narrations of the POW's military background and experience.

C: How about unit organization?

H: A detailed breakdown of the unit from army, division, regiment, battalion, company, platoon, and squad. If the prisoner of war was a member of a specialized unit or organization, determine units organizational structure and mission.

張上尉：降投或傷俘呀？逃有地開嘅
何中校：係呀，但係決定被俘後，該包括
張：如果出於
何：包括
張：單位細詳
何：

戰俘嘅話，我哋有義務要保護佢哋，
確保佢哋嘅安全，直至佢哋被釋放
或遣返為止。
關於戰俘嘅待遇，我哋有日內瓦公約
嘅規定，我哋必須嚴格遵守。
關於戰俘嘅問題，我哋有一個專門
嘅組織，負責處理。
呢個組織叫做乜嘢？
戰俘信息組。
戰俘信息組嘅職責係乜嘢？
戰俘信息組嘅職責係收集、整理
同埋保存有關戰俘嘅資料。

是問開戰時影須細，
俘之離如同之必．詳圍
戰關俘二．播史等須，
該有戰．因廣歷驗必師
道此該線原與之經俘至
知與由路之單俘事戰軍
經定係之亡傳戰軍，由
已決，過逃之，之織，
果要線經其軍歷去組號
如就，路所出我履過位番
，程時查受事俘單之．
時降行俘須否軍戰之隊班
俘投之被必是之如俘部，
戰動俘到，亡俘，戰屬排
問自戰至兵逃戰述於附，
審或一位逃其三．敘關其連
俘：單是明．年被題其俘查響逐導，報營

如戰俘屬於特別單位或特別機關，須要查明該單位之編制與任務．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 92

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. Are you a deserter?
2. Why did you desert?
3. What route did you follow from the time you became separated from your assigned unit until the time of your capture?
4. Have you read our leaflets, or heard our aerial or ground loudspeaker broadcast?
5. What was your military training?
6. What is your combat experience?
7. What is your unit organization? (Breakdown of unit from army, division, regiment, battalion, company and squad).
8. Were you a member of a specialized unit or organization?
9. What is the location of your unit?
10. What is the mission of your unit?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 92

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

foo-lǒ to capture (prisoners-of-war), prisoners-of-war; peî foo-lǒ 'to be captured'; a.f.: peî foo

haāng-ch'îng to travel, course of travel

lô-sìn route, course (travel); haāng-ch'îng lô-sìn 'travel route'

t'ō to escape, to flee

t'ō-ping deserter; t'ō-faân* 'fugitive'

mōng death, dead, killed, to die; sheung-mōng 'wounded and killed, casualty'

t'ō-mōng desertion, to desert, to flee, to abscond; a.f.: hoi-siú-ch'aai

uēn-yan reasons, causes; synonym: leǐ-yaū

ch'ā-ch'ut to find out

pòh-yam-kei pòh yam 'to broadcast'; pòh-yam-kei 'broadcasting machine, loudspeaker'; hung-chung pòh-yam-kei 'aerial loudspeaker'

teî-sheûng ground; teî-sheûng pòh-yam-kei 'ground broadcasting machine'

yǎn-yaǔ to lure, to tempt, to seduce, to influence

leǐ-lîk a record of one's past experiences and works

chûk-nīn year by year, chronological; chûk-yât 'day by day'

tsuî-shût tsuî 'to converse, to narrate, to chat, to discuss'; shût 'to mention, to narrate'; tsuî-shût 'to narrate, to converse, to describe'; tsûk-nīn tsuî-shût 'to enumerate in chronological order'

fan-sik to analyze, to explain, analysis

faan-hô number (military combat units)

tâk-pî+ taan-waî* specialized unit, special unit

ch'ā-mīng to find out, to investigate and find out

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 93

ORAL MATERIAL

Hōh Chung-Kaaû: Waî shik-yìng chî-fai pô tsik-haak shóh sui-iù, chìn-shût ts'îng-pò tsz-liû* - yaū-k'eī-shî haî tsuì kân t'ūng tsik-shī kè ts'îng-pò tsz-liû* - haî tsuì chûng-iù t'ūng tsuì chué-iù kè. Koò-ts'ź shám-mân koon haî meî shám-mân chi ts'în shóh shaû kè shuèt-mīng, shī-sheūng fan-foò shám-mân koon meî-ts'āng tsùn-haāng k'eī-t'a shám-mân pô-tsaû shī, ying-koi shaú-sin heùng chìn-foo chui-mân chìn-shût ts'îng-pò.

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chìn-shût ts'îng-pò tsz-liû* paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ ne?

H: Yat. Taan-waî* kè shik-pît. Î. Taan-waî* kè ping-lîk. Saam. Taan-waî* kè waî-chì t'ūng chân-teî. Seì. Yâm-mô. Nǧ. Chìn-foo k'eī-t'a kè taan-waî*. Lûk. Ping-heì. Ts'at. P'aaû-ping, fei-kei, leŭng-ts'ai kè chong-peî tâng. Paàt. Tsang-oōn pô-tuî* t'ūng pó-ch'ung pô-tuî*.....

C: Ngŏh-teî chûk-tîm kóng, hó mà? Taan-waî* kè shik-pît paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

H; Ch'uī-chóh taan-waî* kè chî-p'aaì faan-hô chi-ngoî, chìn-foo waâk-ché chi-tò taan-waî* kè mât-hô. Uē-kwóh lóh-tak-tó, tsaû lóh-chóh k'uĭ.

C: Taan-waî* kè ping-lîk ne?

H: Taan-waî* kè ping-lîk ying-koi yûng hô-mă. Laî-uē:

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 93

Taan-waî*	:	Chung-Kwòk Kûng-Ch'aán-Kwan Taî-Nğ-Lûk-Nğ T'uēn	Taì-Î Yīng
Tsît-chî yât-k'eī saam-uêt			
yat-yât	:	Î-ts'in yān	Lûk-paàk-nğ-shâp yān
Tsît-chî yât-k'eī saam-uêt			
nğ-yât	:	Yat-ts'in-paàt-paàk-nğ-shâp yān	Ts'at-paàk yān

Lt. Colonel Höh: Tactical information - especially if it is recent or current - is the most vital and essential information and an immediate requirement of the command. Therefore, interrogators, during pre-interrogation briefings, will often be instructed to exploit the prisoner of war for tactical information initially, prior to conducting other phases of the interrogation.

Capt. Cheung: What does tactical information include?

H: 1. Unit identification. 2. Unit strength. 3. Unit location and position. 4. Mission. 5. Units other than that of the prisoner of war. 6. Weapons. 7. Artillery, aircraft, amphibious equipment, etc. 8. Reinforcements and replacements.

C: Shall we take up one point at one time, Sir? What should unit identification include?

H: In addition to numerical designation of units, the prisoner of war may have knowledge of unit code names. If available, obtain them.

C: What about the unit strengths?

H: Unit strengths should be in numbers. For example:

Unit	As of (date)	As of (date)
CCF 565 Regt	2,000	1,850
2nd Bn 565th	650	700

何中校：戰術時要，戰即主要所曾先需要最近同最之前未首該應，刻是最重要審問官係重審問時，即其係官常步驟情報。部尤一問戰術包括也野呢？揮一時問資料一兵力，三，單指資料審問資料，二，單位嘅兵力，四，任務，五，戰為情報資報說其他追報別，同陣地，六，兵器，七，砲兵，適應指揮部指揮官嘅位置同單位，八，增援部隊同補充部隊……

張：我地逐點講，好嗎？單位嘅識別包括也野呀？

何：除阻單位嘅指派番號之外，戰俘或者知道單位嘅密號，如果攞得倒，就攞咗佢。

張：單位嘅兵力呢？

何：單位嘅兵力應該用號碼，例如：

單位	：中國共產軍第五六五團	第二營
截止日期三月一日：	二千人	六百五十人
截止日期三月五日：	一千八百五十人	七百人

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 93

READING MATERIAL

之不在是前，明現要之前說，應與需修該項前，近之戰修該驟步問最時問明」審問報。是當審說審情其部行之他術資料，尤揮進前其戰料，指未之行問進追報料審「未在系情資故種官有術報。一問修戰情少受審戰術缺接咐向戰可先吩先

識地。七。援知位之陣。器。增量位與置兵。八。盡單位之位。六。等。備裝外，應該包括單位之識別。

如下：一。單位之單位。二。務。任兵，隊與敵指。三。他隊此除。單密號。

事項括力。之樓。兩隊。別。之識別。之號。

包兵修之。

報之戰。

情位。五。機，部充部。

術單。飛補單番派

戰二。

別。四。砲部道之

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 93

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the numerical designation of your unit?
2. What are the code names of your unit?
3. What is the strength of your unit?
4. Where is your unit located?
5. Where are your heavy machine gun positions?
6. What is your mission?
7. What are your adjacent units?
8. What weapons are used by your unit?
9. What artillery, aircraft and amphibious equipment does your unit have?
10. What are your reinforcements and replacements?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 93

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chîn-shût ts'îng-pò tsz-liû tactical information

tsik-shî immediate, immediately, at once; a.f.: tsik

shuèt-mîng to brief, to describe, to narrate, to explain, briefing, briefing orientation, description, narration, explanation

shaú-sin at first, first of all, in the beginning; a.f.: sin

chui-mân chui 'to chase after, to pursue'; chui-mân 'to question a matter with thoroughness, to examine with severity'

taan-waî* shik-pît unit identification

ping-lîk unit strength (military)

waî-chì location, position

leŭng-ts'ai ts'ai 'to rest'; leŭng-ts'ai 'amphibious'; a.f.: shuí lûk leŭng-ts'ai

pó-ch'ung to replace, to supplement; pó-ch'ung pô-tuî* 'replacements'

chûk-tîm to take up one point at a time

chî-p'aaì to designate, to appoint, designation

chî-p'aaì faan-hô numerical designation (combat unit)

mât-hô code name

lóh to get, to obtain, to take

hô-mă number; a.f.: hô

tsît-chî to bring to a close (deadline); tsît-chî yât-k'eî 'deadline'

tsang-oŏn to reinforce, reinforcements

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 94

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Taan-waî* kè waî-chì t'ūng chân-teî ne?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Paau-k'oòt chî-fai shóh, sz-lîng pô, koon-ch'ak shóh, p'aaù-ping chân-teî, pik-kik p'aaù chân-teî, ts'ūn-lōh kei-teî, pô-ping ts'în-sìn chân-teî, kei-kwaan ts'eung îm-t'aî.....

C: Ngŏh-teî hei-mông chìn-foo ooĭ tîm à?

H: Chìn-foo ying-koi hóh-ĭ haî teî-t'ō shuè waâk-ché haî seùng-p'în* shuè chî-ch'ut k'uĭ tsẑ-keî kè lîn, yîng, t'uēn, shâm-chì-foō sz shóh koón kè sheûng-lît ch'ìt-peî. T'ūng-shĭ chìn-foo ooĭ kìn-kwòh waâk-ché t'eng-kwòh yaŭ ti taan-waî* kè chân-teî, ī k'uĭ m̄-hóh-ĭ shik-pît ni ti taan-waî* kè.

C: Chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ ne, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

H: Hóh-nāng faân-waī chi noî, pat-lûn sóh-suì-tò tîm, wán-ch'ut shóh yaŭ kòk chúng ts'îng-pò. Yûng teî-t'ō tsôh-piu p'oòn-tûk, wán-ch'ut ch'ìt-shi kè waî-chì.

C: Yâm-mô ne?

H: Yâm-hōh yat-kòh chìn-foo ying-koi chi-tò k'uĭ kè lîn, yîng, t'uēn kè yâm-mô waâk mûk-tik. Siu-sik lîng-t'ung kè chìn-foo waâk-ché chi-tò k'uĭ kè sz waâk kwan kè yâm-mô, shâm-chì-foō chîng-kòh kwan-tuî* kè yat-poon yâm-mô. Hóh-nāng faân-waī chi noî, wán-ch'ut maŭ chúng yâm-mô shaang-haaû yât-k'eī waâk taaî-yeùk shaang-haaû yât-k'eī.....

Capt. Cheung: What about unit locations and positions?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: These should include command ports, headquarters, observation posts, artillery positions, mortar positions, patrol bases, infantry front line positions and machine gun emplacements.....

C: What can we expect of the prisoner of war?

H: The prisoner of war should be able to designate on maps or photographs the above mentioned facilities controlled by his own company, battalion, or regiment, or even division. Also the prisoner will have seen or heard of positions occupied by units he cannot identify.

C: Is there anything else, Colonel?

H: Develop all information possible, however fragmentary, locating specific installations by obtaining map coordinate readings.

C: What about missions?

H: Any prisoner of war should know the mission or objectives of his company, battalion, and regiment. Better informed prisoner of war may know his division or army mission, or even the general mission of the entire force. If possible, obtain effective dates or approximate dates that a certain mission embraces.....

張上尉：單位*嘅位置同陣地呢？

何中校：包括指揮所，司令部，觀測所，砲兵陣地，迫擊砲陣地，巡邏基地，步兵前線陣地，機關槍掩體……

張：我地希望戰俹會點呀？

何：戰俹應該可以喺地圖處或者喺相片*處指乎師見過或者聽過有啲單位*嘅陣地，會而但唔可以識別呢啲單位*嘅。

張：重有乜野呢，何中校？

何：可能範圍有出。

張：任務何在？

何：任務係連，營，戰俹自己嘅連，營，團，甚至上列設備，同時戰俹管嘅單位*嘅陣地，而但唔可以識別呢啲單位*嘅。

張：有能揾出讀，

何：可以喺地圖處或者喺相片*處揾判讀，到點，揾出座標，到地圖碎用。

張：我地戰俹會點呀？

何：戰俹應該可以喺地圖處或者喺相片*處揾判讀，到點，揾出座標，到地圖碎用。不論位置，情報嘅內，種種施設之各種任務，可生效嘅連，營，戰俹，通靈嘅任務，生效嘅息軍嘅任務，可生效嘅連，營，團，甚至範圍所揾出呢？

張：任務何在？

何：任務係知道師*嘅出日期嘅或者一某期……

張：個嘅或至範圍有出呢？

何：一團俹甚能日期或者到個內，約*生效嘅戰任者乎團或大整之。

地陣陣或至能過問利要
陣兵線上甚不聽審便重
與砲前圖，然或，為各
置，兵地圍雖過少．出
位所，步在，俥見多得查
之位*觀地，能營戰能之獲，
測，俥，干可報量標
俥單，基戰連若但情盡座
部邏好之．俥，論，圖
令巡最屬備號，不內地
，司，附設番，之用
時；地體所列之．中圍可
俥所陣掩佢上位*置報範，
戰揮砲槍出之單位情能見置
問指擊關指轄個之種可起位
審括迫機處管某位*各在實之
包，屹*所別單應確備
應地，地相師識該官與設

或之日
務軍効
任與生
之師之
團道務
，知任
營至出
，甚查
連俥，
道戰內．
知之圍期
都通範日
俥靈能效
戰息可生
何消在約
任．大
的務或
目任期

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 94

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. Where is your command post located?
2. What is the exact location of your artillery position?
3. How far is your patrol base from here?
4. Where is your infantry front line position located?
5. Have you seen or heard of positions occupied by other units?
6. What is the objective of your company?
7. What is the objective of your regiment?
8. What is the mission of your division?
9. What is the approximate date of this mission?
10. What is the effective date of this mission?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 94

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

koon-ch'ak shôh koon-ch'ak 'to observe (observation post)'; koon-ch'ak shôh 'observation post'; koon-ch'ak ping 'observer (observation post)'

p'aaù-ping chân-teî artillery position

ts'ün-lōh to patrol, patrol; a.f.: ch'ik-haû; ts'ün-lōh tuî* 'patrol unit'; ts'ün-lōh kei-teî 'patrol base'

pô-ping ts'în-sìn chân-teî infantry front line positions

îm-t'aî emplacements; kei-kwaan ts'eung îm-t'aî 'machine gun emplacements'

chî-ch'ut to point out

sheûng-lît above mentioned

pat-lûn no matter how, regardless; a.f.: m̄-leĭ

sóh-suì fragmentary, petty, trifling, odds and ends; a.f.: lîng-suì

tsôh-piu coordinate, grid

p'oòn-tûk reading (chart, meter, coordinate)

siu-sik lîng-t'ung siu-sik 'news, information'; siu-sik lîng-t'ung 'well-informed'; a.f.: lîng-t'ung

chîng-kòh entire, whole; a.f.: ts'uēn-kòh

yat-poon yâm-mô general mission

hóh-nāng faân-waî chi noî if possible, whenever possible, within the scope of possibility

maŭ-chúng a certain kind

shaang-haaû to begin, effective; yaŭ-haaû 'valid, effective'; shaang-haaû yât-k'eî 'effective date'

taaî-yeùk yât-k'eî approximate date

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 95

ORAL MATERIAL

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Kuî kòh laî laî kóng: Kóh kòh yâm-mô waâk-ché haî haî yat-kòh k'òk-tîng k'eî-kaan chi noî koò shaú ko-teî maŭ kòh teî-k'ui, maŭ t'iū pó-k'ap lô-sìn, maŭ chúng kè tât-ch'ut teî-yîng. Waâk-ché haî haî yat-kòh chî-tîng shî-k'eî ch'ìt-t'uî maŭ kòh chî-tîng kè teî-fong. Waâk-ché haî haî yat-kòh ĭ-king chi-tò kè shî-kaan kung-kik maŭ kòh waî-chì. Shau-tsaâp shóh yaŭ kwaan-ue yâm-mô t'ūng mûk-tik kè ts'îng-pò.

Cheung Sheûng-waì: Ch'uî-chóh chìn-foo tsê-keî kè taan-waî*, k'eî-t'a, kè taan-waî* paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

H: Lūn-kân kè taan-waî*, haû-fong pô-tuî*, uê-peî pô-tuî*.

C: Ping-heì ne?

H: Yaū chìn-foo shuè lóh-tò shóh yaŭ kwaan-ue kei-kwaan ts'eung, pik-kik p'aaù, laū-taân* p'aaù, fóh-tsìn, chìn-fōng p'aaù tsê-tûng t'ui-tsùn p'aaù, k'âp taan-waî* shóh yaŭ k'eî-t'a t'ūng p'in-chaì ping-heì, taân-yeûk. Leî-yûng kwaan-ue tîk-yān ping-heì kè kaaù-faân t'ūng t'ō-kaaî t'ūng chue-uēn, ts'eūng-saì wán-ch'ut ping-heì kè chúng-luî t'ūng haú-kìng. K'uèt-tîng chìn-foo chi m̄-chi-tò tîk-yān yaŭ mŏ yûng san-shik kè ping-heì.

Laî-uē:

Taan-waî*	Pán-mîng	Shò-mûk
Ch'ŭng ping-heì lìn	Hing kei-kwaan ts'eung	Seì-t'ĭng

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 95

Tsît-Chî yât-k'eî

Paât-uêt shâp-ngĕ yât

Taân-yeûk faât shô

Saam-Paâk faât

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: ...for example: The mission may be to defend a certain sector of high ground, a certain supply route, a certain prominent terrain feature for a definite length of time, or to withdraw to a specific place at a given time, or to attack at a specific location at a known time. Obtain all information regarding missions or objectives.

Capt. Cheung: What do units other than that of the prisoner of war include?

H: Adjacent units, units to the rear, and units in reserve.

C: What about weapons?

H: Secure all available information from the prisoner of war regarding machine guns, mortars, howitzers, rockets, anti-tank guns, self-propelled guns, and any other organizational weapons and ammunition. Be specific regarding type and caliber, using manuals, pictures, and data regarding enemy weapons. Determine if the prisoner of war has knowledge of new-type weapons in use by the enemy. For example:

Unit	Nomenclature	No.	As of Date	Rounds of Ammunition
Heavy Wpns Co.	LMG	4	15 Aug	300 per wpn

何中校：喺個凸期喺位喺
係個某喺時係喺個的喺
者地種定者某目
或高指或擊同
務守個線方攻務
任固一喺間任
個內路喺地時於
嗰之給係喺喺關
講：間補者定道有
黎期條或指知所
倒確某個經集
舉個形已收
一個退個
地區地
出撤一置情報。

張上尉：除咗戰停自己喺單位+其他喺單位+
包括地野呀？
何：鄰近喺單位+，後方部隊+，預備部隊+。
張：兵器呢？
何：由戰停擊自編兵搵停器，
砲，推兵喺兵唔如迫，同人細戰兵
動制器出知倒擺榴進器教器知砲，他敵詳定喺
處，彈砲，彈同種敵槍，砲防其於，決式
到彈*砲，範喺道關元，新
有砲，及藥圖類人戰有關，所用諸徑用
所火單，解同有機，於箭位*利同口冇
有關

單位*	品名	數目	截止日期	彈藥發數
重兵器連	輕機關槍	四挺	八月十五日	三百發

期間，指之定期份一知內，確定部已之報。某或在圖情之一在敵之高地形；在範的之能是高地，或在一目可能某出地；或能退在務與可能，如凸撤．在務任區，著顯點置位於之地某定定關位+干，指指有單若線某某所戰守給向擊集作固補期攻收內條時間量之某定時盡

鄰近單位+包括於下，其他單位+外，其他部隊+．

除戰後單位+之俘方部隊+，或預備部隊+．

關兵砲，單解口有各箭編制圖與隊+有到火他範種其

器兵之戰位+與徑布之諸之新

於器，報器，報元情兵

可，報，禦防兵

由如砲，詳；

戰：砲，及之兵知

俘迫自時獲決

獲擊動可得定

得砲，推利關戰

所有彈砲，進用於俘

有關彈砲，及其教器道

敵現是

人否

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 95

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What was the mission of your unit during the last two days?
2. What is the objective of the mission of your unit?
3. What is the mission of your units in reserve?
4. What is the mission of your units to the rear?
5. How many light machine guns are there in your heavy weapons company?
6. How many heavy machine guns are there in your heavy weapons company?
7. How many rounds of ammunition per heavy machine gun are there in your unit?
8. What is the caliber of the mortars in use by your unit?
9. What type of self-propelled guns is in use by your unit?
10. Do you have any knowledge of new-type weapons in use by your unit?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 95

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kuî kòh laî laî kóng laî 'example, precedent, instance'; kuî kòh laî laî kóng 'for example, for instance'; a.f.: kuî laî

k'òk-tîng definite

k'eî-kaan within a certain period of time; a.f.: k'eî-kaan chi noî

koò firm, strong, firmly, strongly, dedidedly

shaú to defend (a position), to hold (ground); koò shaú 'to defend (a position) at all costs'

ko-teî high ground

pó-k'ap lô-sìn supply route; a.f.: pó-k'ap sìn

tât-ch'ut protuderant, jutting, convex, prominent, to protrude; a.f.: tât

chî-tîng shî-k'eî definite length of time

shî-kaan time (when, length)

kung-kik to attack, to assault, offensive action

lūn-kân adjacent, nearby; lūn-kân taân-waî* 'adjacent units'

haû-fong rear (military), haû-fong pô-tuî* 'units to the rear'

chìn-fōng p'aaû antitank gun; a.f.: chìn-ch'e fōng-uê p'aaû, p'îng-shê p'aaû

ts2-tûng tûi-tsùn p'aaû t'ui-tsùn 'to advance, to propel, to march forward'; ts2-tûng t'uî-tsùn p'aaû 'self-propelled gun'

kaaû-faân training manual, training publication

t'ō-kaaî chart, map; a.f.: t'ō-piú, t'ō

chue-uēn data

chûng-luî kinds, varieties, categories

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 95

san-shik ping-heì new-type weapons

ch'ŭng ping-heì lín heavy weapons company

pán-míng nomenclature, the name of an item

t'ĭng AN (machine guns)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 96

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Kwaan-ue p'aaû-ping, fei-kei, leŭng-ts'ai kè chong-peî kè mân-t'aî, ying-koi paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ, chung-kaaù?

Höh Chung-Kaaù: P'aaù-ping kè haú-kìng, shò-mûk toh kwá, wân-shue fong-faàt, haî pin shuè kìn-kwòh waâk t'eng-kwòh, îm-t'aî kè waî-chì.....

C: Fei-kei ne?

H: Shôh yaŭ chìn-foo kìn-kwòh waâk t'eng-kwòh tîk-yān kè fei-kei shò-mûk t'ūng chúng-luî. Paau-k'oòt ching-ch'aàt kei, chìn-taù kei, kwang-chà kei, wân-shue kei t'ūng k'eî-t'a kè fei-kei. Tîk-yān kè kei-ch'eūng kè shôh-tsoî teî, mîn-tsik taaî siú. Yūng-naâp fei-kei toh shiú.

C: Leŭng-ts'ai kè chong-peî ne?

H: Chìn-foo shôh chi tîk-yān kè leŭng-ts'ai pô-tuî* t'ūng yaŭ kaî-waâk kè leŭng-ts'ai tsòk-chìn. Keî shî, haî pin shuè, t'ūng shât-lîk keî taaî. Shôh yaŭ kè leŭng-ts'ai ch'e-leúng kè chúng-luî t'ūng taaî-yeùk shò-mûk.

C: K'eî-t'a kè yĕ ne?

H: Tîk-yān tâk-pît kè fōng-uê chân-teî. Paau-k'oòt tô-lô chôh-tsuêt, chìn-ch'e haâm-tsîng, teî-luî k'ui, t'ìt-sz mŏng.....ts'uî-tak shôh yaŭ cheùng-ngoî mât kè waî-chì, kà-ch'ìt chì-tò mi-yĕ ch'ìng-tô, t'ūng k'eî-t'a kè tâk-sìng.

Capt. Cheung: Colonel, what should be included in questions concerning artillery, aircraft and amphibious equipment?

Lt. Colonel Höh: Caliber of artillery, number of pieces, manner of transport, where seen or heard of, location of emplacements.....

C: What about aircraft?

H: Number and type of enemy aircraft including observation planes, fighters, bombers, transports and others seen or heard of by the prisoner of war; location of enemy airfields, area and size, and number of aircraft based.

C: What about amphibious equipment?

H: The prisoner's knowledge of enemy amphibious forces and planned amphibious operations. When, where, and in what force, type and approximate number of amphibious vehicles available.

C: Anything else, sir?

H: Special enemy defensive positions, including road blocks, barbed wire obstacles..... Get location and extent and characteristics of all obstacles.

張上尉：關於砲兵，飛機，兩棲既裝備既問題，應該包括數目，大小，砲兵既口徑，數目多寡，運輸方法，位置……

何中校：砲兵既喺邊處見過或聽過，掩體既

張：飛機有幾多種？

何：飛機有偵察同轟炸人納裝備既戰鬥飛機，敵機既飛機，敵機既面積大小，見過或包括輸既所在地，運過偵察其他既陣地，雷區，鐵絲網……取也多少。

張：兩棲既計劃同實類

何：兩棲偵察知幾大約既特別車程度，敵人既防窒，碍同其他既特性。

張上尉：飛機既裝備既兩棲既部隊喺兩棲既有處輛車，兩棲既數目。

張：其他人戰得野

何：其敵人戰·所有既陣地·包括道路阻絕，雷區，鐵絲網至到也，位置，架設。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 96

READING MATERIAL

關於砲兵，飛機，兩棲裝備之問題，應包括下列各點：砲兵器之口徑，數目之多寡，運輸方法，地點，掩體之位置……

關於飛機，包括戰修會見過之敵機轟炸機，目種類，如：偵察機，戰鬥機場，包括運輸機，其他飛機，關於飛機之數目。場之所在地，面積，與容納

至於兩棲裝備，包括戰修所知之兩棲，部隊與實力。有兩棲之車輛之種類與數目。計劃兩棲之

路障道，障等，包括地，絲網置，陣地鐵之位。物特性。

禦區礙之防雷障關別地有有特所與之穿得，人陷取度敵車量程於戰盡之至，應設絕官架阻問物

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 96

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. Where did you see the emplacements?
2. How many fighter planes do you have?
3. What types of bombers are in use?
4. What are the exact locations of your airfields?
5. What are the sizes of your airfields?
6. What type of amphibious vehicles are available in your unit?
7. What are the exact locations of your tank traps?
8. Where are your mine fields located?
9. What are the locations of your barbed wire entanglements?
10. What are the extent and characteristics of your obstacles?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 96

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ṭoh kwå many or few, quantity

wân-shue fong-faàt manner of transport

kei-ch'eūng airport, airfield; a.f.: fei-kei ch'eūng

shóh-tsoî teî location; a.f.: shóh-tsoî

yūng-naâp to accommodate, to contain, to tolerate, accommodation

leŭng-ts'ai pô-tuî* amphibious forces, amphibious units

yaŭ kaì-waâk planned, well-planned

leŭng-ts'ai tsòk-chìn amphibious operations

ch'e-leúng vehicles; a.f.: ch'e

fōng-uê chân-teî defensive position

tô-lô roads, ways, channels

tô-lô chóh-tsuêt road blocks; a.f.: tô-lô cheùng-ngoî

chìn-ch'e tanks; a.f.: taán-hak-ch'e

haâm-tsîng (tsêng, tséng) booby-traps, traps; chìn-ch'e haâm-tséng 'tank traps'

teî-luî k'ui teî-luî 'mines (land)'; teî-luî k'ui 'mine fields'

t'ìt-sz mŏng t'ìt-sz 'fine iron wire'; t'ìt-sz mŏng 'barbed wire entanglements'; a.f.: t'ìt-sìn mŏng

ts'uî-tak to obtain, to get, to secure; a.f.: wôk-tak, tak-tó, lóh-tó

cheùng-ngoî mât obstacles; a.f.: cheùng-ngoî

kà-ch'ìt to prop up on a stand or on trestles (bridges, obstacles, barbed wire)

tâk-sìng characteristics

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 97

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-waì: Kwaan-ue tsang-oŏn pô-tuî* t'ūng pô-ch'ung pô-tuî* kè mân-t'aì, ying-koi paau-k'oŏt mi-yĕ à?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Chìn-foo kè yīng t'ūng t'uēn t'ūng sz yaŭ mi-yĕ tsang-oŏn pô-tuî*? K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ t'eng-kwòh kwaan-ue san-lîk kwan oŏn fōng kè siu-sik waâk iū-ch'uēn? Ts'uî-tak pô-tuî* kè chî-p'aaì faan-hô. Ts'ìn ts'ì tsang-oŏn pô-tuî* haî keî shî tò kè? Shât-lîk keî taaî, yaū pin shuè tiû laì kè? K'uĭ-teî tá pin t'iū lô tò ts'ìn-sìn?

C: Pô-ch'ung pô-tuî* ne?

H: Chìn-foo kè taan-waî* tsuì-kân tò kè pô-ch'ung yān-uēn, yaŭ keî toh ming, k'uĭ-teî kè fàn-lîn, k'uĭ-teî shî faú kw'aì-taaì kòh-yān ping-heì mŏ-heì t'ūng san-shik kòh-yān chong-peî.

C: Chì-ue tsòk-chìn kè haaû-nāng kè mân-t'aì, ying-koi paau-k'oŏt mi-yĕ à?

H: Ying-koi paau-k'oŏt: Yat. Leūng-shîk shîk-pán, i-fûk fûk-chong, taân-yeûk kè poôt-faàt kaù m̄-kaù. Î. Pô-k'ap t'ūng taân-yeûk tui-tsik shòh kè waî-chì. Saam. Pô-tuî* kè kîn-hong chŏng-fòng. Seì. Fàn-lîn t'ūng tsòk-chìn king-îm. Ngĕ. Tsuì-kân suén-shat t'ūng sheung-mōng yān-shò.

C: Ngŏh-teî chûk-tîm kóng hă, hó mà, chung-kaaù?

Capt. Cheung: What should be included in questions concerning reinforcements and replacements?

Lt. Colonel Höh: What reinforcements are available to the prisoner's battalion, regiment, or division. What information or rumor he may have heard regarding relief of units by fresh units. Unit designations. When last reinforcements were received. In what strength, from where they came. What route they took to reach the front line.

C: What about replacements?

H: Replacements received recently by the prisoner's organization. How many, their training, whether they brought individual weapons, and new-type individual equipment.

C: As far as combat efficiency is concerned, what should the questions include?

H: They should include: 1. Adequacy of issue of food, clothing, and ammunition. 2. Location of supply and ammunition dumps. 3. Health condition of troops. 4. Training and combat experience. 5. Recent losses and casualties.

C: Shall we talk about them one by one, sir?

張上尉：部隊+補充部隊+嘅問題，
增援部隊+同補充部隊+嘅問題，

何中校：增援部隊+包括營或前線嘅戰鬥部隊+？消耗嘅武器裝備，
增援部隊+包括營或前線嘅戰鬥部隊+？消耗嘅武器裝備，

張：有幾多人員，有否裝備，
有幾多人員，有否裝備，

何：有幾多人員，有否裝備，
補充人員，是人包括個該應
補充人員，是人包括個該應

張：補充人員，是人包括個該應
補充，新兵訓練同埋，

何：補充，新兵訓練同埋，
補充，新兵訓練同埋，

張：補充，新兵訓練同埋，
至於最近到嘅武器能
至於最近到嘅武器能

何：至於最近到嘅武器能
應該包括一，粒食食品，衣服服裝，彈藥
應該包括一，粒食食品，衣服服裝，彈藥

張：應該包括一，粒食食品，衣服服裝，彈藥
我哋逐點講吓，好嗎，中校？

何：應該包括一，粒食食品，衣服服裝，彈藥
應該包括一，粒食食品，衣服服裝，彈藥
應該包括一，粒食食品，衣服服裝，彈藥

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 97

READING MATERIAL

關於增援部隊之問題，應由軍部指派增援部隊之團，過部隊之五、增援部隊與新補充部隊之營，過部隊之六、增援部隊之消耗，包括部隊之人員，補充部隊之人員，補充部隊之裝備。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 97

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What reinforcements are available to your battalion?
2. What reinforcements are available to your division?
3. What information do you have regarding relief of your unit by fresh units?
4. When were your last reinforcements received?
5. In what strength and from where did your last reinforcements come?
6. What route did your last reinforcements take to reach the front line?
7. How many replacements were received recently by your organization?
8. What individual weapons and new-type individual equipment did your replacements bring?
9. What is the state of health of troops in your unit?
10. What were the casualties of your unit last week?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 97

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tsang-oŏn pô-tuî* reinforcements

san-lîk kwan fresh troops, fresh units, reinforcements; a.f.: shaang-lîk kwan

oôn-fŏng oôn 'to change, to exchange, to replace'; fŏng to defend, to prevent, to watch'; oôn fŏng 'to relieve (troops), relief (troops), redisposition (troops)'

iū-ch'uēn ch'uēn 'it is said, to hand down, to spread (news)'; iū-ch'uēn 'rumor'; a.f.: iū-în

ts'în ts'ż last time, previous time

tiû to transfer (troops, personnel) from one place to another place

tå...lô to take...route, via...route

pô-ch'ung yān-uēn replacements (personnel)

kw'aî-taaì to take along with one (things, weapons, etc); a.f.: kw'aî, kw'aî yaŭ, taaì

kòh-yān ping-heì individual weapons; a.f.: kòh-yān mŏ-heì

mŏ-heì weapons; a.f.: ping-heì; Cf: kòh-yān ping-heì

kòh-yān chong-peî individual equipment

haaû-nāng efficiency; a.f.: haaû-lîk, haaû-lût; tsòk-chîn haaû-nāng

fûk-chong clothing, uniforms, costume

poôt-faàt to issue (supplies, equipments), issuance (supplies, equipments), issue (supplies, equipments); a.f.: poôt, faàt

pó-k'ap tui-tsik shòh supply dumps

taân-yeûk tui-tsik shòh ammunition dumps

kîn hong chông-fòng health condition

suén-shat losses, damages, to lose

sheung-mōng casualty, wounded and killed; a.f.: sheung-mōng yān-shð

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 98

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Kwaan-ue shîk-pán, i-fûk, taân-yeûk kè poôt-faàt kè mân-t'aì, ying-koi paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Kòh-yān waâk pô-tuî* kè chong-peî yaŭ mŏ san kè pán-mûk, keî shì, haî pin shuè, mi-yĕ, keî toh? Chìn-foo yaŭ mŏ poôt-faàt-kwòh san shik kè tsòk-chìn haú-leūng.

C: Pô-k'ap t'ūng taân-yeûk tui-tsik shóh kè waî-chì ne?

H: Ch'uĕ-ts'uēn pán-mûk chúng-luî t'ūng shò-leûng. Ch'uĕ-ts'uēn haî uk, chaân-fōng*, foò-fōng, teî-hâ ìm-paì pô, haang-tô shik ìm-paì pô, yik-waâk haî teî-lūng shuè? Yûng mi-yĕ fong-faàt tseung pô-k'ap wân huì tui-tsik shóh yaû yaū tui-tsik shóh wân huì ts'ìn-sìn pô-tuî*.

C: Pô-tuî* kè kîn-hong chông-fòng ne?

H: Chìn-foo taan-waî* taaî pô-fân yān-uēn kè kîn-hong yìng-chông. Kwan-tuî* yaŭ mi-yĕ tsât-pêng. Taaî-yeùk keî-toh kòh yān ĭm yaŭ mooĭ chúng pêng. Tá mi-yĕ cham, chùng mi-yĕ taû*, laì uê-fōng ni ti pêng-chìng?

C: Ying m̄-ying-koi paau-k'oòt i-liū ch'ìt-shi, waî-shang k'ān-mô, waî-shang tuî*, waî-shang kaì-waâk kóm kè mân-t'aì à?

H: Kóh ti mân-t'aì to m̄-ts'òh. Neĭ ts'uì-shì hóh-ĭ pó-ch'ung hă ngŏh kóng-kwòh kè iù tîm.

Capt. Cheung: What should be included in questions concerning issue of food, clothing, and ammunition, sir?

Lt. Colonel Höh: Are there any new items of individual or unit equipment. When, where, what and how much. Has the prisoner been issued any new-type combat rations.

C: What about locations of supply and ammunition dumps?

H: Types and amounts of items in storage. Stored in houses, storage buildings, warehouses, dugouts, cave shelters, or tunnels. By what means are supplies being transported to front line troops.

C: What about the health condition of troops?

H: State of health of majority of personnel in prisoner's unit. What diseases exist among the troops. Approximately how many troops are suffering from each disease. What immunizations and vaccinations are administered for the prevention of disease.

C: Should we include questions concerning medical treatment facilities, medical service, medical troops and medical plans?

H: Those are good questions. You can always supplement the essential points I mentioned.

張上尉：既發撥既品目，戰式野堆
何中校：藥呀？新幾多？口粮，道也由
張：給存彈野有野既置儲蔽龍積
何：補儲，也備也式位．掩地堆隊+．
張上尉：既發撥既品目，戰式野堆
何中校：藥呀？新幾多？口粮，道也由
服括裝，新既量下喺去部？
衣包既處過所數地或運線呢？
品，該隊+邊發積同，抑給前況
食，或，冇藥種庫部將運康
於題人時有彈目，蔽法所健
關問個幾係同品房+掩方積既單隊+有黎應衛問我
張：隊+部
何：戰係
張：唔應
何：啲個

軍染痘+，
形狀．人野，
康幾約針，種也野病症？
健既大也野病．打病療生計劃隨
務，
勤生衛敢時
題問可
以補充吓？
員人份疾病呢醫設施，
位+有每預該生隊+，都唔錯．唔要點．
隊+有種防包括，過既
．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 98

READING MATERIAL

關於下列各點：一.個人或部隊*種類，數量.
包括品目，包括時間，地點、口粮.
應有新修戰鬥是否曾撥發新式之作戰
食品，服裝，彈藥之撥發之問題，
是否備

關於食品，服裝，彈藥之撥發之問題，是否備應有新修戰鬥是否曾撥發新式之作戰口粮.包括品目，包括時間，地點、種類，數量.

關於儲備補給部隊之量，應包括：一.儲存地點，二.儲存掩蔽所，三.將前線部隊之位置，四.運補存道積法

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 98

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What new items of individual or unit equipment does your unit have?

2. Have you been issued any new-type combat rations?

3. What are the locations of your supply and ammunition dumps?

4. What types and amount of items are in storage?

5. By what means or methods are your supplies being transported to dumps?

6. By what means or methods are supplies being transported from dumps to front line troops?

7. What is the state of health of the majority of troops in your unit?

8. What diseases exist among your troops?

9. Approximately how many troops are suffering from each disease?

10. What immunizations and vaccinations are administered to the troops for the prevention of diseases?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 98

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pán-mûk items (goods)

tsòk-chìn haú-leūng combat rations

chaân-fōng* storage buildings, warehouses

foò-fōng warehouses

teî-hâ underground

îm-paì pô îm-paì 'defilade, screen (from fire), cover, concealment'; îm-paì pô 'dugout, covered emplacement, shelter'

haang-tô haang 'a pit'; haang-tô 'cave shelters, tunnels, underpasses'; AN : t'iū

teî-lūng tunnels

yīng-chông shape, form, how it looks; kîn-hong yīng-chông 'state of health'

tsât-pêng diseases, ailment

ǐm to infect, to dye; ǐm pêng 'to infect diseases'

tá cham to inject (medicines), injection

chùng taû* to vaccinate (against small pox), vaccination (against small pox)

pêng-chìng diseases, ailment; a.f.: chìng, pêng, tsât-pêng

i-liū to treat (diseases), medical treatment; i-liū ch'ìt-shi 'medical treatment facilities'

waî-shang k'an-mô medical service

waî-shang tuî* medical troops

m-ts'òh not bad, good

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 99

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waî: Fàn-lîn t'ūng tsòk-chìn king-îm kè mân-t'aî ne?

Hōh Chung-Kaaû: Paau-k'oòt chìn-foo kòh-yān yaŭ-kwòh mi-yĕ fàn-lîn t'ūng tsòk-chìn king-îm. Taan-waî* shaû-kwòh fàn-lîn kè yān-uēn kè shīng-shò, taan-waî* yaŭ-kwòh tik-k'òk tsòk-chìn king-îm kè yān-uēn kè shīng-shò. Chìn-foo tuì kwan-koon t'ūng sĝ-koon lĭng-tsaû ts'oî-nāng t'ūng chik-îp sheûng nāng-kòn kè ì-kìn. Uē-kwóh hó, tîm-kaaî hó. Uē-kwóh m̄-hó, tîm-kaaî m̄-hó.

C: Tsuì-kân suén-shat t'ūng sheung-mōng kè mân-t'aî ne?

H: Yaū chìn-taû uēn fong-mîn, ts'uî-tak peî Luēn-Hôp Kwòk kè fei-kei waâk p'aaû-ping waâk t'ūng Luēn-Hôp Kwòk kè kwan-tuî* yaŭ lûk-sheûng tsìp-chuk ì tá-seî waâk tá-sheung kè sheung-mōng yān-shò. Yaū fei chìn-taû uēn fong-mîn, ts'uî-tak yan-waî tsât-pêng, ì-ngoî, waî-faân kwan-keî ì peî chap-haāng seî-yīng kè sheung-mōng yān-shò.

C: Ngŏh seung-sùn neĭ ĭ-king hó ts'eūng-saî kóng k'âp ts'ing-pò shaú-tsaâp iû-hông.

H: Taân-haî ts'îng neĭ m̄-hó tòng ngŏh shóh kóng-kwòh kè haî paau-lōh maân yaŭ t'ūng ying yaŭ tsûn yaŭ.

C: Kóh tîm ngŏh hó mīng-paâk.

Capt. Cheung: What about training and combat experience?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: What training and combat experience the prisoner has had. Percentage of trained men in the unit and percentage of men in the unit with actual combat experience. Prisoner's opinion of quality of leadership and professional ability of officers and noncommissioned officers. Why it is good or poor.

C: What about recent losses and casualties?

H: From combat personnel, obtain number of killed and wounded soldiers in prisoner's unit, inflicted by United Nations' aircraft, artillery or ground contact with United Nations' forces. From non-combat personnel, obtain number of casualties resulting from diseases, accidents, executions of soldiers for violation of discipline.

C: Sir, I believe you have covered the essential elements of information very thoroughly.

H: But please do not presume that what I have told you is considered to be complete or exhaustive.

C: I am well aware of that.

張上尉：作嘅官，點樣訓練同人員，使佢哋飛機上
何中校：嘅經驗士兵意見好，點樣訓練人員陸上作戰
嘅軍幹部呢？

張上尉：嘅問題呢？

何中校：嘅確對能力如何？

張上尉：嘅問題呢？

何中校：嘅取得合理嘅解釋。

張上尉：最近戰況，聯合國軍傷亡人數，病刑嘅
由意外死亡你已經好詳細講過嘅情報，我有
相信項請有我哋點樣應付。

何中校：但係我包羅萬象，你同好明白。

張上尉：嘅

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 99

READING MATERIAL

括人之袖分方而
包類之驗領可
應種練經之員陸
，練訓戰官員紀
題訓曾地與士問
之過位*實官之員或
驗受單有軍戰兵非
經人之位*對戰本修單修戰犯違
作修戰修單修戰
與戰二戰四見。
練一．驗．三．數．意
訓於點：經驗數成力之
關各點戰成數之能
列作之員與
下與員人才

關於面方應包括死
最，括：打由之
近戰或：刑
之鬥被傷于傷
損員聯之疾病人數
失與合傷
與非國亡，
傷戰飛人意。
亡鬥機數外，
之員或．砲非違
問．題戰兵戰犯
題，鬥或鬥軍
，隊*，執
為面部面被
兩打死打包行

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 99

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. How much training and combat experience do you have?

2. What is the percentage of trained men in your unit?

3. What is the percentage of men in your unit having actual combat experience?

4. What is your opinion of the quality of leadership of the officers in your unit?

5. What is your opinion of the professional ability of your noncommissioned officers?

6. What is the number of killed and wounded soldiers in your unit, inflicted by the United Nations' aircraft?

7. What is the number of killed and wounded soldiers in your unit, inflicted by the United Nations' artillery?

8. What is the number of killed and wounded soldiers in your unit, inflicted by ground contact with the United Nations' forces?

9. What is the number of casualties in your unit, resulting from diseases and accidents?

10. What is the number of casualties in your unit, resulting from executions of soldiers for violation of discipline?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 99

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tsòk-chìn king-îm combat experience

shíng-shò percentage; a.f.: shíng, ch'íng

sî-koon noncommissioned officer; a.f.: kwan-sî

líng-tsaû leader; líng-tsaû ts'oí 'quality of leadership'

ts'oí-nāng ability, talent

ì-kìn opinion, suggestion

chìn-taù uēn combatant, combat personnel

Luēn-Hôp Kwòk United Nations

tsìp-chuk to contact, to associate, to touch, to get in touch

fei a negative, not, not to be, without, wrong, bad, anti-, to blame, to condemn

fei-chìn-taù uēn non-combatant, non-combat personnel

ì-ngoî accident, unexpected

waí-faân to violate, to disobey, to breach, to offend against; a.f.: waí-faán

kwan-keí military discipline

kóng k'âp to mention about, to talk about, to discuss about

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 100

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Tsoî t'ung-sheūng tsòk-chìn ts'ing-ying chi hâ, p'ó-t'ung ts'in-sìn pô-ts'eung ping haî waî-yat tsuì yūng-î foo-lŏ kè yān. Taân-haî yaū shám-mân chìn-foo fong-mîn laî t'aî, k'uĭ m̄-ooĭ yaŭ ts'ing-pò kà-chîk kè tsz-liû*. K'uĭ shóh yaŭ kè tsz-liû* p'ó-t'ung haî yaū chîk-tsìp koon-ch'ak ì haân-ue tong-teî waān-kíng tak-laî kè.....

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Koò-ts'ź ch'uî-chóh paau-k'oòt ts'ing-pò shaú-tsaâp iù-hông kòk tîm chi ngoî, shám-mân ts'in-sìn pô-ts'eung ping kè mân-t'aî, ying-koi ts'ui-heùng yat-kòh hô tai-k'ap kè chìn-shût ch'ing-tô, paau-k'oòt ni keî kòh t'aî-mûk t'im. Yat. Shik-pît chìn-foo ke sz, t'uēn, ying, lîn, p'aaî, paan. Î. Chìn-foo kè lîn, p'aaî, paan kè p'in-chaì, shât-lîk, ping-heì, taan-waî* kè p'in-p'ooì. Saam. Iù-tîm, ts'in-shaaù, koon-ch'ak shóh kè waî-chì, yān-uēn t'ūng ping-heì kè shât-lîk. Seì. Chìn-foo meî peî foo chi ts'in kè yâm-mô. Chìn-foo kè lîn, p'aaî, paan kè yâm-mô. Ngˇ. Ts'in-sìn fōng-uê ch ìt-shi kè waî-chì t'ūng ying-chông. Uē fōng chìn-ch'e hō t'ūng îm-t'aî. Teî-luî k'ui, tô-lô chóh-tsuêt, t'ìt-sz mŏng. Ni ti ch'ìt-shi shóh yûng kè ping-heì ying-chông. Lûk. taan-waî* chî-fai koon kè sing ming t'ūng kòh-yān tâk-sing. Ts'at. Shik-pît chi-oōn pik-kik p'aaù p'aaù-ping, t'ūng chong-kaàp pô-tuî*. Paàt. Chìn-foo taan-waî* kè shîk-pán, taân-yeûk,

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 100

t'ûng k'eî-t'a pô-k'ap chông-t'aaì. Kaú. Sê-heì. Shâp. Yān-uēn suén-shat.

Major White: Under normal combat conditions, the ordinary rifleman is the one person who is most liable to be captured. From the interrogation point of view, however, he is least likely to possess any information which might be of intelligence value. Information which he does possess is usually of the type picked up by direct observation, limited to his immediate surroundings.....

Lt. Colonel Höh: It is for this reason that in addition to the points covered by EEI, questioning of the front line rifleman should be directed at a very low tactical level, to include the following topics: 1. Identification of the prisoner's squad, platoon, company, battalion, regiment, and division. 2. Organization, strength, weapons, and disposition of the prisoner's squad, platoon and company. 3. Location and strength of men and weapons of strong points, outposts, and observation posts. 4. Prisoner's mission, immediately before capture; mission of prisoner's squad, platoon, or company. 5. Location and description of front line defensive installations such as antitank ditches and emplacements, mine fields, road blocks, and barbed wire entanglements. Description of weapons utilized in conjunction with such installations. 6. Names and personal characteristics of unit commanders, in par-

ticular officers of prisoner's unit. 7. Identification of supporting mortar, artillery, and armored units. 8. Status of food, ammunition , and other supplies in the prisoner's unit. 9. Morale. 10. Casualties.

白少校：在通常作戰情形之下，普通前線步槍兵係由最前線嘅人，佢哋通過觀測而得到嘅情報，包括前線步槍兵嘅問題，各點、要項、程度，二，力，前器任務，道用姓擊停給

何中校：故之外，該師嘅戰兵哨嘅務五，如路嘅名砲單狀

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 100

READING MATERIAL

是兵搶步槍前線步兵所有之情報資料祇
莊一般作戰情形之下，當地環境限制。
被易之人該戰修所受
由直接觀測得來而又

蒐集情報之目的，在於供給作戰修正計畫，設施陣地，配置人員，設備防禦體系，以及掩蔽部等之依據。其情報包括敵軍之編制，人員，武器，裝備，位置，任務，動態，前線外，連，營，團，師，軍，隊之位置，編制，前力，排，班，兵之位置，道路，橋樑，以及敵軍之戰鬥序列，指揮官姓名，年齡，特性，習慣，嗜好，弱點，及其他有關敵軍之一切情報。

在審問俘虜時，除問題一、二、三、四、五、六、七、八、九、十之問題外，應特別注意下列各項問題：

一、兵器與單位之識別：如步槍，機槍，迫擊砲，戰車，裝甲車，高射砲，反坦克砲，火箭筒，無後座力砲，手榴彈，地雷，鐵絲網，障礙物，防空武器，通信器材，探照燈，觀測所，指揮所，彈藥庫，補給站，醫療所，被服廠，兵工廠，倉庫，飛機場，碼頭，船舶，車輛，馬匹，糧秣，被服，裝具，其他軍用品，以及各種兵器與單位之識別標誌。

二、敵軍之戰鬥序列：敵軍之師，團，營，連，排，班之番號，及其所屬之上級單位，友軍單位，配屬單位，支援單位，以及其他有關敵軍戰鬥序列之情報。

三、敵軍之組織：敵軍各級單位之組織，人員，武器，裝備，通信，交通，運輸，補給，醫療，衛生，以及其他有關敵軍組織之情報。

四、敵軍之裝備：敵軍各種武器，車輛，通信器材，交通運輸工具，以及其他有關敵軍裝備之情報。

五、敵軍之動態：敵軍之調動，集結，移動，行軍，運輸，補給，以及其他有關敵軍動態之情報。

六、敵軍之戰術：敵軍之攻擊，防禦，遭遇戰，追擊，退卻，以及其他有關敵軍戰術之情報。

七、敵軍之士氣：敵軍之士氣，戰鬥意志，以及其他有關敵軍士氣之情報。

八、敵軍之特性：敵軍之特性，習慣，嗜好，弱點，以及其他有關敵軍特性之情報。

九、敵軍之狀態：敵軍之狀態，包括敵軍之戰鬥狀態，補給狀態，以及其他有關敵軍狀態之情報。

十、敵軍之其他：敵軍之其他有關情報。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 100

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the disposition of your company?
2. What are the locations of your outposts?
3. What is the strength of men of your strong points?
4. What was your mission before you were captured?
5. What is the description of your antitank ditches and emplacements?
6. What is your company commander's name?
7. What are the personal characteristics of your company commander?
8. What is the identification of your supporting mortars?
9. What types of food does your unit have?
10. How is the morale of your unit?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 100

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

t'ung-sheūng ordinary, general, normal

tsoî...chi hâ under...; tsoî...ts'îng-yîng chi hâ 'under the condition of...'; tsoî t'ūng-sheūng tsòk-chîn ts'îng-yîng chi hâ

ts'în-sìn pô-ts'eung ping pô-ts'eung ping 'riflemen'; ts'în-sìn pô-ts'eung ping 'front line riflemen'

waî-yat the only one, sole, exclusive

ts'îng-pò kà-chîk intelligence value

tsîk-tsìp koon-ch'ak direct observation

haân-ue to limit to, to confine to

tai-k'ap low level, low rank, low class

chîn-shût ch'îng-tô tactical level

t'aî-mûk topic, questions (examination), problems (examination)

p'in-p'ooì disposition (troops), to dispose; a.f.: pô-ch'uĕ

ts'în-shaaù outpost

fōng-uê ch'ît-shi defensive installations

fōng chîn-ch'e hō 'trenches, ditches'; a.f.: chîn-hō; fōng chîn-ch'e hō 'antitank ditches'; a.f.: fōng-uê chîn-ch'e hō

taan-waî* chî-fai koon unit commander

kòh-yān tâk-sìng personal characteristics; a.f.: kòh-yān sìng-kaàk

chi-oōn pik-kik p'aaù supporting mortars

chông-t'aaì state, condition, phase; pô-k'ap chông-t'aaì 'state of supply'

yān-uēn suén-shat casualties; a.f.: sheung-mōng, sheung-mōng shò-mûk

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 101

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: P'eì-uē ngŏh-teî foo-wôk yat-kòh paan-cheúng waâk p'aaî-cheúng waâk lîn-cheúng, ngŏh-teî ying-koi tîm-yeûng* ch'uế-chì k'uĭ à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yan-waî paan-cheúng, p'aaî-cheúng, lîn-cheúng mooĭ kòh kaai-k'ap yaŭ seung-tong chî-fai chaàk-yâm t'ūng k'uēn-lîk, k'uĭ-teî shóh yaŭ kè ts'îng-pò tsz-liû*, peî-kaaù yat kòh haî k'uĭ-teî chî-fai chi hâ kè pô-ts'eung ping shóh yaŭ kè ts'îng-pò tsz-liû*, ch'îng-tô ko ti t'ūng faân-waî kwóng ti.....

P: Kŏm, ying-koi paau-koòt mi-yĕ t'aî-mûk à?

H: Ch'uî-chóh pô-ts'eung ping chìn-foo shóh yaŭ kè ts'îng-pò tsz-liû* chi ngoî, shám-mân tai k'ap taan-waî* chî-fai koon ying-koi paau-k'oòt hâ-lît keî kòh t'aî-mûk: Yat. K'uĭ-teî kòk-koi taan-waî* kè kaì-waâk t'ūng yâm-mô. Î. K'uĭ-teî kè taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì, yīng t'ūng t'uēn kè p'in-chaì. Saam. Lîn, ying, t'uēn kè p'in-p'ooì; ni ti taan-waî* mooĭ kòh uê-peî tuî* kè p'in-p'ooì. Seì. Chi-oōn taan-waî* kè shik-pît t'ūng yat-poon p'in-chaì, paau-k'oòt p'aaû-ping, pik-kik p'aaù, chong-kaàp, kung-ping taan-waî*. Ngĕ. Ch'ŭng ping-heì taan-waî* kè waî-chì, ping-lîk, yâm-mô. Lûk. Tai-k'ap taan-waî* kung-kik t'ūng fōng-uê chìn-shût. Hâ-shûk pô-tuî* kè chat t'ūng tsing-shān. Yān-uēn suén-shat.

Major White: Sir, suppose if we captured a squad leader, platoon leader, or company commander, how should we handle him?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: In view of the fact that squad and platoon leaders, and company commanders have a certain degree of command responsibility and authority, they possess information on a somewhat higher and broader level than information possessed by riflemen under their command.....

W: What topics should be included then?

H: In addition to the information possessed by the prisoner riflemen, small unit commanders should be questioned on the following topics: 1. Plans and missions of their respective units. 2. Organization of their units, as well as organization of battalions and regiments; reserves of each. 4. Identification and general organization of supporting units including artillery, mortar, armor, and engineer units. 5. Location, strength, and mission of heavy weapons units. 6. Offensive and defensive tactics of small units. 7. Quality and morale of subordinate troops. 8. Casualties.

白少校：譬如我地係獲一個班長或排長或連長，我地應該點樣*處置佢呀，何中校？

何中校：因為班長，排長，連長每個階級所有指揮責任同權力，個個係佢地有嘅情報資料*，指揮下嘅步槍同埋機關槍，該包括戰鬥隊嘅編制，營嘅編制，連嘅編制，排嘅編制，班嘅編制。

白：敢，應該包括下列各單位*既資料*之外，該單位*既預別砲單位*，位*單位*既部隊*既人員，裝備，位*既質量，火力，任務，下屬單位*既戰鬥序列，指揮關係，通訊網，後勤支援，地形，天氣，敵情，我情，以及其他有關資料。

何：除咗審問幾個題目：一，任務。二，敵情呢方面嘅資料*，包括敵軍嘅組織，裝備，位*置，兵力，戰鬥序列，指揮官，士氣，訓練，後勤支援，地形，天氣，敵軍嘅弱點，敵軍嘅戰術，敵軍嘅行動方針，敵軍嘅重心，敵軍嘅戰鬥力，敵軍嘅戰鬥效率，敵軍嘅戰鬥意志，敵軍嘅戰鬥精神，敵軍嘅戰鬥士氣，敵軍嘅戰鬥訓練，敵軍嘅戰鬥後勤支援，敵軍嘅戰鬥地形，敵軍嘅戰鬥天氣，敵軍嘅戰鬥弱點，敵軍嘅戰鬥戰術，敵軍嘅戰鬥行動方針，敵軍嘅戰鬥

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 101

READING MATERIAL

班長，排長，連長為低級單位*指揮官；
有相當指揮責任與權力．故在地所有之情
報資料*，比較在在地指揮之下之步槍兵所
有之情報資料*，程度較高與範圍較廣．

除
關於步槍兵問題外，須包
括下列各點：單位*指揮官，其問題
務．二．連，營，團之編制與單位*之計劃與任
之編配．四．支援砲兵部隊*
包括砲兵單位*之編制，
重單位*之與
之

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 101

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What are the plans and missions of your squad?
2. What is the organization of your company, as well as the organization of your battalion?
3. What is the disposition of your battalion and its reserves?
4. What is the identification of your supporting artillery?
5. What is the identification of your supporting armor?
6. What is the general organization of your supporting engineers?
7. What is the location of your heavy weapons company?
8. What are the offensive tactics of your platoon?
9. What are the defensive tactics of your company?
10. What is the combat experience of your squad?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 101

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

p'eì-uē for example, for instance, to suppose

paan-cheúng squad leader

p'aaì-cheúng platoon leader

lîn-cheúng company commander

ch'uế-chì to handle, to manage, to manipulate; a.f.: ch'uế-leĭ

seung-tong to a certain degree, to a certain amount, considerable, corresponding, related

chî-fai chaàk-yâm command responsibility

chî-fai k'uēn-lîk command authority

kwóng broad, wide, extensive, manifold, versatile, Kwangtung, Kwangsi

tai-k'ap taan-waî* small units

kòk-koi respective concerned

uê-peî tuî* reserves, units in reserve; a.f.: uê-peî pô-tuî*

chi-oōn taan-waî* supporting units

yat-poon p'in-chaì general organization

ch'ŭng ping-heì taan-waî* heavy weapons units

kung-kip chìn-shût offensive tactics

fōng-uê chìn-shût defensive tactics

hâ-shûk pô-tuî* hâ-shûk 'subordinates'; hâ-shûk pô-tuî* 'subordinate units'

chat quality

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 102

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Tai-k'ap taan-waî* kè ch'uēn-lîng ping, yan-waî k'uĭ-teî kè oôt-tûng sìng-chat sź-ĭn, shĭ-sheūng hó yūng-î peî foo. Ni chúng kè yān-uēn shĭ-shĭ peî t'iu-suén tsô ni chúng kung-tsòk haî kei-ue k'uĭ-teî yaŭ ch'iu-kwòh ch'ām-sheūng yān kè chì-waî. T'ūng-shĭ yan-waî k'uĭ-teî yaŭ koon-ch'ak lîk t'ūng haú-shaû mîng-lîng keì-yik lîk. Keì-ĭn k'uĭ-teî yaŭ kei-ooî haî chìn-taù k'ui tsòk yaŭ haân-chaì kè haāng-tûng, k'uĭ-teî waâk-ché tuì-ue yat-poon kwan-sź chông-fòng hó ts'ing-ch'óh. Shám-mân ch'uēn-lîng ping chìn-foo kè shĭ-haû, ts'in-k'eĭ m̄-hó mōng-keì mân mi-yĕ t'aĭ-mûk à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yat. Meî peî foo chi ts'ĭn, ch'uēn-taât mîng-lîng kè sìng-chat t'ūng noî-yūng. Faàt-ch'ut koi mîng-lîng kè yān kè sìng-mīng, t'ūng shau mîng-lîng kè yān sìng-mīng teî-chî. Tsuî-shût k'uĭ-teî kè chik-chaàk t'ūng koon-chik. Î. Shaî-yûng ch'uēn-lîng ping kè ch'ing-tô. Ch'uēn-lîng ping yān-uēn shóh yûng kè lô-sìn. Saam. Mān-tîn chung-sam t'ūng kaau-t'ung sìn shóh-tsoî teî. Seì. Tô-lô, k'iū-leūng, uê-peî lô chông-fòng. Nğ. Chî-fai shóh shóh-tsoî teî: Chî-fai koon t'ūng ts'aam-maū sìng-mīng. Lûk. Ch'uēn-lîng yâm-mô kè shĭ-haû shóh kìn kè p'aaù-ping, pik-kik p'aaù, chong-kaàp shóh-tsoî teî. Ts'at. Teî-luĭ k'ui t'ūng k'eĭ-t'a fōng-uê ch'ìt-shi shóh-tsoî teî. Paàt. tîk-

yàn-chìn-sìn haû-pîn hîm-iù têî-maû-yīng-chông. Kaû- pó-k'ap t'ūng taân-yeûk tui-tsik shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp. Yàn-uēn suén-shat.

Major White: Small unit messengers, due to the nature of their activities, are often liable to capture. Such personnel are frequently chosen for this type of work on the basis of above-average intelligence and their ability to observe, as well as to remember oral instructions. Since they have an opportunity for limited movement about the combat zone, they may have a good picture of the general military situation. Sir, what topics for questioning should not be overlooked when interrogating messenger prisoners of war?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: 1. Nature and contents of messages carried prior to capture. Names of persons originating such messages, as well as names of addressees. Description of their duties and positions. 2. Extent to which messengers are used. Routes of messenger personnel. 3. Location of message centers and communication lines. 4. Condition of roads, bridges, and alternate routes. 5. Location of command posts: names of commanders and staff officers. 6. Location of artillery, mortars, and armor seen during messenger missions. 7. Location of mine fields, and other defensive installations. 8. Description of critical terrain features behind enemy lines. 9. Location of supply and ammunition dumps. 10. Casualties.

白少校：既係工智口會地。
但地被種既同機但楚祈校性姓名，
為容易呢人力有，清千中既既姓
常做常測地動好，何令人
好選尋觀但行況候，命既
兵，時被超地既制事既目傳命既
令，時有但。限軍係題，該姓
傳然，時地為力有般戰野前出
既使員但因憶作一兵也之發
位質人於時記區於令問係。
單性既基同令門對傳記被容。
級動種係。命戰者問忘未內
低活呢作慧授喺或審好一同
何中校：同地既三道揮六迫同戰同失。
一、指名，區人給損
二、員線路官所地在形地。
四、線。
五、姓兵雷敵補員
謀砲地八九人
十、
述令路。
傳既地。
叙
用在況參既七、
用
人通備揮候在所貌在
令地。
人
官令同：既甲設要所
收既程文路所傳擊其線彈
程
文
路
所
傳
擊
其
線
彈
。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 102

READING MATERIAL

令觀人之傳，種種之慧，此單位*之智力，低級人憶力之工作。

然，低過記工作。

使然於其之兵之質。基於令兵之性修口為傳令之動活於對挑選被於選

由常，時易與被時

於時力時

兵測員

一.質：姓名.二.線：橋.路，地點之性之者職之路在地.所.線置敵位.八之時，地.七.後.

列命命與採四.所令令官用道所

下之接責所.揮命隊*置積.所

括達.職與地指達部位堆.

包傳名之，在五.傳甲之藥

應.所姓者慶所.六.裝施彈

時令者命之通狀名，與設與

兵之令程線況.

兵傳令發用交之姓砲防補

令該命收使與路謀擊他九.

傳，發.被心備參迫其.失

問前.址員中預與，與形損

審修容地人電與官兵區地員

被內與令文，揮砲雷要人

未與名傳三.樑指之地險十.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 102

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What are the nature and contents of messages you carried prior to capture?
2. What are the names of persons originating such messages?
3. What are the names of addressees?
4. Where is your message center located?
5. What is the condition of your roads and bridges?
6. Where did you see artillery, mortars and armor during messenger missions?
7. What is the location of your mine fields?
8. What is the location of your other defensive installations?
9. What is the critical terrain feature behind your lines?
10. What are the locations of your supply and ammunition dumps?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 102

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ch'uēn-lîng ping ch'uēn lîng 'to carry messages, to convey messages'; ch'uēn-lîng ping 'messenger'

oôt-tûng sìng-chat nature of activities

... sź-ìn due to..., because of..., ... to cause

t'iu-suén to choose, to select; a.f.: suén-p'aaì

kei-ue owing to, to base on, on the basis of

ch'ām-sheūng ordinary, common, mediocre, average; ch'iu-kwòh ch'ām-sheūng 'above the average, unusual'; a.f.: kwòh-yān

chì-waî intelligence, wisdom

koon-ch'ak lîk ability to observe

haú-shaû mîng-lîng haú-shaû 'to dictate, verbal instruction'; haú-shaû mîng-lîng 'verbal order, verbal instruction, oral instruction'

keì-yik lîk keì-yik 'to remember, memory'; kei-yik lîk 'memory, ability to remember'

chìn-taù k'ui combat zone; a.f.: chìn k'ui

yaŭ haân-chaì haân-chaì 'limitation, limited'; yaŭ haân chaì 'limited'

kwan-sî chông-fòng military situation; yat-poon kwan-sî chông-fòng 'general military situation'

ts'in-k'eì must, be sure, by all means, to bear in mind

ch'uēn-taât mîng-lîng ch'uēn-taât 'to send word, to deliver (messages)'; ch'uēn-taât mîng-lîng 'to deliver messages, to report orders, to carry messages'

faàt-ch'ut mîng-lîng kè yān faàt-ch'ut 'to issue (order)'; a.f.: faàt; faàt-ch'ut mîng-lîng 'to issue order'; a.f.: faàt mîng-lîng; faàt-ch'ut mîng-lîng kè yān 'one who issues order'; a.f.: faàt mîng-lîng kè yān

shau mîng-lîng kè yan one who received the order, addressee

man-tîn chung-sam man-tîn 'messages (telegrams, letters, messages, documents)'; man-tîn chung-sam 'message center'

kaau-t'ung sìn communication line

uê-peî lô alternate routes

chìn sìn front line

hîm-iû critical (terrain), tactically or strategically important (terrain)

teî-maû terrain feature

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 103

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Uē-t'ūng ch'uēn-lîng ping yat-yeûng, mō-sìn-tîn t'ūng tîn-wâ* t'ung-sùn ping uě-k'âp k'eì-t'a kòk chúng t'ung-sùn yān-uēn, shì-sheūng shûk-shik k'uǐ-teî kè chî-fai koon kè kaì-waâk t'ūng mîng-lîng. Tuì mà, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Mŏ ts'òh là, Paâk Shiù-Kaaù. Koò-ts'ź shám-mân ts'în-sìn t'ung-sùn yān-uēn ying-koi paau-k'oòt hâ-lît keî kòh t'aì-mûk: Yat. Tsoî maŭ kòh chìn-shût ts'ing-ying chi hâ, shau faàt kè mān-tîn kè sìng-chat t'ūng chìng-k'òk noî-yūng. Keì-lûk pô* haî yat-kîn mō-kà kè kung-mān, uē-kwóh hóh-ǐ lóh-tak-tó. Î. Mât-hô t'ūng mât-mă. Saam. Ngŏh-teî ts'în-pîn kè tîk-kwan kè ko k'ap taan-waî*. Mooǐ kòh taan-waî* kè mât-hô waâk mât-mă. Seì. T'ung-sùn mŏng chi noî kè taan-waî* t'ūng mât-hô mât-mă, t'ūng shóh yûng t'ung-sùn sùn-hô. Ngˇ. Chî-fai koon t'ūng ts'aam-maū kè sìng-mîng t'ūng mât-hô. Lûk. Mō-sìn-tîn kei t'ūng tîn-wâ* kei kè chúng-luî, hô mă, t'ūng kei-poón kè tâk-sìng. Sz k'ap, t'uēn k'ap, yîng k'ap, lîn k'ap shóh yûng kè k'eì-t'a t'ung-sùn chong-peî. Ts'at. Chìm-lĭng ts'în-sìn chân-teî kè taan-waî* kè shik-pît t'ūng shóh-tsoî teî. Paàt. P'aaù-ping t'ūng pik-kik p'aaù taan-waî* kè shik-pît t'ūng shóh-tsoî teî. K'uǐ-teî kè shê-kik chî-fai shóh. Kaú. Shóh yûng kè mât-mă toî-tsẑ t'ūng mât-mă tsẑ-mŏ. Shâp. Yān-uēn suén-shat.

Major White: As is the case with messengers, radio and telephone operators as well as other types of communications personnel are frequently familiar with the plans and instructions of their commanders. Am I correct, sir?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: You're right, Major White. Therefore the following topics should be covered during the interrogation of front line communications personnel: 1. Nature and exact contents of messages sent and received during a given tactical situation. The log book is an invaluable document if it can be obtained. 2. Code names and code numbers. 3. Major enemy units to our front and code names or numbers of each. 4. Units in the communication net and code names, numbers, and signals utilized. 5. Names and code names of commanders and staff officers. 6. Types, numbers and basic characteristics of radios and telephones, as well as other signal equipment used at company, battalion, regiment, and division level. 7. Identification and location of units occupying front line positions. 8. Location of artillery and mortar positions, and their possible fire direction centers. 9. Codes and ciphers utilized. 10. Casualties.

白少校：話電同員，線目！
同電人計劃前題發錄以地單前位
訊既計劃前題發錄以地單前位
既通官揮校？故下之內信同種，通位擊既砲射同
線通官揮校？故下之內信同種，通位擊既砲射同
無種指中校？故下之內信同種，通位擊既砲射同
各指中校？故下之內信同種，通位擊既砲射同
樣，包括形確文密單位簿擺
一其地既何校包情正公同級既信密類，
其地既何校包情正公同級既信密類，團
地既何校包情正公同級既信密類，團信既
既何校包情正公同級既信密類，團信既砲
何校包情正公同級既信密類，團信既砲射同
校包情正公同級既信密類，團信既砲射同
包情正公同級既信密類，團信既砲射同
情正公同級既信密類，團信既砲射同
正公同級既信密類，團信既砲射同
公同級既信密類，團信既砲射同
同級既信密類，團信既砲射同
級既信密類，團信既砲射同
既信密類，團信既砲射同
信密類，團信既砲射同
密類，團信既砲射同
類，團信既砲射同
，團信既砲射同
團信既砲射同
信既砲射同
既砲射同
砲射同
射同
同

令兵及佢嗎？白應戰質價密既密號揮線基，佔在別．十，
傳兵熟識對，員個性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
兵熟識對，員個性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
熟識對，員個性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
識對，員個性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
對，員個性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
，員個性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
員個性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
個性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
性無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
無二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
二，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
，軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
軍或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
或密指無同級七，所識所毋．
密指無同級七，所識所毋．
指無同級七，所識所毋．
無同級七，所識所毋．
同級七，所識所毋．
級七，所識所毋．
七，所識所毋．
，所識所毋．
所識所毋．
識所毋．
所毋．
毋．
．

同信常令營．同既揮字
通時令營．同既揮字
命令營．同既揮字
令營．同既揮字
營．同既揮字
．同既揮字
同既揮字
既揮字
揮字
字

如通一，文係得便既單號號級裝識單擊密
通一，文係得便既單號號級裝識單擊密
一，文係得便既單號號級裝識單擊密
，文係得便既單號號級裝識單擊密
文係得便既單號號級裝識單擊密
係得便既單號號級裝識單擊密
得便既單號號級裝識單擊密
便既單號號級裝識單擊密
既單號號級裝識單擊密
單號號級裝識單擊密
號號級裝識單擊密
號級裝識單擊密
級裝識單擊密
裝識單擊密
識單擊密
單擊密
擊密
密

何中校：

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 103

READING MATERIAL

他命與計劃及其他通訊兵，電話通訊兵，電線通訊兵，無線電通訊人員對於佢地指揮官之識別與通訊熟識。

各種通訊人員對於佢地指揮官之識別與通訊熟識。

各種通訊人員對於佢地指揮官之識別與通訊熟識。

各種

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 103

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is your unit's code name?
2. What is your unit's code number?
3. What are the code names of your major units at the front?
4. What are the units in your communications net?
5. What is the code name of your battalion commander?
6. What types and numbers of radios and telephones are being used at your regiment?
7. What types and numbers of signal equipment are being used at your division level?
8. What is the identification of your units occupying front line positions?
9. What is the location of your fire direction center?
10. What codes and ciphers are utilized in your unit?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 103

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

uĕ-t'ūng as is the case with; a.f.: hó̍-ts'ž

mō-sìn-tîn t'ung-sùn ping radio operators

tîn-wâ* t'ung-sùn ping telephone operators

uĕ-k'âp and; a.f.: uĕ, k'âp, t'ūng

t'ung-sùn yān-uēn communications personnel

ts'în-sìn t'ung-sùn yān-uēn front line communications personnel

chìn-shût ts'îng-yîng tactical situation; a.f.: chìn-shût chông-fòng, chìn-shût kûk-shaì

chìng-k'ò̍k exact, correct, accurate, precise; chìng-k'ò̍k nó̍î-yūng 'exact contents'

keì-lûk pô* log book; a.f.: tsît-shau keì-lûk

mō-kà invaluable

kung-mān documents

mât-mă code numbers

ko-k'ap taan-waî* major units

t'ung-sùn mŏng communications net

sùn-hô signals

mō-sìn-tîn kei radios

tîn-wâ* kei telephones

t'ung-sùn chong-peî signal equipment

ts'în-sìn châm-teî front line positions

shê-kik chî-fai shó̍h fire direction center

mât-mă toî-tsẑ codes

mât-mă tsẑ-mŏ tsẑ-mŏ 'alphabets'; mât-mă tsẑ-mŏ 'ciphers'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 104

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Shám-mân foo-lŏ kà-shaî yān-uēn kè mân-t'aî ying-koi yaŭ-kwaan tîk-ts'ing kûk-mîn, yaū-ue k'uĭ-teî kè kà-shaî king-îm ì kòk kòh kà-shaî chìn-foo ying-koi chi-tò kè. Kà-shaî ping kà-shaî chî-fai koon t'ūng ts'aam-maū kè ch'e-leŭng, pó-k'ap ch'e-leŭng, t'oh-taaì t'ūng shîng-tsoì chìn-fōng mŏ-heì t'ūng hung-fōng mŏ-heì ch'e-leŭng, p'ó-t'ung kei-ue k'uĭ-teî shóh p'ooì-yaŭ kè kaau-t'ung kung-kuî kè chúng-luî, t'ūng k'uĭ-teî meî peî foo-lŏ chi ts'în shóh taam-yâm kè yâm-mô, ì yaŭ kòk-koi ts'ing-pò tsz-liû. Ngŏh-teî ying-koi mân mi-yĕ t'aî-mûk à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yat. Ko k'ap t'ūng tai k'ap sz-lîng pô kè chî-fai shóh t'ūng chi-oōn taan-waî* kè shik-pît t'ūng shóh-tsoî teî. Î. Chî-fai koon t'ūng ts'aam-maū kè sìng-mîng t'ūng tâk-sìng. Saam. Kwòh-tô t'eng-kìn chî-fai koon t'ūng ts'aam-maū kóng-k'âp kaì-waâk t'ūng mîng-lîng. Seì. Chî-fai koon tuì ts'aam-maū, tuì p'îng-mān, tuì taan-waî*, tuì chìn-taù chông-fòng kè t'aaì-tô. Ngĭ. Kaau-t'ung lô-sìn t'ūng chông-t'aaì. Lûk. Chî-fai koon chìn-shût uēn-chak. Ts'at. Chî-fai t'ūng ts'aam-maū kè p'in-chaì. Paàt. Pó-k'ap sìn; tô-lô chông-t'aaì. Kaú. Pó-k'ap tîm shóh-tsoî teî t'ūng pó-k'ap chúng-luî. Shâp. Pó-k'ap ch'ung m̄-ch'ung-tsuk t'ūng pó-k'ap m̄-kaù kè uēn-yan. Shâp-yat. Shîng-

tsoi pó-k'ap kè-ch'e-leúng chúng-luî, shò-mûk, t'úng pó-ts'uēn chông-t'aaì.....

Major White: Questions directed to captured driver personnel should concern such aspects of the enemy situation as the particular driver prisoners should know in the light of their driving experience. Drivers of command and staff vehicles, supply vehicles, and vehicles drawing or mounting antitank and antiaircraft weapons will ordinarily possess information based on the mode of transportation with which they are furnished, and with the nature of their mission prior to capture. Colonel, what questioning topics should be covered?

Lt. Colonel Höh: 1. Identification and location of command posts of higher and lower headquarters and supporting units. 2. Names and personal characteristics of commanders and staff officers. 3. Plans and orders overheard in conversations between commanders and staff officers. 4. Attitudes of commanders toward staff officers, toward civilians, toward their units, and toward the combat situation. 5. Routes of communication and condition thereof. 6. Tactical doctrines of commanders. 7. Command and staff organization. 8. Supply routes, road conditions. 9. Location of supply points and types of supplies. 10. Sufficiency of supplies and reasons for lack of supplies. 11. Types, numbers and condition of supply-carrying vehicles.....

白少校：有經該駛駕駛嘅車輛，問題嘅知道嘅武器地佢，問地該應同參謀嘅防於佢同，員於侈官同乘載通種嘅担任務，人由戰揮帶輛工前資料中令同指揮·二，駛面駕駛指拋車通之報，何司別姓同官鬥態同狀類嘅類，傷局個駕駛，器交傷情呀低級識嘅官揮戰狀揮路種够種侈情各兵車防有被各題級單位嘅謀揮指對同指道給唔輛審問敵而駛給空配未有野高支揮度命對交原補在足補狀驗駕補同所地而乜一，參指四，線七，補給車態……

何中校：

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 104

READING MATERIAL

給與配任目：補，輛車器武由被時之題目如下：

輛，所担題車於修，題

車作前審目

輛運人員與人已駛所

戰員；未員括

參防；參謀

揮，載駛類駕駛．

指輛之種問關

駛車輛具此面

駕帶車工故局

於拖器通，情

關，武交務敵

輛防之任與

車空有之應

所在．之參給，類，

揮所格及民線與補足，

之指與性講平通揮九充種

別人所對交指．否輛

識個謀，五．七．態是車

令之與參謀．度則．狀給之

部司位名與參路補給

級單姓官對態原道十．補

依援之揮況戰線，運

部與支謀指揮官之術．載

令地與關參於指狀之給種

司在官見部．戰揮八．補因．十一．狀態．

級所揮聽令．對指．與原輛

高與指所命，制．地之車

一．別二．修與位＋，六．編在够與

之識．戰劃單形之所不目

地．三．計對情謀點與數

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 104

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the identification of your higher headquarters?
2. What are the locations of your lower headquarters?
3. What is the personal characteristics of your company commander and his staff officers?
4. What are the plans and orders overheard in conversation between your company commander and his staff officers?
5. What is the attitude of your company commander toward the combat situation?
6. What is the condition of your routes of communication?
7. What are the tactics employed by your company commander?
8. What is the location of your supply point?
9. What are the reasons for the lack of supplies in your unit?
10. What types and numbers of supply-carrying vehicles are being used in your unit?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 104

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kà-shaî yān-uēn drive personnel

tîk-ts'îng enemy situation

kûk-mîn situation

kà-shaî ping driver (soldier)

chî-fai koon ch'e-leúng command vehicle

ts'aam-maū ch'e-leúng staff vehicle

pó-k'ap ch'e-leúng supply vehicle

t'oh-taaì to draw (vehicle, boat, etc), drawing (vehicle, boat, etc)

shîng-tsoì to carry (passenger, cargo, supply), mounting; a.f.: tsoì, tsoì-wân, wân-tsoì

chìn-fōng mŏ-heì antitank weapon; a.f.: fōng-chìn mŏ-heì, chìn-ch'e fōng-uê mŏ-heì

hung-fōng mŏ-heì anti-aircraft weapon

p'ooì-yaŭ to furnish, to equip, to supply

ko-k'ap sz-lîng pô higher headquarters

tai-k'ap sz-lîng pô lower headquarters

kwòh-tô excess, beyond measure

p'îng-mān civilian, citizen

chìn-taù chông-fòng combat situation; synonym: chìn-taù kûk-shaì, chìn-taù ts'îng-yîng, chìn-taù kûk-mîn

uēn-chak principle, doctrine, basis, theory

chìn-shût uēn-chak tactical doctrine

tô-lô chông-t'aaì road condition; a.f.: tô-lô chông-fòng, tô-lô ts'îng-yîng

pó-k'ap chúng-luî type of supply

pó-ts'uēn chông t'aaì pó-ts'uēn 'to preserve, to maintain, to conserve, to store'; pó-ts'uēn chông-t'aaì 'maintenance condition, preservation condition, storage condition'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 105

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: ..... Ts'ing neĭ kaì-tsûk kóng-lôk-huì la, Hōh Chung-Kaaù.

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: ..... Hó hó. Shâp-î. P'aaù-ping t'ūng pik-kik p'aaù chân-teî shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp-saam. Pô-tuî* haāng-tûng t'ūng pô-tuî* tsaâp-kìt teî-k'ui. Shâp-seì. Tsoì-ch'ŭng ch'e t'ing-ch'e ch'eūng t'ūng heì-ch'e tsaâp-yûng ch'eūng shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp-ńg. Chìn-fōng t'ūng hung-fōng chân-teî shóh-tsoî-teî. Shâp-lûk. Chìn-fōng t'ūng hung-fōng taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì, k'uĭ-teî kè ping-heì t'ūng ping-lîk. Shâp-ts'at. Chìn-fōng t'ūng hung-fōng taan-waî* kè chî-fai koon t'ūng yâm-mô. Shâp-paàt. Taân-yeûk kè chúng-luî t'ūng chông-fòng. Shâp-kaú. Tsing-shān. Î-shâp. Yān-uēn suén-shat.

P: Ngŏh seung-sùn neĭ t'ūng-ì shik-tòng shám-mân tsuì-kân ts'aam-ka ts'ūn-lōh waâk lĭng-tuî* ts'ūn-lōh kè chìn-foo hóh-ĭ wôk-tak hó chûng-iù kè ts'ing-pò tsz-liû*. Shīng-kung t'aàm-ts'uî tîk-yān ts'ūn-lōh, shī-sheūng wôk-tak tong-ts'în chûng-iù kè chìn-shût ts'ing-pò tsz-liû*. Yan-waî suén-chaâk ts'ūn-lōh-tuî-cheúng shī-sheūng kei-ue k'uĭ-teî nāng-kaù shám-ch'aàt chìn-shût sheûng yaŭ ì-î kè yan-sò. Shám-mân ts'ūn-lōh-tuî-cheúng t'ūng ts'ūn-lōh-tuî-uēn ying-koi paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ t'aī-mûk à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

H: Hóh-ĭ yûng hâ-lît kè tsô shám-mân ni chúng yān-uēn kè t'aì-mûk: Yat. Ts'ūn-lōh yâm-mô kè ts'eūng-saì. Î. Shóh yûng kè chìng-k'ðk lô-sìn. Leì-hoi t'ūng faan-huì kè shì-kaan.

Major White: .....Please continue with what you said, Colonel.

Lt. Colonel Höh: ..... Very well. 12. Location of artillery and mortar positions. 13. Troop movements and troop assembly areas. 14. Location of truck parks and motor pools. 15. Location of antitank and antiaircraft units, their weapons and strength. 16. Organization of antitank and antiaircraft units, their weapons and strength. 17. Commanders and missions of antitank and antiaircraft units. 18. Types and status of ammunition. 19. Morale. 20. Casualties.

W: I believe you will agree that proper questioning of prisoners who have participated in recent patrols, or who led such patrols, can yield very important information. Successful exploitation of members of enemy patrols frequently yields tactical information of immediate importance. This is because of the fact that patrol leaders are often chosen for their ability to observe factors which have tactical significance. Colonel, what topics should be included in questioning of patrol leaders and patrol members?

H: The following topics can be used for the questioning of such personnel: 1. Specific missions of patrols. 2. Exact routes used, and time of departure and return.

白少校：……請你繼續講落去啦，何中校．

何中校：……好好．十二，砲兵同迫擊砲陣地所在地．十三，部隊*行動同部隊*集結地區．十四，載重車停車場同汽車集用場所在地．十五，戰防同空防陣地所在地．十六，戰防同空防單位*既編制，佢地既兵器同兵力．十七，戰防同空防單位*既指揮官同任務．十八，彈藥既種類同狀況．十九，精神．二十，人員損失．

白：我相信你同意適當審問最近參加巡邏重巡情常義隊校目正好人術時意邏中題既？

何：可以．

十、與隊用之防與之兵部集地位空類述砲，車在單與種上動汽所防之括十二行地空戰藥包：隊場陣與七彈損失。

除點各三，停空戰。十八員，列十車與六力。十人下重防十兵務。二十人駛地載戰。與任。神駕包在四五力器與精問須所十十兵兵官精審尚地。與地揮九於，陣區地器佢指十關外砲地在兵，之點擊結所地制位況。一迫集場佢編單狀

意領術術或戰邏之有巡要到加重察參前審近當能最得常問獲時審以長當可隊適，邏如係巡。戰人素之料敵因邏資之巡報義導情

括確包正應之用，時採員所人二。間

邏巡務。時與仕之長邏去隊巡番邏一。與巡開：離問點。審各列線。下路

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 105

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. Where are your troop assembly areas?
2. What is the location of your truck parks?
3. Where are your motor pools located?
4. What is the exact location of your antitank position?
5. What is the exact location of your anti-aircraft position?
6. What is the organization of your antitank and anti-aircraft units?
7. What are the weapons and strength of your antitank and anti-aircraft units?
8. What are the names of the commanders of your antitank and anti-aircraft units?
9. What are the missions of your antitank and anti-aircraft units?
10. What types of ammunition are being used in your unit?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 105

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pik-kik p'aaù chân-teî mortar position

pô-tuî* haang-tûng haang-tûng 'action, movement'; pô-tuî* haang-tûng 'troop movement, troop action'

tsaâp-kìt assembly (troop), build up (troop), to assemble (troop); tsaâp-kìt teî-k'ui 'assembly area (troop)'

tsoì-ch'ŭng ch'e tsoì-ch'ŭng 'load'; tsoì-ch'ŭng ch'e 'truck'; a.f.: taaî k'a-ch'e, fŏh-ch'e

t'ing-ch'e ch'eŭng t'ing ch'e 'to park, to stop (car), parking'; t'ing-ch'e ch'eŭng 'truck park, park, parking lot'

heì-ch'e automobile, car

heì-ch'e tsaâp-yûng ch'eŭng motor pool; a.f.: heì-ch'e tsaâp-chung shŏh

chìn-fŏng chân-teî antitank position

hung-fŏng chân-teî anti-aircraft position

chìn-fŏng taan-waî* antitank unit

hung-fŏng taan-waî* anti-aircraft unit

t'ŭng-ì to agree with, to concur, to consent

lĭng-tuî* leader, to lead a group

t'aàm-ts'uî to seek information about, to inquire, to explore, to exploit

tong-ts'in at present, now

suén-chaâk to select, to choose, a.f.: suén, chaâk

ts'ŭn-lŏh tuî* patrol, patrol unit; ts'ŭn-lŏh-tuî-cheŭng 'patrol leader'

shám-ch'aàt to observe, to observe and appraise

ts'ŭn-lŏh-tuî-uĕn member of patrol unit

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 106

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: .....Ts'îng neĭ kóng-lôk-huì la, Hŏh Chung-Kaaù.

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: .....Saam. Tîk-yān chué taî-k'òng sìn t'ūng tsìn-shaaù shóh-tsoî teî. Seì. T'uēn pô, yīng pô, lìn pô p'aaì pô shóh-tsoî teî. Ngˇ. Heùng tîk-yān chân-teî ts'ìn-tsùn lô-sìn. Lûk. Tîk-yān iù-tîm t'ūng shê-kaaì. Ts'at. Kei-kwaan ts'eung t'ūng pik-kik p'aaù chân-teî. Paàt. Koon-ch'ak shóh t'ūng ts'ìm-t'ìng-shaaù shóh-tsoî teî. Kaú. K'iū-leūng chông-t'aaì t'ūng shìp-shuî ch'eūng shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp. Hîm-iù teî-maaû yīng-chông. Shâp-yat. Fōng-uê chân-teî shóh-tsoî teî t'ūng yīng-chông, uē chìn-fōng ping-heì, tô-lô chóh-tsuêt, teî-luî k'ui, t'ìt-sz mŏng, poôn-tsuk chiù-mīng taân*, kwaî-luī, chìn-ch'e haâm-tsîng, maaî-fûk. Shâp-î, k'eī-t'a ching-ch'aàt mûk-piu, ching-ch'aàt kei-kwaan, t'ūng k'eī-t'a ts'ūn-lōh. Shâp-saam. Sz, t'uēn, yīng kè chìn-shût ching-ch'aàt kei-kwaan p'in-chaì t'ūng chong-peî. Shâp-seì. Ts'ūn-lōh t'ūng ts'ìn-sìn taan-waî* kè haû-lîng t'ūng ôm-hô. Shâp-ngˇ. Ts'ūn-lōh t'ung-sùn fong-faàt. T'ung-sùn chong-peî kè faân-waì. Shâp-lûk. Yaŭ-kwaan pô-tuî* chî-fai koon, ts'aam-maū, yaū-k'eī-shî ts'ing-pò koon kè sìng mīng. Shâp-ts'at. T'ūng k'eī-t'a taan-waî* yaŭ-uē pô-ch'eung lìn, pik-kik taan-waî*, p'aaù-ping taan-waî* hîp-tiû ts'ūn-lōh oôt-tûng. Shâp-paàt. Meî

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT

peî foo-lŏ chi ts'în, ts'ūn-lōh shóh kìn ngŏh-teî pŏ-tuî* kè chue-uēn. Shâp-kaú. Chìn-foo tuì ts'ūn-lōh yâm-mŏ kè t'aaì-tô.

Major White: ..... Sir, please continue.

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: .....3. Location of the enemy main line of resistance and outposts. 4. Location of platoon, company, battalion, and regimental headquarters. 5. Routes of approach to enemy positions. 6. Enemy strong points and fields of fire. 7. Machine gun and mortar positions. 8. Location of observation posts and listening posts. 9. Condition of bridges and location of fords. 10. Description of critical terrain features. 11. Location and description of defensive positions such as antitank weapons, road blocks, mine fields, barbed wire entanglements, trip flares, booby traps, tank traps, and ambushes. 12. Other reconnaissance objectives, agencies, and other patrols. 13. Organization and equipment of tactical reconnaissance agencies in battalion, regiments, and division. 14. Password and countersign of patrols and line units. 15. Patrol communication system. Range of communications equipment. 16. Names of commanders, staff officers, with emphasis upon intelligence officers of the units concerned. 17. Coordination of patrol activities with other units such as rifle companies, mortar units and artillery units. 18. Data as to what patrol observed about our forces before being captured. 19. Attitude of prisoners toward patrol missions.

白少校：……請你講落去啦，何中校．

何中校：……三，敵人主抵抗線同前哨所在地．四，團部，營部，連部，排部所在地．五，向敵人陣地前進路線．六，敵人要點同射界．七，機關槍同潛聽哨所在地．八，觀測所同涉水場所在地．九，橋樑狀態形狀．十一，防禦器，陣地所在地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆埋伏．十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．三十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．三十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．三十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．三十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．四十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．四十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．四十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．四十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．四十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．四十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．四十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．四十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．四十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．四十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．五十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．五十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．五十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．五十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．五十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．五十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．五十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．五十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．五十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．五十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．六十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．六十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．六十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．六十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．六十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．六十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．六十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．六十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．六十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．六十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．七十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．七十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．七十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．七十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．七十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．七十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．七十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．七十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．七十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．七十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．八十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．八十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．八十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．八十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．八十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．八十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．八十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．八十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．八十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．八十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．九十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．九十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．九十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．九十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．九十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．九十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．九十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．九十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．九十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．九十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百二十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百二十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百二十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百二十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百二十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百二十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百二十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百二十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百二十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百二十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百三十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百三十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百三十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百三十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百三十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百三十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百三十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百三十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百三十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百三十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百四十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百四十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百四十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百四十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百四十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百四十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百四十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百四十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百四十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百四十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百五十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百五十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百五十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百五十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百五十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百五十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百五十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百五十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百五十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百五十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百六十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百六十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百六十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百六十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百六十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百六十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百六十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百六十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百六十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百六十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百七十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百七十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百七十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百七十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百七十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百七十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百七十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百七十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百七十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百七十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百八十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百八十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百八十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百八十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百八十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百八十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百八十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百八十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百八十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百八十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百九十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百九十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百九十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百九十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百九十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．一百九十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．一百九十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．一百九十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．一百九十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．一百九十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百二十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百二十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百二十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百二十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百二十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百二十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百二十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百二十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百二十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百二十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百三十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百三十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百三十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百三十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百三十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百三十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百三十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百三十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百三十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百三十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百四十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百四十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百四十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百四十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百四十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百四十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百四十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百四十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百四十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百四十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百五十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百五十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百五十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百五十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百五十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百五十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百五十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百五十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百五十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百五十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百六十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百六十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百六十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百六十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百六十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百六十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百六十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百六十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百六十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百六十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百七十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百七十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百七十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百七十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百七十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百七十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百七十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百七十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百七十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百七十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百八十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百八十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百八十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百八十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百八十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百八十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百八十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百八十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百八十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百八十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百九十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百九十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百九十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百九十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百九十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．二百九十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．二百九十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．二百九十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．二百九十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．二百九十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三百，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三百一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三百二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三百三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．三百四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三百五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．三百六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．三百七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三百八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．三百九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三百十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三百十一，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三百十二，照明彈，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三百十三，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．三百十四，同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三百十五，圖尤其單兵攜帶諸度．三百十六，情報如何敵人之戰鬥狀態形狀．三百十七，師部，團部，營部，連部，排部，哨所，防禦工事，偽裝，障礙物，地雷區，鐵絲網，絆索，戰車壕，偵察機關槍，迫擊砲陣地，觀測所，涉水場所，橋樑，險要地同形狀，如戰防兵器，道路阻絶，地雷，詭雷，戰車標，偵察機關，其他偵察器．三百十八，制式裝備同信揮．迫擊砲同迫擊砲陣地．三百十九，戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指揮線．三百二十，編制同戰鬥序列同口令通指名，活動見巡邏指

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 106

READING MATERIAL

各點·前所敵人八·與陣阻雷，詭雷，其關口備尤砲八·元·諸之參，調之協隊+連擊十，迫·排部，抗線與部前機之裝，察位+信謀·六·地·陣狀況禦防道燁+，目標，察術線·通單偵·參，調·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 106

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is your patrol mission?
2. When did you depart and return?
3. What is the location of your main line of resistance?
4. Where is your regimental headquarters located?
5. Where is your listening post located?
6. What are the locations of your booby traps, tank traps, and ambushes?
7. What is the password and countersign of your line units?
8. What is the coordination of your patrol with the rifle company?
9. What did you observe about our forces before being captured?
10. What is your attitude toward your patrol mission?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 106

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chué taî-k'ồng sìn taî-k'ồng 'resistance (combat), to resist (combat)'; chué 'main host, boss'; chué taî-k'ồng sìn 'main line of resistance'

t'uēn pô regimental headquarters

yīng pô battalion headquarters

lín pô company headquarters

p'aaì pô platoon headquarters

ts'ín-tsùn lô-sìn ts'ín-tsùn 'to advance, to march forward'; ts'ín-tsùn lô-sìn 'route of approach'

shê-kaaì field of fire

kei-kwaan ch'eung chân-teî machine gun position

ts'ín-t'ing-shaaù listening post

shìp-shuî-ch'eūng shìp shuî 'to wade'; shìp-shuî-ch'eung 'ford'; a.f.: t'ō-shìp-ch'eūng, shìp

chìn-fōng ping-heì antitank weapon; a.f.: chìn-fōng mŏ-heì

poôn-tsuk chiù-míng taân* poôn-tsuk 'to trip, to trip foot'; chiù-míng 'to flare, to brighten'; chiù-míng taân* 'flare'; poôn-tsuk chiù-míng taân* 'trip flare'

kwaî-luî booby trap; a.f.: haâm-tsîng

maaî-fûk ambush, to ambush

ching-ch'aàt mûk-piu reconnaissance objective

chìn-shût ching-ch'aàt tactical reconnaissance

ts'ín-sìn taan-waî* line unit

haú-lîng password

ồm-hô countersign, password, cipher, code, cryptogram,

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 106

ch'ün-lòh t'ung-sùn patrol communication

t'ung-sùn chong-peî faân-waî range of communication equipment

yaŭ-kwaan pô-tuî* unit concerned

ch'ün-lòh oôt-tûng patrol activity

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 107

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Hŏh Chung-Kaaù, ngŏh seung-sùn-tsoî kwán-sî ts'îng-pò tsz-liû* noî-yūng fong-mîn, ch'ŭng ping-heì taan-waî* yān-uēn t'ūng mooĭ kòh pô-ts'eung ping ooĭ kwai-ue yat luî, haî mà?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Haî, Cheung Sheûng-Waì. Taân haî shám-mân ni chúng yān-uēn ying-koi yaū tai kè chìn-shût ch'îng-tô chîk-tsìp ts'oî-ts'uî kwaan-ue ch'ŭng ping-heì t'ūng k'uĭ-teî kè yûng-t'ŏ kè ts'îng-pò tsz-liû*.

C: Kŏm, paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ t'aī-mûk à?

H: Shám-mân ch'ŭng ping-heì yān-uēn iù paau-k'oòt ni keî chúng ts'îng-pò tsz-liû*: Yat. Shât-yûng t'ūng k'eī-t'a kè kei-kwaan ts'eung t'ūng pik-kik p'aaù chân-teî, k'âp hŏh-nāng sìng kè uê-peî chân-teî. Î. Chìn-foo taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì, ping-lîk, yān-uēn suén-shat, ping-heì. Saam. Ch'ŭng ping-heì taan-waî* kè mûk-piu. Seì. Tai-k'ap taan-waî* chî-fai koon sìng-mîng. Nğ. Tai-k'ap pô-ts'eung taan-waî* kè p'in-p'ooì, uē p'aaī t'ūng paan, shaû ch'ŭng ping-heì taan-waî* chi-oōn kè. Lûk. Taân-yeûk kè pó-k'ap, t'ūng kwaan-ue taân-yeûk yûng-t'ō kè mîng-lîng. Ts'at. Ts'în-fong taân-yeûk tui-tsik shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Paàt. Shóh yûng ping-heì kè tâk-sìng. Kaú. Shîk-pán t'ūng k'eī-t'a pó-k'ap. Shâp. Tsing-shān. Shâp-yat. Ngŏh-fong kè fóh-lîk kè kung-haaû. Shâp-î. Pik-kik p'aaù taan-waî* ts'în-

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 107

tsùn koon-ch'ak ping shóh-tsoî, teî. Shâp-saam. Yan uēn suén-shat.

Capt. Cheung: Sir, I believe personnel of heavy weapons units may fall into the same category as the individual rifleman, as regards the extent of their military information. Aren't they?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Yes, they are, Capt. Cheung. However, interrogation of such personnel should be directly pointed toward obtaining information concerning heavy weapons and their use, at lowest tactical levels.

C: In that case what topics are to be included?

H: These are the types of information to be covered in the interrogation of heavy weapons personnel: 1. Location of applicable and other machine gun and mortar positions, as well as possible alternate positions. 2. Organization, strength, casualties, and weapons of the prisoner's unit. 3. Targets for heavy weapons units. 4. Names of small unit commanders. 5. Dispositions of small rifle units such as squads and platoons supported by heavy weapons units. 6. Supply of ammunitions, and instructions concerning the use of ammunition. 7. Location of forward ammunition dumps. 8. Characteristics of weapons used. 9. Food and other supplies. 10. Morale. 11. Effect of our firepower. 12. Location of forward observers for mortar units. 13. Casualties.

張上尉：何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

何中校：何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

張：敢問何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

何：審問何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

張上尉：何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

何中校：何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

張：敢問何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

何：審問何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

張上尉：何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

何中校：何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

張：敢問何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

何：審問何中校，我相信在單位資料每人報情資料包括：一，戰鬥人員數目要同其實際人員姓名，排列同班，二，武器種類及數量，呢種呢種武器呢幾種，三，單位指揮官，如排長，四，單位編制，呢個係應該重點。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 107

READING MATERIAL

在軍事情報資料方面，重兵器單位人員時，步槍兵屬於同一類，審問此種人員關於重兵器與由其應用途徑所得之情報資料，直接程度低。

審問此種人員時，應包括下列各點：一、可以及兵力，可能損失之機會。二、目兵器與其所在地。三、指揮官之姓名。四、前進方向。五、彈藥補給。六、前方彈藥堆積品之所在地。七、前進之一般目標。八、擊員之編配，用途及其預備彈藥之效果。九、火力之所在地。十、砲兵排命令之神位之編制，單位之指揮關係。十一、迫擊砲陣地之補給。十二、人員之用精單位之補充。十三、砲損失。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 107

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the location of your alternate position?
2. What is the target for your heavy weapon unit?
3. What is the disposition of your rifle squad supported by the heavy weapon unit?
4. What is the condition of your supply of ammunitions?
5. What is the location of your forward ammunition dumps?
6. What are the characteristics of the weapons used in your unit?
7. What is the condition of your food and other supplies?
8. What is the morale in your unit?
9. What is the effect of our firepower?
10. What is the location of your forward observers?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 107

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kwan-sẑ ts'îng-pò military information, military intelligence

kwai-ue to belong to, to be included into, to attribute to, to revert to, to return to

shât-yûng practical, substantial, applicable

hóh-nāng sìng probability, possibility, likelihood; hóh-nāng 'probable, possible, likely'

uê-peî chân-teî alternate position

pô-ts'eung taan-waî* rifle unit; pô-ts'eung paan 'rifle squad'

ts'în-fong taân-yeûk tuí-tsik shóh forward ammunition dump

ngŏh-fong our, our side, we

kung-haaû effect, result, effectiveness, fruitfulness

ts'în-tsùn koon-ch'ak ping forward observer; a.f.: ts'în-fong koon-ch'ak ping

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 108

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Kwaan-ue chìn-fōng taan-waî* shóh-yaŭ kòk-chúng ping-heì kè ts'ìng-pò tsz-liû*, tuì-ue kaì-waâk wân-yûng chìn-ch'e îm-oô pô-ping kung-kik kè chî-fai koon yaŭ môk-taaî kè chûng-iù sìng. Uē-kwóh foo-wôk tîk-yān pô-ping chìn-fōng taan-waî* yān-uēn, shâm-mân ying-koi paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ t'aì-mûk à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Hóh-ĭ mân ni chúng yān-uēn ni ti mân-t'aì: Yat. Shik-pît chìn-foo kè p'aaù paan, p'aaù-ping lîn, p'aaù-ping yìng. Î. Kòk chúng ping-heì kè tâk-sìng t'ūng wân-shue kè paân-faàt. Saam. Taan-waî* kè ping-lîk. Seì. yān-sî t'ūng kòh-yān tâk-sìng. Nĭ. P'aaù-shaú t'ūng taan-waî* kè yâm-mô. Lûk. Chìn-fōng ping-heì kè p'in-p'ooì. Ts'at. Taân-yeûk kè pó-k'ap, t'ūng shóh yûng taân-yeûk chúng-luî. Paàt. Kwaan-ue pô-ping taan-waî* chi-oōn chìn-fōng taan-waî* kè ts'ìng-pò tsz-liû*. Kaú. Uĕ pô-ping k'âp k'eì-t'a taan-waî* t'ung-sùn fong-faàt. Shâp. Shê-kaaì. Shâp-yat. Uê-peî chân-teî. Shâp-î. Tuì ngŏh-fong kè chìn-ch'e kè t'aaì-tô, paau-k'oòt hóh-nāng hāng-tûng, wân-tûng lîk ts'uk-tô, ping-heì, fóh-lîk, waì-mît lîk. Shâp-saam. Tîk-yān tuì ngŏh-fong kè chông-fòng p'oòn-tuên. Shâp-seì. Tsing-shān t'ūng shîk-pán ts'ìng-ying. Shâp-nĭ. Yān-uēn suén shat.

Capt. Cheung: Information about the type of weapons of antitank units is extremely important to the commander who plans to employ tanks in support of infantry in offensive action. Sir, suppose we captured some members of enemy antitank units, what topics should be included in the interrogation?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: These are the questions which might be asked of members of antitank. 1. Identification of prisoner's gun section, battery, or battalion. 2. Characteristics of types of weapons and means of transportation. 3. Strength of units. 4. Personnel and individual characteristics. 5. Mission of gun crews and units. 6. Disposition of antitank weapons. 7. Ammunition supply, and types of ammunition utilized. 8. Information concerning infantry units supported by antitank units. 9. Means of communication with infantry and other units. 10. Fields of fire. 11. Alternate positions. 12. Attitude toward our tanks, including capabilities, maneuver abilities, speed, weapons, firepower, destructive abilities. 13. Enemy estimate of our situation. 14. Morale and food situation. 15. Casualties.

張上尉：情既護掩重要單位呀，兵器戰車大既戰防單位所有各種兵戰用莫兵也野題目計劃運有步括包指揮官人敵該應問審如果俘獲攻擊既資料，對於戰防單位關報步性人員，何中校？

何中校：識營法防同位與射方動，滅斷員人特同個事同輸運連，砲兵砲既辦戰，給兵單九，十，我毀判況五，對行力，能狀十火既。問題：一，問呢種人員呢啲兵連，砲既特性同運事務補步料法二，能力狀況五，人特同位單位既手任既藥關報信方十可火既。砲既砲班，砲既兵力。四，人戰防同位單位既兵力同。六，給兵單九，十，我動，毀判況五，人特同個人特防同位與射方動，滅斷員。二，各種兵器既特性同運輸既辦法。三，單位既兵力。四，人事同個人特防同位與射方動，滅斷員。五，砲既彈戰及十車力十精神。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 108

READING MATERIAL

官員指揮人員對於莫大應包括下列各點：

一. 兵力．

二. 任務種類．

三. 射界．

四. 態度，

五. 判斷．

六. 火力，

七. 彈藥資料．

八. 步兵戰鬥車之識別．

九. 與友軍之連絡，

十. 敵軍之兵狀損失．

十一. 通訊，

十二. 運輸方法．

十三. 情報資料，

十四. 攻擊防禦之兵器，

十五. 敵我雙方速度，

十六. 步兵戰鬥車之彈藥補給與彈藥之分配．

十七. 敵我雙方人員之傷亡及陣地動．

十八. 步兵戰鬥車之個別特性與編組．

十九. 與友軍防空兵器之協調及配合．

二十. 包括預備隊之使用．

二十一. 敵我雙方戰鬥精神與士氣．

二十二. 敵軍運輸及後勤之重點．

二十三. 敵軍砲兵連，砲兵運輸及砲兵彈藥單位之特性與編組．

二十四. 敵軍步兵連，步兵戰鬥車及步兵單位之特性與編組．

二十五. 敵軍砲兵連，砲兵運輸及砲兵彈藥單位之特性與編組．

二十六. 敵軍步兵連，步兵戰鬥車及步兵單位之特性與編組．

二十七. 敵軍步兵連，步兵戰鬥車及步兵單位之特性與編組．

二十八. 敵軍步兵連，步兵戰鬥車及步兵單位之特性與編組．

二十九. 敵軍步兵連，步兵戰鬥車及步兵單位之特性與編組．

三十. 敵軍步兵連，步兵戰鬥車及步兵單位之特性與編組．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 108

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the identification of your gun section and battery?
2. What types of weapons and means of transportation are being employed by your unit?
3. What is the mission of your gun crews?
4. What is the disposition of your antitank weapons?
5. What is the information concerning your infantry units supported by antitank units?
6. What are your means of communication with the infantry units?
7. What is the location of your alternate position?
8. What is your company commander's attitude toward our capability?
9. What is your staff officers' attitude toward our maneuverability and destructive ability?
10. What is your estimate of our situation?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 108

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

îm-oô to cover, cover, coverage; a.f.: îm-paì

môk-taaî môk 'negative, do not, not, there is not'; môk-taaî 'greatly, extremely, tremendously, appreciably'

p'aaù-paan gun section

wân-shue paân-faàt means of transportation

p'aaù-shaú gun crew, gunner, artilleryman

t'ung-sùn fong-faàt means of communication

hôh-nāng haāng-tûng capability (military)

wân-tûng lîk wân-tûng 'sport'; wân-tûng lîk 'maneuverability

waî-mît lîk destructive ability, destructive power; waî-mît 'destruction, to destroy'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 109

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Shám-mân chìn-ch'e kà-shaî ping, ts'eung-shaú, chìn-ch'e cheúng, t'ūng pô-ping chìn-ch'e taan-waî* kè tai-k'ap taan-waî* tuî-cheúng, ying-koi mân-k'âp k'uĭ-teî kè yâm-mô, tsing-shān, p'in-chaì, ping-heì, t'ūng chî-faî koon, tuì mà, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Mŏ ts'òh là. Taân-haî yan-waî k'uĭ-teî yûng yat-chúng foò-yaŭ kei-tûng lîk, fóh-lîk, ch'ung-kik tûng-tsòk, yaŭ tûk-yat-mō-î kè tâk-sìng kè ping-heì laì uēn-shīng k'uĭ-teî kè mûk-tik, shóh-ĭ iù mân ni ti pó-ch'ung mân-t'aì: Yat. Chìn-ch'e taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì, p'ing-shī p'in-p'ooì taan-waî* chìn-ch'e shò-mûk, în-shī chìn-ch'e ping-lîk. Î. Chìn-ch'e chúng-luî t'ūng tâk-sìng, paau-k'oòt chong-kaàp t'ūng ping-heì. Saam. Chìn-ch'e shīng-uēn mooĭ paan yān-shò. Seì, chìn-ch'e noî-pô k'âp chìn-ch'e t'ūng pô-ping taan-waî* shóh yûng kè t'ung-sùn fong-faàt. Nğ. Chìn-foo kè chìn-ch'e taan-waî* shóh chi-oōn kè pô-ping taan-waî*. Lŭk. K'eī-t'a chìn-ch'e taan-waî* shóh-tsoî teî t'ūng p'in-p'ooì. Ts'at. Ts'în-tsùn lô-sìn. Chìn-ch'e nei-maaì shóh-tsoî teî. Paàt. Kaau-t'ung nāng-lîk. Kaú. K'iū-leūng tsoì-ch'ŭng yūng-leûng t'ūng hōh ch'uen k'ai kaàn kè shìp-shuî sham-tô. Shâp. Chìn-ch'e kè kei-haaî t'ūng k'eī-t'a ts'uì-yeûk sìng. Shâp-yat. Chìn-ch'e sau-leĭ t'ūng pó-yeŭng taan-waî* shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp-î. Chìn-ch'e ch'ìt-kaì tsuì san koî-shîn.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 109

Shâp-saam. taân-yeûk chúng-luî t'ūng pó-k'ap paân-faàt.

Shâp-seì. Chìn-ch'e suén-shat t'ūng yān-uēn suén-shat.

Shâp-nğ. Shóh yûng în-liû* chúng-luî t'ūng în-liû* pó-k'ap. Shâp-lûk, tsing-shān.

Capt. Cheung: Sir, is it correct that all tank drivers, gunners, tank commanders, and small unit leaders of infantry tank units should be questioned about their mission, morale, organization, weapons, and commanders?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Yes, it is. However, because they employ a weapon with unique characteristics to accomplish special objectives through mobility, fire power, and shock action, therefore these supplementary questions must be asked:

1. Organization of tank units and number of tanks normally assigned to units; current tank strength. 2. Type of tanks and characteristics, including armor and weapons. 3. Number of men per crew. 4. Communications system employed within the tank and between the tank and infantry units. 5. Infantry unit being supported by prisoner's tank unit. 6. Location and disposition of other tank units. 7. Routes of approach. Location of tanks in defilade. 8. Trafficability. 9. Weight-carrying capacity of bridges and fording depth of streams. 10. Mechanical and other vulnerabilities of tanks. 11. Location of tank repair and maintenance units. 12. Newest improvements in design of tanks. 13. Types of ammunition and method of personnel casualties. 15. Kind of fuel used and supply of fuel. 16. Morale.

張上尉：車長，戰車隊長，編制內單位+，何謂單位+？

駕駛兵，槍手，戰車裝甲兵，各有何任務，精神為何？

單位+既指揮官，對於戰車及其他單位+既指揮官，對於戰鬥兵器，各有何特性？

問步兵問該如何運用，以發揮其戰鬥力？

何中校：賦有一種編制，用四，成完整之戰鬥單位+，平時兵力同戰時，戰鬥時包括人員裝備，現在編制內，每一戰車裝甲兵各有何任務，精神為何？

用一種動力，二部戰車，所單位+車線，涉脆位+善，用位+車線，涉脆位+善，用神，五，六，所精

作動黎啲呢，戰車他進能力既他單改十，所精

完補平車兵力，成佢問編

擊器呢制，戰車他進能力既他單改十，所精

地擊器呢制，戰車他進能力既他單改十，所精

佢衝兵問編現，戰車他進能力既他單改十，所精

為衝兵問編現，戰車他進能力既他單改十，所精

因力，既要既位+目，現，戰車他進能力既他單改十，所精

係大特性以位+目，現，戰車他進能力既他單改十，所精

但大特性以位+目，現，戰車他進能力既他單改十，所精

力，既特所單數同車戰二，類人燃

二，既，車車數同車戰二，類人燃

的既，車車數同車戰二，類人燃

目一，位+戰種三，部方既在埋載，十，藥失類

無一，位+戰種三，部方既在埋載，十，藥失類

動一，位+戰種三，部方既在埋載，十，藥失類

啦，動無一，位+戰種三，部方既在埋載，十，藥失類

錯機獨地既題：單戰器車通支位+車橋深性在三，車料+

有錯機獨地既題：單戰器車通支位+車橋深性在三，車料+

有有錯機獨地既題：單戰器車通支位+車橋深性在三，車料+

問戰車駕駛兵，槍手，戰車長，

審問戰車駕駛兵，槍手，戰車長，

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 109

READING MATERIAL

兵無機俥
步一有戰
與獨賦種
長，器此種
車用種審
戰都此故
手，長·務·作·為
槍隊勤點
單位任動
兵級成衝
駛低完，下
駕之以力括
車位單兵
戰單兵器火包
車之力，應
戰二動時

戰特人信六·
位與班通
單類每之位·線
配種員位單
編車乘單兵
時戰車兵步
平二·戰步之
制·力·三·與援
車支編
寶器戰所
之車兵及位
位戰與部單
單時甲內車
車現裝車戰單
戰·括戰五·車掩河脆·與十
數，目包四·戰車與他地類·神
車性，數·法他戰量其在種失精
數·方其八·容與所藥損六·

重械位
彈員十
三人
給·
十，
補
損料
燃
車法
燃料
種
計
設
一·
交涉
地
水
通
與
戰
類四·
最
車
深
能
編
援
支
與
通
水
戰
計
十
種
料
設
一·
交涉
地
溝·戰辦用
二·給所
溪性
地
位
車
所·
位
單
蔽川弱十補
五·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 109

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the current tank strength in your unit?
2. What is your communications system employed within the tanks?
3. What is your communications system employed between the tanks and the infantry units?
4. What is the location of your tanks in defilade?
5. What is the weight-carrying capacity of your bridges?
6. What are the vulnerabilities of your tanks?
7. What is the fording depth of your streams?
8. What are the locations of your tank repair and maintenance units?
9. What are the newest improvements in design of your tanks?
10. What kind of fuel is being used in your unit?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 109

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chìn-ch'e kà-shaî ping tank driver

chìn-ch'e cheúng tank commander

pô-ping chìn-ch'e taan-waî* infantry tank unit

tai-k'ap taan-waî* tuî-cheúng small unit leader

mân-k'âp to ask about, to inquire

foð-yaŭ endowed with, to bestow, to possess

kei-tûng lîk kei-tûng 'mobile'; synonym: laū-tûng; kei-tûng lîk 'mobility'

ch'ung-kik tûng-tsðk shock action; a.f.: ch'ung-kik

tûk-yat-mō-î unique, sole

în-shî current, now, present; a.f.: î-ka, în-tsoî, în

shìng-uēn passenger, to carry (passenger, cargo, supply); a.f.: shìng-tsoî

noî-pô inside, interior, internal, within

nei-maaî to hide, hidden; a.f.: îm-paì

kaau-t'ung nāng-lîk trafficability; a.f.: t'ung-haāng lîk

tsoì-ch'ŭng yūng-leûng weight-carrying capacity; a.f.: tsoì-ch'ŭng leûng

hōh ch'uen hōh 'river'; ch'uen 'stream, creek'; hōh-ch'uen 'river, stream, creek'

k'ai-kaàn small stream, creek, rivulet, a rapid; hōh ch'uen k'ai-kaàn 'small stream, small river'

shìp-shuî sham-tô fording depth

ts'uì-yeûk sìng ts'uì-yeûk 'fragile, delicate, weak, vulnerable'; ts'uì-yeûk sìng 'vulnerability, weakness'; a.f.: yeûk-tîm

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 109

ch'ît-kaî design, to design, to device

în-liû* fuel

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 110

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Lîn-lòk kwan-koon haî toî-leĭ chî-fai koon uēn-shīng hîp-tiû tai-k'ap, t'ūng-k'ap, ko-k'ap taan-waî* sz-lîng pô ni chúng chûng-iù t'ūng kaan-naān kè yâm-mô. Lîn-lòk kwan-koon peî foo-lŏ kè shī-haû, hóh-ĭ yaū k'uĭ tak-tó yat-kòh hó chìng-tòng kè chông-fòng p'oòn-tuên, chìn-shût kè yau-tîm t'ūng k'uèt-tîm kè hóh-k'aaù siu-sik, t'ūng chi-tò hó ts'ing-ch'óh hîp-tiû kung-tsòk fong-mîn kè tsing-mât ì nāng-kaù lîng-tò chî-fai koon kè kaì-waâk tak-tó shīng-kung. Shám-mân peî foo-lŏ kè lîn-lòk kwan-koon kè shī-haû, ying-koi paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ t'aī-mûk à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yat. Tai-k'ap, t'ūng-k'ap, ko-k'ap, t'ūng chi-oōn taan-waî* kè chî-fai shóh, pó-k'ap t'ūng t'ung-sùn ch'ìt-shi shóh-tsoî teî. Î. Ts'în-shaaù taî-k'òng sìn t'ūng chué taî-k'òng sìn shóh-tsoî teî. Saam. Kòk chúng fōng-uê ch'ìt-shi shóh-tsoî teî. Seì. Ts'în-shaaù t'ūng koon-ch'ak shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Ngĭ. P'aaù-ping chân-teî shóh-tsoî teî. Mûk-piu teî-k'ui. Lûk. Kwan-tuî* t'ūng pó-k'ap tsaâp-hôp teî-k'ui shóh-tsoî teî. Ts'at. Kung-kik ts'în kìn-laâp teî-k'ui shóh-tsoî teî. Paàt. Chìn-fōng t'ūng hung-fōng chân-teî shóh-tsoî teî. Shóh yûng ping-heì chúng-luî. Kaú. Shik-pît pô-ping sz p'in-chaì chi hâ kè kung-ping, t'ung-sùn, ching-ch'aàt taan-waî*.....

Major White: The liaison officer is the commander's agency for accomplishing the important and difficult task of coordination among the headquarters of lower, adjacent, and higher units. Liaison officers, when captured, may be expected to have a fairly sound appraisal of the situation, reliable information on tactical strengths and weaknesses, and a good knowledge of critical aspects of coordination which are essential for the success of his commander's plans. What subjects should be covered when questioning a captured liaison officer?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: 1. Location of lower, adjacent, higher, and supporting unit command posts and supply and communication installations. 2. Location of outpost line of resistance and main line of resistance. 3. Location of all types of defensive installations. 4. Location of outposts and observation posts. 5. Location of artillery positions. Target areas. 6. Location of assembly areas for troops and supplies. 7. Location of build-up areas preceding an attack. 8. Location of antitank and antiaircraft positions. Types of weapons employed. 9. Identification of engineer, signal, reconnaissance units organic to the infantry division.....

白少校：連絡官係代理指揮官完成協調呢官一優好夠審應
低級，同級，高級指揮官位+司令部軍倒一支援單所
種重要難候狀可作連絡目單務以斷息面劃軍官既題
被個好同艱時既工官既野同所，補給同通信設施抗線
個點清楚既正缺協調指揮傷亡，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
點清令到被包括級，指揮所，各種防禦設施所在地·
清令問該一，低級指揮所，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
令問該一，低級指揮所，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
問該一，低級指揮所，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
該一，低級指揮所，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
一，低級指揮所，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
位+既在地·二，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
既在地·二，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
在地·二，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
地·二，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
·二，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
二，前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
前哨抵抗線同主抵抗
哨抵抗線同主抵抗
抵抗線同主抵抗
抗線同主抵抗
線同主抵抗
同主抵抗
主抵抗
抵抗
抗
所在地·五，砲兵
在地·五，砲兵
地·五，砲兵
·五，砲兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
在地·五，砲兵
地·五，砲兵
·五，砲兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
·五，砲兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
砲兵
兵
兵
在地·五，砲兵
地·五，砲兵
·五，砲兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
·五，砲兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
砲兵
兵
兵
地·五，砲兵
·五，砲兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
·五，砲兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
砲兵
兵
兵
·五，砲兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
砲兵
兵
兵
五，砲兵
砲兵
兵
砲兵
兵
兵
砲兵
兵
兵
兵
兵
所在地·四，前哨所在地·六，軍隊+
在地·四，前哨所在地·六，軍隊+
地·四，前哨所在地·六，軍隊+
·四，前哨所在地·六，軍隊+
四，前哨所在地·六，軍隊+
前哨所在地·六，軍隊+
哨所在地·六，軍隊+
所在地·六，軍隊+
在地·六，軍隊+
地·六，軍隊+
·六，軍隊+
六，軍隊+
軍隊+
隊+
陣地補給集合地區所在地·七，攻擊
地補給集合地區所在地·七，攻擊
補給集合地區所在地·七，攻擊
給集合地區所在地·七，攻擊
集合地區所在地·七，攻擊
合地區所在地·七，攻擊
地區所在地·七，攻擊
區所在地·七，攻擊
所在地·七，攻擊
在地·七，攻擊
地·七，攻擊
·七，攻擊
七，攻擊
攻擊
擊
同前防陣識別步兵師編制之下既工兵，
前防陣識別步兵師編制之下既工兵，
防陣識別步兵師編制之下既工兵，
陣識別步兵師編制之下既工兵，
識別步兵師編制之下既工兵，
別步兵師編制之下既工兵，
步兵師編制之下既工兵，
兵師編制之下既工兵，
師編制之下既工兵，
編制之下既工兵，
制之下既工兵，
之下既工兵，
下既工兵，
既工兵，
工兵，
兵，
九，通信，偵察單位+……
通信，偵察單位+……
信，偵察單位+……
，偵察單位+……
偵察單位+……
察單位+……
單位+……
位+……
+……
……

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 110

READING MATERIAL

負為部工料*責，務令部，可斷調資*官，任司官判協報*員，其位*單問連狀況三情種係。

連絡軍官對指揮官負責，其單位*連絡官

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 110

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What are the locations of the command posts of your lower, adjacent, higher and supporting units?

2. What are the locations of your outpost line of resistance and main line of resistance?

3. What are the locations of your outpost and observation posts?

4. What are the locations of your artillery target areas?

5. What are the locations of your assembly areas for troops and supplies?

6. What is the location of your build-up area preceding an attack?

7. What are the locations of your antitank and antiaircraft positions?

8. What is the identification of your engineer unit organic to the infantry division?

9. What is the identification of your signal unit organic to the infantry division?

10. What is the identification of your reconnaissance unit organic to the infantry division?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 110

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lîn-lòk kwan-koon liaison officer

toî-leĭ acting; a.f.: toî

t'ūng-k'ap taan-waî* adjacent unit

chìng-tòng correct, legitimate, right, proper, appropriate

hôh-k'aaù siu-sik reliable news, reliable information, dependable news

ching-mât careful, thorough, comprehensive

ts'în-shaaù taî-k'òng sìn outpost line of resistance, outpost line; a.f.: ts'în-shaaù sìn

mûk-piu teî-k'ui target area; a.f.: mûk-piu k'ui

tsaâp-hôp teî-k'ui assembly area

kìn-laâp teî-k'ui build-up area

pô-ping sz infantry division

ching-ch'aàt taan-waî* reconnaissance unit

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 111

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: ..... Hŏh Chung-Kaaù, ts'îng neĭ kaì-tsûk kóng-lôk-huì la.

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: .....Hó hó. Ngŏh kóng tò pin shuè à? À! ..... Shâp. Taan-waî* chî-fai koon t'ūng ts'aam-maū kè sìng-mīng, ni chúng yān-uēn kè leĭ-lîk, waâk-ché ooĭ yîng-heúng chìn-taù kè chìn-shût t'ūng haaû-lîk. Shâp-yat. Tsuî-shût taan-waî* t'ung-sùn mŏng. Shâp-î. Yĕ-chìn mîng-lîng kè noî-yūng, uē kung-kik pô-tuî* kè tsó-hôp, kung-kik shóh-tsoî teî, mooĭ kòh taan-waî* kè yâm-mô, mûk-tik, kung-kik, fōng-uê, ch'ìt-t'uì kè kaì-waâk, taan-waî* oô-seung t'ung-sùn t'ūng hîp-tiû kaì-waâk. Shâp-saam. Wân-hôp chìn-taù t'uēn waâk tâk-hîn pô-tuî* kè p'in-chaì t'ūng yâm-mô. Shâp-seì. Kwan-t'uēn t'ūng kwan kè tsó-hôp. Shâp-nğ. Wân-yûng kwan t'ūng sz kè ching-ch'aât taan-waî* kè kaì-waâk. Shâp-lûk. Kaau-t'ung t'ūng pó-k'ap lô-sìn k'âp chông-t'aaì. Shâp-ts'at. Teî-maaû kè tâk-sìng, uē îm-paì t'ūng yán-paì kè teî-k'ui, tô-lô, uēn-yĕ t'în-teî, waì-leì siú shuê, shuê-mûk, k'au-k'uĭ, hŏh ch'uen k'ai kaàn kè kaau-t'ung nāng-lîk. Shâp-paàt. Sz kè t'uēn, yîng, lîn kè p'in-p'ooì. Shâp-kaú. Uê-peî taan-waî* kè shik-pît t'ūng p'in-p'ooì. Î-shâp. San-shik mŏ-heì kè leî-yûng. Î-shâp-yat. Kòk chúng pó-k'ap kè ts'îng-yîng. Î-shâp-î. p'îng-mān yān-haú kè t'aaì-tô. Î-shâp-saam. Yān-uēn suén-shat.

Major White: .....Colonel, please continue.

Lt. Colonel Höh: .....Where was I? Oh, yes! .....10. Names of unit commanders and staff officers; background information concerning such personnel which might affect combat tactics and efficiency. 11. Description of communications network of the unit. 12. Contents of field orders, such as composition of attacking forces, location attack, missions of individual units, objectives, plans of attack, defense or withdrawal, plans for communication and coordination among units. 13. Organization and mission of combat teams or task forces. 14. Composition of corps and armies. 15. Plans for employment of division and corps reconnaissance units. 16. Routes of communication and supply and condition thereof. 17. Characteristics of the terrain, such as areas of cover and concealment, trafficability of roads, fields, hedges, trees, ditches and streams. 18. Disposition of regiments, battalions, and companies of the division. 19. Identification and disposition of reserve units. 20. Employment of new weapons. 21. Status of supplies of all types. 22. Attitude of the civilian population. 23. Casualties.

白少校：……呢門通如，通團四，同通貌，樹力十十，補態
何中校：……啦！……呼名響單容在攻互戰．用六，地樹通配．各口
落？姓影述內所，位合務運十七既小交編配一，人
講呀既會叙既擊的單混任五，十蔽籬既既編十民．
績處謀者一，令攻目，三，同十劃．隱圍澗連同二平失
繼邊參或十命，劃十制．計態同，溪，別．二，損
你到同，戰合務計．編合既狀蔽地川營識用十員
請講官歷力野組任既劃既組位及掩田河，既利二人
校，我揮履効二，既既退計隊既單線如野，團位既．三，
中好位員術．部單，協遣同偵給性，溝師備武情二
何好單人戰網擊個禦同特團既補特路，八，預式既．
十，種既信攻每防信或軍師同既道木十九，新給度

各述上述各人二·攻，通部·六·特地，
種十，擊相遣合十之田交預利用·
此·合攻互特組·形野之九·態
名·敘述組，之或之劃地原澗十單
姓之的位+圍軍計七·，溪·
之網之隊+目單鬥與之十路川配
謀部擊務位+與戰團位+·道河編
參通攻任單混四察狀區渠，連
官單，如之，三·十偵其地溝，連
軍官與位+通，位+劃十·之及蔽，營，
絡列各點：參謀之姓名·敘述組，之或之劃地原澗十單
連下揮一·容單計·務師線隱木，
人括指十內個之劃任與路與樹圍
敵包位+·之每退計與軍給蔽，八·
問尚單歷令，撤調制用補掩樹十識別與編配·二十·新式武器之利用·
審，十·履命點、協編運與如小·外
點、之戰地禦與之五·通，籬力·
員野擊防信隊+十交性圍能單位+之
二十一·各種補給之情形·二十二·平民之態
度·二十三·人員損失·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 111

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the military background of your company commander?
2. What is the composition of your attacking forces?
3. What is the mission of your unit?
4. What is the plan of attack in your unit?
5. What is the plan for communication among your units?
6. What is the organization of your combat team?
7. What is the mission of your task force?
8. What are the characteristics of the terrain in your areas of cover and concealment?
9. What is the trafficability of your roads?
10. What is the attitude of the civilian population in your area?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 111

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

yĕ-chìn mîng-lîng field order

kung-kik pô-tuî* attacking force

tsó-hôp composition

wân-hôp to combine, to mix, to mingle, combination

wân-hôp chìn-taù t'uēn combat team

tâk-hîn pô-tuî* task force

yán-paì concealment, to conceal

uēn-yĕ wilderness, field

waì-leì fence, hedge

siú shuê small tree

shuê-mûk tree

k'au-k'uì ditch, a drain; a.f.: <u>k'uì</u> <u>k'au</u>

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 112

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: P'aaù-ping lîn-lòk kwan-koon t'ūng pô-ping lîn-lòk kwan-koon kè yâm-mô taaî-chì yat-yeûng. Shóh-ǐ taaî pô-fân shám-mân pô-ping lîn-lòk kwan-koon kè mân-t'aî t'aî-mûk yîk-to shik-hôp shám-mân p'aaù-ping lîn-lòk kwan-koon, haî mà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Mŏ ts'òh là. Taân-haî yan-waî p'aaù-ping lîn-lòk kwan-koon king-kwòh p'aaù-ping sẑ-mô kè tâk-pît fàn-lîn, t'ūng-shì heùng p'aaù-ping sz-lîng pô foô-chaàk, shóh-ǐ sui-iù yaŭ ni ti pó-ch'ung mân-t'aî t'aî-mûk: Yat. Sz, yîng, lîn, kè p'aaù-ping sz-lîng pô shóh-tsoî teî. Î. P'aaù-ping heì kè tâk-sìng. Saam. Teî-fong kîng-kaaì t'ūng fōng-hung kè chìn-fōng t'ūng hung-fōng mŏ-heì shóh-tsoî teî. Seì. Shik-pît chi-oōn k'wan t'ūng kwan-t'uēn kè p'aaù-ping taan-waî*. Ngˇ. Shê-kik hùng-chaì fong-faàt. Lûk. Mooĭ kòh p'aaù-ping chân-teî taân-yeûk shò-leûng, taân-yeûk chúng-luî. Ts'at. Kòk chúng taân-yeûk fan-p'ooì kè tâk-pît mîng-lîng. Paàt. Ts'aam-maū p'in-tsó. Kaú. Ts'în-tsùn koon-ch'ak shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp. P'aaù-ping shê-kik chî-fai t'ung-sùn mŏng kè sìng-chat. Shâp-yat. Faán p'aaù-ping chìn taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì, shóh-tsoî teî, chong-peî, t'ūng leî-yûng fong-faàt. Shâp-î. Hung-chung koon-ch'ak taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì, shóh-tsoî teî, chong-peî, yâm-mô. Shâp-saam. Taan-waî* teî-kîng sìn. Shâp-seì. Tsing-shan. Shâp-ngˇ. Yān-uēn suén-shat.

Major White: The artillery liaison officer has generally the same mission as the infantry liaison officer. Are most of the topics listed for the infantry liaison officer also applicable to the artillery liaison officer?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Yes, indeed. However, because the artillery liaison officer has been specially trained in artillery matters and is responsible to an artillery headquarters, it is necessary to have these additional topics for questioning: 1. Battery, battalion, and division artillery headquarter's locations. 2. Characteristics of artillery weapons. 3. Location of antitank and antiaircraft weapons for local security and air defense. 4. Identification of supporting corps and army artillery units. 5. Methods of fire control. 6. Amount of ammunition per battery positions; types of ammunitions. 7. Specific instructions as to allotment of various types of ammunition. 8. Staff organization. 9. Location of forward observation posts. 10. Nature of artillery fire direction communications net. 11. Organization, location, equipment and method of employing counterbattery fire units. 12. Organization, location, equipment, and missions of aerial observation units. 13. Unit boundaries. 14. Morale. 15. Casualties.

白少校：既問適官時有，兵既別，軍官審都？軍同要營砲空識五，地彈組射砲備，位+．十
　　官軍份亦嗎絡，需，二，防四，陣種編兵反裝單務．十
　　絡部目係連練以師．同．位+．各謀砲一，測任神．
　　連大題兵訓所一，地戒地單砲七，參十，十地觀，精
　　兵以題官砲別，在警在兵每類．地質所空裝十
　　步所問軍為特責目：所方所砲六，種令在性，二，．
　　同．既絡因既員題部地器既．藥命所既制十地線．
　　官樣官連係務部題令三，武團法彈別所網編．在境．
　　軍一軍兵但事令問司．防軍方，特測信既法所地失．
　　絡致絡砲．兵司充兵性空同制量既觀通位+方，位+損
　　連大連問啦砲兵補砲特同軍控數配進揮單用制單員
　　兵務兵審錯過砲啲既防援擊藥分前指戰利編三，人
　　砲任步合有經向呪連器戰支射彈藥九，擊兵同既十五，

何中校：

致絡砲兵連問砲兵審過官兵時，須經絡連絡官。

大連問砲兵審過官兵時，須經絡連絡官。

務兵審過官兵時，須經絡連絡官。

任砲兵審過官兵時，須經絡連絡官。

故之但；官練點絡同訓各連相別列兵致特下步火之括與亦務包官題事須絡問兵，連問砲時兵審過官砲，經絡連相官兵

一、兵空砲砲彈進之每種前網在單單位之地單位之地

二、防圍六、各九、信所測三、

師器防兵兵藥觀性，備制線

，武單陣分測質裝編境

營特器位地配所

，性所之之所十

連，在識彈特在

三、在地別藥別地

砲地，數命，

之砲地，精神

砲用地

反利在四、

與所在

，十

，

十

戰軍、七、通

地之援法，組揮

在空支方類編指

所防與制種謀擊

部與軍控藥參射

令戒援擊彈八兵

司警支射，砲戰

兵方四、五、量令十、砲戰法裝備，十五、人

單、備

位十，任

二、空務

員損

中、十

失、

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 112

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the location of your battery headquarters?
2. What is the location of your antitank weapons for local security?
3. What is the location of your antiaircraft weapons for air defense?
4. What is the identification of your supporting corps?
5. What is the method of fire control being employed by your unit?
6. What is the amount of ammunition per battery position?
7. Where is your forward observation post located?
8. What is the nature of your artillery fire direction communications net?
9. What is the organization and equipment of your counter-battery fire unit?
10. What is the mission of your aerial observation unit?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 112

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

p'aaù-ping lîn-lòk kwan-koon artillery liaison officer; a.f.: p'aaù-ping lîn-lòk koon

pô-ping lîn-lòk kwan-koon infantry liaison officer; a.f.: pô-ping lîn-lòk koon

kîng-kaaì security; a.f.: pó-mât; teî-fong kîng-kaaì 'local security'

chi-oōn kwan supporting corps

chi-oōn kwan-t'uēn supporting army

hùng-chaì to control, to regulate, to handle

shê-kik hùng-chaì fire control

tâk-pît mîng-lîng special instruction, specific instruction, special order

ts'aam-maū p'in-tsó staff organization

ts'în-tsùn koon-ch'ak shóh forward observation post

shê-kik chî-fai t'ung-sùn mŏng fire direction net, fire direction communications net

faán p'aaù-ping chìn counterbattery fire, counterbattery

hung-chung koon-ch'ak aerial observation

teî-kîng sìn boundary; a.f.: fan-kaaì sìn, fan-kaaì, king-kaaì

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 113

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: P'aaù-ping ts'în-tsùn koon-ch'ak uēn waâk-ché peî-kaaù yâm-hŏh p'aaù-ping yān-uēn yūng-î peî-foo. K'uĭ yaū-k'eĭ-shî yaŭ kà-chîk, yan-waî k'uĭ p'ó-t'ung yaŭ-kwaan-ue p'aaù-ping t'ūng pô-ping sẑ-mô kè tâk-pît tsz-liû*.....

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Shóh-ĭ shám-mân koon ying-koi tuì ni ti shám-mân t'aĭ-mûk tâk-pît ka-ĭ chuè-ì: Yat. Koon-ch'ak ping haî meî peî foo chi ts'în koon-ch'ak t'ūng chî-fai shê-kik kè p'aaù-ping yīng waâk p'aaù-ping lîn kè shóh-tsoî teî, p'in-chaì, p'aaù kè shò-mûk. Î. Pô-ping ts'în-sìn, ts'în-shaaù, koon-ch'ak shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Saam. Uê-peî koon-ch'ak shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Seì. Uê-peî p'aaù-ping chân-teî shóh-tsoî teî t'ūng taaî-yeùk* chìm-lĭng shî-kaan. Nğ. P'aaù kè tâk-sìng, paau-k'oòt haú-kìng, shê-ch'ĭng, p'aau-shê faàt. Lûk. Kòk chúng chìn-taù kaai-tuên kè shî-haû, kòk chúng shê-kik kè mûk-piu. Ts'at. Pô-ping t'ūng p'aaù-ping t'ung-sùn mŏng kè sìng-chat. Paàt. Pô-ping taan-waî* ts'îng-k'aū p'aaù-ping shê-kik kè chúng-luî* t'ūng shóh-tsoî teî. Kaú. Shik-pît kwan waâk k'eĭ-t'a chi-oŏn p'aaù-ping taan-waî*. Shâp. Tîk-kwan taan-waî* kè kung-kik, fŏng-uê, waâk ch'ìt-t'uì kaì-waâk. Shâp-yat. Pô-ping kei-tûng t'ūng p'aaù-ping shê-kik kè hîp-tiû paân-faàt. Shâp-î, chìn-foo shóh shûk kè taan-waî* t'ūng

chi-oōn taan-waî* kè yâm-mô t'ūng mûk-tik. Shâp-saam. Ts'în-tsùn lô-sìn k'âp chông-t'aaì, kaan-hîm teî-maaû t'ūng tâk-sìng.....

Major White: The artillery forward observer is perhaps more likely to be captured than any other artilleryman. He is especially valuable because he usually possesses specific information concerning both artillery and infantry matters.....

Lt. Colonel Höh: Therefore interrogators should give particular attention to these topics for interrogation: 1. Location, organization, number of guns of the battery or battalion whose fire the observer was observing and directing prior to capture. 2. Location of infantry front lines, outposts, and observation posts. 3. Location of alternate observation posts. 4. Location and probable time of occupation of alternate gun positions. 5. Characteristics of guns including caliber, range, and how propelled. 6. Targets for various types of fire, during various combat phases. 7. Nature of infantry-artillery communication net. 8. Type and location of artillery fire requested by infantry units. 9. Identification of corps or other supporting artillery units. 10. Plan of attack, defense, or withdrawal of enemy units. 11. Methods of coordinating infantry maneuver with artillery fire. 12. Missions and objectives of prisoner's own and supported units. 13. Routes of approach and their condition. Characteristics of critical terrain.....

白少校：砲價步兵在單或兵屬的貌
何有同兵砲，觀測地·
任是砲所在約佔經，
較其砲比尤於……

何中校：目被營嘅測地·
題未兵砲，觀測
問嗦砲所大括口徑，
審兵嘅制，哨所同包戰標·類援，動戰務艱
嘅測擊編前測地在性，種目質種支擊機二任，
嘅射，前觀在特性，各嘅性嘅他攻兵十嘅態，
指在地線，備所特六擊嘅擊其嘅步·位狀
意同所兵前預地·三陣砲嘅·射網射或位一法單及
該所步，預地兵砲法種信兵軍單十辦援線
應注測嘅，觀射各通砲別軍·調支路
官特嘅問以觀連二在備間·五砲，候砲請九十計嘅位前性
注測嘅加前兵·地，兵求識敵劃協同進……
意：一擇地，觀射編前測地在性，種目質種支擊機二任，
指在地線，備所特六擊嘅擊其嘅步·位狀
在前預地·三陣砲嘅·射網射或位一法單及
兵前線，備觀在性，各嘅性嘅他攻兵十嘅態
砲嘅制，哨所同包戰標·類援，動戰務艱
審兵嘅，測地在大括口徑，
問題未兵砲，觀測地·
目被營嘅測擊編前測地在性，種目質種支擊機二任，
嘅射，前觀在特性，各嘅性嘅他攻兵十嘅態

READING MATERIAL

易問：擊砲所兵特門信之
員審．射與所砲之戰通擊位之計
人值．揮，測備砲各兵射單位之方的．
兵列各點指制觀預五．砲兵退調目特性．
砲價下與編與四．間法兵之撤協與之
何之括包大任地哨地時射步求支
大任地，前所在領拋七．請他防兵位險要
觀情審問報測兵亦題目應包括下
進對，時，員人種此
前其時員人種此
兵修，員人種此
砲被修，員人種此
於被種此

一．觀測或二．預地口各．點、敵步單路
之砲數地．三．所在括，質地十．敵軍兵位線
之在陣性，段之類別．十戰前
網種識劃十二．
十三．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 113

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. How many guns were there in the battery whose fire you observed and directed before you were captured?
2. What is the location of your infantry front line?
3. What is the location of your alternate observation post?
4. What is the probable time of your occupation of the alternate gun position?
5. What is the caliber and range of your guns?
6. What is the type of artillery fire requested by your infantry unit?
7. What is the plan of withdrawal of your unit?
8. What is your method of coordinating your infantry maneuver with artillery fire?
9. What is the condition of your route of approach?
10. What are the characteristics of the critical terrain in your area?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 113

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ka-ĭ to, to add to, to increase, besides, in addition to

chî-fai shê-kik fire direction, to direct fire; a.f.: shê-kik chî-fai

uê-peî koon-ch'ak shóh alternate observation post

uê-peî p'aaù-ping chân-teî alternate gun position

shê-ch'ing range, gun reach

p'aau-shê faàt p'aau 'to cast, to throw, to throw away, to throw down'; p'aau-shê faàt 'propelling, to propel'; a.f.: p'aau-shê

chìn-taù kaai-tuên combat phase

pô-ping t'ūng p'aaù-ping t'ung-sùn mŏng infantry-artillery communication net

ts'îng-k'aū to request, to petition, to claim, to demand

p'aaù-ping shê-kik artillery fire

tîk-kwan taan-waî tîk-kwan 'enemy, enemy force'; tîk-kwan taan-waî* 'enemy unit'

pô-ping kei-tûng infantry maneuver

kaan-hîm kaan 'difficult, hard, distressing'; hîm 'dangerous, danger'; kaan-hîm 'difficult and dangerous'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 114

ORAL MATERIAL

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: .....Shâp-seì. Koon-ch'ak t'ūng chî-fai p'aaù-ping shê-kik kè paân-faàt. Shâp-ngˇ. Faán p'aaù-ping chìn paân-faàt, t'ūng pó-oô p'aaù-ping chân-teî fōng-uê faán p'aaù-ping chìn paân-faàt. Shâp-lûk. Ká-ngaî p'aaù-ping chân-teî kè yûng-t'ŏ t'ūng shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp-ts'at. Faàt-shê kòk mûk-piu kè p'aaù-ping taân-yeûk chúng-luî, t'ūng yâm-mô. Shâp-paàt. P'aaù-ping t'ūng pô-ping chî-fai shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp-kaú. Ngŏh-kwan p'aaù-ping fóh-lîk kè haaû-lîk.....

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chìn-p'aaù tuî* yān-uēn ne?

H: Chìn-p'aa-u tuî* yān-uēn foô-chaàk fòng-chì p'aaù-ping heì haî shê-kik chân-teî t'ūng faàt-shê p'aaù-ping heì. Yan-waî k'uĭ-teî p'ó-t'ung haî k'uĭ-leî ts'în-sìn seung-tong uĕn-ch'ing tsòk-îp, k'uĭ-teî m̄-yūng-î peî foo. Taân-haî uē-kwóh peî foo, k'uĭ-teî waâk-ché yaŭ yat-chúng tâk-pît sìng-chat kè tsz-liû*, chîk-tak ko k'ap chî-fai shám-mân în-kaù. Tsoî chìn-shût chî-fai kaai-k'ap sheûng, ni ti t'aî-mûk ying-koi t'ūng chìn-p'aaù tuî* yān-uēn t'ó-lûn: Yat. Fōng-uê ngŏh-kwan p'aaù-ping fóh-lîk paân-faàt. Î. Pó-oô p'aaù-ping heì fōng-uê faán p'aaù-ping chìn. Saam. Ngŏh-kwan faán p'aaù-ping chìn kè haaû-lîk. Seì. P'aaù-ping lîn taân-yeûk tui-tsik shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Nˇ. Teî-fong kîng-kaaì mŏ-heì kè p'in-p'ooì. Lûk. Shê-kik chî-

fai t'ūng yeŭng-tô. Ts'at. Kwaan-ue taân-yeûk yûng-t'ō kè mîng-lîng. Paàt. P'aaù-ping yīng t'ūng p'aaù-ping lîn chî-fai koon kè sìng-mîng.

Lt. Colonel Hōh: .....14. Method of observing and directing artillery fire. 15. Methods of counterbattery fire, methods of protecting artillery positions from counterbattery fire. 16. Use and location of dummy positions. 17. Types of artillery ammunition utilized for firing at various targets and missions. 18. Location of artillery and infantry command posts. 19. Effect of our artillery fire .....

Major White: Sir, what about firing battery personnel?

H: Firing battery personnel are responsible for placing guns into firing positions and firing them. Since they normally operate at considerable distances from the front lines, they are not often liable to capture. When captured, however, they may possess information of a specialized nature, which is useful or worthwhile for interrogation exploitation at higher levels of command. At tactical command levels, these topics should be discussed with firing battalion personnel: 1. Measures of defense against our artillery fire. 2. Counterbattery protection for artillery pieces. 3. Effect of our counterbattery fire. 4. Location of battery ammunition dumps. 5. Disposition of local security weapons. 6. Direction and elevation of fire. 7. Instructions concerning use of ammunition. 8. Names of battery and battalion commanders.

何中校：……十四，觀測同指揮兵射擊既同法，所兵兵
辦法·十五，地砲兵辦法戰辦同砲砲，我
保護砲兵陣砲防兵用途既，辦通
十六，假偽砲發射務·十標八十九，陣
在地·十七，同所既目十·地……
彈同種類，揮力既各·
軍戰砲兵指火人員呢！
白少校：戰砲隊*人員發射前被有級級員法·連戒度砲八，
何：戰砲隊*地同距容或得揮隊*力兵砲方同·名
條唔地值指砲火砲四，地揮令姓·

十、上述十六目與觀測兵法：一、防空兵器與射擊距離：二、對戰車砲兵陣地與觀測兵法：三、指揮護砲兵陣地之兵砲指揮官與砲兵連之戰鬥法：四、假標兵砲兵陣地與敵砲兵連之戰鬥法：五、審問敵人須擊斃之用途類別：六、各砲火效力：七、發射砲兵前進觀測點：八、砲兵陣地彈藥之種類：九、我方砲兵前進觀測點：十、砲兵陣地與任務：十一、反砲兵戰鬥法：十二、反砲兵戰鬥法：十三、積射法：十四、觀測與射擊法：十五、反砲兵戰鬥法：十六、目標之兵砲兵陣地與距離：一、防空兵器與射擊距離：二、對戰車砲兵陣地與距離：三、指揮護砲兵陣地與距離：四、武器與射擊距離：五、假標兵砲兵陣地與距離：六、審問敵人須擊斃之用途類別

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 114

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is your method of observing and directing artillery fire?
2. What is your method of protecting your artillery position from our counterbattery fire?
3. Where is your dummy gun position located?
4. What is the effect of our artillery fire?
5. What is the effect of our counterbattery fire?
6. Where is your battery ammunition dump located?
7. What is the disposition of your local security weapons?
8. What is your elevation of fire?
9. What are the instructions concerning the use of your ammunition?
10. What is your battalion commander's name?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 114

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kǎ dummy, false, not true, counterfeit, pretend, unreal, to borrow, supposing

ngaî false, simulated, counterfeit, puppet; kǎ-ngaî 'false, dummy, not true, unreal'

faàt-shê mûk-piu to fire target

haaû-lîk effect, effectiveness; a.f.: haaû-kwóh, haaû

chìn-p'aaù tuî* yān-uēn firing battery personnel

fòng-chì to place, to arrange, to display; a.f.: fòng, chì

shê-kik chân-teî firing position

k'uǐ-leî distance, distant from; ni shuè k'uǐ-leî kóh shuè hó uěn 'here is far from there'; synonym: k'uǐ

uěn-ch'ing long distance, long range, remote, distant, far; synonym: uěn

chìn-shût chî-fai kaai-k'ap tactical command level

ngǒh-kwan our force, our side, our, we; a.f.: ngǒh-fong, ngǒh

yeŭng-tô yeŭng 'to look up to, to look up, to face forward'; yeŭng-tô 'elevation (of fire)'; a.f.: ko-tai-kòk, piu-ko

shê-kik yeŭng-tô elevation of fire

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 115

ORAL MATERIAL

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Yaŭ-uē pô-ping yat-yeûng, chong-kaàp leî-yûng fóh-lîk t'ūng kei-tûng lîk uēn-shīng k'uĭ kè yâm-mô. Shóh-ĭ heùng foo-wôk foô-shûk chong-kaàp taan-waî* kè yān-uēn lóh ts'ĭng-pò tsz-liû* t'ūng heùng pô-ping chìn-foo lóh ts'ĭng-pò tsz-liû* mŏ fan-pît. Ngŏh-teî haî pô-ping t'ūng chìn-ch'e taan-waî* yat laān ĭ-king t'ó-lûn-kwòh chìn-ch'e taan-waî* kòk tîm. Taân-haî mooĭ-fūng tsòk chìn-shût sheûng kè shám-mân, iù keì-tak wán-ch'ut tîk-yān kè chong-kaàp haî m̄-haî foô-kân teî-fong, kaù-kîng haî pin shuè, pô-tuî* ping-lîk keî taaî. Kwaan-ue tîk-yān chong-kaàp kè ts'ĭng-pò tsz-liû* tuì ngŏh-kwan chî-fai koon hâ k'uèt-sam yaŭ kîk taaî kè kà-chîk, ni ti tsz-liû* chì hó haî yaū peî foo kè tîk-yān chong-kaàp taan-waî* yān-uēn lóh-tak. shám-mân ni chúng yān-uēn ying-koi paau-k'oòt ĭ-hâ kè ts'ĭng-pò: Yat. Taan-waî* kè shik-pît t'ūng chìn-ch'e taan-waì* kè chué-iù yâm-mô-chi-oōn pô-ping yik-waâk haî tûk-laâp taan-tsẑ haāng-tûng. Î. Peî chi-oōn kè pô-ping taan-waî* t'ūng ping-lîk. Saam. Shóh yûng chìn-ch'e chúng-luî t'ūng tâk-sìng. Seì. Kei-haaî sheûng kè yeûk-tîm; p'aaù-t'aàp fong-heùng chuèn-tûng kè maân-tô, chîn-mông kè kîm-ch'uk, t'ung-sùn ch'ìt-peî kè shat-lĭng. Nğ. Chìn-ch'e t'ūng pô-ping kè t'ung-sùn fong-faàt. Lûk. Yâm-mô t'ūng mûk-tik. Ts'at. Ts'ĭn-tsùn lô-sìn. Paàt. Uê-peî chong-kaàp taan-waî*.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 115

Kaú. Chìn-ch'e t'îng-ch'e ch'eūng t'ūng tsaâp-kìt teî-k'ui shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp. Chìn-ch'e pat-nāng t'ung-kwòh kè teî-maaû shóh-tsoî teî.....

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 115

Lt. Colonel Höh: Armor employs fire power and maneuver to accomplish its mission just as is the case with the infantry. Therefore the information available from captured personnel belonging to armored units will remain the same as information obtainable from infantry prisoners of war. Various points regarding tank units have already been discussed under the category of Infantry-Tank Units. However, it should be remembered that every tactical interrogation should attempt to establish whether enemy armor is in the near vicinity, where it is located, and how large a force it is. Information concerning enemy armor is of great value to our commanders in formulating their decisions, and is best obtained from captured personnel of enemy armored units. The following are topics which should be covered in the interrogation of such personnel: 1. Unit identifications and primary mission of tank units - support of infantry or independent. 2. Units of infantry being supported and in what strength. 3. Types of tanks employed and characteristics thereof. 4. Mechanical weaknesses; slowness of turret traverse, restriction of vision, failure of signal equipment. 5. Means of communication between tanks and infantry. 6. Missions and objectives. 7. Routes of approach. 8. Reserve armored units. 9. Lo-

cation of tank parks and assembly areas. 10. Location of impassable terrain features for tanks.....

何中校：同俾資分欄係搵究於揮資力向報有一但得方，關指啲單位括戰抑嘅種砲束，火以情料位，記地，軍呢甲該別步支戰點；嘅同檢步兵七，用所攞資單點要近大我，裝應識援被用弱望車目單所所九，利，員報車各，附幾對值，甲務人情戰位問喺力料價敵人位一，三，上，五，務裝地地貌……樣佢單戰步戰上甲部情極被問：要自兵四，嘅失，慢靈六，預集過一成甲兵喺過術裝，嘅有由審報主單同，動嘅法，八，同通兵完裝步地論戰嘅處甲心係得情嘅立位性轉備方線車不步力屬向我討作人邊裝決好攞嘅位獨單特向設訊路停車如動附同，經逢敵喺人下有機獲料別，已每出竟敵官料人以車或步類塔通嘅前戰十，

機應、在方點、與，各力時點、對之火員地料*問用人近資應利甲附報．隊*裝在情值．部問否種價甲審是此之裝．務．位*．大同，任甲大有相其裝之心兵成人力決步完敵兵下與以楚，官動問何指如

力清處揮下：

一．務，二．車向失與任支類動．的車地其被種轉靈目戰之

務援與之五．停形．

位*支步性度車前場

單為之特慢戰七．車

識援兵．與進與

別步單四．展步路集

與兵位*機望兵線．結

戰抑與械之通八．地區

車或兵上撿通．

單採力之束訊預．

位*取．弱，方備十．

三．點、通法裝戰

主要行用砲設六．

獨所，訊．甲車

員．動之塔備任務．戰方之

火地料*問．位*．通

用人近資應

利甲附報．

隊*裝在情值．

部問否種價

甲審是此之

裝．務．單小莫

位*．大

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 115

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the primary mission of your tank unit - support of infantry or independent?

2. What are the units of infantry being supported by your tank unit?

3. What types of tanks are being employed for the support of your infantry units?

4. What are the mechanical weaknesses of your tanks?

5. What is the means of communication between your tanks and the infantry?

6. What are your routes of approach?

7. What are your reserve armored units?

8. What is the location of your tank park?

9. What is the location of your tank assembly area?

10. What is the location of the impassable terrain features for your tanks?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 115

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

laān a column (in book, newspaper), category, railing, balustrade

tûk-laâp-haāng-tûng independent action, sole action, individual action without outside help and influence

taan-tsẑ haāng-tûng individual action without outside help and influence; a.f.: taan-tûk haāng-tûng

yeûk-tîm yeûk 'weak, unhealthy'; yeûk-tîm 'weak point, weakness'

kei-haaî sheûng yeûk-tîm mechanical weakness, mechanical weak point

p'aaû-t'aàp t'aàp 'tower, pagoda'; p'aaû-t'aàp 'turret'

fong-heùng direction (geography), tendency, trend, phase

chuèn-tûng to revolve, to turn around

fong-heùng chuèn-tûng traverse, change of direction; a.f.: tsóh-yaû chuèn-tûng, chuèn-tûng kòk

maân-tô slowness

chîn-mông mông 'to attentively look at from a distance, to hope, to expect'; chîn-mông 'vision, sight, prospect, prediction'

kîm-ch'uk restriction, limitation, a.f.: haân-chaì, faân-waî

chîn-mông kîm-ch'uk restriction of vision

t'ung-sùn ch'ìt-peî signal equipment

shat-lîng to lose function (mechanical), loss of function (mechanical)

uê-peî chong-kaàp taan-waî* reserve armored unit

chìn-ch'e t'îng-ch'e ch'eūng tank park

pat-nāng t'ung-kwòh impassable, no thoroughfare

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 116

ORAL MATERIAL

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: .....Shâp-yat. Chìn-ch'e sau-leĭ kei-teî t'ūng yaū-liû* tui-tsik shóh shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp-î. Pik-kik p'aaù, p'aaù-ping, chìn-ch'e hîp-tiû fong-faàt. Shâp-saam. T'in-heì yîng-heúng chìn-ch'e tsòk-chìn. Shâp-seì. Chong-kaàp ching-ch'aaṫ yâm-mô.

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Uē-kwóh chìn-foo haî yat-kòh ching-ch'aàt taan-waî* yān-uēn ne?

H: Yâm-hōh kè în-toî fà lûk-kwan ying yaŭ ch'eūng-k'eĭ kè ching-ch'aàt, koò-ts'ź sz-k'ap t'ūng kàng ko kè taan-waî* yaŭ ch'eūng-k'eĭ ching-ch'aàt taan-waî* kè p'in-p'ooì waâk p'ooì-shûk. Ni chúng taan-waî* kè yān-uēn taam-yâm ts'în-sìn yâm-mô kè shĭ-haû hó yūng-î peî foo. Yaū ni chúng yān-uēn shóh tak kè tsz-liû* yaŭ hó taaî kè kà-chîk. Shám-mân ni chúng yān-uēn paau-k'oòt ĭ-hâ keî kòh t'aĭ-mûk: Yat. Taan-waî* kè shik-pît, p'in-chaì, tsó-hôp, ping-lîk, wân-shue, ping-heì. Î. Ching-ch'aàt kaì-waâk: Hāng-kwan mîng-lîng, shĭ-kaàn piú, shóh yaŭ tsó-shīng taan-waî* kè tâk-pît yâm-mô, tsó-shīng taan-waî* kè oô-seung hîp-tiû t'ūng t'ung-sùn paân-faàt, taan-waî* sz-lîng pô t'ūng ko k'ap sz-lîng pô. Saam. Taan-waî* shóh yûng kè ts'în-tsùn lô-sìn. Seì. Shau-tò ko-k'ap sz-lîng pô mîng-lîng kè sìng-chat. Nğ. Pô-tuî* poón-tuî t'ūng tsang-oōn pô-tuî* kè shik-pît, tsó-hôp, p'in-chaì, ping-lîk, p'in-p'ooì. K'uĭ-teî shóh yûng kè

ts'în-tsùn lô-sìn. Lûk. Ching-ch'aàt taan-waî* t'ūng poón-tuî pô-tuî* kè chat.

Lt. Colonel Höh: .....11. Location of tank repair depots and POL dumps. 12. Methods of mortar, artillery, and tank coordination. 13. Effect of weather on tank operations. 14. Armored reconnaissance missions.

Capt. Cheung: What if the prisoner is a member of a reconnaissance unit?

H: Long range reconnaissance is essential in any modern army, and for this reason long range reconnaissance units are assigned or attached to divisional and higher units. Members of such units are liable to capture when on a forward mission. Information obtainable from such personnel is of great value. The following are some of the topics to be covered in the interrogation of such personnel: 1. Identification, organization, composition, strength, means of transportation, and weapons of the unit. 2. The reconnaissance plan: march order, time schedule, specific missions of all elements, and means of coordination and communication between the elements, the unit headquarters and higher headquarters. 3. Routes of approach used by the unit. 4. Nature of orders received from higher headquarters. 5. Identification, composition, organization, strength, and disposition of the main body of troops and reinforcements. Routes of approach to be used by them. 6. Quality of troops of the reconnaissance unit and of the main body.

何中校：……十一，戰車修理基地同油料堆積，
所所在地。十二，迫擊砲，砲兵，
戰車協調方法。十三，天氣影響戰
車作戰。十四，裝甲偵察任務。
張上尉：如果戰俘係一個偵察單位人員呢？
何：任何既故察既易有括編二，所單位所增兵線。
既現代師位員俘大下，察組既令既命部，六，
此單人被好以制偵有位司用部援力，
偵察單位人員，時，法三，高本編前隊既進既質，
長期單位既有長期偵察，
種單位既時候既資料包
別器表成單位司同，路
識兵間組，單級隊制進
既，時，法，三，高本編前隊既
位輸，務辦。到隊，既部
令任訊部收部令用隊
運，命別通令四，五，組所本
單期位既所呢種人員問
一，力軍特同司。地同
目兵行既調級線質別佢位
題：位協高路性識既配。單
合劃單相同進既
個，
組計成互部前令隊編偵
幾

尚料協裝，油車四·外與戰十點地，各基兵戰述理砲作上修車除車砲戰時，戰擊響員十一·迫影人：十二·氣務甲點·十三·天任裝各置·十偵問列位·之審下所法位之包括積方單甲調甲

長位人編計之方所命別，前·責單種，察位訊位部識之用素貢之此別，偵單通單令之質位高問識二·成與三·司隊所之單更審之察與·位位偵位單一·有單單兵所相令之增·隊本應級察：輸，互司到與配部軍師偵點、運間位高所本，位單與四·隊力，單陸故期各，時化·長下力，成部·部兵察代作有以兵令組令線五·偵現工屬括，命，司路·制六·何之配包合軍務位進質·編任察或應組行任單前性，線·偵配，，別，之之合路期編員，，制劃特法用令組進

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 116

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What is the location of your tank repair depot and POL dump?
2. What is your method of mortar, artillery and tank coordination?
3. What was the effect of weather on your tank operation?
4. What is your armored reconnaissance mission?
5. What are the contents of the march order you received?
6. What is the time schedule of your reconnaissance?
7. What is the means of coordination between your elements?
8. What is the means of communication between your unit headquarters and higher headquarters?
9. What is the strength and disposition of your main body?
10. What is the quality of your main body?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 116

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chìn-ch'e sau-leĭ kei-teî sau-leĭ kei-teî 'repair depot'; chìn-ch'e sau-leĭ kei-teî 'tank repair depot'

yaū-liû* POL (petroleum and its products)

chìn-ch'e tsòk-chìn tank operation

în-toî fà în-toî 'modern, present generation'; în-toî fà 'modernized, modern'

ch'eūng-k'eĭ ching-ch'aàt long range reconnaissance

ts'în-sìn yâm-mô forward mission; a.f.: ts'în-fong yâm-mô, ts'în-tsùn yâm-mô

ching-ch'aàt kaì-waâk reconnaissance plan

haāng-kwan mîng-lîng haāng-kwan 'to march, march'; haāng-kwan mîng-lîng 'march order'

shî-kaan piú piú 'chart, form'; shî-kaan piú 'schedule, time schedule'; a.f.: shî-kaàn piú

tsó-shîng taan-waî* element

oô-seung hîp-tiû to coordinate with each other

taan-waî* sz-lîng pô unit headquarters

poón-tuî main body; a.f.: chué-lîk, chué-lîk pô-tuî*

sò-chat quality; a.f.: chat

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 117

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Kan-kuì Kwòk-Tsaì Kung-Faàt, ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ shám-mân waî-shang taan-waî* kè yān-uēn mà, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî Yât-Noî-Ngă Ooî-Ĭ t'iū-kîn* chi hâ, sui-în peî foo kè tîk-yān waî-shang taan-waî* kè yān-uēn haî shaû pó-oô kè yān-uēn, taân-haî k'uĭ-teî i-în hóh-ĭ peî shám-mân.

C: Ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* shám-mân ni chúng yān-uēn à?

H: Ĭ-hâ haî shám-mân kè t'aî-mûk: Yat. Maŭ kòh shī-k'eî chi noî waâk maŭ kòh chìn-yîk kè yān-uēn suén-shat shò-mûk. Î. Lîng-tò yān-uēn suén-shat tsuì toh kè ping-heì. Saam. Sheung-mōng kè chué-iù sóh-yeûk yān-uēn. Seì. Tîk-yān taan-waî* kè kîn-hong t'ūng waān-kîng waî-shang kè chông-fòng. Ngĕ. Sheung-mōng kè peî-lût. Lûk. Chî-fai koon kè chìn-shût t'ūng yān-uēn suén-shat shò-mûk kè kwaan-haî. Ts'at. Haû-sùng fong-faàt kè shik-ì t'ūng haaû-lîk. Paàt. Tîk-yān tsuì p'à kè ping-heì. Kaú. Kaù-kap chaâm t'ūng i-uên* shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp. Sz, t'uēn, ying kè kaù-kap chaâm t'ūng waî-shang taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì. Shâp-yat. Waî-shang pó-k'ap pán ts'ing-ying. Pó-k'ap pán kè chúng-luî. Shâp-î. San faàt-în kè yeûk-pán kè leî-yûng t'ūng tâk-sing. Shâp-saam. Tsoî tîk-yān shaú chung kè ngŏh-kwan sheung-ping, pêng-ché, seî-ché kè chue-uēn. Shâp-seì. Tîk-yān waî-shang yān-uēn kè keî-shût. Shâp-ngĕ. Tîk-yān

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 117

yîng-teî tsaâp-t'uēn kè tsât-pêng waâk laū-haāng sìng ch'uēn-ĭm sìng tsât-pêng.

Capt. Cheung: Sir, according to International Law, can we interrogate members of the medical corps?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Under the provisions of the Geneva Conventions, captured members of enemy medical units are protected personnel, but, nevertheless, they are liable to interrogation.

C: How do we go about interrogating such personnel?

H: The following are topics for questioning: 1. Number of casualties over a given period of time, or during a given campaign. 2. Weapons accounting for most casualties. 3. Important key personnel who have become casualties. 4. Condition of health and sanitation in the enemy units. 5. Ratio of dead to wounded. 6. Commanders' tactics in relation to the number of casualties. 7. Adequacy and efficiency of the evacuation system. 8. Weapons most feared by the enemy. 9. Location of aid stations and hospitals. 10. Organization of division, regimental and battalion aid stations and medical units. 11. Status of medical supplies. Types of supplies. 12. Use of newly developed medicines or drugs. Characteristics. 13. Data on our own wounded, sick, or dead in enemy hands. 14. Skill of enemy medical personnel. 15. Mass sickness or epidemics in the enemy camp.

張上尉：衛生員，我地可以審問被保被告嗎？

何中校：公法人會議生效之內，二，傷患單位傷人法兵十，位·藥手諸行根據單日內敵人員，三，單五，同方既人既術流生條修護審問·

張：我地下以審問個人主康比失宜九，團制品利我十敵染性

何：係或令到既健既損適·編給既·五，傳

[illegible]係審問既戰員鎖環·目効急營十種同傷敵營疾

[illegible]既力站既一，類特兵人地病

[illegible]既官·敵院站補二，十者人既

[illegible]既戰後最在衛品發在死既病

[illegible]既人所同給新三，員疾

[illegible]既敵況戰後最在衛品發在死既病

[illegible]既敵者技或

[illegible]既情現敵

[illegible]既術流

[illegible]既人既術流

[illegible]既兵器·三，

[illegible]既損失既

[illegible]既多既

[illegible]既人最

[illegible]既失鑰境六，

[illegible]既題役損

[illegible]既戰員

[illegible]既審問個人

[illegible]既審問既

[illegible]既呢

[illegible]既種目：一，

[illegible]既人員

[illegible]既呀？

[illegible]既某個

[illegible]既時期

[illegible]既數目·

[illegible]既

[illegible]既

[illegible]既

敵俘之審問，對被俘之敵團現之補給特種武器，營生衛生人員之指揮，軍醫之醫療，以及敵軍俘虜之處理，均應加以保護，並可加以審問。會議之決定，對被俘之敵團現之補給特種武器，營生衛生人員之指揮，軍醫之醫療，以及敵軍俘虜之處理，均應加以保護，並可加以審問。

根據人員生衛之題目如下：

軍審問

一、某人員生衛之題目如下：

二、主環揮之九、之給之我軍疾

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 117

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What were the casualties in your unit last week?
2. What were the weapons accounting for the most casualties?
3. What is the condition of health and the sanitation in your unit?
4. What is the ratio of dead to wounded in your unit?
5. What is the adquacy and efficiency of the evacuation system in your unit?
6. What are the weapons most feared by your unit?
7. What is the location of your aid station?
8. What is the status of the medical supplies in your unit?
9. What are the newly developed medicines or drugs being used in your unit?
10. What is the data on our own wounded, sick or dead in your hands?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 117

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Kwŏk-Tsaì Kung-Faàt International Law

waî-shang taan-waî* medical unit, medical corps

Yât-Noî-Ngă Ooî-Ĭ Yât-Noî-Ngă 'Geneva'; Yât-Noî-Ngă Ooî-Ĭ 'Geneva Convention'

maŭ kòh shī-k'eī a given period of time

chìn-yîk campaign

sóh-yeûk sóh 'lock, to lock'; yeûk 'key of lock, important'; sóh-yeûk 'key of lock, important'

waān-kîng waî-shang sanitation, environmental hygiene

peî-lût lût 'rate'; peî-lût 'ratio'; sheung mōng kè peî-lût 'ratio of dead to wounded'

haû-sùng evacuation (dead and wounded), to evacuate (dead and wounded)

kaù-kap kaù 'to rescue, to help, to save'; kap 'urgent, haste, hurry, anxious'; kaù-kap 'first aid, emergency relief'; kaù-kap chaâm 'first aid station'

waî-shang pó-k'ap pán medical supply; a.f.: waî-shang pó-k'ap

faàt-în to discover, to spot, in sight, discovery; san faàt-în 'new discovery, newly discovered'

tsoî...shaú chung in the hand of...

yîng-teî camp, barracks, post (military)

laū-haāng sìng laū-haāng 'prevalent (epidemic), popular'; laū-haāng sìng 'epidemic in nature'; laū-haāng pēng 'epidemic'

ch'uēn-ĭm pēng ch'uēn-ĭm 'infectious, contagious, infection, to infect'; ch'uēn-ĭm pēng 'infectious disease'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 118

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiû-Kaaù: P'eì-uē ngŏh-teî foo-wôk yat-kòh kung-ping taan-waî* kè yān-uēn, ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* ch'ué-leĭ k'uĭ chì hó à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Tîk-yān kung-ch'ing taan-waî* kè oôt-tûng haî tîk-yān kaì-waâk yat-chúng chûng-iù kê piú-shî. Peî foo kè tîk-yān kung-ch'ing taan-waî* kè yān-uēn sheūng-shì yaŭ tâk-pît kè ts'ing-pò tsz-liû* --- Ni chúng tsz-liû* pat-nāng yaū k'eì-t'a tîk-yān chìn-foo lóh-tak-tó kè. Shâm-mân tîk-yān kung-ch'ing yān-uēn ying-koi paau-k'oôt ĭ-hâ keî chúng t'aì-mûk: Yat. Kóh kòh kung-ch'ing yâm-mô kè leĭ-yaū. Î. Yâm-mô t'ūng pô-ping waâk chong-kaàp yâm-mô kè kwaan-haî. Saam. Luì-k'ui chún-k'òk shóh-tsoî teî t'ūng pò-chì fong-shik. Shóh yûng teî-luì kè chúng-luî t'ūng paaù-chà kei-k'aù kè tâk-sìng. Uē-hōh lîng teî-luì t'ūng kwaì-luì chung-wōh t'ūng shat-chóh haaû-yûng. Teî-luì kè yīng-chông; teî-luì saú-shòk. Seì. Kwaì-luì t'ūng pò yaŭ teî-luì kè k'iū-leūng t'ūng uk kè shóh-tsoî teî. Ngˇ. Tô-lô chóh-tsuêt t'ūng chìn-ch'e haâm-tsîng shóh-tsoî teî, uē-hōh kìn-chuk. Lûk. Tô-lô, k'iū-leūng, hōh laū k'ai kaàn kè yīng-chông, p'oôn-tuên yān-uēn, ch'e-leúng, chìn-ch'e kaau-t'ung nāng-lîk. K'iū-leūng tsoì-ch'ŭng yūng-leûng, shìp-shuî ch'eūng shóh-tsoî t'ūng yīng-chông. Ts'at. Sz-k'ap ĭ-sheûng kè sz-lîng pô kung-ping

chong-peî tsaâp-yûng ch'eūng, uē faū-chau, k'iū-leūng ch'ìt-peî, teî-luî, ngaî-chong ch'ìt-peî, ká-ngaî ch'ìt-peî.....

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 118

Major White: Suppose we captured a member of an engineer unit, what is the best way of handling him, Colonel?

Lt. Colonel Höh: The activities of enemy units are an important indication of enemy plans. Captured members of enemy engineer units often have specialized information in their possession, which can not be obtained from other enemy prisoners of war. The following types of topics should be covered in the interrogation of enemy engineer personnel: 1. Reasons for engineering mission. 2. Relation of missions with missions of infantry or armor. 3. Exact location and pattern of mine fields. Types of mines used and characteristics of exploding mechanism. How mines and booby traps can be neutralized and made defective. Description of mines; methods of mine detection. 4. Location of booby traps and mined bridges or buildings. 5. Location of road blocks and tank traps, and how constructed. 6. Condition of roads, bridges, and streams or rivers. Description of fords. 7. Location of division and higher headquarters pools for engineer equipment, such as pontoons, bridging equipment, mines, camouflage equipment, and dummy equipment.....

白少校：人何劃工報人人個步準雷
既位呀，計人敵程一同區地
單好至但個理一處獲樣修點地地我？
兵至但工理一處獲樣修點地地我？
係修特由敵題二、·式雷何·
動被有能問種·係式既同搜同陷，人探·集雷
活·時不審幾由關方構和雷探車路斷橋狀備地
既示·常料·下理既置機中地橋戰道判·形裝，
位表員資既以既務佈炸雷；既同六，狀，力同兵備
單既人種倒括務任同爆詭狀雷絶·狀能在工設……
程要既呢得包任甲地同形地阻築形通所部探備
工重位—擺該程裝在類雷既有路建既交場令橋設
人種單料修應工或所種地雷佈道何澗車水司，偽
敵一程資戰員個兵確既令地同五，如溪戰涉既舟，假

何中校：

如，我地

警員中校？

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 118

READING MATERIAL

一、報人員，情報之人員，是敵軍計劃單位種類，此敵軍工程單位種類，是敵人資料，活動敵情報獲得。

敵人工程部隊之作戰，要可不表以能示獲由程得其，重常料資種時

一、兵工三種並四、列各點：步兵之準備，包括地雷爆破，下列任務與地雷及失效佈有，該應地雷之障礙，二、該工程地類使詭五、方員重師舟等，置築之人載與浮備，位建形橋師設，偽

審問俘虜或從人民，該此種人員由敵軍工兵部隊中，應付裝備之任務理式何雷築地測判形集備，工程之任務如地雷之關地和搜之與情七、場假用，置之車梁交在之雷，

工務甲方如地建在淺之情備設，位炸雷戰橋車所部地

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 118

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What are the reasons for your engineering mission?
2. What is the exact location and pattern of your mine field?
3. How can your mines and booby traps be neutralized and made defective?
4. What is your method of mine detection?
5. What are the locations of your mined bridges and buildings?
6. What is the location of your tank trap?
7. How do you determine the trafficability for your personnel vehicles and tanks?
8. What is the weight-carrying capacity of your bridges?
9. What is the location of your division headquarters pool for pontoons and bridge equipment?
10. What is the location of your division headquarters pool for camouflage equipment and dummy equipment?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 118

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

uē-hōh How? What? Why?

chung-wǒh to neutralize, to suppress; a.f.: aàt-chaì

haaû-yûng efficacy, efficacious, the result of any course of action; a.f.: haaû-nāng, haaû

shat-chǒh haaû-yûng to become useless, to become defective, to lose effect, to lose function, to become invalid (document), expired (document); a.f.: shat-haaû

saú-shǒk to search, to reconnoiter, to detect, reconnaissance

teî-luî saú-shǒk mine detection; saú-shǒk teî-luî 'to detect mine'

pǒ to lay (mine), to distribute, to spread, to scatter, to arrange, to disperse, to disseminate

hōh river; synonym: kong; Wōng-Hōh 'Yellow River'

hōh-laū river; a.f.: hōh

tsaâp-yûng ch'eūng pool equipment, vehicles; a.f.: ch'uě-yûng shǒh; kung-ping chong-peî tsaâp-yûng ch'eūng 'pool for engineer equipment'

faū-tsau faū 'to float, floating'; tsau 'ship, boat, junk'; faū-tsau 'pontoon, ponton'; a.f.: faū-k'iū 'floating bridge'

k'iū-leūng ch'ìt-peî bridge equipment

ngaî-chong camouflage; ngaî-chong ch'ìt-peî 'camouflage equipment'

ká-ngaî ch'ìt-peî dummy equipment

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 119

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: .....Hŏh Chung-Kaaù, ts'îng neĭ kaì-tsûk kóng-lôk-huì la.

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: .....Paàt. Ká-ngaî kè ch'e-leúng, chìn-ch'e p'aaù-ping chân-teî shóh-tsoî teî. Kaú. Ngaî-chong kè chân-teî t'ūng ch'ìt-shi shóh-tsoî teî. Shóh yûng ngaî-chong heì-ts'oĭ chúng-luî. Shâp. Ch'ŭng îm-k'oì îm-t'aî t'ūng k'eĭ-t'a fōng-uê ch'ìt-shi. Shâp-yat. Shîk-shuî kè kung-k'ap t'ūng k'ap-shuî tîm shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp-î. Kung-ping pô-tuî* kè p'in-chaì, ping-lîk, mŏ-lîk. Shâp-saam. Ts'în-sìn ch'uĭ-chóh yaŭ kìn-chaì kè kung-ping taan-waî* chi ngoî, yaŭ mŏ k'eĭ-t'a taan-waî*, ni ti taan-waî* kè yâm-mô. Shâp-seì. Yaŭ kìn-chaì kè tsoì-ch'ŭng ch'e t'ūng hin-yăn ch'e shò-mûk, kìn-chuk tô-lô t'ūng kà-ch'ìt k'iū-leūng kè chong-peî toh shiú. Ni ti chong-peî kè tâk-sìng. Shâp-ngĕ. San chuk-hó waâk sau-leĭ-hó kè k'iū-leūng shóh-tsoî teî. Shâp-lûk. Shóh yûng kè paaù-p'òh pán. Shóh yûng kè hūng-ngoî-sìn chong-peî. Shâp-ts'at. Tuì ngŏh-kwan teî-luî kè t'aaì-tô. Shâp-paàt. Tsing-shan. Shâp-kaú. Yān-uēn suén-shat.

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Taî-î fong-mîn laĭ kóng, p'eì-uē ngŏh-teî peî foo, ngŏh-teî ying-koi tîm faán-k'òng tîk-yān shâm-mân à, Hŏh Chung-Kaaù?

H: Ngŏh-teî tsuì hó tûk hă "hāng-waĭ faàt-tîn" tsaû chi-tò ni kòh kè chan-î.

Major White: ..... Sir, please continue.

Lt. Colonel Hōh: .....8. Locations of dummy vehicle, tank, and gun positions. 9. Location of camouflaged positions and installations. Types of camouflage material used. 10. Location of bunkers and other defensive installations. 11. Water supply and location of water points. 12. Organization, strength, and weapons of engineer troops. 13. Presence of other than organic engineer units at the front, and mission of such units. 14. Number of organic truck and tractors, and amount of roadbuilding and bridging equipment. Characteristics of same. 15. Location of new or repaired bridges. 16. Use of demolitions. Use of infrared equipment. 17. Attitude toward our mines. 18. Morale. 19. Casualties.

Capt. Cheung: Sir, on the other hand, suppose if we are captured, what should we do to resist enemy interrogation?

H: The best thing is for us to go over the "Code of Conduct". We will understand the fundamental principles.

白少校：……何中校，請講講陣地設施，十、陣地種類，十一、陣地所在地，武兵啲重架呪落去啦。

何中校：……八，假傷呪車輛，戰車，砲兵，工兵啲橋，軍人所在地，所用同給編制，兵力，工呪載同備呪橋，九，傷傷其他有建築呪修呪品我，對十一，地所在地，掩蓋水，工事之呪牽引車裝好破路裝呪理爆七，十神，十二，位*位*同橋性，在呪呪失，方面該點反抗敵人呪個呪知道呪個呪重掩食，十力，單單車設特探所地員第我中校好義真，前外任務，數備新十線外度，精八，多築六，裝十五，地紅態，警如我審地問呀，何傷，繼續裝器防水制，建單建築，制位*，制道，

張上尉：

何：我地「行為法典」就讀吓。

審問敵軍工程人員，除上述七點外，尚包括下列各點：

八.假偽裝陣地與偽裝設施.十.給供制，兵務築路與五所軍地.十六.我.

九.偽類.十.重掩蓋水點，與武器.十三.前線除

地.九.種食水編之工任.十一.隊建單車備所備.人

器材一.之制位數目.性.七.損

十部有種引設擬裝十

車輛，戰車，與砲兵陣地所在裝施.

之在地.偽設.工兵

部位外，尚有建制之設.十二.此種

兵力，與其他防禦.十四.架新品態.

單位外，何種載重備.修紅十

特地十員

對失.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 119

INTERROGATION, TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING MATERIAL

1. What are the locations of your dummy vehicles and tanks?
2. What types of camouflaged material are being used in your unit?
3. What are the locations of your bunkers?
4. What is your water supply condition?
5. What is the location of your water point?
6. What are the units other than your organic engineer unit at the front?
7. What is the amount of your roadbuilding and bridging equipment?
8. What is the location of your repaired bridge?
9. How do you make use of your demolitions?
10. What is your attitude toward our mines?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 119

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ká-ngaî ch'e-leúng dummy vehicle

ngaî-chong chân-teî camouflaged position

ngaî-chong heì-ts'oì camouflaged material

îm-k'oì to cover (at top), to hide, to conceal

ch'ŭng îm-k'oì îm-t'aî bunker

shîk-shuî drinking water

shîk-shuî kung-k'ap water supply

k'ap shuî tîm water point

kìn-chaì organic (military); kìn-chaì kung-ping taan-waî* 'organic engineer unit'

hin-yăn ch'e hin 'to pull, to haul, to drag'; hin-yăn 'to drag, to draw'; hin-yăn ch'e 'tractor'

kìn-chuk tô-lô road building; a.f.: chuk lô; chuk-lô-kei 'road building machine, bulldozer'

kà-ch'ìt k'iū-leūng bridging, to build a bridge; caf: chuk k'iū

paaù-p'òh paaù 'to explode, to break'; p'òh 'to break'; paaù-p'òh 'explosion, demolition'; paaù-p'òh pán 'demolition material'

hūng-ngoî-sìn hūng 'red'; hūng-ngoî sìn 'infra-red ray'

taî-î fong-mîn on the other hand; a.f.: taî-î fong-mîn laì kóng

faán-k'òng k'òng 'to resist, to protest, to oppose'; faán-k'òng 'to oppose (ruler, occupant, captor, conqueror), to defy, to revolt, opposition'

faàt-tîn code of laws; haāng-waì faàt-tîn 'code of conduct'

chan-î chan 'real, true, genuine, truth'; î 'significance, meaning, principle, essence, truth, spirit'; chan-î 'fundamental principle, true principle, significance, truth'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 120

ORAL MATERIAL

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: "Ngŏh haî yat-kòh Meĭ-Kwòk kwan-yān. Ngŏh shóh fûk-mô kè kwan-tuî* haî shaú-waî ngŏh-kwòk t'ūng ngŏh-teî kè shaang-oôt fong-shik. Ngŏh chún-peî hei-shaang ngŏh kè shaang-mîng laî pó-waî ni leŭng tîm.

"Ngŏh wĭng-uĕn m̄-ooĭ tsẑ-keî ts'îng-uên t'aū-hŏng. Uē-kwóh ngŏh haî chî-fai, hâ-shûk i-în yaŭ faán-k'òng kè paân-faàt, ngŏh wĭng-uĕn m̄-taaì k'uĭ-teî t'aū-hŏng.

"Uē-kwóh ngŏh peî foo-wôk, ngŏh yûng tsûn paân-faàt kaì-tsûk faán-k'òng. Ngŏh tsûn-lîk t'ŏ-t'uèt t'ūng pong-chôh t'a-yān t'ŏ-t'uèt. Ngŏh pat-shaû tîk-yān ká-shik t'ūng tâk-pît leî-yik.

"Uē-kwóh ngŏh haî chìn-foo, ngŏh toî chìn-foo t'ūng-yān ĭ sùn. Ngŏh m̄-peî ts'îng-pò waâk ts'aam-ka yâm-hŏh haâm-hoî t'ūng-chì kè haāng-tûng. Uē-kwóh ngŏh haî ko k'ap, ngŏh chî-fai. Uē-kwóh m̄-haî, ngŏh t'eng-ts'ūng cheúng-koon mîng-lîng t'ūng yúng oô k'uĭ-teî.

"Uē-kwóh ngŏh haî chìn-foo, peî shám-mân kè shĭ-haû, ngŏh chî peî ngŏh kè sìng-mîng, kaai-k'ap, kwan-tsîk hô-mă, ch'ut-shaì yât-k'eì. Ngŏh tsûn-lîk peî-mĭn taàp mân-t'aì. Ngŏh m̄-tsòk haú-shût waâk pat-sé haú-kung, pat-chung ngŏh-kwòk t'ūng t'ūng-māng kwòk t'ūng chung-sheung k'uĭ-teî kè chìng-î.

"Ngŏh wĭng-uĕn m̄-ooĭ m̄-keì-tak ngŏh haî yat-kòh Meĭ-Kwòk kwan-yān, foô-chaàk ngŏh kè haāng-tûng, ì-ch'é fûng-hìn

ue ngŏh-kwòk tsẑ-yaū chué-î. Ngŏh sùn-laaî Sheûng-Taì t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk Luēn-Pong."

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: "I am an American fighting man. I serve in the forces which guard my country and our way of life. I am prepared to give my life in their defense.

"I will never surrender of my own free will. If in command, I will never surrender my men while they still have the means to resist.

"If I am captured, I will continue to resist by all means available. I will make every effort to escape and aid others to escape. I will accept neither parole nor special favors from the enemy.

"If I become a prisoner of war, I will keep faith with my fellow prisoners. I will give no information or take part in any action which might be harmful to my comrades. If I am senior, I will take command. If not, I will obey the lawful orders of those appointed over me, and will back them up in every way.

"When questioned, should I become a prisoner of war, I am bound to give only my name, rank, service number, and date of birth. I will evade answering further questions to the utmost of my ability. I will make no oral or written statements disloyal to my country and its allies, or harmful to their cause.

"I will never forget that I am an American fighting man,

responsible for my actions, and dedicated to the principles which made my country free. I will trust in my God and in the United States of America."

何中校：「既方衛果辦續逃益以害我命，號問不正國獻同
務活保如既繼人利人陷，官候籍答，既美奉帝
服生黎既抗．法他別同何級長時軍免供地個且上
所既命降反降辦助特條仕高從既，避口佢一而賴
我地生投有投盡幫同戰加係聽問級力寫傷係，信
人．我既願然地用同釋待參我動我
軍國我情依佢我脫假我或果，記既義
國我犧已屬帶，逃人，報被，我或同得行．
美衛備自下唔獲力敵條情．如係．唔地條，名．述國唔我主
個守準會，唔揮永被我不係唔行如護係我世唔同會責由
一係我點遠指我我．我我既．擁我俾出我國遠，國聯
係隊．兩永係，果抗．果．志揮同果祇，．我．永人我國
我軍式呢「我我法「如反脫「如信同指令「如我碼題忠義「我軍於美

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 120

READING MATERIAL

「我是美國軍人．我所服務之軍隊，其職責是保衛本國與我人之生活方式．我準備犧牲個人生命以完成保護之責．

「我永不自願投降．如我担任指揮，而部隊仍有辦法抗敵時，我永不令其投降．

「如我被俘，我將用盡辦法繼續反抗，盡力逃脫，並助他人逃脫．我不接受敵人之假釋與特別利益．

「同之護信．各導擁以害領並人陷負令同能則俘何，官戰任高長待加較從將參級聽我不階則，人俘報本低，戰情如較級是人敵動．階如給活之．官長不志責

「本將於述我忠供期不或筆供祇日作口供我生不何任之時，出將問碼，我題義審號問正被籍各損在軍他有俘，其或戰級覆國是階答盟我名免同如姓避與之量國人盡本

「我將之得人獲本國對本人使國．」

永全則將員原動由行自

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 120

QUESTIONS

1. Neĭ haî pin-kwòk kè kwan-yān à?

2. Neĭ chún-peî hei-shaang neĭ kè shaang-mîng laĭ pó-waî pin leŭng tîm à?

3. Uē-kwóh neĭ taam-yâm chî-fai, neĭ kè pô-tuî* chûng hóh-ĭ taî-k'òng tîk-yān kè shĭ-haû, neĭ tîm-yeûng* tsô à?

4. Uē-kwóh neĭ haî chìn-foo, neĭ tîm-yeûng* toî k'eĭ-t'a kè chìn-foo?

5. Uē-kwóh neĭ peî foo, tîk-yān mân neĭ lóh ts'îng-pò, neĭ tîm-yeûng*?

6. Uē-kwóh neĭ peî foo, neĭ haû ko k'ap kwan-koon, neĭ tîm tsô?

7. Uē-kwóh neĭ peî foo, neĭ m̄-haî ko k'ap kwan-kwan, neĭ tsaû tîm-yeûng* tsô à?

8. Tîk-yān shâm-mân neĭ kè shĭ-haû, neĭ chî kóng ti mi-yĕ?

9. Uē-kwóh tîk-yān mân-neĭ hó toh mân-t'aĭ, neĭ ying-koi tîm-yeûng*?

10. Uē-kwóh tîk-yān iù neĭ sé haú-kung, pat-chung ue Meĭ-Kwòk t'ūng k'eĭ-t'a kè t'ūng-māng kwòk, neĭ ying-koi tîm-yeûng* tsô à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 120

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

shaú-waî to guard

ngŏh-kwòk my country, our country; poón-kwòk 'one's own country, home country'

shaang-oôt fong-shik shaang-oôt 'living, livelihood, life'; fong-shik 'style, form, way'; shaang-oôt fong-shik 'way of living, way of life'

hei-shaang to sacrifice, sacrifice

pó-waî to defend (country, freedom, principle), to protect (country, principle, freedom)

wĭng-uĕn forever, perpetually, eternally; a.f.: wĭng (lit); wĭng-uĕn m̄-ooĭ 'never will'; a.f.: wĭng-uĕn pat, wĭng-pat

ts'ĭng-uên willing, willingly; a.f.: uên-ì, uên

yûng tsûn paân-faàt to try one's best, to make every effort

t'ō-t'uèt to escape, to flee; a.f.: t'ō, tsaú

pong-chôh to help, to assist, to aid; a.f.: pong, chôh

t'a-yān t'a 'a pronoun, he, she, it, that, other, another'; t'a-yān 'another person, others'

ká-shik shik 'to release (prisoner), to loosen, to explain, to lay aside'; ká-shik 'parole'

leî-yik leî 'profit, gain, advantage, interest on money, convenient, handy, to facilitate'; leî-yik 'benefit, advantage, profit, favor'

toî to treat (people, other), to wait for; toî yān 'to treat people, to deal with people'; toî yān ĭ sùn 'to keep faith with people'

t'ūng-yān colleague, fellow-member; ts'uēn-t'aî t'ūng-yān 'all fellow-colleagues'

haâm-hoî hoî 'to do harm to another, to assassinate, harm, harmful'; haâm-hoî 'to betray, to get another into trouble'

t'ūng-chì comrade, collaborator

t'ìng-ts'ūng (t'ing-ts'ūng, t'eng-ts'ūng) to obey, to follow, to agree with; a.f.: t'ìng, ts'ūng

yúng-oô to uphold and support (leader, constitution)

kwan-tsîk hô-mă kwan-tsîk 'army register, army status'; kwan-tsîk hô-mă 'service number'

peî-mĭn peî 'to avoid, to evade, to shun, to hide'; peî-mĭn 'to avoid, to keep from'; a.f.: peî, mĭn

haú-shût to describe orally, to narrate, oral statement; pat-shût 'to describe in writing, written statement'

haú-kung kung 'to testify, to give evidence, to supply'; haú-kung 'verbal evidence, verbal testimony'; pat-kung 'written testimony, to testify in writing'

chung loyal; chung ue 'to be loyal to'; pat-chung 'disloyal'; pat-chung ue 'disloyal to'

t'ūng-māng kwòk t'ūng-māng 'alliance, confederacy, to enter into an alliance, to make a covenant'; t'ūng-māng kwòk 'allied country'

chung-sheung to do harm to another secretly, to do harm to another without letting him know

fûng-hìn to dedicate, to devote

tsẑ-yaū chué-î principle of freedom

sùn-laaî to believe in, to rely on, to have confidence in, to trust

Sheûng-Taî God

Meĭ-Kwòk Luēn-Pong United States of America; a.f.: Meĭ-Leî-Kin Hôp-Chùng-Kwòk

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE - CANTONESE

REFRESHER COURSE

VOLUME V

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

ED022178

AL 001 478

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

This pamphlet is for use by the faculty and staff of the Defense Language Institute solely for official purposes. It is NOT for general distribution. It may NOT be released to other persons, quoted or extracted for publication, or otherwise copied or distributed without specific permission in each instance from the Director, Defense Language Institute.

C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U. S. Army
Director

C H I N E S E - C A N T O N E S E

Refresher Course

Volume V

Instructional Units 121-140

March 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

MATERIALS

Printed Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Recorded Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	"Free China's Fighting Men" MF 30-8444
	1 reel	"Mighty Chinese Armed Forces" USALS-86
	1 reel	"Production of Combat Intelligence" TF 30-1494

*FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

PRINTED MATERIALS

This volume contains 20 fifty-minute instructional units (Instructional Units 121 through 140) designed for classroom instruction. Each unit contains the following parts:

Oral Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in oral fluency. New elements of the language are introduced for review and study in this part only. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. It is transcribed in romanization, calligraphed in Chinese characters, and translated into idiomatic English.

Reading Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in reading. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. There is a gradual development from conversational to literary style. It is calligraphed in Chinese characters.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. It is transcribed in romanization. The questions and approved answers, calligraphed in Chinese characters, are in the Instructor's Manual.

Vocabulary and Notes. This part contains a complete list of vocabulary and grammatical notes which are intended for study by the student and support current or subsequent materials.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

RECORDED MATERIALS

As the classroom supervisor or instructor available may or may not be a native linguist, each Instructional Unit is supported by one individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

Oral Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Reading Material. This part also contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Instructional Units, the following study procedures are to be observed when the classroom supervisor or instructor available is not a native linguist:

1. Listen to the Oral Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

2. Repeat after the Oral Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.

3. Listen to the Reading Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material.

4. Repeat after the Reading Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material.

5. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

6. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

7. If more time is available, repeat Step 2 and 4.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

CORRELATED MATERIALS

Instructional Units 121 through 140 are to be correlated with 8 fifty-minute language laboratory practice units (Language Laboratory Practice Units 53 through 60) designed for individual practice. Each unit contains the following parts:

Aural Comprehension Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in aural comprehension. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. As this part is for aural comprehension, no printed material is necessary for the student. This part, transcribed in romanization, is in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. No printed material is necessary for the student. The questions and approved answers, transcribed in romanization, are in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Instead of printed material, the student is issued an individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

Aural Comprehension Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Language Laboratory Practice Units, the following study procedures are to be observed:

1. Listen to the Aural Comprehension Material Listening Practice.

2. Repeat after Aural Comprehension Material Repeat Practice.

3. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

4. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

5. If more time is available, repeat Step 1, 2, 3, and 4, and/or record at the end of the tape a resumé of the Aural Comprehension Material.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

FILM MATERIAL

Instructional Units 121 through 140 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 53 through 60 are to be also correlated with 1 training film with Cantonese Chinese sound track for the student's viewing and commenting, as follows:

"Production of Combat Intelligence". TF 30-1494. This film pertains to intelligence at work in battle. The running time is 18 minutes.

This film is to be shown in Hour 201 with Language Laboratory Practice Unit 58.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

TESTING MATERIALS

Instructional Units 121 through 140 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 53 through 60 are to be further correlated with 2 fifty-minute formal testing units (Formal Testing Units 9 and 10) designed to test the student's mastery of the materials in these units. Specific instructions and guidance to the student in connection with the tests are given in each of the Formal Testing Units which are "For Official Use Only".

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

SCHEDULE

13th Wk				14th Wk			
M	Hr	181 IU	121	M	Hr	196 IU	131
		182 IU	122			197 IU	132
		183 LLPU	53			198 LLPU	57
T	Hr	184 IU	123	T	Hr	199 IU	133
		185 IU	124			200 IU	134
		186 LLPU	54			201 LLPU	58
W	Hr	187 IU	125	W	Hr	202 IU	135
		188 IU	126			203 IU	136
		189 FTU	9			204 LLPU	59
T	Hr	190 IU	127	T	Hr	205 IU	137
		191 IU	128			206 IU	138
		192 LLPU	55			207 LLPU	60
F	Hr	193 IU	129	F	Hr	208 IU	139
		194 IU	130			209 IU	140
		195 LLPU	56			210 FTU	10

IU - Instructional Unit

LLPU - Language Laboratory Practice Unit

FTU - Formal Testing Unit

Note - Film "Production of Combat Intelligence" TF 30-1494 (18 min) is to be shown in Hour 201 with LLPU 58.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 121-140

CONTENTS

Instructional Unit	Page
121	1
122	8
123	14
124	21
125	28
126	35
127	41
128	49
129	55
130	61
131	67
132	73
133	79
134	85
135	91
136	97
137	104
138	110
139	116
140	122

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 121

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Pô-ping yat-heùng haî Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan kè pooì-kwat. Neĭ wâ tuì mà, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Tuì là. Chung-Kûng î-chûng pò-ping haî yan-waî foò-yaŭ yān-lîk, t'ūng-shĭ k'uèt-fât p'aaù-ping, chìn-ch'e, t'ung-sùn chong-peî, kaau-t'ung ch'e-leúng, t'ūng shaû-kwòh fàn-lîn kè keî-shût yān-uēn.

P: Taân-haî chong-peî kè k'uèt-fât yîk-to yîng-heúng-tò pô-ping taan-waî*, kìt-kwóh k'uĭ-teî kè ping-lîk, fóh-lîk, p'in-chaì tsó-chik seung ch'a hó uĕn, tuì mà?

H: Mŏ ts'òh là. Pô-ts'eung t'ūng k'eĭ-t'a kè hing ping-heì —— ni ti kè ping-heì m̄-kaù kung-k'ap toh-kwòh saam-fân-chi-yat kè pô-ping. Leî-yûng îp-foh kè yān-uēn, uē shue-keì, kà-shaî ping, ch'ui-sẑ ping haî chìn-taù kè shĭ-haû tsô pô-ts'eung ping t'ūng taam-kà ping kè ts'ẑ shò, toh-kwòh sai-fong lûk-kwan hó toh.

P: Chung-Kûng yaŭ mŏ saàn-ping à?

H: Kan-kuì pò-kò, Chung-Kûng fàn-lîn yaŭ-haân saàn-ping, taaî-k'oì* haî pô-ping chúng-luî kè.

P: Toh-shò Chung-Kûng kè kwan-t'uēn, sz, t'uēn yaŭ kîng-kaaì lîn t'ūng yîng. K'uĭ-teî yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ à?

H: Ni ti kîng-kaaì taan-waî* yûng laî shaú-waî sz-lîng pô, pó-k'ap, t'ung-sùn ch'ìt-shi, pit-iù shĭ, tòng pò-ping tà cheùng.

Major White: Sir, infantry has been the backbone of the Chinese Communist Army. Do you agree?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Yes, indeed. The heavy dependence of the Chinese Communists upon infantry results from an abundance of manpower and shortages of artillery, tanks, communications equipment and transport vehicles, as well as of trained technical personnel.

W: But shortages of equipment extend even into infantry units, with the result that they vary widely as to strength, fire power and organizational structure. Don't you think so?

H: Yes, you're right. Rifles and other small arms are insufficient to provide more than about one-third of the infantrymen with these weapons. Service-type personnel, such as clerks, drivers and cooks, are used in combat as riflemen or litter bearers much more often than is the case in Western Armies.

W: Do the Chinese Communists have paratroops?

H: According to reports, the Chinese Communists are training a limited number of paratroops, probably infantry-type troops.

W: Security companies and battalions are found in most Chinese Communist regiments, divisions and armies. What are they used for?

H: The security units are used to guard headquarters, supply and communications installations, and to fight as infantry if required.

白少校：步兵一向係中共陸軍嘅背骨．你話對嗎，何中校？

何中校：對啦．中共倚重步兵係因為富有人力，同時缺乏砲兵，戰車，通訊裝備，交通車輛，同受過訓練嘅技術人員．

白：但係裝備嘅缺乏亦都影響到步兵單位*，結果佢地嘅兵力，火力，編制組織相差好遠，對嗎？

何：冇錯啦．步槍同其他嘅輕兵器——呢啲嘅兵器唔夠供給多過三分之一嘅步兵駕駛，駁槍陸冇告步共．戒訊步方有報係中營警通

白：共據

何：中根數

白：多啲

何：呢

白少校：步兵一向係中共陸軍嘅背骨．你話對嗎，何中校？

何中校：對啦．中共倚重步兵係因為富有人力，同時缺乏砲兵，戰車，通訊裝備，交通車輛，同受過訓練嘅技術人員．

白：但係裝備嘅缺乏亦都影響到步兵單位*，結果佢地嘅兵力，火力，編制組織相差好遠，對嗎？

何：冇錯啦．步槍同其他嘅輕兵器——呢啲嘅兵器唔夠供給多過三分之一嘅步兵駕駛，駁槍陸冇告步共．戒訊步方有報係中營警通用，同好多嘅兵科事務兵，如嘅時候做書記，

軍之二·車與普，以用為之
陸兵·通備極力難利作軍
在步力交裝亦火器，兵陸
而重人，種內，兵時事方
倚之備此位力輕鬥炊西
幹·共大裝·單實他戰，在
骨中廣訊員兵其在兵遠
事·有通人步響與·駁
軍兵共，術在影·槍兵駕數
為其步中車技至接織·步步，次
軍則：一·戰之甚間組之之記之
陸幹二兵，訓練，與制共上書兵
以骨有砲受缺直與編中以如架
共其因乏曾之而，份員與
中，原缺與上因力倒如，一，担
之主中要共，術·鬥力給科槍
中輛技遍戰，供業步上·

根據各方面報告，中共現訓練有限之傘兵·此種傘兵可能為步兵種類·

在中共之軍團，師，團中，附有警戒連與營·其任務為守衛司令部，補給與交通設施等·必要時，被用作步兵作戰·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 121

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan chì kán-iù kè ping-foh haî mi-yĕ à?

2. Tîm-kaaî Chung-Kûng kòm î-chûng pô-ping à?

3. Chung-Kûng pô-ping taan-waî* kè chong-peî tîm à?

4. Chung-Kûng pô ping kè chong-peî hó k'uèt-fât, yaŭ mi-yĕ yîng-heúng?

5. Chung-Kûng Kwan-Tuî* kè pô-ts'eung t'ūng k'eî-t'a hing ping-heì shiú-tò tîm-yeûng*?

6. Chìn-taù kè shî-haû, Chung-Kûng yaŭ-shî leî-yûng pin chúng îp-foh yān-uēn tsòk-chìn à?

7. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô ch'ui-sẑ ping à?

8. Chìn-taù kè shî-haû, Chung-Kûng yaŭ-shî leî-yûng îp-foh yān-uēn foô-chaàk pin chúng tsòk-chìn kè yâm-mô à?

9. Chung-Kûng kè kwan-t'uēn, sz, t'uēn yaŭ kîng-kaaì lîn t'ūng yîng. K'uĭ-teî kè yâm-mô haî tîm à?

10. Mi-yĕ kiù tsô taam kà ping à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 121

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pooì-kwat pooì 'back, behind, to disavow, to memorize, to turn back on'; kwat 'bone'; pooì kwat 'backbone'; synonym: 'kwat-kòn'

î-chûng to rely on, to depend on

foð-yaŭ wealthy, rich, abundant, wealth, to enrich

seung ch'a hó uěn quite different; a.f.: ch'a hó uěn

saam——fân-chi-yat one third

shue-keì clerk

ch'ui-sẑ ping ch'ui-sẑ 'cooking, kitchen affair'; ch'ui-sẑ ping 'kitchen personnel (military), cook (military)'

taam kà ping litter bearer (military); taam-kà 'business of litter bearer'

ts'ẑ shð frequency

saàn-ping saàn (lit.) 'umbrella, canopy, cover'; a.f.: 'chî'; saàn-ping 'paratroops'; a.f.: saàn-ping pô-tuî*, kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî*

kîng-kaaì lîn security company

kîng-kaaì taan-waî* security unit

t'ung-sùn ch'ìt-shi communication installation

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 122

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Neĭ kòk-tak Chung-Kûng kè yĕ-chìn p'aaù-ping tîm à, Hŏh Chung-Kaaù?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Tong k'uĭ-teî hoi-ch'î kon-shìp Hŏn-Chìn kè shĭ-haû, Chung-Kûng kîk-chi k'uèt-fât p'aaù-ping. Ī-ch'é ping-heì yaŭ hîn-chuè kè ts'aam-ch'i pat t'ūng, t'ūng p'in-chaì k'uèt-fât yat-chì, kàng-ka kaám-shiú k'uĭ-teî p'aaù-ping kè nāng-lîk.

P: Ngŏh koó Chung-Kûng p'aaù-ping kè nāng-lîk ĭ-king tsang-ka hó toh là, yan-waî k'uĭ-teî shau-tò So-Luēn chong-peî t'ūng keî-shût sheûng kè oōn-chôh.

H: Sui-în haî kóm, taân-haî ping-heì ts'aam-ch'i pat t'ūng i-în chì-tò seung-tong ch'îng-tô. P'aaù-ping taan-waî* kè p'aaù-ping heì chaì-tsô pat t'ūng, toh-shò haî Yât-Poón, Meĭ-Kwòk, So-Luēn chaì kè.

P: P'aaì-ping taan-waî* tîm-yeûng* p'in-chaì faàt à?

H: Kwan-pán ts'aam-ch'i pat t'ūng lîng-tò mooĭ kòh taan-waî* p'in-chaì pat t'ūng. Taân-haî p'in-chaì piu-chún fà toh-shò ĭ-king taât-tò yat-kòh t'uēn yaŭ saam-kòh yîng, yat-kòh yîng yaŭ saam-kòh lîn, yat-kòh lîn yaŭ seì-moōn p'aaù kè ch'îng-tô. Ch'uî-chóh ni tîm chi ngoî, yat-kòh yîng shóh yaŭ kè lîn kè p'in-chaì t'ūng chong-peî yat-chì. Taân-haî yîng k'ap ĭ sheûng kè taan-waî* kè chong-peî tsaû ĭ yaŭ mŏ kwan-pán ì tîng là.

Major White: Sir, what do you think of the Chinese Communist field artillery?

Lt. Colonel Höh: At the outset of their intervention in Korea, the Chinese Communists suffered from an extreme shortage of artillery. In addition, a marked diversity in weapons and a lack of uniformity in organization further reduced their artillery capabilities.

W: I thought the artillery capabilities of the Chinese Communists had increased substantially, owing to receipt of equipment and technical assistance from the Soviets.

H: That may be the case, but diversity of weapons still exists to a considerable degree. Artillery pieces in the artillery units are of varied manufacture, chiefly Japanese, United States and Soviet.

W: How are the artillery units organized?

H: The diversity of matériel has caused some variations in the organization of individual units. However, organization has been standardized to the extent that four-gun batteries, three-battery battalions and three-battalion regiments exist in a majority of cases. Furthermore, the organization and equipment of all batteries of a given battalion are uniform. Above battalion level, however, equipment of units depends on available matériel.

白少校：你覺得中共嘅野戰砲兵點呀，何中校？

何中校：當佢地開始干涉韓戰嘅時候，中共極之缺乏砲兵．而且兵器有顯著嘅參差不同，同編制缺乏一致，更加減少佢地砲兵嘅能力．

白：我估中共砲兵嘅能力已經增加好多啦，因為佢地收到蘇聯裝備同技術上嘅援助．

何：雖然係敢，但係兵器參差不同依然至到一連，同一連呢制單位*兵品相造聯位*差係團個之裝嘅單參但個一點同位*嘅砲軍製點不編有連外備裝同．不到一個咗編嘅上定啦．制達三除嘅編經有連以而位*已營度嘅級品單數個程有營軍法每化，砲營但有單個多一嘅所係有呀？

白：

何：

兵制年使兵如為
砲編近，其倒多
之與助，但；器
缺，能援，上兵
極同效術此之砲
，不之技如度，
時差兵與然程同
戰參砲備雖當不
韓之其裝．相造．
涉著少之加在製式
干顯減聯增仍器蘇
始有更蘇大，兵或
開類，量大同砲，
共種致大能不之式
中器一得致差位美
當兵能獲兵參單，
於不共砲之兵式
由之中其器砲日

位標連，
單到各而
三有各定．
達有所上少
量營內以多
至營一營級與
響盡一營類
影已，一營，但種之
而上營外，之
同，制三之品
不在編有致軍
差但此一除已有
參．如．備現
，門裝以
品同
軍不
於亦
由制
之編化連之
準一連位之

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 122

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng pin yat nîn ts'aam-ka Hŏn-Chìn à?

2. Chung-Kûng ts'aam-ka Hŏn-Chìn shî, k'uĭ-teî kè p'aaù-ping kaù mà?

3. Chung-Kûng ts'aam-ka Hŏn-Chìn shî, k'uĭ-teî kè p'aaù-ping heì tîm à?

4. Tong-shî Chung-Kûng Kwan-Tuî* kè p'in-chaì tîm à?

5. Chung-Kûng ts'aam-ka Hŏn-Chìn kè shî-haû, ping-heì ts'aam-ch'i pat t'ūng, p'in-chaì m̀-tak yat-chì. Tuì k'uĭ-teî yaŭ mi-yĕ yîng-heúng?

6. Chung-Kûng tak-tó pin-kòh kwòk kè chong-peî t'ūng keî-shût oŏn-chôh à?

7. Chung-Kûng tak-tó So-Luēn kè chong-peî t'ūng keî-shût oŏn-cĥoh, tuì Chung-Kûng kè p'aaù-ping lîk-leûng yaŭ mi-yĕ pong-chôh à?

8. Chung-Kûng p'aaù-ping heì toh-shò haî pin kwòk tsô kà?

9. În-tsoî Chung-Kûng Kwan-Tuî*, yat-kòh t'uēn yaŭ keî toh kòh yîng à?

10. Chung-Kûng Kwan-Tuî*, yat-kòh yîng shóh yaŭ kè lîn kè p'in-chaì t'ūng chong-peî ĭ-king yat-chì. Yîng k'ap ĭ sheûng kè chong-peî tîm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 122

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

yĕ-chìn p'aaù-ping field artillery

kon-shìp to intervene, to interfere, intervention, interference

ts'aam-ch'i irregular, not uniform; synonym: ts'aam-ch'i pat ts'aī, ts'aam-ch'i pat t'ūng

yat-chì uniform, unanimous, uniformly, unanimously

kàng-ka more, much more, still, again, besides, furthermore; a.f.: kàng

kaám-shiú kaám 'to subtract, to lessen, to diminish, to decrease, to minimize'; kaám-shiú 'to reduce, to diminish, to minimize

So-Luēn Soviet Russia; a.f.: So-Ngōh, So, Ngōh

seung-tong ch'ĭng-tô to a considerable degree, to a certain degree, to a certain extent

kwan-pán matériel

piu-chún fà piu-chún 'standard'; piu-chún fà 'to standardize, standardization'

taât-tò...ch'ĭng-tô to the extent that...

ĭ...ì tîng to depend on..., to vary with...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 123

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: K'eî-t'a kè p'aaù-ping, uē ko-shê p'aaù-ping yaû tîm à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kûng kon-shìp Hōn-Chìn kè shī-haû, yĕ-chìn p'aaù-ping t'ūng ko-shê p'aaù-ping to hó yeûk. Haû-loî ko-shê p'aaù-ping haî leûng t'ūng chat fong-mîn to tsîm-tsîm koî-shîn. Seung-sùn în-tsoî yat-kòh pô-ping t'uēn chi noî, mooĭ kòh yîng haî kîn-chaì sheûng yaŭ yat-kòh ko-shê kei-kwaan ts'eung lîn. Yaŭ ti pô-ping sz haî kîn-chaì sheûng yaŭ yat-kòh p'aaù-ping t'uēn, ni kòh p'aaù-ping t'uēn paau-k'oòt yat-kòh ko-shê p'aaù ping yîng. Ni ti ko-shê p'aaù-ping yîng yûng ko-shê kei-kwaan ts'eung t'ūng saam-shâp-ts'at kung-leî ko-shê p'aaù.

P: Fōng chìn-ch'e p'aaù-ping ne?

H: Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan paau-k'oòt kei kòh fōng chìn-ch'e sz, p'in-chaì taaî-k'oì yat-yeûng. Mooĭ kòh sz yaŭ saam-kòh t'uēn; taân-haî ni ti t'uēn m̄-t'ūng Chung-Kûng lûk-kwan p'aaù-ping t'uēn yat-yeûng, k'uĭ-teî mŏ yîng. Faán chi mooĭ kòh t'uēn yaŭ lûk-kòh chìn-p'aaù lîn, mooĭ kòh chìn-p'aaù lîn yaŭ seì-moōn p'aaù. Saam-kòh lîn p'ooì yaŭ So-Luēn ńg̃-shâp-ts'at kung-leî M yat-kaú-seì-saam shik kè fōng chìn-ch'e p'aaù. Saam-kòh lîn p'ooì yaŭ So-Luēn ts'at-shâp-lûk kung-leî p'aaù.

P: Fôh-ts'în t'ūng* ne?

H: Chung-Kûng lûk-kwan tsuì tai haâm-tô yaŭ yat-kòh fóh-tsìn t'ūng* sz. Ni kòh sz yaŭ saam-kòh t'uēn. Mooĭ-kòh t'uēn p'ooì yaŭ î-shâp-seì moōn yat-paàk-saam-shâp-î kung-leî So-Luēn M shâp-saam shik kè fóh-tsìn t'ūng*.

Major White: How about other artillery such as antiaircraft artillery?

Lt. Colonel Höh: The Chinese Communists were weak both in field and antiaircraft artillery when they intervened in Korea. Subsequently the antiaircraft artillery had steadily improved, both in quantity and quality. Apparently an antiaircraft machine gun company is now organic to each battalion in an infantry regiment. Some infantry divisions have an organic artillery regiment, which includes an antiaircraft battalion. These AA battalions employ antiaircraft machine guns and 37-mm AA guns.

W: How about the antitank artillery?

H: The Chinese Communists Army includes several antitank divisions which apparently have identical organization. Each division has three regiments; the regiments, however, unlike other artillery regiments in the Chinese Communist Army, do not have battalions. Instead, in each regiment there are six firing batteries of four guns each. Three of the batteries are equipped with the Soviet 57-mm M1943 antitank gun, and three with the Soviet 76-mm guns.

W: How about the rocket launchers?

H: There is at least one rocket launcher division in the Chinese Communist Army. It is composed of three regiments, each of which apparently is equipped with twenty-four 132-mm Soviet M13 rocket launchers.

白少校：呀？兵砲相營．兵砲機
何中校：點．砲射個連砲射射
兵又戰高善每槍個高高．
砲兵，野來改，關一個用砲
高射候，後漸內機有一營射
時弱．漸之射上括兵高
都團高制包砲釐
方步一條兵高七
兵個建團射公
韓兵質個有師砲的十
戰都好面兵個建
如既高時射砲兵，
既干射量在制步呢．同兵
他共高條現建的，營槍砲
其中同兵信條有團兵關車
涉砲同一上兵個呢三呢？
既砲兵韓兵質個有師砲的十
他共高條現建的，營槍砲軍一的地連連三聯呢軍個四式
中同兵信條有團兵關車陸概呢佢砲個四蘇筒陸呢十三
白：防戰共
何：中火箭
白：火共
何：中火

大係樣，戰三九有
制但一個．一配
編；團六砲M連
，團兵有門釐個
師個砲團四公三
車三軍個有七．
戰有陸每連十砲砲
防師共之砲五車釐
個個中反戰聯戰公
幾每同．個蘇防六
括．唔營每有既十
低有一火
限三百箭
度個三筒
有團十．
一．二
火個釐
個每公
．二十
師有M
筒配聯
箭團蘇
最師門既
配式七？

砲都制建射三
射面建在高與
高方在師個槍
與質營兵一關
兵與每步括機
砲量，千包射
戰在內若團高
野兵團．兵用
時，砲兵連砲營
戰高個關．砲．
韓來一機團射砲
涉後現射兵高射
千．．高砲此高
共弱善個一，釐
中甚改一有營公
都漸有上兵七
兵漸上制砲十

防．內有一聯
干團團連M蘇
若三，砲釐有
有有同戰砲公配
軍師不個七連
陸每團每十個
共即兵．五三
中，砲連聯他
，同軍砲連蘇其
兵相陸戰有．
砲致之個配砲
車大他六連車
戰制其有個戰砲
防編與團三防釐
於．團每．式公
關師種．門三六
車此營四十
戰但無砲九
七

每二
師．十
筒*師三
箭一
火門
個四
一十筒*．
度二箭
限有火
低配式
最團三
軍每十
陸．M
共團聯
中三蘇
有釐
師公

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 123

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng ts'aam-ka Hōn-Chìn shī, yĕ-chìn p'aaù-ping k'eūng yik-waâk yeûk?

2. Chung-Kûng ts'aam-ka Hōn-Chìn shī, ko-shê p'aaù-ping k'eūng yik-waâk yeûk?

3. În-tsoî Chung-Kûng yat-kòh pô-ping t'uēn noî, mooĭ kòh yĭng haî kîn-chaì sheûng yaŭ mi-yĕ taan-waî* à?

4. Ko-shê kei-kwaan ts'eung haî yûng laì tsô mi-yĕ kà?

5. Yaŭ ti pô-ping sz haî kîn-chaì sheûng yaŭ keî toh kòh p'aaù-ping t'uēn?

6. Pô-ping sz kè p'aaù-ping t'uēn yaŭ keî toh kòh ko-shê p'aaù-ping yĭng?

7. Chung-Kûng kè ko-shê p'aaù-ping yĭng yûng mi-yĕ mŏ-heì à?

8. Chung-Kûng kè fōng-chìn-ch'e sz yaŭ keî toh kòh t'uēn à?

9. Fōng Chìn-ch'e sz kè yat-kòh t'uēn yaŭ keî toh kòh chìn-p'aaù lĭn à?

10. Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan yaŭ keî toh kòh fóh-tsìn t'ūng* sz à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 123

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

... chi nôi within ..., in ..., within the limit...

ko-shê kei-kwaan ts'eung lîn antiaircraft machine gun company

p'aaù-ping t'uēn artillery regiment

ko-shê p'aaù-ping yîng antiaircraft battalion

fōng chìn-ch'e sz antitank division

faán chi on the contrary, contrarily, but, instead of

chìn-p'aaù lîn firing battery

fóh-tsìn t'ūng* rocket launcher; a.f.: fóh-tsìn faàt-shê heì, fóh-tsìn p'aaù

fóh-tsìn t'ūng* sz rocket launcher division

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 124

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Ts'îng neĭ kóng hă kwaan-ue Chung-Kûng kè chong-kaàp pô-tuî* kè yĕ peî ngŏh-teî t'eng, Hŏh Chung-Kaaù?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Ni ti taan-waî* kè chong-peî t'ūng fàn-lîn haî yaū So-Luēn kung-k'ap. Taân-haî yan-waî yān-uēn fàn-lîn pat-tsuk, yaū-k'eĭ-shĭ haî pó-yeŭng t'ūng t'ung-sùn fong-mîn, ni ti taan-waî* kè haaû-lîk ooĭ kòng-tai.

P: Chung-Kûng kè k'ē-ping ne?

H: Chung-Kûng kè Lûk-Kwan taaî-k'oì yaŭ nğ-kòh ĭ sheûng kè k'ē-ping sz. Ni ti k'ē-ping sz peî-kaaù pô-ping sz saì ti, ping-lîk yaū seì-ts'in yān chì lûk-ts'in yān.

P: Chung-Kûng kè kung-ping ne?

H: Chung-Kûng kè kung-ping yaŭ nāng-lîk kìn-chuk k'iū-leūng, sau-chîng tô-lô, pò-chì teî-luî, saú-sòk teî-luî, p'òh-waaî teî-luî. Kìn-chaì sheûng kè kung-ping sheūng-shĭ tòng tsô pô-ping.

P: K'uĭ-teî kè kìn-chuk chong-peî tîm à?

H: Yan-waî kei-foŏ uēn-ts'uēn k'uèt-fât ch'ŭng kei-haaî-fà kè kìn-chuk chong-peî, t'ūng-shĭ shĭ-sheūng k'uèt-fât yaù-chî kè chong-peî uē ch'ŏh-t'aū* t'ūng ch'aán, lîng-tò Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan kung-ping taan-waî* shîng-waì lŏ-kung tuî*. Sui-în yaŭ ni ti haân-chaì, taân-haî kung-ping taan-waî* p'ó-t'ung nāng-kaù yûng yān-lîk foŏ-kung toî-t'aì chong-peî, uēn-shîng k'uĭ-teî waî-t'òk kè yâm-mô.

Major White: Sir, can you tell us something about the Chinese Communist armored forces?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: Equipment and training for these units have been furnished by the Soviet Union. The effectiveness of these units may be reduced by insufficient training of personnel, particularly in maintenance and communication.

W: How about the Chinese Communist cavalry?

H: The Chinese Communist Army probably includes five or more cavalry divisions. These cavalry divisions are smaller than their infantry counterparts, ranging from 4,000 to 6,000 in strength.

W: How about the Chinese Communist engineers?

H: Chinese Communist engineers are capable of bridge construction, road repair, mine laying and detection, and demolition. Organic engineer units are often used as infantry.

W: How about their construction equipment?

H: An almost complete lack of heavy mechanical construction equipment and frequent shortages of such rudimentary equipment as picks and shovels tend to reduce Chinese Communist Army engineer units to the role of labor gangs. Despite these limitations, however, engineer units generally have been able to substitute human labor for equipment and get their assigned tasks accomplished.

白少校：請你講吓關於中共嘅裝甲部隊*嘅野俾我地聽，何中校？

何中校：呢啲單位*嘅裝備同訓練係由蘇聯供給．但係因為人員訓練不足，尤其是單位*嘅效力會被降低．

白：中共嘅騎兵呢？

何：中共嘅陸軍大概有五個以上嘅騎兵師，嘅師．呢啲騎兵師比較步兵師細啲，兵力由四千人至六千人．

白：中共嘅工兵呢？

何：中共嘅工兵有能力建築橋樑，修整道路，佈置地雷，搜索地雷，破壞地雷．嘅工兵常時做建築工嘅人託裝如單制，建築備兵限力嘅軍呢用委化稚陸有够地械幼共然能佢機乏中雖通成呀重缺到．普完點乏常令隊*位*，備缺時，工單備裝全時鐘勞兵裝築完同同為工替建乎，頭*成係代．

白：佢為幾備鋤*位*但工務因

何：

READING MATERIAL

中共裝甲部隊之裝備與訓練實由蘇聯供給．但人員訓練不足，而以保養與通信方面尤為甚．因此彼等單位之效力降低．

至於騎兵方面，約有五師之衆．此等騎兵師較步兵為細，兵力約有四千至六千人之多．

至於工兵方面，彼等能建橋，修道，佈雷，搜雷，破雷等工作；而常以建制之工兵營皆裝工重不單情力務之人任之．其勞兵委託建築頭工然其如步幼故兵以其所工而成之缺可

至於砲兵方面，彼等能建橋，修道，佈雷，搜雷，破雷等工作；而常以建制之工兵營皆裝備重不單情力務之人任之．其勞兵委託建築頭工然其如步幼故兵以其所工而成之缺可

中共裝甲部隊之裝備與訓練實由蘇聯供給．但人員訓練不足，而以保養與通信方面尤為甚．因此彼等單位之效力降低．

至於騎兵方面，約有五師之衆．此等騎兵師較步兵為細，兵力約有四千至六千人之多．

至於工兵方面，彼等能建橋，修道，佈雷，搜雷，破雷等工作；而常以建制之工兵營皆裝備重不單情力務之人任之．其勞兵委託建築頭工然其如步幼故兵以其所工而成之缺可

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 124

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng chong-kaàp pô-tuî* kè chong-peî t'ūng fàn-lîn toh-shò haî yaū pin kwòk kung-k'ap?

2. K'uĭ-teî kè yān-uēn fàn-lîn kaù m̄-kaù à?

3. Yaū-k'eî-shî haî pin leŭng fong-mîn m̄-kaù à?

4. Keî-în k'uĭ-teî kè yān-ts'oî pat-tsuk, kóh ti taan-waî* kè haaû-lîk tsaû ooĭ tîm-yeûng* à?

5. Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keî toh kòh k'ē-ping sz à?

6. K'uĭ-teî kè k'ē-ping sz taaî ti, yik-waâk pô-ping sz taaî ti à?

7. K'uĭ-teî kè pô-ping sz yaŭ keî taaî à?

8. Yat-poon laî kóng, kung-ping kè kung-tsòk paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?

9. Taân-haî kìn-chaî sheûng kung-ping yaŭ-shî shĭng-waî mi-yĕ ping à?

10. Tîm-kaaî kìn-chaî sheûng kung-ping ooĭ shĭng-waî lō-kung tuî* à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 124

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pat-tsuk (lit.) insufficient, not enough, deficiency; synonym: m̄-kaù; pat (lit.) synonym: m̄ (colloq.) 'a negative, not, do not', Cf., IU 27; tsuk (lit,) 'the foot, enough, satisfied, complete'; e.g.: fàn-līn pat-tsuk (lit.) 'insufficient training'; yān sam pat-tsuk (lit.) 'the heart of man is never satisfied'

kòng-tai to reduce, to fall, to descend, to degrade, to come down; synonym: kòng-lôk 'to come down', abbr.: kòng, lôk; a.p. hōng 'to submit to, to bring to terms'; e.g.: hōng tík (lit.) 'to go over to the enemy, to surrender', Cf., IU 17 & 91

sheūng-shí always, frequently, constantly, often; a.f.: shí-sheūng; synonym: sheūng-sheūng, shí-shí; abbr.: sheūng (lit.) 'often, usually, regular, common'; e.g. sheūng yûng 'a general usage'; shí (abbreviation of shí-haû); IU 15

tòng tsô a.f.: tòng tsòk; abbr.: tòng; to use as, to regard as, to use one thing as the equivalent of another, to consider as being; tòng 'to pawn, just, to act as', Cf., IU 24; tsô Cf., IU 4 & 8; tòng .....tsô 'take.....as'; can be used separately with the object in between, or together in a "tseung" construction; when the object is long, the "tseung.....tòng tsô" form is used

yaù-chî young, juvenile, immature, rudimentary; e.g.: yaù-chî uēn* 'a kindergarten school'; abbr.: yaù, chî (lit.); antonym: lŏ 'old, aged'; e.g.: lŏ yaù 'old and young'

t'aū the head, the top, the best, first; suffix for noun; e.g.: ch'ŏh-t'aū* 'a hoe, a mattock', IU 42

lŏ-kung tuî* labor gangs; lŏ-kung IU 37; tuî* IU 77

foó-kung hard labor; foó 'bitter, affliction, in a bad circumstance', IU 45; kung 'a labor, a workman, a job, the time occupied in doing a piece of work'

t'aì-toî in place of another, on behalf of, to substitute, instead of, for; synonym: toî-t'aì; abbr.: toî, t'aì

waî-t'òk to commission, to entrust to/with, to consign to; synonym: waî-yâm Cf, IU 16 & 55; waî (lit.) 'to depute, to send, to commission, to put, in charge of, to give up, to bow under a burden'; t'òk 'to commit to, to entrust with, to charge with'; Inter. (see IU 18)

kaai-yan (lit.) only because of...., it is all owing to..... (summing up all that has preceded); kaai (lit.) equalizing particle 'all, every, entirely'; yan 'because, cause, reason', abbr. of yan-wai

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 125

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Ts'îng neĭ kóng hă Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan kè t'ung-sùn taan-waî* kè yĕ peî ngŏh-teî chi, Hŏh Chung-Kaaù?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Sui-în t'ung-sùn chong-peî kè shò-leûng shiú, t'ūng-shī k'uèt-fât shaû-kwòh fàn-lîn kè tsòk-îp yān-uēn, Chung-Kûng piú-mîng yaŭ ch'ìt-laâp t'ūng pó-yeŭng t'ung-sùn kè nāng-kòn. Ngŏh-teî mŏ kwaan-ue k'uĭ-teî kè p'in-chaì t'ūng chik-cheúng kè ts'eūng-saì saì-tsìt. P'in-chaì m̄-t'ūng waâk-ché i-chiù kòk taan-waî* shóh yaŭ chong-peî kè shò-leûng t'ūng chúng-luî ì tîng.

C: Waî-shang k'ān-mô ne?

H: K'uèt-fât shaû-kwòh fàn-lîn kè waî-shang yān-uēn, pó-k'ap pán, t'ūng moh-tang kè chong-peî, hin-chaì Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan waî-shang k'ān-mô kè haaû-lîk. Waî-shang ch'ìt-shi kè chî-fai koon toh-shò haî chung-sam Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng tóng-uēn, shaû-kwòh se-shiú waâk-ché uēn-ts'uēn mō i-hôk fàn-lîn.

C: Wân-shue taan-waî* ne?

H: Chung-Kûng tsaâp-t'uēn kwan ooĭ yaŭ yat-kòh p'ooì-shûk waâk kìn-chaì sheûng kè tsoì-ch'ŭng ch'e t'uēn. Mooĭ kòh kwan-t'uēn p'ó-t'ung yaŭ leŭng-kòh tsoì-ch'ŭng ch'e lîn t'ūng yat-kòh ngaū-ch'e lîn. Sz t'ūng t'uēn toh-shò k'aaù fei moh-t'òk-fà kè wân-shue taan-waî*.

Captain Cheung: Sir, please tell us something about the Chinese Communist signal units.

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Despite a minimum quantity of signal equipment and a shortage of trained operating personnel, the Chinese Communists have demonstrated the ability to establish and maintain communications. No detailed information is available regarding the organization and function of signal units. Organization probably varies according to the amounts and types of equipment available to individual units.

C: How about the medical services?

H: Shortages of trained medical personnel and of supplies and modern equipment limit the effectiveness of medical services in the Chinese Communist Army. Commanding officers of medical installations are usually loyal Communist Party members with little or no medical training.

C: How about the transportation units?

H: The Chinese Communist army group may have an attached or an organic truck regiment. The army normally has two truck companies and an oxcart company, while the division and the regiment depend mainly on nonmotorized transportation units.

張上尉：請你講吓中共陸軍嘅通信單位*嘅野俾我地知，何中校？

何中校：雖然通信裝練同佢編備，共無全，每一托有·同摩勤多少位*團重重數多乎衛產醫嘅係者？

張：衛生人員，補給品，衛揮過

何：缺乏受過訓練嘅衛生人員，補共施員練

張：輸共

何：運中

受過設立於佢編備嘅作業人員，能幹·嘅詳單

有細節有裝嘅勤務呢？

訓練嘅衛生人員，補給品，衛揮過

裝嘅忠完嘅係者？

軍指受

設黨訓

制生黨學

衛產醫

嘅個團

上兩同·

制有師位*·

建通·單

或普連輸

屬團車運

配軍牛嘅

個個化

一每一托

有·同摩

會團連非

軍車車靠

團重重數

載載多

官些單集

READING MATERIAL

員徒知．
業亦得且與
作但從．姑量不
其即勤，然而致
多，即力，無斷備不良，
之能竟亦判裝制
究下一位編
掌難按通信
備無信
裝養與職實或之
信保制據，同說
通有編可不其裝
共使其節制與信
中縱而細編．通
但不足．情其定之
不其表．詳其，而彼
亦無之類，而彼
有既言種如說

補
其務，然
即勤，
員，生員
人是實黨
生由忠
衛，為
之足多
練不雖
訓亦員練．
有備官訓
乏裝生學
缺式衛醫
共新．過
中與限受
給品有少
率甚

一牛托
有連摩
軍一非
團有靠
集團多
共軍則
中每連
面，與
方團師
車而
位重
載車．
輸上
單重車
運制載
於建連
至或兩輸單位．
屬運
配車，
化運

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 125

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng t'ung-sùn chong-peî shiú, t'ūng-shī yaû k'uèt-fât mi-yĕ?

2. K'uĭ-teî tuì t'ung-sùn fong-mîn, piú-mīng yaŭ mi-yĕ kè nāng-lîk à?

3. K'uĭ-teî kè t'ung-sùn p'in-chaì waâk-ché haî tîm-yeûng* tîng kà?

4. K'uĭ-teî kè waî-shang k'ān-mô haaû-lût hó mà?

5. Tîm-kaaî k'uĭ-teî kè waî-shang k'ān-mô haaû-lût m̄-hó à?

6. K'uĭ-teî kè waî-shang kwan-koon shûk-shik i-hôk kè sheūng-shik mà?

7. Chung-Kûng tsaâp-t'uēn kwan yaŭ keî-toh kòh mi-yĕ kè tsoì-ch'ŭng ch'e t'uēn?

8. Mooĭ kòh kwan-t'uēn yaŭ leŭng-kòh mi-yĕ wân-shue taan-waî*?

9. Sz t'ūng t'uēn toh-shò k'aaù mi-yĕ wân-shue taan-waî* à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 125

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

piú-mîng to manifest, to make clear, to indicate clearly, to demonstrate; piú (lit.) IU 30; mîng 'bright, clear, light, brilliant, to understand'

moh-tang modern, new style, new type; phonetically it is a loan-word from English, (a phonetic transcription used in transliterating the English word modern); synonym: san-shik

hin-chaì to hamper, to embarrass, to obstruct, to limit, to involve in difficulties; hin IU 119; chaì IU 22

chung-sam faithful, loyal, devoted, honest; synonym: chung-shât; abbr.: chung IU 120; sam 'heart, mind' IU 20

tóng-uēn member of a party; tóng synonym: chîng-tóng (a political party, a clique, a faction' IU 33; uēn 'personnel, employee' IU 17; e.g.: Chung-Kwòk Kûng-Ch'aân Tóng tóng-uēn 'members of the Chinese Communist Party'; Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Mān Tóng Tóng-uēn 'members of the Chinese Nationalist Party'

se-shiú a little, a few, some, slightly; abbr.: se, shiú; synonym: ti (colloq.)

se a little, a few, some. The meanings of "se" and "ti" are essentially the same, but syntactically there are differences in usage. The former is used in place of any and all auxiliary nouns to signify indefinite plural and is normally preceded with the demonstratives or interrogatives when the number is not specific, e.g.: ni ti yān 'these people'; ti yān 'the people', 'some people'. Also as sign of comparative degree more....., -er, e.g.: k'uĭ ko ti 'he is taller' (Cf., IU 4). Whereas the latter is restricted to usage as sign of comparative degree, and is not applicable in combination with any demonstrative or interrogative to signify definite plural.

i-hôk science of medicine; i 'to heal', to cure, to treat'; synonym: i-liū IU 98; hôk IU 3

ngaū-ch'e lîn an oxcart company; A.N. kòh

tsùng-sź.....taân (lit., an adversative sentence pattern) although.....but; even if, granted that.....but; synonym: sui-în.....taân-haî (colloq.); sui-în 'although, even if, granted that'; taān-haī 'but'

pat-taân.....ch'é (lit.) not only.....but also; synonym: m̄-chî ì-ch'é (colloq.)

koo-ch'é (lit., initial particle for euphonic purpose; abbr.: koo) meanwhile, for the time being

uĕ-k'eî.....pat-uē (lit., a comparative sentence pattern) than, it is better.....than

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 126

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan tsuì taaî kè chìn-shût taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ à, Hŏh Chung-Kaaù?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaì: Haî yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn. Yaŭ seì-kòh yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn chîk-tsìp taî-shûk Pak-P'îng Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô.

C: Yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn kè p'in-chaì haî tîm kà?

H: Yaŭ seung-tong shan-shuk sìng. Mooĭ kòh yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn yaū leŭng-kòh chì lûk-kòh tsaâp-t'uēn kwan tsŏ-shîng. Yat-kòh yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn kè hâ-shûk taan-waî* shì-sheūng peî p'aaì-hîn t'ūng k'eì-t'a kè yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn kè taan-waî* taam-yâm tûk-lâp yâm-mô. Yat-kòh yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn kè ping-lîk yaŭ î-shâp-nğ-maân yān chì lûk-shâp-nğ-maân yān pat-tîng*.

C: Tsaâp-t'uēn kwan kè p'in-chaì haî tîm kà?

H: Tsaâp-t'uēn kwan haî yat-kòh chìn-shût t'ūng haang-chìng sz-lîng pô, haî yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn t'ūng hâ-shûk kwan-t'uēn chi kaan tsòk-îp, Mooĭ-kòh tsaâp-t'uēn kwan p'ó-t'ung yaū saam-kòh kwan-t'uēn tsŏ-shîng, taâm-haî yaŭ-shì yaū leŭng-kòh chì lûk-kòh tsŏ-shîng. Shò-mûk kè pìn-kang haî yan-waî shik-yìng chìn-taù ngaì-k'ap kè sui-iù, yaū yat-kòh tsaâp-t'uēn kwan tiû-tûng kwan-t'uēn huì taî-î-kòh tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan. Yat-kòh tsaâp-t'uēn kwan kè ping-lîk yaŭ nğ-maân yān chì shâp-nğ-maân yān pat-tîng*.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 126

Captain Cheung: What is the largest tactical unit in the Chinese Communist army, sir?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: It is the field army. There are four field armies directly subordinate to Headquarters of the Army of Peiping.

C: What is the organization of a field army?

H: There is considerable flexibility. Each field army is composed of from two to six army groups. Subordinate units of one field army frequently are detached and sent on independent missions with elements from other field armies. The troop strength of a field army may vary from 250,000 to 650,000 men.

C: What is the organization of an army group?

H: The army group is a tactical and administrative headquarters operating between field armies and subordinate armies. Each army group usually is composed of three armies, although the number may vary from two to six. This variation is caused by the shifting of armies from one army group to another whenever the exigencies of combat require it. The strength of an army group may range from 50,000 to 150,000 troops.

張上尉：野也係單位係直屬軍他務。個軍個萬
何中校：戰術個司？戰。被担力定。兩戰其任五
張：野有戰既四總嘅野成常位兵不。由野同立十
何：戰相大既有軍點個組時單既入。軍一派任有。團個這獨二
中共，野隸團伸六既野個至既係。部，業組。急團既。
呀係接軍當至團既一人軍軍野每但目需第力
最校？陸係每軍位既團萬點。令間軍組鬥動團不。
軍中軍團平制。團單團軍五係戰同軍由係一團人。司之個個戰調集人
陸何戰屬既縮個下戰野六編一軍集有變，個五。政團三六應軍個萬
張：集集
何：團團

共軍最大之戰術單位，直隸北平陸軍總部。

中共擁有四個野戰軍團，為常二共軍團集十大軍團，計有一一，其計個一一，以十五力量六至萬果然，三為不兵野至萬果然，部間以團目

通有中共之，令之常軍數性，計，司團通個其縮團觀之軍，六故伸軍此之軍，六故當戰由政屬衆至，相野，行下之二需有一衆，及與萬以急制為之，術團五或之編軍萬，戰軍十時鬥之團五，一戰至但戰

作其軍集而業兵團團集團軍集則力組軍團，為野萬，應軍於五之，團介有成，為集團軍之間互有軍團調動。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 126

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan yaŭ keî toh kòh yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn?
2. Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan tsuì taaî kè chìn-shût taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ?
3. Ni ti yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn chîk-tsìp taî-shûk mi-yĕ pô à?
4. Mooĭ-kòh yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn yaŭ keî toh kòh tsaâp-t'uēn kwan à?
5. Mooĭ-kòh yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn kè ping-lîk yaŭ keî taaî à?
6. Yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn kè hâ-shûk taan-waî* sheūng-shî peî p'aaì-hîn huì taam-yâm ti mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?
7. Tsaâp-t'uēn kwan haî yat-kŏh mi-yĕ sz-lîng pô à?
8. Tsaâp-t'uēn kwan kè ping-lîk taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keî-taaî à?
9. Mooĭ-kòh tsaâp-t'uēn kwan yaŭ keî toh kòh kwan-t'uēn à?
10. Tîm-kaaî tsaâp-t'uēn kwan kè ping-lîk yaŭ pìn-kang à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 126

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chìn-shût taan-waî* tactical unit, A.N. kòh

yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn field army, A.N. kòh

shan-shuk sìng elasticity, flexibility, able to expand and to contract; shan 'to stretch out, to extend, to report'; shuk 'to draw in, to draw back, to coil up, to shrink, to shorten'; sìng 'nature, disposition' IU 27

tsó-shîng to accomplish, to organize, to constitute, established

p'aaì-hîn to detach, to send, (elements of armed forces) synonym: fan-hîn; e.g.: p'aaì-hîn tuî* 'detachment'; fan-hîn taan-waî* 'detached unit'

tûk-lâp yâm-mŏ independent mission Cf., taan-tûk IU 58; tsẑ-chî 'self-governing, autonomy' Cf., IU 36

pìn-kang to change, to alter, variation; Cf., pìn-fà IU 56; Cf., kang-koì IU 64

ngaì-kap perilous, hazardous, exigency; Cf., kán-iù IU 8

pat-tîng* uncertain, not sure; a.f.: pat-yat-tîng; synonym: m̄-tîng, m̄-yat-tîng (colloq.)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 127

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Mi-yĕ haî tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan à, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Piu-chún tsaâp-t'uēn kwan yaū hâ-shûk kwan-t'uēn tsó-shīng, taân-haî tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan chîk-tsìp yaū sz t'ūng t'uēn tsó-shīng, chung-kaan mŏ kwan-t'uēn sz-lîng pô.

C: Tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ tâk-shuē taan-waî* à?

H: Paau-k'oòt p'aaù-ping sz, chong-kaàp sz, k'ē-ping sz, ko-shê-p'aaù-ping t'uēn, kung-ping t'uēn, kîng-kaaì sz. Ni ti tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan kè tâk-shuē taan-waî* kè chúng-luî t'ūng toh-shiú pat-tîng.

C: Yĕ-chìn kè shī-haû, tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan haî m̄-haî ts'uēn-t'aî tsòk-chìn kà?

H: K'uĭ-teî taaî-k'oì m̄-haî ts'uēn-t'aî tsòk-chìn, pat-kwòh yûng tsó-shīng taan-waî* p'ooì-shûk chûng-iù chìn-shût taan-waî*, chi-oōn tsòk-chìn chìn-taù.

C: Yat-kòh Chung-Kûng kwan-t'uēn kè p'in-chaì haî tîm kà?

H: Yat-kòh Chung-Kûng kwan-t'uēn p'ó-t'ung yaū saam-kòh pô-ping sz, yat-kòh p'aaù-ping t'uēn waâk yat-kòh p'aaù-ping yīng, yat-kòh kîng-kaaì yīng, yat-kòh ching-ch'aàt ying tsó-shīng.

C: Kwan-t'uēn k'ap kè k'ān-mô pô-tuî* ne?

H: Kwan-t'uēn k'ap kè k'ān-mô pô-tuî* paau-k'oòt yat-kòh

kung-ping yîng, yat-kòh t'ung-sùn lîn, yat-kòh lûk-kwan i-uên*, yat-kòh wân-shue yîng. Kwan-t'uēn kè p'in-hô yaū taî-yat chì taî-ts'at-shâp, ping-lîk î-maân-yat-ts'in yān chì saam-maân yān pat-tîng*.

Captain Cheung: What is the special army group?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: The standard army group is composed of subordinate armies, but the special army group is made up directly of divisions and regiments without any intermediate army headquarters.

C: What types of specialized units are included in special army groups?

H: Special army groups may include: Artillery, armored and cavalry divisions; antiaircraft artillery and engineer regiments; and a security division. The types and number of these specialized units in the special army groups, however, vary considerably.

C: Do the special army groups operate as an entity in the field?

H: They apparently do not operate as an entity, but are attached, by element, to major tactical units for support in combat operations.

C: What is the organization of a Chinese Communist army?

H: A Chinese Communist army normally is composed of three infantry divisions, an artillery regiment or an artillery battalion, a security battalion and a reconnaissance battalion.

C: What about the service troops at army level?

H: Service troops at army level include an engineer battalion, a signal company, an army hospital and a transport battal-

ion. Armies are numbered from 1 to 70 and have varied in strength from 21,000 to 30,000 men.

張上尉：校？但成，
何中校：中成，組成作
張上尉：別括特包，全體
何中校：包特殊騎警單位*呀？射啲同
張：別括特包，全體
何：包特殊騎警單位*呀？射啲同
張：戰地野佢，高呢類
何：地佢，高呢類
張：個個一一，師一個，一警
何：個一一，師一個，一警
張：團軍，營，一至萬
何：團軍，營，一至萬
張：團軍，營，一至萬
何：團軍，營，一至萬
張：團軍，營，一至萬
何：團軍，營，一至萬

之．在者前成．組團與組成．師團部．由師團司令部．直屬軍團下屬軍團以設軍不設特團間之．共準備與師

騎而一戰師，甲師．不要戒師重各少裝警多屬目配師團數位+兵兵其單砲工及成括類組包種其團兵之以戰．

特別高殊戰支位+，特野位+作別射單時援師等．單定術

三有則言之，一營，一兵砲一或．

兵運工個有一個約力其編制括一個+，兵醫院+；其言之，概隊+則軍十七陸．

部間至衆．務一之已矣．勤，由人而此．之連則萬如過．級信號三至千．團通編不亦．軍個其一營，營萬致大輸二

至於中共軍團，大體上言之，則有三一師，一個砲兵營，一個砲兵察．步兵師營，一個個偵警戒個

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 127

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan chîk-tsìp yaū mi-yĕ taan-waî* tsó-shīng?

2. Piu-chún tsaâp-t'uēn kwan yaū mi-yĕ taan-waî* tsó-shīng à?

3. Pin yat-chúng kè tsaâp-t'uēn kwan mŏ kwan-t'uēn sz-lîng pô à?

4. Tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan paau-k'oôt ti mi-yĕ tâk-shuē taan-waî* à?

5. Tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan yaŭ pin chúng, t'ūng yaŭ keî-toh tâk-shuē taan-waî*?

6. Tâk-pît tsaâp-t'uēn kwan yûng mi-yĕ taan-waî chi-oōn tsòk-chîn à?

7. Chung-Kûng kwan-t'uēn yaū mi-yĕ taan-waî* tsó-shīng à?

8. Kwan-t'uēn k'ap kè k'ān-mô kè p'in-chaì haî tîm à?

9. Kwan-t'uēn kè ping-lîk yaŭ keî taaî à?

10. Kwan-t'uēn kè p'in-hô keî taaî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 127

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

piu-chún tsaâp-t'uēn kwan standard army group, A.N. kòh

tâk-shuē (lit.) characteristic, special, specially, peculiar; tâk 'special, specially, purposely, alone', abbreviation of tâk-pît; shuē 'different, unlike, very, extremely, to kill'; (lit.) a superlative particle

toh-shiú how much?, how many?, many or few; synonym: toh kwá (lit.) keî-toh (colloq.)

k'ān-mô pô-tuî* service unit (or element), service troops, A.N. kòh; Cf., kwan-k'ān tuî* IU 76

lûk-kwan i-uên* army hospital, A.N. kaan

p'in-hô numbers designated for military combat units; e.g.: taî-yat kwan-t'uēn, taî-i kwan-t'uēn etc., 'the 1st army, the 2nd army etc.'; equivalent to faan-hô IU 92

ī-ǐ-ǐ (lit.) a final particle imparting at the same time to the sentence a shade of exclusiveness — there is nothing more to be said, that is all, only — it is more emphatic than ī-ǐ 'that is all, nothing more' — gives finality to the clause; equivalent to chē-mà (colloq.) Cf., IU 24

ǐ (lit.) a frequently used final particle denoting that the sense has been fully expressed; equivalent to là (colloq.) IU 2

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 128

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kûng kè pô-ping sz kè p'in-chaì haî tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî "saam-kòk yîng" kè. Mooǐ kòh sz yaŭ saam-kòh pô-ping t'uēn, yat-kòh kîng-kaaì yîng, yat-kòh waî-shaang lîn, yat-kòh ching-ch'aàt lîn, yat-kòh kung-ping lîn, yat-kòh wân-shue lîn, yat-kòh t'ung-sùn lîn. Sz kè p'aaù-ping yaŭ yat-kòh p'aaù-ping yîng, yat-kòh yat-î-lîng kung-leì pik-kik-p'aaù yîng. Pô-ping sz shât-tsaì ping-lîk yaŭ paàt-ts'in chì yat-maân koon-ping pat-tîng.

C: Chong-kaàp sz ne?

H: Chung-Kûng chong-kaàp sz yaū leŭng-kòh chìn-ch'e t'uēn, yat-kòh moh-t'òk fà pô-ping t'uēn, yat-kòh moh-t'òk fà p'aaù-ping t'uēn, t'ūng lîng-ngoî chi-oōn taan-waî* uē kung-ping, t'ung-sùn, ching-ch'aàt tsó-shîng. Mooǐ kòh chìn-ch'e t'uēn yaŭ seì-kòh chìn-ch'e lîn, yat-kòh wân-shue lîn, yat-kòh pó-yeŭng lîn, yat-kòh ch'ŭng chìn-ch'e t'ūng tsẑ-tûng t'ui-tsùn p'aaù lîn, yat-kòh ch'ung-fung ts'eung lîn, koó-kaì yat-kòh chong-kaàp sz kè ping-lîk yaŭ seì-ts'in koon-ping tsòh yaû*.

C: K'ē-ping sz ne?

H: T'eng-mān Chung-Kûng yaŭ k'ē-ping sz ts'uēn-tsoî, ping-lîk yaŭ seì-ts'in chì lûk-ts'in yān pat-tîng*. K'uǐ-teî kè p'in-chaì t'ūng kwan-peî pat-ts'eūng.

Captain Cheung: What is the organization of a Chinese Communist infantry division?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: It is "triangular", having three infantry regiments, a security battalion, a medical company, an engineer company, a transport company, a signal company, and division artillery consisting of an artillery battalion and a 120-mm mortar battalion. Actual strengths of infantry divisions vary from 8,000 to 10,000 officers and men.

C: How about armored divisions?

H: Chinese Communist armored divisions are composed of two tank regiments, a motorized infantry regiment, a motorized artillery regiment, and separate supporting engineer, signal and reconnaissance units. Each tank regiment is made up of four tank companies, a transport company, a mantenance company, a heavy tank and self-propelled gun company and a submachine gun company. The strength of an armored division is estimated at 4,000 officers and men.

C: How about cavalry divisions?

H: Cavalry divisions, ranging in strength from 4,000 to 6,000, are known to exist in the Chinese Communist army. Little is known of their organization and armament.

張上尉：兵，個兵營八
何中校：嗦？個步連，一砲公有
點三衛連師二兵
係有個兵．一際
制師一工連個實．
編個，個訊一師定．
既每營一通，兵不
師．戒，個營步兵
兵既警連一兵．官
步形」個察，砲營萬
既角一偵連個砲一
共「三，個輸一擊至呢
中係團一運有迫千師裝化甲共
甲裝中
張：
何：

托，
摩團，
個兵團，戰連，
一砲，化，
有兵，通信，
師個養，一既
二個保連，
際甲
裝
車摩個戰個一單每運同．官兵
團托個一兩，由團支成一戰鎗四千
兵，通四保連，師兵外組，重鋒有？
有個砲連甲裝化同偵車一個兵師中至備
千軍
四同
有制
力編
兵既
地
存．
定．
不
人．
詳．
六不
衝力呢
連個
察
另
步
兵聞
騎聽
張：
何：

戒，警連，釐至
個輸也公千
一運之二有
團，此一約
兵連，個力
步兵者，一實
個，工形，之
三連，角營師
有察為砲步兵
師偵制個計
兵，編一估
步連，其有
共生，兵營衆
中衛連砲砲之
，訊之擊萬
營通師迫一

團，而，
兵．連動四推千
步之輸自有
化成運其約
托組個及力
摩位一連兵
個單，車師
一援連戰甲
以支車重裝
則立戰，計
師獨個連估
甲千四鎗．
裝若以鋒之
其與團衛成
於，車，組
至團戰連連
兵個養砲
砲每保進
之衆．

聞中共有騎兵在焉，計其兵力有四千至六千之衆．其軍備與編制尚屬疑問，因實情不詳，未可知之也．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 128

QUESTIONS

1. Chung Kûng kè pô-ping sz yaŭ keî-toh kòh pô-ping t'uēn à?

2. Chung-Kûng pô-ping sz ch'uî-chóh yaŭ saam-kòh pô-ping t'uēn chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ taan-waî* à?

3. Sz kè p'aaù-ping paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ taan-waî* à?

4. Chung-Kûng pô-ping sz kè ping-lîk yaŭ keî taaî à?

5. Chung-Kûng chong-kaàp sz yaŭ ti mi-yĕ chîn-ch'e t'ūng moh-t'ŏk fà taan-waî?

6. Chong-kaàp sz chûng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ lîng-ngoî chi-oōn taan-waî* à?

7. Chong-kaàp sz kè chîn-ch'e t'uēn yaŭ ti mi-yĕ lîn à?

8. Chung-Kûng yaŭ mŏ k'ē-ping sz à?

9. Kóm, k'ē-ping sz kè ping-lîk yaŭ keî taaî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 128

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

saam-kǒk yĭng triangle, triangular; e.g.: seì-kǒk yĭng 'four-cornered-shape (rectangular)'; nǧ-kǒk yĭng 'five-cornered-shape (pentagon)', Cf., nǧ-kǒk taaî hā IU 16

lîng-ngoî in addition, besides, exclusive, separate; abbr.: lîng

pǒ-yeŭng lîn maintenance company (military unit); A.N. kǒh

t'eng-mān to hear about, to hear — as a rumor; synonym: t'eng-kìn (colloq.); t'eng 'to hear, to listen', IU 3; mān 'to hear, to smell, to make known to', Cf., mān-mēng* IU 42

kwan-peî armament, military preparation

pat-ts'eūng the details are not yet known; synonym: meî-ts'eūng, m̄-ts'eūng-saì, Cf., IU 14; pat (lit.) equivalent to m̄ (colloq.); ts'eūng 'in detail, particulars, to report', abbreviation of ts'eūng-saì

yă (lit.) a most frequently used final particle, and it may occur in the middle of a sentence, at the end of correlated words, giving special emphasis to them; equivalent to à (colloq.). An abbreviation of yă-ts'ăng 'also, too', Cf., ts'ăng-king', IU 26

în (lit.) this particle is used as a final particle, also as an interrogative particle, how, why, where

î-mân a query, a difficult question; î 'to doubt, to distrust, to suspect'; mân 'to ask, to inquire'; Cf., mân-t'aî IU 14

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 129

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kûng kè yĕ-chìn p'aaù-ping sz kè p'in-chaì haî tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Sui-ìn yaŭ ti sz hóh-nāng yaŭ seì-kòh t'uēn, taân-haî p'ó-t'ung yaŭ saam-kòh t'uēn. Ti t'uēn p'in-chaì yat-chì, taân-haî p'ooì-peî kè ping-heì ts'aam-ch'i pat-t'ūng. T'uēn tsoì fan-waì saam yîng, mooĭ yîng yaŭ saam-kòh chìn-p'aaù tuî*. Ch'uĭ ts'ź chi ngoî, sz k'ap yaŭ yat-kòh ko-shê-p'aaù yîng t'ūng yat-kòh kîng-kaaì yîng. T'uēn k'ap yaŭ yat-kòh ko-shê-p'aaù lîn.

C: Chung-Kûng Lûk-kwan ch'ŭng p'aaù-ping tsaâp-chung yĕ-chìn p'aaù-ping sz. K'uĭ-teî yûng mi-yĕ p'aaù à?

H: Yaū Meĭ-Kwòh yat-lîng-ngĕ kung-leì laū-taân*-p'aaù ĭ-chì So-luēn yat-ngĕ-î kung-leì fóh-p'aaù —— laū-taân* p'aaù t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk yat-ngĕ-ngĕ kung-leì laū-taân*-p'aaù.

C: Chung-Kûng kè pô-ping t'uēn kè p'in-chaì haî tîm kà?

H: Yat-kòh pô-ping t'uēn p'ó-t'ung yaŭ saam-kòh pô-ping yîng, yat-kòh ch'ŭng ping-heì yîng, yat-kòh kîng-kaaì lîn, yat-kòh waî-shaang lîn, yat-kòh ching-ch'aàt t'ūng t'ung-sùn lîn. Chŭng ping-heì yîng yaŭ yat-kòh laū-taân*-p'aaù lîn, p'ooì yaŭ ts'at-shâp kung-leì laū-taân*-p'aaù; yat-kòh pik-kik-p'aaù lîn, p'ooì-yaŭ yat-î-lîng kung-leì pik-kik-p'aaù; yat-kòh mō-tsôh-lîk-p'aaù lîn, p'ooì-yaŭ ngĕ-shâp-ts'at kung-leì mō-tsôh-lîk-p'aaù; yat-kòh ko-shê-p'aaù lîn, p'ooì-yaŭ shâp-î tîng-tîm ts'at kung-leì ko-shê-kei-kwaan ts'eung.

Captain Cheung: What is the organization of a Chinese Communist field artillery division?

Lt. Colonel Höh: Although some divisions apparently have four regiments each, they normally consist of three regiments. The regiments are organized uniformly but are equipped with a diversity of weapons. Regiments are subdivided into three battalions, each having three firing batteries. In addition, at division level there are an antiaircraft battalion and a security battalion. At regimental level there is an antiaircraft company.

C: The heavier artillery of the Chinese Communist army is concentrated in the field artillery divisions. What artillery do they use?

H: It ranges from United States 105-mm howitzers to Soviet 152-mm gun-howitzers and United States 155-mm howitzers.

C: What is the organization of a Chinese Communist infantry regiment?

H: An infantry regiment normally consists of three infantry battalions, a heavy weapons battalion, a security company, a medical company and a reconnaissance and communications company. The heavy weapons battalion consists of a howitzer company armed with 70-mm howitzers; a mortar company with 120-mm mortars; a recoilless rifle company with 57-mm recoilless rifles; and an antiaircraft company with 12.7-mm antiaircraft machine guns.

張上尉：係、再營射點，但係一致團隊砲高射制團制同戰高一編個編不個個有師有哟參有團兵能．器營級．團砲可團兵每師營，戒野哟師個嘅，外警既有配三之個．

何中校：中雖普但分除同砲共然通係為此一連陸軍用一二五步步個衛兵十有力砲點、定

張：中共兵師．佢一營，一．有連，無座二兵連信，擊一聲有．

何：由美聯一國美同以砲彈砲彈砲．

張：中共集呀？

何：一一．有連，無座二係，但一致團隊砲高射制團制同戰高一編個編不個個有師有哟參有團兵能．器營級．團砲可團兵每師營，戒野哟師個嘅，外警既有配三之個．

張：中共陸地國五五歩個一個重七配座力定

何：一一．有連，無座二係，但一致團隊砲高射制團制同戰高一編個編不個個有師有哟參有團兵能．器營級．團砲可團兵每師營，戒野哟師個嘅，外警既有配三之個．

張上尉：中共雖然通係為此一連陸軍用一二五步步個衛兵十有力砲點、定

何中校：美由蘇至同砲彈砲彈砲．

張：中共集呀？

何：一一．有連，無座二係，但一致團隊砲高射制團制同戰高一編個編不個個有師有哟參有團兵能．器營級．團砲可團兵每師營，戒野哟師個嘅，外警既有配三之個．

張上尉：中共雖然通係為此一連陸軍用一二五步步個衛兵十有力砲點、定

何中校：美由蘇至同砲彈砲彈砲．

若戒盡。但警不隊。團，營與則砲戰個三有常通師兵砲戰野之下也，言是觀。個三有射砲配器兵高而一，個三有常通師兵砲戰野共可團之言

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 129

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng kè yĕ-chìn-p'aaù-ping-sz p'ó-t'ung yaŭ keî toh kòh t'uēn à?
2. Taân-haî yaŭ ti sz hóh-nāng yaŭ keî toh kòh t'uēn à?
3. T'uēn kè p'in-chaì yat-chì, taân-haî p'ooì-peî tîm à?
4. Yat-kòh t'uēn yaŭ keî toh kòh yīng à?
5. Mooĭ kòh yīng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ kè p'aaù-ping taan-waî* à?
6. Chung-Kûng yĕ-chìn-p'aaù-ping-sz yûng ti mi-yĕ p'aaù à?
7. Chung-Kûng pô-ping-t'uēn p'ó-t'ung yaŭ keî toh kòh pô-ping yīng à?
8. Pô-ping-t'uēn ch'uî-chóh yaŭ saam-kòh pô-ping yīng chi ngoî chûng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ taan-waî* à?
9. Ch'ŭng ping-heì yīng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ taan-waî* à?
10. Laū-taân* p'aaù-lìn p'ooì-yaŭ ti mi-yĕ ping-heì à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 129

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ch'uî ts'ź chi ngoî (lit.) besides this, with the exception of, in addition to; synonym: ch'uî-chôh ni ti chi ngoî (colloq.), Cf., ch'uî-chôh ..... chi ngoî IU 13

ĭ-chì so that, until, to, as to, together with, resulting in

fôh-p'aaù gun (refers to any piece of gun with the exception of light-weapons or small arms) A.N. moōn

ch'ŭng ping-heì yîng heavy weapons battalion; A.N. kòh

mō-tsôh-lîk-p'aaù recoilless rifle; A.N. moōn

mō-tsôh-lîk-p'aaù lîn recoilless rifle company; A.N. kòh

shîng tsoi (lit.) true, indeed, really, undoubtedly; equivalent to mŏ-ts'òh là, haî là (colloq.); shîng (lit.) 'sincere, true, honest, certainly'; tsoi (lit.) as an exclamatory particle used mostly to emphasize individual words in expressing surprise, admiration or grief; as an interrogative particle used in combination with other particles

wān (lit.) to speak, to say; as an expletive used to show the end of a clause or a pause in a sentence

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 130

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: P'ó-t'ung laì kóng, Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan kè ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî kè ts'ìng-yìng tîm à?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan kè ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî kè tâk-ching haî chúng-luî t'ūng shò-leûng k'uèt-fât yat-chì, chat t'ūng leûng yîk-to hìm-k'uèt. Yat-kòh taan-waî* chi noî, p'ó-t'ung paau-k'oot kòk chúng yìng-sik pat-t'ūng ngoî kwòk chaì t'ūng Chung-kwòk chaì kè ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî.

P: Haî yat-kòh chìn-taù taan-waî*, haî m̄-haî mooĭ kòh yān to p'ooì-yaŭ shaú-kw'aî ping-heì à?

H: M̄-haî. Yan-waî k'uèt-fât ping-heì, Chung-Kûng mŏ paân-faàt hóh-ĭ t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kîng Meĭ, m̄-hóh-ĭ haaû-faàt Meĭ-Kwòk chìn-taù taan-waî* mooĭ kòh yān to p'ooì-yaŭ shaú-kw'aî ping-heì.

P: Yat-kòh Chung-Kûng chìn-taù taan-waî* taaî-k'oì yaŭ keî toh yān p'ooì-yaŭ shaú-kw'aî ping-heì à?

H: M̄-toh-tak-kwòh saam-fân chi yat p'ooì-yaŭ shaú-kw'aî ping-heì.

P: Chung-Kwòk chaì kè ping-heì kè chat-teî tîm à?

H: Chat-teî p'ó-t'ung tai-kwòh sai-fong kè piu-chún hó toh. Heì-ts'oî ch'uî-chóh tsuì-kân yaū So-Luēn kung-k'ap chi ngoî, hó-toh tseung-kân ts'aān-kaû-tò pat-hom, ì-ch'é pó-yeŭng chông-t'aaì yat-heùng to hó òk-luèt.

Major White: Generally speaking, what are the conditions of weapons and equipment in the Chinese Communist army?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Weapons and equipment in the Chinese Communist army have been characterized by a lack of standardization as to type and quantity, and by marked deficiencies as to quality and quantity. Weapons and equipment within an individual unit usually include a wide assortment of types and models of varied foreign manufacture as well as of Chinese manufacture.

W: Is each individual in a combat unit armed with small arms?

H: No. In view of their general shortage of weapons, the Chinese Communists by no means attempt to emulate the United States practice of arming each individual in a combat unit with small arms.

W: How many men in a Chinese Communist combat unit have apparently been individually armed with small arms?

H: No more than one-third of the personnel has been armed with small arms.

W: What is the quality of Chinese manufactured weapons?

H: The quality generally has been considerably below Western standards. Much of their matériel, other than that supplied recently by the Soviets, is approaching obsolescence and generally has been in a poor state of maintenance.

白少校：裝同裝係亦包製材多態
何中校：徵量通國都配可國器有器好狀
特同普中人辦法美兵配
器兵既備，內製個有效手多
既質，同有點標供，
軍裝致之國係唔中可配有
陸同一位外唔都概
共？器之單同．係？器，人大
講，中呀兵缺個不備呀兵美個位呀
黎情陸同缺種器門携為美單戰兵
通既共類欠各兵戰手因同門共携過既通咗近向
普備中種都括既個有．以戰中手得製普除將一
白：一係嘅一係？
何：係唔
白：一個多國地
何：唔中質
白何：
何：

不良或由配配．合其
多不製實能爭員好不知
備且外此未國．兵良而而
裝致種，員美備一之堪言
與一各一兵與配之方不待
器不有不一難代份西舊不
兵皆常式每共近三及殘面
之類亦型內中之有不然方
軍與位*其位*知人約則，養
陸量單，單可他位*質助保
共，鬥備故此法單其援於
中質戰裝，觀效鬥但之至
之，其及之．能戰，聯．
言準．兵器缺器無其器蘇多
概標足之兵攜，計兵得甚
手不製其手美試攜近者
合亦自於有競手使用
有縱時
已陷於惡劣狀態中也．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 130

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng Lûk-Kwan k'uèt-fât chong-peî t'ūng mi-yĕ à?
2. K'uĭ-teî ti ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî kè chat, leûng t'ūng chúng-luî tîm à?
3. K'uĭ-teî ti ping toh-shò meî p'ooì-yaŭ mi-yĕ kè ping-heì?
4. Tîm-kaaî k'uĭ-teî meî p'ooì-yaŭ shaú-kw'aî ping-heì ne?
5. Kóm-yeûng* laî t'aî, Chung-Kûng kè chong-peî hó ti a, yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwòk kè hó ti ne?
6. Chung-Kûng kè chìn-taù taan-waî* noî taaî-yeùk yaŭ keî toh yān p'ooì-yaŭ shaú-kw'aî ping-heì à?
7. Chung-Kûng chaì kè ping-heì kè chat-teî tîm à?
8. K'uĭ-teî kè heì-ts'oî t'ūng pó-yeŭng chông-t'aaì tîm à?
9. Pin-kwòh kung-k'ap ti heì-ts'oî peî Chung-Kûng à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 130

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tak-ching (lit.) special features, marks, characteristics; Cf., tâk-sìng IU 96; tâk IU 13; ching 'to prove, evidence, verification, to levy, to collect (taxes or material), to seek for, to solicit, to summon

hìm-k'uèt (lit.) deficiency, deficient of, short of; a.f.: k'uèt-hìm; Cf., k'uèt-shiú k'uèt-fât IU 38 & 85 respectively; hìm 'to owe money, deficiency, lacking'; k'uèt IU 38

yîng-shik type, model, form, pattern; Cf., yîng IU 78, shik IU 31

shaú-kw'aî ping-heî small arms, light-weapons; shaú 'a hand, arm'; kw'aî 'to take by the hand, to lead'; ping-heî 'weapons, arms' IU 62

kîng meĭ (lit) to emulate virtues, to compete for excellence, to strive to excel; kîng abbreviation of kîng-chaang, 'to compete, to quarrel, to wrangle'; Cf., chaang-ts'uî IU 40; meĭ 'beautiful, excellent, admirable, good, delicious'; used in phonetic transcription or transliteration e.g.: Meĭ-Kwòk IU 3

chat-teî quality, natural disposition, substance; Cf., sìng-chat IU 49; chat IU 101; teî 'earth, ground, place', IU 32; as plural ending — teî for personal pronouns and for the word yān; - teî can be written (𠂤) e.g.: ngŏh-teî, yān-teî; it is quite common with some adjectives and adverbs to express the idea: somewhat, rather, by doubling the word and adding -teî*, e.g.: maân-maân-teî*

tseung-kân almost, close to, about to be, approaching; Cf., tseung-loî IU 30

ts'aān-kaû (lit.) old, aged, obsolete; ts'aān 'to injure, to spoil, to destroy, a remnant, residue'; kaû 'old, obsolete, aged, former'

pat-hom (lit.) unworthy, unendurable, hard to bear, intolerable; hom (lit.) 'to bear, to sustain, worthy of, fit for'

ðk-luèt (lit.) very bad, very poor, wicked, foul; ðk 'evil, vicious, wicked, difficult, wrong, bad'; luèt (lit.) 'vile, degraded, bad, inferior, feeble'; antonym: shîn IU 37

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 131

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kûng kè ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî kè pó-k'ap loî-uēn yaū pin-shuè laî kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yaŭ ti haî Yât-Poón chaì kè, Taî-Î Ts'ż Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn kìt-ch'uk chi haû, yaū Yât-Poón foo-wôk kè. Yaŭ ti haî Meĭ-Kwòk chaì kè noî-chìn shī yaū Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Poó foo-wôk kè. Yaŭ ti haî Luēn-Hôp-Kwòk kwan-tuî* kè, haî Hōn-Kwòk foo-wôk kè. Yaŭ ti haî Chung-Kûng chong kè. Yaŭ ti yaū So-Luēn kung-k'ap kè.

P: Yat-kòh Chung-Kûng pô-ping t'uēn yaŭ mi-yĕ ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî à?

H: Ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî paau-k'oòt shaú-ts'eung yat-paàk-paàt-shâp-chi, loî-fûk-ts'eung t'ūng k'a-pan ts'eung seì-paàk-chi, ch'ung-fung ts'eung î-paàk-yat-shâp-ts'at-chi, hing kei-kwaan ts'eung lûk-shâp-chi, ch'ŭng kei-kwaan ts'eung shâp-paàt chi, shâp-î tîng-tîm ts'at kung-leî ko-shê kei-kwaan ts'eung kaú chi, lûk-shâp kung-leî pik-kik p'aaù î-shâp-ts'at-moōn, paàt-shâp-yat kung-leî t'ūng paàt-shâp-î kung-leî pik-kik p'aaù shâp-î-moōn, yat-paàk î-shâp kung-leî pik-kik p'aaù seì-moōn, ng̃-shâp ts'at kung-leî mō tsôh-lîk p'aaù lûk-moōn, fóh-tsìn t'ūng* shâp-paàt-moōn, ts'at-shâp kung-leî pô-ping laū-taân p'aaù seì-moōn, fòh-ch'e hó shiú, mă yat-paàk ng̃-shâp chèk, leŭng-lūn tsoì fòh ch'e saam-shâp-kà, tîn-wâ* ng̃-foò, mō-sìn-tîn kei hó shiú, ch'ak-uĕn kei yat-foò, mông-uĕn kèng leŭng-foò, p'àn-fóh heì yat-foò.

Major White: What are the Chinese Communist sources of supply for weapons and equipment?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Some of them are of Japanese origin, captured from the Japanese at the end of World War II. Some are of United States manufacture, captured from the Chinese Nationalists during the civil war. Some were captured from United Nations forces in Korea. Some are of Chinese Communist manufacture. Some are supplied by the Soviets.

W: What are the weapons and equipment of a Chinese Communist infantry regiment?

H: Its weapons and equipment include 180 pistols, 400 rifles and carbines, 2.7 submachine guns, 60 light machine guns, 18 heavy machine guns, 9 12.7-mm antiaircraft machine guns, 27 60-mm mortars, 12 81-mm, 82-mm mortars, 4 120-mm mortars, 6 57-mm recoilless rifles, 18 rocket launchers, 4 70-mm infantry howitzers, few trucks, 150 horses, 30 carts, 5 telephones, few radios, 1 range finder, 2 binoculars, and 1 flame thrower.

白少校：由源來給補備裝同器？

何中校：大啲府，既界有政既，製備呀？來二，
啲世·民隊+共備，槍枝，
次既國軍中同十衝六，
二獲由國係器八，槍
第停時合啲·兵百枝關
本戰聯有既野一百機，
日內係·給乜槍四輕
製由，啲既供有手槍，
既，啲製獲聯團括實枝
本後既有日之製·停蘇兵包卡七
既黎係束國既國由步備同十
共處啲結美獲韓啲共裝槍一
中邊有戰係停喺有中同復百
兵架？
枝十關七迫擊六步一，遠副
七槍機十釐迫砲釐馬架測一
公釐同百公門貸載電兩
七八，輪線鏡
公釐一七八，
十公，十十門兩無遠
二六一門五筒+四，望
十，十二，箭砲隻副，
八門火彈十五副
九，砲四，榴五話+一
八槍門擊砲門兵百電機·

白：個器

何：一兵

謂次乃聯馬。
可二，於給
蓋第馬之供
，於製得以
源之國時與
來得美戰聯
給乃為韓蘇
補，則在為
之馬干則則
備製若干干
裝本．若若
與日時．而
器為東時．
兵干結戰馬
共若戰內隊*
中，大於軍
矣界之國
之世得合

：列：枝，機八一座兵車鏡機
下百枝，射，
四十枝，無步貸遠電
十高門門釐釐載望線
如槍六釐七二公公輪，無
有實槍公十十七十兩副，
備卡關七二砲十七，一多．
裝及機點砲擊五，匹機無矣
與槍輕定擊迫，門十遠車述
器復，二迫釐門八五測貸陳
兵來枝十釐公四十百，足
之，七，公二砲筒一副副不
團枝十枝十十擊箭馬五一則
兵十一八步八百十六八迫火，話*器餘
共百二槍枝釐公門四，噴，
中一槍關九公十六*砲架，少
槍鋒機槍一二砲彈十副甚
手衝重關十百力榴三兩亦

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 131

QUESTIONS

1. Yaŭ ti Chung-Kûng kè ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî haî pin keî kwòh chaì kè?

2. K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* tak-tó Meĭ-Kwòk chaì kè ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî à?

3. K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* tak-tó Yât-Poón chaì kè ping-heì t'ūng chong-peî à?

4. Yaŭ ti ping-heì haî yaū pin kwòk kung-k'ap kà?

5. Yat-kòh Chung-Kûng pô-ping t'uēn yaŭ keî toh chi shaú-ts'eung à?

6. K'uĭ-teî yaŭ keî toh chi loî-fûk ts'eung t'ūng ch'ung-fung ts'eung à?

7. K'uĭ-teî chûng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ ping-heì à?

8. K'uĭ-teî yaŭ ti mi-yĕ chong-peî à?

9. Fòh-ch'e yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 131

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kìt-ch'uk to wind up, to close, at the end

chèk A.N. for birds, animals, ships, limbs etc., single, one of a pair

leŭng-lūn tsoì-fòh ch'e A.N. kà; two wheel cart, cart

ch'ak-uěn kei range finder

mông-uěn kèng A.N. foò; telescope, binocular; mông IU 115; uěn IU 32; kèng 'a mirror, speculum, glass'

naaî (lit.) this particle is used as a conjunctive particle, — but, however, and, also; as a consequential particle, — then, so that, thereupon; also with the meaning of to be; as possessive pronoun, — your, their, that, those

k'oì (lit.) initial particle: — now, the above; as a causal particle indicating doubt, — for, because; to cover, to hide, a cover

p'at A.N. for horses; also used for pieces or rolls of cloth; (lit.) a mate, a common or ignorant man e.g. p'at-foo

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 132

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kûng kè "kwan-sẑ teî-fong" haî mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yan-waî leî-pîn kwan-sẑ t'ūng hāng-chìng kè koón-leĭ, Chung-Kûng fan-hoi lûk-kòh teî-fong t'ūng leŭng-kòh tsẑ-chî k'ui. Mooĭ kòh teî-fong haî kwan-sẑ hāng-chìng sheûng kiù tsô "kwan-sẑ teî-fong", haî mān-sẑ hāng-chìng sheûng kiù tsô "hāng-chìng teî-fong".

C: Ni ti teî-fong yaū pin-kòh koón-leĭ kà?

H: Mooĭ kòh teî-fong yaŭ yat-kòh teî-fong mān-sẑ hāng-chìng, yaū yat-kòh "Kwan-Sẑ t'ūng Hāng-Chìng Waî-Uēn Ooî*" koón-leĭ. Yaû yaŭ yat-kòh teî-fong kwan-sẑ hāng-chìng, yaū yat-kòh kwan-sẑ teî-fong chî-fai uēn koón-leĭ.

C: Kwan-sẑ hāng-chìng t'ūng mān-sẑ hāng-chìng yaŭ mi-yĕ kwaan-haî à?

H: Kwan-sẑ teî-fong kè chî-fai uēn p'ó-t'ung yîk-to kim-yâm kóh kòh teî-fong mān-sẑ hāng-chìng kè chué-tsîk.

C: Yaŭ saam-kòh kwan-sẑ teî-fong kè chî-fai uēn yîk-to chî-fai haî k'uĭ-teî kè teî-fong noî kè yĕ-chìn, kwan-t'uēn haî m̄-haî à?

H: Mŏ-ts'òh lâ. Kwan-sẑ kè chî-fai uēn kim-yâm kwan-sẑ t'ūng mān-sẑ kè chik-cheúng haî Chung-Kûng kè tâk-ching. Koò-ts'ź Chung-Kûng tsuì ko kè kwan-sẑ lĭng-tsaû yîk-to haî Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng kè lìng-tsaû. Yaū k'uĭ-teî chî-leĭ ts'uēn kwòk.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 132

Captain Cheung: What are the "military areas" in Communist China?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: To facilitate military and administrative control, Communist China is divided into six regional and two autonomous areas. Each of the six regional areas is known as "military area" for purposes of military administration, and as an "administrative area" for civil administration.

C: By whom are these areas controlled?

H: Each of these six regional areas has a regional civil administration directed by a "Military & Administrative committee", and a regional military administration directed by a military area commander.

C: What is the relation between the military administration and civil administration?

H: Military commanders of the military areas are also usually the chairmen of the civil administration of the same region.

C: Military area commanders in three regions also command the field armies located in their respective command areas. Is this true?

H: That's correct. These concurrent commands and interlocking military and civil functions of military commanders are characteristic of Communist China, where top military leaders, who are also leaders in the Communist Party, rule the country.

張上尉：中共既「軍事地方」係也野呀？

何中校：中因共為分開地方」，喺民事行政上叫做「行政地方」。共每個地方「軍事地方」係行政既管理，中央治區軍事軍便軍個地軍事行政，又軍事

張：呢啲地方由邊個管理㗎？

何：每個地方有事同方軍員事揮行政管理。個「軍事地方」係行政既指揮民事地地方委員會」，由一個一個地方政方方軍事行政，由一個

張：軍軍有通主揮野戰兼特亦理。

何：有錯啦事共既。

張上尉：個喺唔係指揮，係同此產。

何中校：呀？

張：個啲係任都團，係都軍·係國。

何：事故共·

張：三

何：有

分之可行政區中共事軍行政管理，中華民國全境，可分之為六個地區，每區設軍事及行政兩個地方，軍事地方之名曰「軍方」，行政地方之名曰「行政方」。

行政方面之事務，由「軍事委員會」指揮行政委員會主席行使之；其軍事方面之事務，則由軍事委員會委員兼任行政委員會委員，而以一人管理之者，亦有之。其蓋常以軍事領袖，兼任行政領袖，並指揮是項行政之矣。

軍事領袖，固黨國之最高領導人物，故由彼等之治理，為軍事與行政之最適當之安排，然其產生也，掌握有實權，誠為共黨以職亦良

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 132

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng fan-hoi keî-toh kòh teî-fong t'ūng tsẑ-chî k'ui à?
2. Haî kwan-sẑ hāng-chìng sheûng kè kiù tsô mi-yĕ teî-fong?
3. Haî mān-sẑ hāng-chìng sheûng kè kiù tsô mi-yĕ teî-fong?
4. Teî-fong mān-sẑ hāng-chìng haî yaū mi-yĕ kei-kwaan koón-leĭ kà?
5. Kóm, teî-fong kwan-sẑ hāng-chìng yaû yaū pin-kòh koón-leĭ à?
6. P'ó-t'ung laî kóng, kwan-sẑ teî-fong chî-fai uēn kim-yâm mi-yĕ à?
7. Chung-Kûng tsuì ko kwan-sẑ lĭng-tsaû to haî tóng noî kè mi-yĕ yān?
8. Chung-Kûng ts'uēn kwòk yaū pin ti yān chî-leĭ à?
9. Kóm, tóng kè lĭng-tsaû tsik-haî kwòk-ka kè mi-yĕ yān à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 132

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kwan-sẑ teî-fong military area; equivalent to kwan-sẑ k'ui

leî-pîn convenient, handy, speedy, to facilitate; a.f.: pîn-leî; Cf., IU 59

Chî-fai uēn commander, commanding officer; equivalent to chî-fai koon, AN kòh

kim-yâm to have more than one position at a time; a.f.: kim-chik, abbr: kim 'to unite in one, to connect, and, also, together with'

uêt (lit) to speak, it is said, it is called, means; equivalent to kóng, wâ (colloq.); also used as an expletive in literary language

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 133

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Kwan-sẑ teî-fong tîm-yeûng* fan-hoi kà?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Kwan-sẑ teî-fong tsoì fan-waî kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk. Kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk kaaì-haân p'ó-t'ung t'ūng shaáng kè kaaì-haân yat-yeûng. Kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk yaû tsoì fan-waî kwan-sẑ fan-k'ui. Kwan-sẑ fan-k'ui p'ó-t'ung paau-k'oòt seì-kòh ĭ-sheûng kè uên*.

C: Kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk kè pô-tuî* kè chik-mô haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Chik-mô paau-k'oòt faán yaū-kik chìn, pong-chôh Lûk-Kwan ching ping, kung-yìng t'ūng pó-k'ap k'uĭ-teî teî-fong kè chìng-kw'ai kwan taan-waî*.

C: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng haî yat-kòh kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk. Ni kòh kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk yaŭ keî toh kòh kwan-sẑ fan-k'ui à?

H: Yaŭ shâp-kòh. Yaŭ-uē kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk kaaì-haân p'ó-t'ung t'ūng shaáng kè kaaì-haân yat-yeûng, kwan-sẑ fan-k'ui kè kaaì-haân yĭk-to p'ó-t'ung t'ūng tâk-pît hàng-chìng k'ui-wîk kè kaaì-haân yat-yeûng. Tâk-pît hāng-chìng k'ui-wîk haî yûng laî koón-leĭ mān-chìng sẑ-ì kè.

C: Kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk kè pô-tuî kè p'in-chaì tîm kà?

H: Keì-ĭn kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk kè pô-tuî* yat-kòh chué-iù mûk-tik haî kung-k'ap pó-ch'ung yān-uēn peî yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn, ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ wâ k'uĭ-teî yaŭ mât-ts'ìt kè luēn-lòk, shóh-ĭ k'uĭ-teî kè p'in-chaì t'ūng hāng-chìng ch'ĭng-tsuî taaî-chì yĭk-to seung-ts'ž.

Captain Chung: How are the military areas divided?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: The military areas are divided into military districts, which usually coincide with provincial boundaries. Military districts are in turn subdivided into military sub-districts, which usually comprise four or more hsien (counties).

C: What are the duties of the military district troops?

H: The duties of the military district troops include anti-guerrilla operations, assistance in recruiting for the Army, and accommodation and supply of Regular Army units in their area.

C: The Province of Kwangtung (Canton) is a military district. How many military sub-districts are there in this military district?

H: There are ten. Just as the military district boundaries in Communist China usually coincide with provincial boundaries, military sub-district boundaries usually coincide with those of special administrative districts used for civilian administrative purposes.

C: What is the organization of the military district troops?

H: Since one of the main purposes of the military district troops is to supply the Communist field armies with replacements, it seems logical that there is fairly close liaison between them and therefore, that their general pattern of organization and administrative procedure is quite similar.

張上校：事·軍·單軍樣·縣？兵軍區事區省亦一樣·一區既呀徵規軍事同限民
何中校：域限分上野軍正個？普既界通界黎管
區界事以也陸既呢呀限區域用
傑事既軍個係助方域·區界分係
開軍省為四務幫地分域事政域
分為同分括職，地區事區軍行區
樣分通再包既戰佢事軍事，編隊傑
點再普又通隊擊給軍個軍樣特行
方方限域普部游補個多如一別政
地地界區既反同一幾有限別行
事事域事分域括應·係有·界普·事域事給以地似·
軍軍區軍事區包供位省域個既都樣政區軍供可佢相
張：事務東十
何：軍職廣有
張：事然
何：軍既

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 133

READING MATERIAL

再之大，又省之縣，與常四域，區通有事限約，軍界常通，為分者圍範，再前方，其地區者，後事分軍事，共軍同，中為相之限，分界。

事相民，軍限理，個界管，十之為，有區乃，約政區，域別行，區特別，事軍常，與特別，行政區，一通義，為限思，省界而，東名之，廣區，顧宜，分同，事政。

協位，此戰軍，單由，擊規員，游正兵，反之之，為內圍，務域軍，職區戰，之其野，隊應充，部供補，域及又，區兵之，事徵加，軍軍，陸務，助事觀之，彼此皆有密切聯絡，故其編制與行政程序亦大致相同。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 133

QUESTIONS

1. Kwan-sẑ teî-fong yaû fan-waî mi-yĕ k'ui-wîk à?
2. Kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk yaû tsoì fan-waî mi-yĕ k'ui à?
3. Fan-k'ui yaŭ keî taaî à?
4. Kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk yaŭ keî taaî à?
5. Kwóng-Tung Shaáng haî kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk; yaŭ keî-toh kòh fan-k'ui à?
6. Kwan-sẑ fan-k'ui kaaì-haân t'ūng mi-yĕ kaaì-haân yat-yeûng à?
7. Kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk kè pô-tuî* yaŭ ti mi-yĕ kè chik-mô à?
8. Kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk kè pô-tuî* kè chué-iù mûk-tîk haî mi-yĕ à?
9. Kóm, kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk kè pô-tuî* kè p'in-chaì t'ūng yĕ-chìn kwan-t'uēn kè yaŭ mi-yĕ fan-pît à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 133

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kaaì-haân boundary, a boundary line, a limit, restricted, frontier; abbr.: kaaì a boundary, a limit; haân IU 43

fan-k'ui AN kòh sub-districts, to divide into smaller areas; Cf.: fan-kaaì IU 112; fan equivalent to fan-hoi; k'ui equivalent to k'ui-wîk

faán yaū-kik chìn anti-guerrilla warfare, anti-guerrilla operation

ching ping conscription, to enlist under conscription, to raise an army; ching 'to levy, to raise troops, to summon, to prove, to collect taxes or materials, to seek for, to inquire after'; ping IU 16

chìng-kw'ai kwan taan-waî* regular army units, standing army units; chìng 'upright, true, regular, correct, orthodox, formal, exact, principal as opposed to secondary'; kw'ai 'regulation, usage, a pair of compasses', Cf.: kw'ai-cheung IU 75

tâk-pît hang-chìng k'ui-wîk special administrative district

koð to care for, to look after, to regard; (lit.) as an adversative particle, on the contrary, then, therefore

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 134

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Kóh-ti shóh-waî Mān-Kwan m̄-haî chìng-kw'ai kwan kè yat-pô-fân. Mān-Kwan kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Mān-kwan kè yâm-mô king-yaū koon-fong shuèt-mīng waì: "Waì-ch'ì chî-on, kìn-lâp kwòk-ka tûng-uēn kei-ch'óh, pit iù shì chún-peî shât-hāng haaû-lîk kwan-sẑ chaì-tô".

C: Mān-Kwan kè chué-iù chik-cheung haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Mān-Kwan kè chué-iù chik-cheúng haî ching ping t'ūng taam-yâm kûk-pô fàn-lîn uê-peî yān-uēn ka-yâp chìng-kw'ai kwan, (tsik-haî yĕ-chìn kwan t'ūng kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk pô-tuî*). K'eì-ts'ẑ tsik-cheúng haî waì-ch'ì teî-fong chî-on t'ūng koón-leĭ teî-fong yān-mān.

C: Mān-kwan kè ping-lîk yaŭ keî taaî-à?

H: Koó-kaì Mān-kwan kè ping-lîk yaŭ lûk-paàk maân yān. Nīn-suì yaū shâp-paàt suì chì seì-shâp suì.

C: Mān-kwan tîm-yeûng* p'in-chaì kà?

H: Mān-kwan kè p'in-chaì p'ó-t'ung t'ūng shaáng kè mān-sẑ hāng-chìng t'ūng kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk p'īng-hāng.

C: Mān-kwan kè chong-peî t'ūng fàn-lîn tîm kà?

H: Mān-kwan p'ooì-yaŭ kòk-chúng pat t'ūng kè ping-heì. K'uĭ-teî shaû ch'eūng tuén pat t'ūng kè fàn-lîn, toh-shò haî leŭng saam kòh uêt.

Captain Cheung: The so-called People's Militia is not a part of the Regular Army. What is the mission of People's Militia?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: The mission of the People's Militia has been officially described as follows: "To maintain order, lay the foundation for national mobilization and prepare for the enforcement of an obligatory military system at the appropriate moment".

C: What is the primary function of the People's Militia?

H: The primary function of the People's Militia is the recruitment and partial training of reserves for the regular forces (both the field forces and military district troops) and secondarily, to preserve local order and to control local populace.

C: What is the strength of the militia?

H: It is estimated at about six million men, ranging from 18 to 46 years of age.

C: What is the organization of the militia?

H: The organization of the militia generally parallels that of the provincial civil administration and of the military districts.

C: What are the equipment and training of the militia?

H: The militia are equipped with a variety of weapons. They receive varied periods of training, usually of about two or three months.

張上尉：一部既軍呀？

何中校：為：「維必基礎，制度」。

張：民軍

何：民軍

張：民軍

何：民軍

張：民軍

何：民軍

張：民軍

何：民軍

張：民軍

何：民軍

部訓練掌民。

局部係職人民，(即次方任地，其理担軍隊*)管同？

係官家力野兵正部同？

係務由國效也徵入域安呀？

軍任經立行係係加區治大有六百萬人，年歲由

民既務建實掌掌員事方幾力有十六歲。

謂軍任，備職職人軍地有兵力四十六歲？

所民既安準要要備同持力既歲至制嗰？

啲．軍治時主主預軍維兵軍八樣*編制普通同省既民事行政同軍

個份民持要既既練戰係既民十點既事既配短係兩三個月。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 134

READING MATERIAL

民軍並非正規軍之一部．據官方言，其任務為維持地方治安，管理地方人民；建立國家動員基礎；如必要時，推行效力軍事制度．

其主要職掌為徵兵事務，担任局部訓練預備人員俾其加入正規軍．

其兵力約有六百萬之衆．年歲皆在十八至四十六之間．

其編制通常與省之民事行政，軍事區域平衡之，實乃大同小異而矣．

其裝備配有各種兵器．而受訓期限不一，多以三個月為期．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 134

QUESTIONS

1. Mān-kwan kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ à?
2. Mān-kwan kè chué-iù chik-cheúng paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?
3. Mān-kwan chûng yaŭ mŏ k'eî-t'a kè chik-cheúng à?
4. Mān-kwan kè ping-lîk yaŭ keî taaî à?
5. Kóh ti mān-kwan kè nîn-suì keî taaî à?
6. Mān-kwan kè p'in-chaì p'ó-t'ung t'ūng ti mi-yĕ kè p'in-chaì p'îng-hāng?
7. Mān-kwan kè chung-peî tîm à?
8. Mān-kwan kè fàn-lîn shī-k'eî keî noî à?
9. Mān-kwan haî m̄-haî chìng-kw'ai kwan kè à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 134

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

mān-kwan people's militia, militia; equivalent to mān-ping

king yaū already, being, have been, to pass through; equivalent to ts'āng-king; Cf.: king-kwòh IU 15

koon-fong officially, official, official dignity, government authority; Cf.: koon-uēn IU 55; tong-kûk IU 80

kwòk-ka tûng-uēn kei-ch'óh foundation for national mobilization

ka-yâp to participate, to join, to enter; equivalent to ts'aam-ka IU 63

mān-sẑ hāng-chìng civil administration

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 135

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Ts'îng neĭ kóng-hă kwaan-ue Chung-Kûng kwan-tuî* tûng-uēn kè yĕ peî ngŏh-teî t'eng, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yat-kaú-ng̀-î nîn Chung-Kûng taaî-yeùk* yaŭ chìng-kw'ai kwan saam-paàk ng̀-shâp maân yān. K'eî-chung ch'a-m̀-toh yaŭ î-paàk maân yān haî chìng-kw'ai yĕ-chìn kwan-tuî*, yat-paàk ng̀-shâp maân yān haî kwan-sẑ k'ui-wîk pô-tuî*. Ch'uî-chóh ni-ti chìng-kw'ai kwan chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ fei-chìng-kw'ai kwan kè mān-kwan lûk-paàk maân yān tsóh-yaû*.

C: K'uĭ-teî tûng-uēn yaŭ-mŏ kw'àn-naān à?

H: Yān-lîk uēn-ts'uēn pat-shìng mân-t'aì. Taân-haî ch'oî-fei yaŭ ngoî-pîn pó-k'ap kè loî-uēn, k'uĭ-teî mŏ nāng-lîk chong-peî t'ūng pó-k'ap tsang-ka pô-tuî*, shóh-ĭ ts'uēn-mîn tsúng tûng-uēn shaû-tó yat-tîng kè haân-chaì.

C: K'uĭ-teî tseung-loî tûng-uēn kè kaì-waâk haî tîm kà?

H: K'uĭ-teî tseung-loî ts'uēn-mîn tsúng tûng-uēn kè kaì-waâk taaî-k'oì* haî tsaâp-chung ch'ung-shât mān-kwan. Chung-Kûng piú-shî hei-mông tseung-loî hóh-ĭ ṭaât-tò ch'iu-kwòh î ts'in maân mān-kwan kè mûk-tik.

Captain Cheung: Sir, can you tell us something about the mobilization of the Chinese Communist forces?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: In 1952, the Chinese Communist forces consisted of approximately 3.5 million men in the regular forces, of which nearly 2 million were in the regular field forces and 1.5 million were military district troops. In addition to these regular forces, the militia, an irregular force, numbered about 6 million men.

C: Do they have any difficulty in mobilization?

H: There is no problem as far as manpower is concerned. However, unless outside sources of supply are available, inability to equip and supply large numbers of additional troops does place a definite ceiling on maximum mobilization.

C: What are their plans for mobilization in the future?

H: Their plans for full-scale mobilization in the future apparently center around further development of the militia program. There are indications that the Chinese Communists hope eventually to reach a goal of over 20 million in the militia.

張上尉：請你講吓關於中共軍隊動員嘅野俾我地聽，何中校？

何中校：一九五二年中共軍隊大約有正規軍二百五十萬人，其中差唔多有一百萬人喺正規事外，重有非正規嘅民兵六百萬人左右。

張：佢地動員完全不成問題，但係除非有外力裝備同補給增加部隊，所以全面總動員嘅限制。

何：人力方面嘅確係集中可以達到超過二千萬人，但係計劃大概望將來嘅目標。

張：佢地將來將來全民軍嘅計劃係點樣？

何：佢地將來全民軍嘅計劃係點樣？

三規域．大軍正區衆龐規為事之是正屬軍萬百如若員百配軍有動二萬民知共有十有而中中五仍得年二一外實二年其中百五十萬隊*，除非耶，不五衆．一萬隊*·除非耶，不九之衆而之此耶，實於十軍隊*·除非耶，是五戰隊*·耶，也百野部是者也．

中共將來總動員計劃，其目的為充實民軍，致其達到超過二千萬民軍之數．

其人力誠大矣，足矣．雖兵多而過猶不及，若無外援補給之，則不濟於事．故其全面總動員計劃不能不受限制．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 135

QUESTIONS

1. Haî yat-kaú-nğ-î nîn, Chung-Kûng tûng-uēn keî toh chìng-kw'ai kwan à?

2. Yaŭ keî toh chìng-kw'ai kwan p'ooì-shûk chìng-kw'ai yĕ-chìn kwan à?

3. Yaŭ yat-paàk nğ-shâp maân yān p'ooì-shûk mi-yĕ pô-tuî* à?

4. Ch'uî-chóh ni ti chìng-kw'ai kwan chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ kwan à?

5. Chung-Kûng yaŭ keî toh mān-kwan à?

6. Chung-kûng tseung-loì ts'uēn-mân tûng-uēn kè kaì-waâk ch'ung-shât mi-yĕ kwan à?

7. Chung-Kûng hei-mông tseung-loì yaŭ keî toh mān kwan à?

8. Chung-Kûng kè yān-lîk t'ūng chong-peî yaŭ mŏ mân-t'aî à?

9. Kóm, Chung-Kûng kè ts'uēn-mîn tsúng tûng-uēn tîm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 135

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chìng-kw'ai yĕ-chìn kwan-tuî* regular field forces, regular field units

ts'uēn-mîn the general position, entirely, an all out effort, all sides, in all respects, maximum, from every aspect; Cf.: ts'uēn-t'aî IU 65; ts'uēn-p'oōn IU 19; ts'uēn 'entire, the whole, all, complete, totality, absolute'; mîn IU 11

yē (lit.) a final interrogative particle; used in transliteration e.g. Yē-So 'Jesus', Yē-Lô-Saàt-Laăng 'Jerusalem'

chì (lit.) to cause, to bring about, to result in, to send, to convey, to extend, to apply; equivalent to lîng (colloq.) 'to cause', e.g. lîng ngŏh faaì-lôk 'it makes me happy'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 136

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Waì: Chung-Kûng ching ping kè chaì-tô haî tîm kà?

Hŏh Chung-Kaaù: Yaū teî-fong haāng-chìng tong-kûk yān-haú tang-keì laî k'uèt-tîng tong-ping kè yān-shò toh kwá. Peî ching kè yān kè nîn-lîng yaū shâp-ngĕ suì heî, ĭ teî-fong kè waî-chì t'ūng kw'ai-tîng kè ngaâk-shò laî tîng.

C: Pin-kòh hóh-ĭ m̄-shaî peî-ching à?

H: Mĭn ching kè yān paau-k'oòt ts'aān-faì kè yān, mooĭ ka foô-chaàk chim-yeŭng kè oô-chué, uē-kwóh yat-kòh ka-t'îng yaū keî kòh tsî hôp-kaàk, yat leŭng kòh waâk-ché mĭn ching.

C: Ching ping wân-tûng haî tîm-yeûng* tsùn-haāng kà?

H: Mooĭ-fūng sui-iù yān-lîk kè shì-haû, kwan chìng tong-kûk faàt-ch'ut mîng-lîng, kiù mān chìng cheúng koon kuî-haāng ching ping wân-tûng. Ni ti mîng-lîng ch'uēn-tò teî-fong mān chìng tong-kûk, yaū k'uĭ-teî foô-chaàk t'în-moŏn ngaâk-shò. Teî-fong mān chìng tong-kûk chún-peî ching ping tsìt-mûk, paau-k'oòt mooĭ yât chiu-tsaâp hoi ooî*, keūng-pik shóh yaŭ chùng-ting tsoî ch'eūng pò-tò. Kiù k'uĭ-teî "chì-uên" ts'ūng kwan. Uē-kwóh yaŭ ti yān m̄-háng "chì-uên", tsaû ooĭ shaû-tó hó taaî kè aàt-pik t'ūng húng-haàk. Yûng ĭ-sheûng waâk t'ūng yeûng kè paân-faàt, shóh-waî "chi-uên ping" kè shò-mûk shì-sheūng hóh-ĭ taât-tò.

Captain Cheung: What is the Chinese Communist conscription system?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: A registration of manpower conducted by local administrative authorities determines the number of men available for military service. The age range of those conscripted is from 15 years up, depending upon the locality and the number required to fill a particular quota.

C: Who may be exempted from military service?

H: Persons exempt from military service include the physically disabled, the principal "breadwinner" in individual families, and perhaps one or two sons of a family in which several are eligible.

C: How are recruiting campaigns conducted?

H: When a need for manpower arises, orders usually are sent out by the military authorities to civil officials directing them to institute a recruiting campaign. These orders are passed down to the local civil authorities who are responsible for filling the assigned quotas. Local civil authorities prepare a recruiting program which includes daily meetings with compulsory attendance for all eligible persons. These persons are told to "volunteer". Those individuals who have failed to "volunteer" are subjected to heavy pressure and threats. By use of the above and

similar methods, the required number of so-called "volunteers" are usually obtained.

張上尉：中共徵兵嘅制度係點㗎？

何中校：由地方行政當局人口登記黎決定當兵嘅人數多寡，被徵嘅人嘅年齡由十五歲起，以地方嘅位置同規定嘅額數黎定。

張：邊個可以唔使被徵呀？

何：免徵嘅人包括殘廢嘅人，每家負責贍養嘅戶主，如果一個家庭有幾個仔合格，一兩個或者免徵。

張：徵兵運動係點樣*進行㗎？

何：每逢徵兵運動要由當局發動，政召到人逼，到出動。唔同所局兵局民日報啲壓法，達當徵當方每場有嘅辦以政行政地括在果大嘅可軍舉民。包丁如好樣常官方數，壯。倒同時候長地額目有軍受或目時政到滿節所從會上數嘅民傳填兵迫願」就以嘅志，用兵」令責徵強「志」，願。願人，命負備，地「志嚇。「志動要令啲地準*會*佢局開叫肯恐謂命呢佢須

中共徵兵制度名之曰「志願」從軍實則為強迫從軍制．當中共須要人力時，軍政當局命地方行政當局徵集壯丁，必要填滿指定額數為是．

民政當局受命後．即推行徵兵運動．被徵之人每日必要報到集會，而美其名為「志願軍」．若有違命而不為「志願」者則施之以壓力使其就範．

至於各地應徵人數多少則由地方行政當局決定之．壯丁之年齡限於十五歲以上．合年齡否，則以地方特情與規定額數而定之．

至於殘廢者，老者而至貧賤養之户主則免徵之．若一家有數口皆被徵服役，其中一二人亦可免徵．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 136

QUESTIONS

1. Mooĭ-fūng Chung-Kûng sui-iù yān-lîk kè shī-haû, kwan chìng tong-kûk mîng-lîng pin-kòh kei-kwaan huì ching ping à?

2. Pin-kòh iù foô-chaàk t'în-moŏn chî-tîng ngaâk-shò à?

3. Peî ching kè yān mooĭ yât iù pò-tò tsô mi-yĕ à?

4. Chung-Kûng iù kóh ti chùng-ting tîm-yeûng* ts'ūng kwan à?

5. Uē-kwóh ti chùng-ting m̄-háng chì-uên ts'ūng kwan tsaû ooĭ tîm à?

6. Mooĭ kòh teî-fong kè peî ching yān-shò toh shiú haî yaū pin-kòh k'uèt-tîng à?

7. Chùng-ting kè nîn-lîng toh-shò yaū keî toh suì heî chì hôp-kaàk à?

8. Kóm, chùng-ting hôp m̄-hôp nîn-lîng kè mân-t'aî yaû iù tîm-yeûng* laî k'uèt-tîng à?

9. Pin-kòh m̄-shaî peî ching à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 136

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tang-keì to register, to enrol, to make an entry; tang 'to rise, to mount, to record, to step up'; keì Cf.: keì-lûk IU 91

nîn-lîng the age of a person; syn.: nîn-shuì; abbr.: shuì (colloq.) IU 9

ngaâk-shǒ a fixed number, a quota; ngaâk AN kòh 'the forehead, a fixed number' IU 59; shǒ IU 10

chim-yeŭng (lit.) to supply, to support, to provide the means of subsistence; chim 'to give, to supply, to be sufficient for'; yeŭng IU 19

oô-chué the head of a household; equivalent to ka-cheúng; oô IU 20; chué IU 34

hôp-kaàk eligible, qualified, up to the required standard

t'în-moŏn to fill up level, to fill in

chiu-tsaâp to convene, to summon a council, to call; chiu 'to call, to summon, to cite, to give notice; tsaâp Cf.: tsaâp-hôp IU 61

chòng-ting AN kòh an able-bodied man, an adult subject to military service; chòng 'strong, stout, able-bodied, healthy, fertile'; ting 'an individual, a person, a male adult, to incur'; the fourth of the Ten Celestial Stems

aàt-pik hard pressed, oppression, to repress; aàt 'to press, to appress, to crush, to keep in order'; Cf.: aàt-chaì IU 118; pik IU 81

húng-haàk to intimidate, to threaten, to fear, to terrify, to scare; abbr.: haàk

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 137

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan keî-shî p'in-shîng kà, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Haî yat-kaú-seì-kaú nîn p'in-shîng kè.

P: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ laâm-t'ĕng à?

H: Ni kòh hoî-kwan wôk-tak lîng-suì shiú-shò ch'ān-kaû faì-heì kè shuēn-t'ĕng, ni ti haî yaū Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó foo-wôk t'ūng poôn-pìn tak-laî kè. Taân-haî i-în iù k'aaù lōm-shî kang-koî kè shuēn-t'ĕng uē Chung-Kwòk faān-shuēn. Yan-waî k'uèt-fât chaì-tsô san-shik hoî-kwan laâm-t'ĕng kè chúng-chúng pîn-leî Chung-Kûng yat-tîng iù î-k'aaù So-Luēn lîng k'uĭ-teî kè hoî-kwan în-toî fà là.

P: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Chué-iù yâm-mô haî fōng-uê, tsuì chûng-iù kè chaàk-yâm haî fōng-shaú Chung-Kwòk hoî-ngôn sìn. Taân-haî yîk-to iù chún-peî heùng ngôn-pin kè hoî-tó leŭng-ts'ai tsòk-chìn.

P: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan kè nāng-lîk tîm à?

H: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan nāng-kaù waî-ch'ì yaŭ haân-chaì kè hoî-ngôn ts'ūn-lōh. Hóh-ĭ leî-yûng t'ĕng t'ūng saam-paán paân tsô uē-shuēn, taam-yâm ching-ch'aàt kung-tsòk, yaû hóh-ĭ tsòk siú kw'ai-mō pò luî kung-tsòk.

Major White: Sir, when was the Chinese Communist Navy organized?

Lt. Colonel Höh: It was organized in 1949.

W: What kind of ships and vessels do they have?

H: This Navy acquired a small number of obsolescent, conventional navy-type craft by capture and defection from the Chinese Nationalists, but it is still dependent to a large degree upon improvised craft, such as Chinese junks. Lacking facilities to produce modern naval vessels, the Chinese Communists must rely upon the Soviet Union for any modernization of their Navy.

W: What is the mission of the Chinese Communist Navy?

H: The mission of the Chinese Communist Navy is primarily a defensive one, with its main responsibility the defense of the coastline of China. However, it also must be prepared to conduct amphibious operations against off-shore islands.

W: What are the capabilities of the Chinese Communist Navy?

H: The Chinese Communist Navy is able to maintain limited coastal patrol and it can conduct reconnaissance by utilizing junks and sampans disguised as fishing vessels. The Navy is also capable of small-scale mine-laying operations.

白少校：中共海軍現代化啦。

何中校：中共海軍既任務係防禦，最重要既責任係防守中國海岸線。但係亦都要準備向岸邊既海島兩棲作戰。

白：中共海軍既能力點呀？

何：中共海軍能夠維持有限制既海岸巡邏。可以利用艇同舢舨扮做漁船，擔任偵察工作，又可以作小規模佈雷工作。

白少校：中共海軍一軍軍團四九有獲改製中型登陸艦幾多隻呀？

何中校：喺海海軍九野零星分散新一代登陸艦。

白：中共海軍有幾多隻呀？

何：中共海軍九野零星分散新一代登陸艦。

白少校：中共

依不國舊巡使，今多中陳岸若然，至諸於海作．不然之多於海作．不成．編成禦，但限工可；年岸防或得之變者，力雷聯九海之變能佈蘇四對製叛軍模九故自於海規非一或之其小化，代現能軍海有之矣．

中共海軍於一九四九年以後，主要任務為防守海岸線，亦然缺乏新式艦艇．或自製叛軍模仿蘇聯之新有船艇，或得以其小化，代現能軍海有之矣．便國民政府者；是以作化，代現能軍海有之矣．不堪偵察，或作化，代現能軍海有之矣．邏其海莫須有之矣．則

中共海軍主要任務為防守海岸線，亦為備於兩棲作戰而對海外島者也．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 137

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan haî keî-shî p'in-shîng kà?

2. Tîm-kaaî î-ka Chung-Kûng i-în k'uèt-fât san-shik laâm-t'ĕng?

3. Chung-Kûng yaŭ ti shuēn-t'ĕng haî yaū pin-shuè foo-wôk tak laî kà?

4. Chung-Kûng foo-wôk tak laî kè shuēn-t'ĕng hó m-hó à?

5. Kóm, Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan kè nāng-lîk yaŭ haân chî-haî taam-yâm mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

6. Uē-kwóh Chung-Kûng seúng lîng k'uĭ-teî kè hoî-kwan în-toî fà, tsaû iù î-k'aaù pin kwòk à?

7. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan taî-yat-kòh yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ?

8. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan taî-î-kòh yâm-mô haî chún-peî mi-yĕ kè tsòk-chìn à?

9. K'uĭ-teî tîm-kaaî chún-peî leŭng-ts'ai tsòk-chìn à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 137

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

p'in-shîng to compile, to arrange in order, to organize, to fabricate, to plait; Cf.: p'in-tsô IU 89

ch'ān-kaû stale, old, old-fashioned, obsolete; equivalent to kaû IU 130

faì-heì to discard, to abandon, to give up, to discard as useless; Cf.: ts'aān-faì IU 55

poôn-pìn to revolt, to rebel, defection; equivalent to poôn-luên IU 71

faān-shuēn AN chèk sailing vessel, Chinese junk

fōng-shaú to protect, to guard, to defend; equivalent to fōng-uê IU 15

ngôn-pin off-shore, bank, beach, coast; equivalent to ngôn IU 32; Cf.: hoì-ngôn pìn IU 32

saam-paán small boat, sampan

paân-tsô a.p. paàn to dress, to dress up, to disguise, to feign to be

uē-shuēn AN chèk fishing boat

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 138

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan hóh m̄-hóh-ǐ kik-t'uì în-toî-fà kè leŭng-ts'ai tât-kik à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yan-waî k'uèt-shiú shik-tòng t'ūng în-toî-fà kè chìn-taù laâm-t'ĕng, m̄-seung-sùn Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan hóh-ǐ kóm tsô. Chung-Kûng taaî pô-fân î-laaî tsîng-chî hoî-ngôn fōng-uê ch'ìt-shi t'ūng teî-sheûng pô-tuî*.

P: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan kung-shaì ne?

H: Haî kung-kik fong-mîn, Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan shì-kwòh heûng ngôn-pin kè hoî-tó tsòk yaŭ haân-chaì kè leŭng-ts'ai tsòk-chìn.

P: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan kè p'in-chaì tîm kà?

H: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan haî yaū lûk-kwan haî yat-kaú-seì-kaú nīn p'in-shēng kè, hó toh ko-k'ap kè kwan-koon to haî ǐ-ts'în lûk-kwan yān-uēn. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan tsúng sz-lîng pô chîk-tsìp taî-shûk yān-mān kwan tsúng sz-lîng pô. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan fan-hoi keî-kòh hoî-kwan k'ui, mooǐ-kòh foô-chaàk tsẑ-keî faân-waì kè hoî-ngôn fōng-uê.

P: Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan kè laâm-t'ĕng yûng mi-yĕ faàt-tûng kà? Pooǐ yaŭ mi-yĕ ping-heì à?

H: P'ó-t'ung yûng heì-ch'e t'ūng fòh-ch'e faàt-tûng kei faàt-tûng. K'uǐ-teî p'ooì yaŭ pô-ping ping-heì, toh-shò haî pik-kik p'aaù, hing kei-kwaan ts'eung, ch'ŭng kei-kwaan ts'eung.

Major White: Is the Chinese Communist Navy capable of repulsing a modern amphibious assault?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: Because of the lack of a sufficient number of suitable, modern combatant ships, the Chinese Communist Navy is not believed to be capable of repulsing a modern amphibious assault. The Chinese Communists rely, for the most part, on static coastal defense installations and ground forces.

W: How is the Chinese Communist Navy offensively?

H: Offensively, the Navy has demonstrated an effective strategy in staging limited amphibious operations on off-shore islands.

W: What is the organization of the Chinese Communist Navy?

H: The Navy was organized by the Army in 1949, and many of its top-ranking officers are ex-army personnel. The Headquarters of the Chinese Communist Navy is under the Headquarters of the People's Army, and it is departmentalized into several naval districts, each of which is responsible for coastal defense in its own area.

W: By what are the Chinese Communist vessels powered? How are they armed?

H: The vessels are usually powered with automobile and truck engines. They are armed with infantry-type weapons, mainly mortars and light and heavy machine guns.

白少校：中共海軍可唔可以擊退現代化嘅兩棲突擊呀？

何中校：因為缺少適當同現代化嘅戰鬥艦艇，唔相信中共海軍可以敢做。中共大部份倚賴靜止海岸防禦設施同地上部隊。

白：中共海軍攻勢呢？

何：喺攻擊方面，中共海軍試過向岸邊嘅海島作有限制嘅兩棲作戰。

白：中共海軍嘅編制點樣？

何：中共海軍係由陸軍嚟，一九四九年編成嘅，人屬開國軍級共總軍防用？車器重多。民個海艦器同兵槍，好員人幾嘅嘅兵車步關軍隸分範海也用配輕

白：中共

何：普通

之部為每成令之由編司分則軍總門務陸軍部任為海軍防年．海海防九員．之四人部內九軍令圍一陸司範於為總區軍多軍，海官民區．共軍人軍之中級於海責高隸干貫其直若區

多艘，然艦．兵器等．兵關槍之有步機動之重發動配艘槍，機艦關發動之機車軍輕貨或海，共砲車中擊汽迫以為多

擊．有矣有限其於觀之，能之作賴此過之也．馬聞曾有由此未備，未島多此裝耶，海共隊*．於外中部及化力岸，上代之對上地，言現擊軍防大道，多突海海龐足既棲共在與不軍兩中．施實海之，戰設力共化上，作防軍中代勢棲海軍現攻兩止海軍退在之靜其

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 138

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan keî-shî p'in-shîng kà?

2. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan Tsûng Sz-lîng Pô chîk-tsìp taî-shûk mi-yĕ pô à?

3. Tîm-kaaî Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan Kwan-koon toh-shò haî ĭ-ts'în lûk-kwan yān-uēn ne?

4. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan kè laâm-t'ĕng p'ooì-yaŭ mi-yĕ ping-heì à?

5. Chung-Kûng kè laâm-t'ĕng toh-shò yûng mi-yĕ faàt-tûng keì à?

6. Tîm-kaaî Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan chìn-taù lîk m̄-haî keî taaî à?

7. Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan yaŭ mŏ nāng-lîk kik-t'uì în-toî fà leŭng-ts'ai tât-kik à?

8. Kŏm Chung-Kûng hoî-fōng toh-shò î-laaî mi-yĕ à?

9. Tsoî kung-shaì-sheûng, Chung-Kûng Hoî-Kwan shì-kwòh heùng ngôn-pin hoî-tó tîm à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 138

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kik-t'uì to repulse, to rout the enemy

tât-kik to assault, to make a surprise attack; tât 'abruptly, suddenly, to rush out, to run against, to offend'; kik 'to strike, to attack, to rout'; equivalent to tá (colloq.)

î-laaî to rely on, to depend on, to take advantage of; abbr.: î; equivalent to í-k'aaû IU 62; laaî 'to trust, to rely on, to repudiate, shameless'

tsîng-chî static, at rest, no motion; antonym: kei-tûng IU 109; tsîng 'quiet, peaceful, modest'; chi 'to stop, to halt, to end, to discontinue', IU 52; Cf.: t'îng-chî IU 52

kung-shaì the offensive, offensive; Cf.: kung-kik IU 95

faàt-tûng kei AN kòh initiative motion machine, motor; faàt-tûng 'motion, active, as opposed to passive'; kei IU 38

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 139

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaû: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan keî-shì p'in shīng kà, Hōh Chung-Kaaù?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yat-kaú-saam-lîng nīn chì yat-kaú-seì-lîng nīn yaū So-Luēn chué-paân chi hâ, sui-în yaŭ shiú-shò Chung-Kûng yān-uēn shaû-kwòh kà-shaî fei-kei kè fàn-lîn, taân-haî Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan chîk chì-tò yat-kaú seì-lûk nīn în-haû chì p'in shēng.

P: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ à?

H: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan kè yâm-mô haî yat-kòh chin-shût yâm-mô, paau-k'oòt fōng-hung, ts'iṫ-mât chi-oōn teî-sheûng pô-tuî; hùng-chaì chìn-k'ui, hung-wân yān-uēn t'ūng pó-k'ap.

P: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan kè p'in-chaì tîm kà?

H: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan tsuì ko chî-fai t'ai-tuî* haî Hung-Kwan Tsúng Sz-Lîng Pô, yaŭ-uē Hoî-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô, yîk- to taî-shûk Yān-Mān-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô.

P: Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô chi hâ yaŭ mi-yĕ à?

H: Seung-sùn haî Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô chi hâ yaŭ Chung-Kûng fan-hoi lûk-kòh kwan k'ui kè hung-kwan sz-lîng pô.

P: Chìn-shût taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì tîm kà?

H: Yan-waî k'uĭ-teî shóh shaû kè So-Luēn fàn-lîn seung-sùn chìn-shût taan-waî* kè p'in-chaì yaŭ-uē So-Luēn kè Hung-Kwan taan-waî* yat- yeûng.

Major White: Sir, when was the Chinese Communist Air Force organized?

Lt. Colonel Hŏh: Although a few Chinese Communists apparently received limited pilot training under Soviet auspices from 1930 to 1940, the Chinese Communist Air Force was not organized until 1946.

W: What is the mission of the Chinese Communist Air Force?

H: The mission of the Chinese Communist Air Force is a tactical one, including air defense, close support of ground troops, interdiction of battle areas, and airlift of personnel and supplies.

W: What is the organization of the Chinese Communist Air Force?

H: The top command echelon of the Chinese Communist Air Force is the Headquarters of the Air Force, which, like the Headquarters of the Navy, is subordinate to the People's Army Headquarters.

W: What is subordinate to the Headquarters of the Air Force?

H: It is believed that immediately subordinate to the Headquarters of the Air Force are the Air Force Headquarters in each of the six military areas into which Communist China is divided.

W: What is the organization of the tactical units?

H: In view of their Soviet training, it is presumed that the tactical units are organized along the lines of Soviet air units.

白少校：中共空軍幾時編成嘅，何中校？
何中校：一九三〇年至一九四〇年由蘇聯員主辦之下，雖然有少數中共人受過軍駕駛飛機，但係中共空軍直至後成.

白：中共空軍既任務係乜野呀？
何：中共空軍既任務係一個戰術任務，包括防空，切斷運制點，揮軍總司令隊*，控制戰區，空軍總司令部，亦都隸屬總部.

白：中共空軍既編制點樣嘅？
何：中共空軍既編制指揮總司令隊*係空軍總司令部之下有中共分開六單位*，人司空個位*地位*一樣.

白：中共空軍既最有民令軍軍既所既.
何：中共空軍既高如軍部總區編受編.

白：空軍信相戰術為乜野呀？
何：戰術任務，乜一支援地上部隊*，補給.

白：空軍信相戰術為乜野呀？
何：戰術任務，乜一支援地上部隊*，補給.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 139

READING MATERIAL

年飛最民空為部。
0受其人個分令
四曾隸六劃司
九員成直有方軍
一人編，下地空
至干可部之事一
年若至令部軍有
0有年司令共設
三雖六總司中內
九四軍總區
一時，九空軍之軍
於是一為空言每
軍辦。於乃隊*部；換而
空但隊*
共主梯令部區
中聯練，揮司令軍
蘇訓指總司個
為行高軍軍六

為，空，異
是，練，小
務。區訓同
戰聯大
任制蘇乃
術控受聯
戰，曾蘇
一隊*軍與
為部空制
務上其編
任地。之*
援等位*
軍支給單
空密補術
中共切與戰
，員其。
空人以
防軍是而
已

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 139

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan haî mi-yĕ nîn yaū So-Luēn chué paân á?
2. Chung-Kûng fei-haāng yān-uēn yaū pin kwòk laî fàn-lîn k'uĭ-teî à?
3. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan chì-tò keî-shī chì p'in shīng à?
4. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan tsuì ko chî-fai t'ai-tuî* tsik-haî mi-yĕ pô à?
5. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng Pô taî-shûk pin-kòh kei-kwaan à?
6. Hung-Kwan Tsùng-Sz-Lîng Pô chi hâ yaŭ keî toh kòh hung-kwan sz-lîng pô à?
7. Chung-Kûng haî mooĭ kòh mi-yĕ k'ui ts'ìt yaŭ yat-kòh sz-lîng pô à?
8. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan kè yâm-mô paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ à?
9. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan chìn-shût taan-waî*kè p'in-chaì hó-ts'ž pin yat kwòk kè à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 139

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chué-paân to manage, to take direction of; chué 'a master, an owner, a ruler, the most important'; paân Cf., paân-leĭ IU 34

..... chi hâ under which, in which, under, below

ts'ìt-mât very close, closely connected, closely related, intimate, secret; ts'ìt 'to slice, to mince, to urge, pressing'; (lit.) before a negative it adds emphasis e.g.,(lit) ts'ìt pat-hóh 'don't'; mât IU 69

t'ai-tuî* (Military) echelon; ts'ìn-fong t'ai-tuî* 'front echelon'; haû-fong t'ai-tuî* 'rear echelon'

chî-fai t'ai-tuî* (Military) the command echelon

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 140

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan kè fàn-lîn kaì-waâk tîm kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chîng-kòh fàn-lîn kaì-waâk seung-sùn haî kan-kuì So-Luēn kè haî-t'úng, yaū-k'eî-shî yan-waî ni kòh kaì-waâk haî haî So-Luēn kaam-tuk koón-leĭ chi hâ shât-haāng kè.

P: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan kè haû-k'ān yat-k'oì k'aaù So-Ngōh kung-k'ap. Haî m̄-haî?

H: Haî, toh-shò yâp-haú kè pó -k'ap pán taaî-k'oì haî yaū Sai-Paàk-Leî-À t'ìt-lô wân-tò Tung-Paak, ìn-haû yaū Chung-Kwòk t'ìt-lô fan-p'ooì Chung-Kûng kòk-pô . Chung-Kûng în-tsoî tuì-ue faàt-chîn waâk chaì-tsō Hung-Kwan pó-k'ap pán kè nāng-lîk fei-sheūng chi siú waâk-ché mŏ kóm kè nāng-lîk.

P: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan yān-uēn kè sẑ-heì tîm à?

H: Yan-waî ni ti yān-uēn yaŭ tâk-pît kè toî-uê, seung-sùn sẑ-heì hó ko.

P: Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ fei-kei à?

H: Paau-k'oòt p'àn-heì kei t'ūng foôt-sak shik kè So-Luēn chìn-taù kei, hing kwaang-chà kei, wân-shue kei, fàn-lîn kei.

Major White: What is the Chinese Communist Air Force training program?

Lt. Colonel Hōh: The entire training program presumably is based upon the Soviet system, especially as it is being implemented under close Soviet supervision.

W: The Chinese Communist Air Force is completely dependent upon the U. S. S. R. for logistical requirements. Is that correct?

H: Yes, that's right. Probably most imported supplies are shipped via the Trans-Siberian railroad to Manchuria and then distributed via Chinese railroads to other parts of Communist China. Communist China at present has little or no capability to develop or manufacture the supply requirements of the Air Force.

W: How is the morale of Chinese Communist Air Force personnel?

H: It is believed to be fairly high, especially because of the preferential treatment given such personnel.

W: What types of planes are there in the Chinese Communist Air Force?

H: The Air Force includes both jet and piston-type Soviet fighters as well as light bomber, transport, and training planes.

白少校：中共空軍訓練計劃點樣？

何中校：整系蘇空個統聯軍係數亞路發常軍啲好軍氣轟
軍練由督後勤一概係由西伯
空訓，監既軍係？入鐵分展之人高有機炸
共既計其管理是理相因之概大，然後由中國對
蘇聯既計劃係喺根據蘇聯既供給．係
中共空唔多利鐵於非空呢氣空噴輕
訓劃是一概係為下靠蘇俄供給．係
練計劃點樣？
信係根個計劃行既．
相信為呢實蘇俄供給．係
因為共包括
中共包括

白：中共空軍訓練計劃點樣？

何：係，數口路配或小員．
亞鐵運中製，既士氣點呀？
路發展之人員既士特別既待遇，相信士
發展之人員既士特別既待遇，相信士
氣點呀？

中共空軍之訓練初時由蘇聯監理之，故其整個系統與蘇聯之訓練計劃無異．

現時中共全然無能製造大量空軍補給品．其發展仍待至於將來．是以現時其空軍後勤多賴於蘇聯予之矣．

其入口之補給品多由西伯利亞鐵路運至東北，然後再分運至中共各部，以應急需．

中共擁有大量戰鬥機，輕轟炸機，運輸機，訓練機．而多為噴氣式與活塞式飛機而已．

中共空軍人員有特別待遇，故其士氣頗高．信然其可信然乎．

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 140

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan kè fàn-lîn kaì-waâk hó-ts'ž pin kwòk kè à?

2. Ch'oh-shī Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan fàn-lîn haî yaū pin kwòk koón-leĭ à?

3. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan yâp haú ké pó-k'ap pán yaū pin t'iū t'ìt-lô wân laì à?

4. Tseung ti pó-k'ap pán wân-tò Tung-Paak în-haû chì tîm à?

5. Chung-Kûng yaŭ mŏ chaì-tsô hung-kwan pó-k'ap pán kè nāng-lîk à?

6. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan yān-uēn sẑ-heì tîm à?

7. Tîm-kaaî Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan yān-uēn sẑ-heì kòm hó ne?

8. Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan haû-k'ān haî toh-shò k'aaù pin kwòk à?

9. Chung-Kûng Hung-Kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ fei-kei à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 140

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

haû-k'ăn (Military) logistics

pó-k'ap pán (Military) supplies, requirements, material

Sai-Paàk-Leî-À Siberia (transliteration)

Tung-Paak north-east, the northern & eastern parts of China; Manchuria (geographical division)

p'àn-heì shik jet-type; Cf.: p'àn-heì kei IU 78

oôt-sak kei (Military) piston-type airplanes; oôt 'living, lively, active, moving, moveable, a livelihood, an occupation'; sak 'to stop up, to block, to cork, a cork, a stopper', kei IU 38

fàn-lîn kei (Military) training airplanes

p'óh (lit.) a little, somewhat, rather, quite, very, partial; equivalent to keî (Colloq.) IU 9